

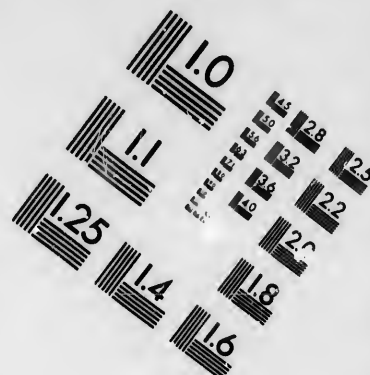
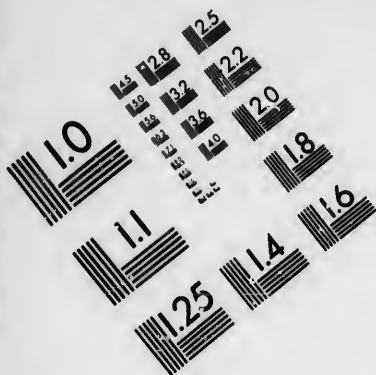
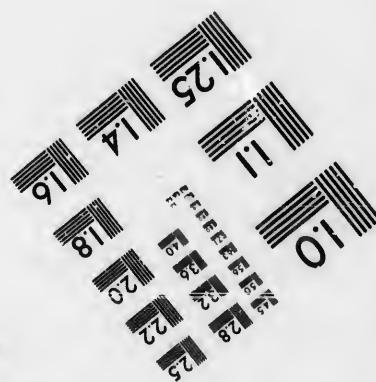
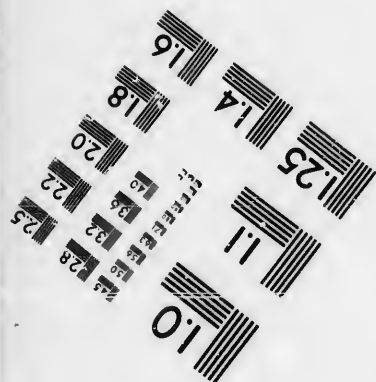
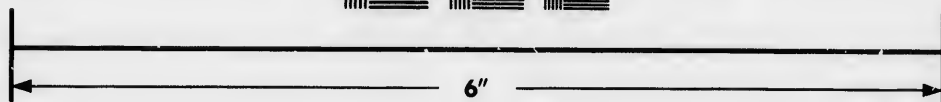
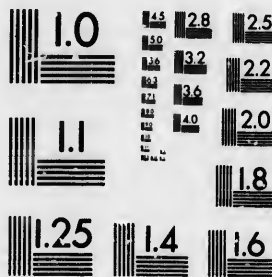


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

4.5 2.8
3.6 2.5
3.2 2.2
2.8 2.0
2.5 1.8

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10
01

© 1987

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

☐ Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

☐ Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur

☐ Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

☐ Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

☐ Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

☐ Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

☒ Pages detached/
Pages détachées

☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

☒ Showthrough/
Transparence

☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

☐ Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

☐ Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

☐ Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire

☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
L'oreillage serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

☐ Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible

☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

☒ Additional comments:
Commentaires supplémentaires:

Irregular pagination : [i] - xi, [1] - 416, 517 - 520, 421 - 434 p. There are some creases in the middle of the pages.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
☐	☐	☒	☐	☐	☐
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

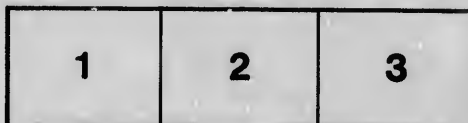
Seminary of Quebec
Library

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol $\rightarrow$ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

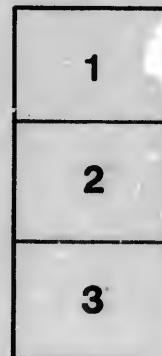
Séminaire de Québec
Bibliothèque

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole $\rightarrow$ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



EAU,
duade,
RESBYTTE,
QUEBEC.

Bibliothèque,
Le Séminaire de Québec,
3, rue de l'Université,
Québec 4, QUE.

TH

AND

363

A

THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL
GRAMMAR



OF THE

FRENCH TONGUE.

BY M. DE LEVIZAC.

FIRST CANADIAN EDITION.

REVISED AND AMENDED



KINGSTON: DESBARATS AND CARY.

QUEBEC: THOS. CARY AND CO.

AND TO BE HAD OF ALL BOOKSELLERS IN CANADA.

1843.

INSTITUTIONAL AND INDUSTRIAL

EXHIBITS

EXHIBIT NO. 1

EXHIBIT NO. 2

EXHIBIT NO. 3



EXHIBIT NO. 4

EXHIBIT NO. 5

EXHIBIT NO. 6

EXHIBIT NO. 7

NOTICE.

The knowledge of the French Language is indispensable to every person having any pretension to education. It is the language of polite literature, and spoken at all the Courts in Europe. The individual possessed of it can travel throughout that continent and make himself understood. In Canada it is more especially necessary to the man of business, who is daily brought in contact with a large population whose language is French. Desirous of rendering more easy the acquirement of this language, we lay before the Canadian public an edition of Levizac's French Grammar. The high reputation of Levizac as a Grammarian, both in England and in France, where he is quoted as an authority, and the excellence of his method, give his work the preference over all others. Advantage has been taken of such improvements as have taken place in the order of arrangement so as to facilitate the learner. The French Academy has been consulted on the orthography in which many difficulties have been removed. The *sound* is now in a great measure the guide to the pronunciation, especially in words ending in *ais, ois*, as *Anglais, Danois, paraître, croître*, and the learner can adopt it as a rule of pronunciation. It has also been deemed necessary by that learned body, in order to maintain the derivation that words ending in *ant, ent*, should have their plural formed by the addition of an *s* without dropping the *t* as practiced by some writers. Great pains have been taken to prevent the beginner from falling into idiomatic errors, whenever the two languages clash in their construction. A very ample TABLE OF CONTENTS is given, which the learner cannot too well make himself acquainted with, as it is of great moment that he should not only know what the Book contains but where it is to be found.

CONTENTS.

N. B.—The Figures on the left, show the number of the Rule, or of the Subject; the figures on the right, show the number of the page.

Page	Page
1, 2. Definition of Grammar; French Alphabet.....	1
3, 4 Of Letters in general; Of Accentuation.....	2
5 Of the Sound of the Vowels.....	3
6 Table of the Seventeen Simple Sounds of the French Tongue.....	4
7 Table of Combinations of Letters representing several of the Simple Sounds	5
8 Table of Diphthongs.....	6
9 Observations on <i>M, N,</i> and various nasal sounds...	8
10 Of the letter <i>Y</i>	9
11 Of Consonants.....	9
12, 13, 14 Practical Exercises on the Pronunciation of Monosyllables and Polysyllables.....	25
15 Of GENDER.....	31
16, 17, 18. General rules to ascertain the gender of nouns substantives.....	25
19 A Table of Nouns Substantives, having two genders and two significations.....	32
20, 21. Vocabularies: 1. Of the Universe. 2. Of Man. 3. Of the Mind and its faculties. 4. Of Meats and Drinks. 5. Of the Dressing Apparel. 6. Of a House and Furniture,	36
7. Of the City. 8. Of Trades, Arts, and Professions. 9. Of the Country. 10. Of Flowers. 11. Of Fruits. 12. Of Herbs and Plants. 13. Of Trees and Shrubs. 14. Promiscuous Words. 15. Of Quadrupeds. 16. Of Birds. 17. Of Fishes. 18. Of Reptiles and Insects. 19. Of Metals. 20. Of Colours. 21. Of Precious Stones. 22. Of the Principal Countries. 23. Of common National Names.....	38
INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES.	
22, 23, 24 Of the Prepositions <i>of, from, to;</i> and of the article <i>the, a</i>	61
25 Of Elisions.....	63
26 Of Negations.....	65
27, 28 Of Words alike in both Languages, etc.....	66
OF GRAMMAR.	
Of Words considered in their nature and inflections....	67
CHAPTER I.	
29, 30, 31 Of the <i>Substantive;</i> of <i>Genders;</i> of <i>Numbers</i>	68

CONTENTS.

32	Of the Formation of the Plural of Simple Substantives	69
33	Of the Formation of the Plural of Compound Substantives	70

CHAPTER II.

34, 35, 36, 37	Of the ARTICLE, its Elision before Vowels, and Contraction with Consonants	72
38	Concord of the Article with the Noun	75
39, 40	PARTITIVE ARTICLE <i>au, de la, des, de</i>	75

CHAPTER III.

41	ADJECTIVE, its nature and concord with the Noun ..	77
42	Formation of the Feminine of French Adjectives	77
43	Of Irregular Adjectives; Singularity of <i>demi, feu, nu</i>	80
44	Remarks on <i>Tout, Quelques</i> ..	81
45	Formation of the Plural of Adjectives	83
46, 47, 48	Degrees of Comparison; irregularity of <i>bon, mauvais, petit</i>	84
49, 50, 51	Of the Superlative relative and absolute	87
52, 53, 54	Concord of the Adjective with one, or with several Nouns	88
55	Of Numbers	90

CHAPTER IV.

56	PRONOUN, its Nature and different classes	92
57 to 61	Of <i>Personal Pronouns</i> ; Pronouns of the first, second and third person	92
62	The Pronoun after the Verb, in Interrogative Phrases, and <i>do</i> not expressed ..	95
63	Reflected and Reciprocal Pronouns	96

64	Of the Person and Relative <i>en</i>	97
65	Of the Personal and Relative <i>Y</i>	98
66, 67, 68	<i>Possessive Pronouns</i> CONJUNCTIVE, <i>mon, ma, mes, etc.</i> their Concord	99
69	<i>Possessive Pronouns</i> RELATIVE <i>le mien, la mienne</i> etc.	101
70 to 74	<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i> , RELATIVE and CONJUNCTIVE, etc.	102
75	<i>CE</i> , in explanatory sentences, used instead of <i>il, ils, elle, elles</i>	104
76 to 80	<i>Relative Pronouns</i> , <i>Qui, Dont, à Qui, Que</i> , etc.	105
81, 82	<i>Où</i> , for <i>Duquel</i> <i>Auquel</i> , etc.	109
83	<i>Quoi</i> after Prepositions ..	110
84	<i>Qui, Que, Quoi, Quel</i> , used in Interrogative Sentences	ib.
85 to 89	Indefinite Pronouns, <i>ON</i>	112

CHAPTER V.

VERB.

90, etc.	VERB, its Definition, Persons, Numbers, Tenses	115
94 to 98	What are Verbs <i>Active, Passive, Neuter, Reflexive</i> and <i>Impersonal</i> ..	116
99	Of the different Conjugations and Auxiliaries ..	118
101	Conjugation of <i>Avoir</i> , and Exercise	119
102, etc.	Use of <i>du, de la, des</i> before Nouns, and of <i>de</i> before Adjectives	119
105	<i>De</i> after <i>beaucoup, combien, peu, trop</i> , etc.	122
106	Repetition of the Article and preposition before each Noun of a sentence ..	123
107	<i>DE</i> , used after negative sentences	125
108	Of the <i>-t-</i> used in questions before <i>il, etc.</i>	126

109	Of the Verb interrogative and Negative.....	128	joined to a Substantive, when implying <i>want</i>	173
110	Conjugation of <i>ETRE</i>	130	134 Conjugation of <i>Y AVOIR</i>	175
111	General Rule on the place of the Adverb.....	ib.	135 Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation <i>ALLER, ENVOYER</i>	176
112	Form of the <i>Imperative</i> in the third person.....	134	137 Conjugation of <i>S'EN ALLER</i> , to go away.....	177
113	General Observation on the Use of the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> in French.....	ib.	138, etc. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Punir</i>	179
114	Remarks on the Orthography of the Verbs of the First Conjugation.....	137	2nd Branch, <i>Sentir</i>	180
115	Model of the First Conjugation, <i>PARLER</i>	ib.	3rd Branch, <i>Ouvrir</i>	183
116	SECOND CONJUGATION, its division into five branches.....	145	141 Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.....	184
117	Models of the Second Conjugation <i>PUNIR, SENTIR, OUVRIR, TENIR, COURIR</i>	147	142 etc. Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Rendre</i>	190
118	Model of the third Conjugation, <i>RECEVOIR</i>	152	2nd Branch, <i>Plaire</i>	195
119	Fourth Conjugation divided into five branches..	156	3rd Branch, <i>Paraître</i>	196
120	Models of the Fourth Conjugation, <i>RENDRE, PLAIRE, PARAÎTRE, RÉDUIRE, JOINDRE</i>	ib.	4th Branch, <i>Réduire</i>	197
121,	2 <i>Pronominal</i> or <i>Reflected Verbs</i> , and list of those which are most commonly used.....	161	5th Branch, <i>Joindre</i>	201
122	Model of a <i>Reflective Verb</i> . <i>SE REPENTIR</i>	163	147 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the Four Regular Conjugations.....	202
124	Interrogative and Negative forms of the <i>Reflective Verb</i>	ib.	148 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the irregular Verbs.....	203
125	Conjugation of <i>Passive Verbs</i>	170		
126,	etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> , their Government and Auxiliaries.....	171	CHAPTER VI.	
129	<i>Impersonal Verbs</i> , list of the most common.....	172	149, etc. Prepositions.....	206
130,	etc. Conjugation of <i>FALLOIR</i> ; comparison between <i>MUST</i> and <i>FALLOIR</i> ; <i>Falloir</i> joined to a Verb when implying <i>duty</i> or <i>necessity</i> ; and		Denoting <i>Place</i>	ib.
			<i>Order</i>	207
			<i>Union</i>	208
			<i>Opposition</i>	ib.
			<i>Separation</i>	209
			<i>End</i>	ib.
			<i>Cause and Means</i>	210
			156 Of the Prepositions <i>A, DE, EN</i>	ib.
			CHAPTER VII.	
			157, etc. Of the Adverbs, their Nature, Formation, etc.	212
			CHAPTER VIII.	
			166, etc. Of Conjunctions....	218
			168 Conjunction <i>QUE</i> never omitted after the Verb....	221

CHAPTER IX.

Page

169 Interjections.....	222
------------------------	-----

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

SUBSTANTIVE.

170 Explanation of the terms <i>Regimen direct, Regimen indirect, or Cases</i>	223
171 Order, place of the sub- ject of the Verb, in the four forms.....	224
172 Of Government or cases.	225
173 Difference between the two Languages, as to the Government of Verbs...	ib.
174 Necessity of attending to the Government of Verbs, with regard to the Rela- tive Pronouns.....	226
175 How to render the <i>King's Palace</i> , and such like sen- tences.....	227
176 Compound Words, such as, <i>Silk Stockings, Dining Room</i> ; how to render them in French.....	ib.

CHAPTER II.

177 Of the indefinite A, AN; when rendered, when not	228
178-9 A, an, rendered by <i>le, la, par</i>	229
180, etc. Of the definite Article <i>le, la, les</i> , when to use it	230
183 Article definite omitted	232
181, etc. <i>The</i> not rendered in French in <i>Louis the XIVth, Book the Tenth</i> , and such like.....	233
182 <i>Le</i> used after <i>dans</i> , never after <i>en</i> ; several cases when it is omitted.....	234
187 Proper names do not take the definite Article. Ex- ceptions.....	235
185 Of the <i>Partitive Article</i> <i>du, de la, des</i>	236

Page

191 Phrases in which the Ar- ticle is omitted.....	237
---	-----

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVE.

192 Concord of the Adjective with the Noun.....	239
193 Adjectives of Dimensions	240
194 Adjectives used Substan- tively, require the Article Definite.....	241
196 The Superlative takes the Article.....	243
197 How to render <i>Equally well, as well as, nothing so pleasant as</i> , etc.....	244
198, etc. Place of Adjectives.	ib.
201, etc. Government of Ad- jectives; of those which require <i>de</i>	247
Of those which require <i>à</i>	248
Of those which require <i>envers</i>	ib.
208 Necessity of attending the Government of Ad- jectives, when there are joined to one Substantive	249
209 <i>ETRE</i> , with Adjectives <i>pressing gladness, regret</i> , requires the infinitive or the Subjunctive.....	249
210 Government of <i>IL EST</i> , joined to an Adjective..	ib.
211 <i>NE</i> used before the Verbs in comparisons.....	250
212 The <i>Subjunctive</i> and the <i>Genitive</i> used after an Adjective in the <i>Super- lative</i>	251
213 By rendered by <i>de</i> , in comparisons.....	ib.
215 Cardinal Numbers used in dates and other cases..	253

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

217 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; Distinction between the Object and the subject.	253
--	-----

Page	Page
218, etc. <i>Moi, toi, lui, etc.</i> , used instead of <i>je, tu, il, ils</i>	254
221 <i>Il, elle, ils, elles</i> , used in speaking of inani- mate things.....	256
222 <i>Aussi, peut-être, encore</i> , etc. require the interro- gative form.....	257
223 Of Pronouns, being Di- rect and Indirect Regi- men.....	ib.
224, etc. Place of the Per- sonal Pronouns.....	258
230, etc. Directions on the Use of the proper Per- sonal Pronouns.....	261
235, etc. Particular use of <i>Y, EN</i>	265
237 <i>Ce</i> instead of <i>il, elle, ils, elles</i> , in descrip- tions.....	266
238, etc. Cases in which <i>lui, eux, elle, elles</i> , may ap- ply to things.....	ib.
341, etc. Difficulty respect- ing the supplying Pro- noun <i>LE</i> , explained....	268
243, etc. Repetition of the Personal Pronouns.....	270
247 On the Pronoun <i>SOI</i>	274
248 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, their Concord.....	275
249 <i>EN</i> used to render <i>ITS</i> , <i>THEIR</i> , instead of <i>son, sa, ses, leur</i>	ib.
250, etc. <i>Mine, thine, his</i> , with <i>to be</i> , rendered by <i>à moi, à toi, à lui, etc.</i> ...	276
253 How to render <i>a friend of yours, a horse of mine, etc.</i>	277
251 <i>Monsieur, madame</i> , etc. used before titles of rela- tionship.....	ib.
255 Possessive Pronouns used before <i>mère, père, frère, sœur</i> , etc.....	ib.
256, etc. Repetition of the Possessive Pronoun.....	ib.
258, etc. PARTICULAR CON- STRUCTION relating to parts of the Body, such as,	
<i>J'ai mal à la tête, je me lave les mains, vous me blessez la main, etc. etc.</i> ...	278
263, etc. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. Remark about <i>c'est, ce sont</i>	281
266 <i>Ce</i> in Descriptive Sen- tences.....	282
267 How to render <i>this is, these are</i>	ib.
268 WHAT rendered by <i>ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi</i>	283
269 <i>He who, she who, they who</i> , rendered by <i>celui qui, celle qui, etc.</i>	284
271 WHICH relative, stand- ing for <i>that which</i>	285
272, etc. How to render <i>this day week this day month, etc.</i>	ib.
274 <i>CECI, CELA</i> , neuter fami- liar use of <i>cela</i>	ib.
275 <i>It</i> rendered by <i>cela</i>	286
276 RELATIVE PRONOUNS, <i>lui</i> common in speaking of Persons and Things, when restricted to Persons	ib.
278, etc. WHAT, beginning questions, rendered by <i>que</i>	ib.
280 The relative must be close to its antecedent.....	287
283 <i>Qui</i> governs the subjun- ctive mood after a negative or an interrogative phrase	289
284 <i>Que</i> accusative case, is never omitted.....	ib.
287 <i>Lequel, duquel</i> , principal- ly used to mark distinc- tion.....	290
290 <i>Quoi</i> used after preposi- tions in speaking of things indeterminate....	292
291 How to render <i>whose is, whose are?</i>	ib.
292 How to render in which case, on which <i>as, until</i>	293
293 <i>Où, d'où, par où</i> , stand- ing for <i>auquel, duquel, etc.</i>	ib.
294 ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS....	294
297, etc. Pronouns indefinite.	

CONTENTS.

ix

Page
je me
is me
etc... 278

ATIVE
mark
Sen-
... 281
is, 282
... ib.
ce
ce

... 283

pho,
elle

... 284

nd-
... 285

his
th,

... ib.

... ib.

... 286

... ib.

... 287

... 289

... ib.

... ib.

... 287

... 289

... ib.

... 290

... 292

... b.

... 293

... 294

ON, its meaning and peculiar use; the active voice substituted to the passive, with ON for subject 296
300, etc. *Quelqu'un, quiconque, chacun, autrui, l'un, l'autre*, etc., etc., 298

CAPTER V.

THE VERB.

321, etc. Concord between the Verb and its subject 308
327 Nouns of Multitude and Nouns Collective Partitive, require the Verb to be in the Singular 312
328 The Verb in the plural after *la plupart*, *infinité*. 313
329 Place of the subject with regard of the Verb 314
331 *Il, elle, ils, elles* suppressed in questions beginning with *que, si, combien, à quoi* 315
332 Subject placed after the Verb in sentences beginning with *ainsi, tel* ib.
333 The Verb in the interrogative form after *aussi, peut-être*, etc. See No. 222 316
334 Imperative of *Pouvoir, Devoir, Faire*, in imprecations ib.
338 Of a Noun governed by two Verbs 318
339 Passive Verbs require the prepositions *de, par* 319
340, etc. Neuter Verbs, their different government 320
342, etc. Neuter Verbs do not all and always require the same auxiliary; examples of those which require *être*; examples of those with which both are used ib.
349 A Verb following another must be either in the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, or the *subjunctive mood* 325

Page

350 IMPORTANT REMARK on the prepositions *de, à pour*, used before the *infinitive*, governed by another verb ib.
351, etc. Rules on the Prepositions to be used before the *infinitive* ib.
356, etc. Rules as to when the second Verb must be in the *indicative*, and when in the *subjunctive mood* 327
360 NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES 328
Of the Present Tense ib.
362 Use of the Imperfect (*JE PARLAIS*) 329
363 Use of the Definite (*JE PARLAIS*) 330
364, etc. Use of the Preterit Indefinite, (*J'AI PARLÉ*) and other tenses 331
367 Use of the Future Absolute (*JE PARLERAI*) 333
368 The Future is used after *QUAND*, in speaking of things to come ib.
369 The Future is not used after *si* meaning *if*, but after *si*, meaning *whether*. How to render *as you please, as you like*. ib.
370 Illustrative examples of the use of the tenses, *JE PARLAIS, JE PARLAI, J'AI PARLÉ* 334
371, etc. Of the Conditional, (*JE PARLERAIS*) 336
374 How to render *THOUGH* *EVEN, WERE I TO*, etc. and peculiar use of the Conditional 337
375 Of the Imperative 338
377 Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; the two Languages do not coincide with regard to this tense; illustrative Examples 339
378 List of Conjunctions, which require the *Subjunctive Mood* ib.
379 *QUE* may require the *Subjunctive Mood*, when used instead of another Con-

	Page		Page
junction	341	417 Government of PREPO-	
381 An adjective in the su-		SITIONS.....	367
perlative and <i>le premier,</i>			
<i>le seul, personne,</i> &c. re-			
quire the subjunctive,....	342		
382 The relative <i>qui, que,</i> re-			
quire the subjunctive af-			
ter a negative phrase....	ib.		
384 Nature of the Verbs which			
require the Subjunctive			
Mood.....	ib.		
385 ETRE RAVI, EIRE AISE,			
etc. have also the Sub-			
junctive Mood.....	343		
386 Remarks on the way of			
rendering <i>do, did, will,</i>			
<i>would, should, can, could,</i>			
<i>may, might</i>	344		
387 Concord between the ten-			
ses of the Indicative....	345		
388, etc: Concord between the			
tenses of the Subjunctive,			
and those of the Indica-			
tive.....	347		
393 OF THE INFINITIVE. Its			
use after prepositions,			
instead of the Participle			
Present, used in English....	353		
396 OF THE PARTICIPLE PRE-			
SENT, when declined,			
when not.....	354		
399 How to render the En-			
glish Participle present,			
used Substantively.....	355		
400 The Participle present is			
used after EN.....	356		
402 PARTICIPLE PAST. Some-			
times declined, Sometimes			
not. Example.....	357		
403 Participle Past, with			
ÊTRE, agrees with the			
subject.....	ib.		
404, etc. Participle Past,			
with AVOIR.....	358		
408 Difficulty on the Parti-			
ciple Past.....	360		
410 Participle Past with			
REFLECTIVE VERBS.....	362		
CHAPTER VI.			
PREPOSITIONS.			
411, etc. Rules on the Pre-			
positions.....	363		
		CHAPTER VII.	
		ADVERBS.	
		418 Of the different sorts	
		of Adverbs.....	368
		419, etc. Of the Negations	
		<i>ne, pas, point,</i> where	
		are the latter to be used....	370
		421 <i>De</i> must be used before	
		the nouns after a nega-	
		tive sentence.....	374
		423 <i>Je ne saurais</i> used in-	
		stead of <i>Je ne puis</i>	376
		CHAPTER VIII.	
		CONJUNCTIONS.	
		425 Great use of <i>QUE</i>	378
		426 Particular use of <i>que</i> after	
		<i>c'est</i>	379
		427, etc. Government of	
		Conjunctions.....	381
		CHAPTER IX.	
		430 Grammatical construc-	
		tion.....	387
		431 Of Inversion.....	391
		432 Of Ellipsis.....	392
		433 Of Pleonasm.....	393
		434 Of the Syllepsis.....	394
		435 Of Grammatical Discor-	
		dance.....	394
		436 Of Amphibologies.....	395
		Gallicisms, example of	
		IL S'EN FAUT.....	397
		MISCELLANY.	
		437 Free Exercises.....	400
		EXAMPLES OF PHRASES	
		ON THE PRINCIPAL	
		DIFFICULTIES OF THE	
		FRENCH LANGUAGE.	
		1. Collective Partitive... 412	
		2. Verbs which cannot	
		be conjugated with	
		AVOIR.....	ib.

CONTENTS.

xi

Page
o- 367

368

370

374

376

378

379

381

387

391

392

393

394

394

395

397

400

412

o.

	Page
3. On Words of Quantity.....	413
4. On Personal Pronouns.....	ib.
5. On <i>soi, lui, soi-même</i>	414
6. On the Relative Pronouns.....	415
7. On the Relative Pronouns.....	416
8. On <i>il y a</i>	417
9. Phrases diverses.....	418
10. Continuation.....	420
11. Idem.....	ib.
12. On the Article.....	422
13. Article omitted.....	423

	Page
14. Continuation.....	424
15. Continuation.....	ib.
16. On the Pronoun <i>le</i>	425
17. On the Participle Past.....	426
18. Relations of Tenses.....	427
19. On <i>Devoir, Pouvoir, Aller, Venir de</i>	428
20. On <i>Should, Would, Could, Will, Shall</i>	429
21. Continuation.....	ib.
22. On the Negative <i>Ne</i>	430
23. Continuation.....	431
24. Niceties of the French Language.....	433

EXPLANATION

OF THE

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m.	stands for masculine.
f.	feminine.
pl.	plural.
s. or sing.	singular.
h. m.	h mute.
h asp.	h aspirated.
pr. *	preposition.
art. *	article.
pr.-art.	article and preposition contracted.
pron.	pronoun.
inf-1	present of the infinitive.
inf-2	the past of the infinitive.
p. pr.	participle present.
p. p-4	participle past.
ind-1	present of the indicative, <i>Je parle</i> ,
ind-2	imperfect. <i>Je parlais</i> .
ind-3	preterit definite. <i>Je parlai</i> .
ind-4	preterit indefinite. <i>J'ai parlé</i> .
ind-5	preterit anterior. <i>J'eus parlé</i> .
ind-6	pluperfect. <i>J'avais parlé</i> .
ind-7	future absolute. <i>Je parlerai</i> .
ind-8	future anterior. <i>J'aurai parlé</i> .
con-1	present of the conditional. <i>Je parlerais</i> .
con-2	first conditional past. <i>J'aurais parlé</i> .
con-3	second conditional past. <i>J'aurais eu parlé</i> .
imp.	imperative. <i>Aie</i> .
subj-1	present of the subjunctive. <i>Que je parle</i> .
subj-2	imperfect. <i>Que je parlasse</i> .
subj-3	preterit. <i>Que j'aie parlé</i> .
subj-4	pluperfect. <i>Que j'eusse parlé</i> .

* In the Exercises, denotes that the word under which it is placed, is not expressed in French.

— Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the part under which this sign is placed.

* Art. in the Exercises, before a word, shows that the definite article is used.

† Prep. shows the preposition is to be used.

= Denotes that the French word differs from the English only by its termination. See 27.

In filling the Exercises, the order of the figures placed sometimes in the phrases after the French words, is to be observed.

In the exercises, when several English words are included between a parenthesis, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

1. GRAMMAR, in general, is the art of *speaking* and *writing* correctly.

To *SPEAK*—is to convey our thoughts by means of articulated sounds.

To *WRITE*—is to render those thoughts permanently visible by means of certain signs or characters, called *Letters*, and the latter disposed in proper order constitutes what is called the *ALPHABET*.

2. OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.		Italic Letters.		Old Appellation.	New Appellation.
A	a	A	a	ah—	ah
B	b	B	b	bay*	be*
C	c	C	c	say	ke
D	d	D	d	day	de
E	e	E	e	a—	a
F	f	F	f	eff	fe
G	g	G	g	jay†	ghe
H	h	H	h	ash	he
I	i	I	i	e—	e
J	j	J	j	jee†	je§
K	k	K	k	kah	ke
L	l	L	l	ell	le
M	m	M	m	emm	me
N	n	N	n	enn	ne
O	o	O	o	o—	o
P	p	P	p	pay	pe
Q	q	Q	q	ku§	ke
R	r	R	r	heir	re
S	s	S	s	ess	se
T	t	T	t	tay	te
U	u	U	u	u§	u§
V	v	V	v	vay	ve
X	x	X	x	eeks	kse
Y	y	Y	y	e grec	e grec
Z	z	Z	z	zed	ze

* Here both the old pronunciation and the new are expressed by sounds, and, in the new, the letter *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *battery*.

† When *g* is soft, it is sounded like *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*. Such is also the sound of *j*, which is always soft.

See the second note, page 4.

PRONUNCIATION,

OR SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

3. OF LETTERS IN GENERAL.

The French ALPHABET contains, it is seen, *twenty-five letters*, which are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

A *vowel* is the simple emission of the *voice* forming an articulate sound by itself.

A *consonant*, on the contrary, cannot be articulated without the assistance of a *vowel*.

The *vowels* are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*, which sometimes has the sound of *one i*, and sometimes of *two*.

The nineteen remaining letters, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*, are consonants.

4. OF ACCENTUATION.

In reading and writing, great attention must be paid to the accents; for they not only change the sound of the vowels, but also the meaning of words. Ex. *pêche*, a peach; *pêché*, a sin; *la*, the; *là*, there; *ou*, or; *où*, where.

Three accents are used on the vowels; they are the *acute* (´) placed on *e* alone, as in *bonté*.* The *grave* (`) used solely on the letter *e*, as in *procès*, *prêt*, and on the three following words, *à*, to; *là*, there; *où*, where. The *circumflex* (^) used on every one of the five vowels, which it makes long, *plâtre*, *rêve*, *épître*, *apôtre*, *vous fûtes*.†

The *cedilla* (ç) *cédille*, placed under *c*, gives it the sound of *s* before *a, o, u*, as in *façade*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The *dieresis* or *tréma* (¨) is placed over the vowels *e, i, u*, whenever they form one distinct syllable, as *haïr*, *naïf*, *Esau*, *ciguë*, *Raphaël*, which are pronounced *ha-ir*, *na-ïf*, *E-sa-ù*, *ci-gu-ë*, *Ra-pha-ël*.

* The acute accent is used on the final *e* of the part. past of the first conjugation, *aimé*, *estimé*, and of all nouns derived from those Latin words of the third declension, ending in *as*, *vérité*, *veritas*; *cité*, *civitas*; *cécité*, *cecitas*; *générosité*, *generositas*, etc. etc.

† The ^ accent takes the place of the *s* or of the double vowel which were used in old orthography, *aage*, *fluste*, now *âge*, *flûte*; it is also used in words derived from the Latin language, especially verbs, from which a syllable is cut off, *âme*, *anima*; *vous aimâtes*, *amavistis*.

N. B. Recent authors omit the (¨) in *ame*.

The *hyphen* or *tiret*, (-) is used in connecting compound words, as in *Belles-lettres*, *tout-puissant*, *arc-en-ciel*, &c.

5. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS,

AND OF THEIR COMBINATIONS.

Independently of the radical sounds of the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*, there are others which are formed by means of the accents which are placed upon them, according as the case requires, so that the number of *simple sounds* is altogether ten, *a, á, e, é, è, ê, i, o, ô, u*.

The sound of *i* and of *u* is not affected by the apposition of the circumflex accent.

There are besides *three* other *simple sounds*, each represented by the following combinations of vowels, *eu, êu, ou*.

There are also *four nasal simple sounds*,[†] which for want of more appropriate signs, are represented by the combinations of *m* or *n* with each of the vowels, *an, em, an, en—im, in—om, on—um, un*.

All vowels are long which have the *ˆ* accent upon them, as *pâte*; others may be long by position, as *rose*.

Besides the *simple*, there are also the *compound* sounds, in which two vowels are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice; these are the *diphthongs*.—See Table III.

The sound of one or more letters, pronounced with a single emission of the voice, is called a *syllable*; one or more syllables make a word.

† Seventeen simple sounds. See TABLE I.

TABLE I.

6. THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

Sounds.	Examples.	Sounded as
1. a short	ami, friend	a in amateur
2. â long	pâte, paste	a — bark
3. c	tenir, to hold	e — battery
4. é	été, summer	a — paper
5. è	modèle, model	e — met
6. ê (*)	tête, head	e — there
7. i	imiter, to imitate	i — timid
8. o short	école, school	o — scholar
9. ô long	côte, rib	o — note
10. u	vertu, virtue	(†)
11. eu short	jeune, young	u — shun
12. èu long	jeûne, fast	(†)
13. ou	soupe, soup	ou — soup
14. an	ange, angel	en — encore
15. in	lin, flax	en — length
16. on	long, long	on — long
17. un	brun brown	un — —

* Besides these four sorts of *e* there is one entirely mute at the end of many words, as in the above, *modèle, tête, école, côte*; and sometimes in the beginning and middle, as in *pendant, javeline, Roquefort, Souquenille, l'empereur, &c.*

† The sound of the French *u*, to which there is no similar, nor even approximate, sound in English, must be heard from the master; and it may be well to add, that, although we have attempted to give an idea of the French sounds by means of English ones, yet they can be correctly learnt only by hearing them from the lips of a native. The nasal sounds cannot be conveyed by any combination of English letters, but a correct notion of the way in which they are pronounced may be had by observation and comparison. In uttering *attention*, as it is pronounced in both languages, it will be seen that the lips do not move when spoken in French, whereas they do, when spoken in English. To stop the moving of the lips, is therefore the only way of arriving at the right utterance of French nasals.

* F
Thus
are so
third p

TABLE II.

7. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS REPRESENTING SEVERAL OF THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS.

The Figures refer to Table I.

1....	a....	ea.....	il gagea.....	he betted
2....	â .	{ acs, as, eât, .. ats*.....	appats	charms
4....	ê .	{ ai..... eai..... ée..... œ.....	aigu	sharp
			geai	gay
			année	year
			œsophage.....	œsophagus
			aide.....	aide
			baie	bay
5....	ô .	{ ai..... œi..... oi..... oie.....	baleine.....	whale
			je nageois ..	I did swim
			foible.....	weak
			monnaie.....	money
6....	ô .	{ ai..... oi.....	ainé	eldest
7....	î .	{ ie.....	paraître	to appear
8....	o .	{ au..... eo..... au.....	folie	folly
			aurore.....	dawn
			flageolet.....	flageolet
9....	ô .	{ au..... eau..... eo..... eu.....	auteur.....	author
			marteau.....	hammer
			geole.....	gao
10....	u .	{ eue..... ue.....	gageure.....	wager
			eve f.....	had
11....	eu .	{ œu.....	laitue.....	lettuce
12....	eû .	{ œu..... eue.....	sœur.....	sister
			nœud.....	knot
13....	ou .	{ oue..... aou..... am.....	queue.....	tail
			il joue.....	he plays
			Août.....	August
14....	an .	{ ean..... em..... en..... aim..... ain..... ein..... im..... ym..... yn.....	jambe.....	leg
			affligéant	afflicting
			membre.....	member
			entendre.....	to hear
			essaim.....	swarm
			crainte.....	fear
15....	in .	{ im..... ym..... yn.....	peinture.....	picture
			impoli.....	impolite
			symbole.....	symbol
			syntaxe.....	syntax
16....	on .	{ eon..... om.....	pigeon.....	pigeon
			ombre.....	shade
17....	un .	{ eun..... um.....	à jeun.....	fasting
			parfum.....	perfume

* Final consonants are almost generally mute or silent in French. Thus *loup, tout* are sounded like *ou*, 13, *chant, champ, chants, champs*, are sounded like *an*, 14. Observe that the termination *ent* of the third persons of verbs is sounded like *e* mute *ils parlent*, pron. *ils parle*.

TABLE III.

DIPHTHONGS.

8. Compound Sounds represented by Examples.

7*	i	ia	fiacre	hackney-coach
1 or 2	a	ia	galimatias	nonsense
7	i	iai	je défiai	I challenged
4	é	ié	amitié	friendship
		iez	vous riez	you laugh
7	i	iai	biais	bias
5	è	iè	bière	beer
		ie	ciel	heaven
7	i	ioi	je purifiois	I purified
8 or 9	o	io	violon	violin
7	i	iau	miauler	to mew
10	u	iu	reliure	binding
7	i	ieu	relieur	bookbinder
11 or 12	eu	ieu	mieux	better
7	i			
13	ou	iou	chiourme	crew of a galley
7	i	ian	viande	meat
14	an	ien	audience	audience
7	i			
15	in	ien	chrétien	christian
7	i			
16	on	ion	passion	passion
8	o	oi	bois	wood
2	a	oi	boîte	box
		oie	foie	liver
8	o	oe	moelle	marrow
6	è	oi	voisin	neighbour
		eoi	nageoire	fin
8	o			
15	in	oin	besoin	want
10	u			
1	a	ua	nuage	cloud
		uai	je remuai	I moved
10	u	ue	éternuer	to sneeze
4	é	ué	dénué	stript
		uée	nuée	cloud

* These figures refer to the number of the sounds of the preceding page.

TABLE III.

DIPHTHONGS CONTINUED.

Compound Sounds represented by Examples.

10....	u ..	} ue	menuet	minuet
5....	ê ..	} uoi	il suoit	he perspired
10....	u ..	} ui	buisson	bush
7....	i ..	} uie	parapluie ..	umbrella
10....	u ..	} uo	impétuosité..	impetuosity
8....	o ..	} ueu	lueur	glimmering
10....	u ..	} ueu	majestueux..	majestic
12....	eu ..	} uan	nuance	shade
10....	u ..	} uen	influence	influence
14....	an ..	} uin	Juin	June
10....	u ..	} uon	tuons	let us kill
15....	in ..	} oua	rouage	wheel-work
10....	u ..	} oue	dénouer	to untie
16....	on ..	} oué	déjoué	frustrated
13....	ou ..	} ouée	je jouai	I played
1....	a ..	} ouai	fouetter	to whip
13....	ou ..	} oue	je dénouois ..	I untied
5....	ê ..	} ouoi	cambouis	cart grease
13....	ou ..	} ouie	Pouie	hearing
7....	i ..	} oueu	boueur	scavenger
13....	ou ..	} oueu	nouveux	knoity
12....	eu ..	} ouan	louange	praise
13....	ou ..	} ouen	Rouen	Rouen, a city
14....	an ..	} ouin	babouin	baboon
13....	ou ..	} ouon	jouons	let us play
15....	in ..			
13....	ou ..			
16....	on ..			

9. OBSERVATIONS

UPON THE TWO FIRST TABLES (SEE ALSO LETTERS M. N.)

Am, an, do not take the nasal sound when *m* or *n* are doubled, as in *constamment, année*. *Am* is not nasal at the end of some foreign names, as *Abraham, Roboam, Rotterdam, Potsdam, Cham, &c.*; except *Adam*.

Em, and *en* are articulated as in the English words *hem* and *men*:

1. In words from Latin, as *abdomen, amen, solen, hymen, item, décemvirat, décemvirs*, and proper names *Jérusalem, Scin*; except *examen, memento, agenda, mentor*, in which *en* has the sound of *in*.

2. *E* before double *nn*, is sounded like *è* as *étrennes, ennemi, moyennant*; also in some persons and tenses of the verbs, *tenir, venir, prendre*, and their compounds, as *que je vienne, que tu soutiennes, qu'il comyrenne, &c.* in the pronouns feminine, *la mienne, la tienne, les siennes*, in many other words, as *antienne, magicienne, Vienne en Autriche, &c.* See letter N.

Also in many nouns and persons of verbs ending in *ène*, *ème*, as in *arène, èbène, je me promène, il égrène, il sème*, where, however, the *e* is somewhat more open.

Aen has the sound of the French nasal *an* in *Caen*, a town of Normandy. *Aon* is sounded *an* in *Laon*, another town of France, in *faon*, a fawn, and in *paon*, a peacock; but these letters have the sound of *on* in *taon*, an ox-fly.

N, in the monosyllable *en*, both when a preposition and when a pronoun, in *on, mon, ton, son*, pronouns, and in *bon, bien, rien*, ceases to be nasal when these words are immediately followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *en Italie, on en aura, mon ami, c'est un bon homme, on a bien essayé, je suis bien aise qu'il n'ait rien oublié*. But *en* and *on* remain nasal, when they are placed after verbs; as *donnez-en à votre sœur. A-t-on essayé? Va-t'en-au-logis*.

1. *Im, in*, are not nasal, 1. in the word *intérim*, and in proper names taken from foreign languages, as *Sélim, Ephraïm, Ibrahim*. However the nasal sound is preserved in *Benjamin, Joachim*.

2. In the beginning and middle of words when *m* or *n* is followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *inanimé, inimaginable, unanimité, &c.*

3. Whenever *m* or *n* is doubled, as *immoler*, *immersion*, *innover*, *inné*, *innocent*, though in this latter word only one *n* is sounded.

Un has the sound of *u* close, as in *une*, *unième*, *unanime*, when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as *un homme*, *un esprit*, *aucun ami*, *commun accord*.

Um is pronounced *omm*, in some words adopted from the Latin, as *centumvirs*, *album*, *quinquennium*, *ladanum*, *laudanum*, *géranium*, excep. *pensum*, *factotum*.

U after the consonant *q* and *g* is generally silent, as in *quatre*, *guerre*, &c. See those letters.

10. OF THE Y.

This letter has the sound of *i*, in all words derived from Greek; *lyre*, *physique*, and in *y* adverb. In *pays*, *paysan*, *paysage*, it is sounded like two *i*, as if these words were spelled *pai-is*, *pai-i-san*, *pai-i-sage*. *Y*, placed between two vowels, is also pronounced as two *i*, one of which alters the sound of the first vowel, and the other making a diphthong with the second thus, *payer* is pronounced as if it were spelled *paiier*, *monnoyer* or *monnayer* as if *mo-naiier*.

EXAMPLES.

Ab-ba-ye	abbey	nous é-ga-yons	we enlighten
a-bo-yer	to bark	es-su-yer	to wipe
ap-pu-yer	to support	mo-yen	means
ba-la-yer	to sweep	net-to-yer	to clean
bé-ga-yer	to stammer	je pa-yois	I was paying
cra-yon	pencil	je ra-ye-raïs	I would stripe
cro-ya-ble	credible	ro-yau-me	kingdom
é-cu-yer	esquire	vo-ya-ge	voyage
il ef fra-ye	he frightens	vo-ya-geur	traveller

11. OF CONSONANTS.

B, *b*, at the beginning of a word or of a syllable, is sounded as in English.

Bal	ball	bo-bi-no	bobbin
Ba-bel	Babel	bar-ba-ris-me	barbarism
ba-bil	prating	bi-bli-o-thè-que	library
ba-bouin	baboon	bur-les-que	burlesque

B is sounded in the middle of words, as *ab-di-quer*, *sub-venir*, *ob-vi-er*; and at the end of proper names, as *Job*, *Caleb*, *Moab*; also in the words, *radoub*, the refitting of a ship,

Baïonnette, *biscayen*, *païen*, are sometimes spelt *bayonnette*, *biscayen*, *payen*, but the *y* must be sounded as one *i*.

rumbo, point of the compass ; but it is not sounded in *plomb*, lead.

Double *bb* is not sounded, *abbé*, abbot ; *rabbia*, rabbin ; *sabbat*, sabbath ; which pronounce *a-bé*, *ra-bin*, *sa-bat*, but it is heard in *Abbatial*, *Abbeville*.

C, c, is { *Hard*, as in English, before *a, o, u, l, n, r.*
 { *Soft*, before *e, i, y*, and also before *a, o, u*, when
 it has the cedilla ç.

HARD.

Cal-cul	calculation
ca-co-pho-nio	cacophony
clé-ri-cal	clerical
Cra-co-vie	Cracow
co-que-li-cot	wild-poppy
cro-co-di-le	crocodile
cris-tal	crystal
cu-cur-bi-to	cucurbit
A-rah-né	Arachne

SOFT.

ce-ci	this
cé-ci-té	blindness
cé-la-cée	celaceous
cer-ceau	hoop
Cir-ce	Circe
ci-li-ce	hair-cloth
cy-ni-que	cynic
cy-près	cypress
le-çon	lesson

Double *cc* and *cq*, in the middle of words, are sounded as one *c* before *a, o, u, la, le, li, lo, lu, ro, re, ri* : thus *accabler*, &c. except, *pec-cable*, *pec-cant*, *pec-cadille*, *pec-cari*, *sac-cholactique*, in which the sounds of the double *c* is distinctly heard. But before *é, i*, the two *cc* are heard distinctly ; *succès*, *accident*, *vaccine*, are therefore, pronounced, *suc-cès*, *ac-ci-dent*, *vac-cine*, &c.

C is sounded as *g* hard in *second* and its derivatives, and by many in *Claude*, and *Reine Claude*, and even by some, but improperly, in *secret*.

C, at the end of words, is usually sounded harsh, as in *cognac*, *lac*, (a lake), *avec*, *hac*, *pic*, *syndic*, *roc*, *froc*, *estoc*, *duc*, *aqueduc*, *agaric*, *arc*, *zinc*, &c. and in the singular of *échec* : but it is not sounded in *croc*, *accroc*, *arc-boutant*, *banc*, *broc*, *clerc*, *marc d'argent*, *cric*, *estomac*, *flanc*, *jonc*, *lacs* (toils), *iabac*, *tronc*, *échecs*, nor in *donc*, before a consonant ; but

It is always sounded in *croc-en-jamb*, *franc étour-di*, *du blanc au noir*, and in both syllables of *mic-mac*, *tric-trac*, *ric-à-ric*, and *porc-épic*.

In words ending in *ct*, both consonants are generally sounded ; as in *tact*, *contact*, *intact*, *exact*, *inexact*, *abject*, *correct*, *direct*, *infect*, *strict*, *succinct* : *c* alone is heard in *respect* ; *c* and *t* are silent in *amict*, *instinct*, *respects* ; both letters are always heard in *suspecte*, *circonspecte*, *respecte*, *distin-ct*, as well as in the middle of other words, such as *recteur*,

vecteur, séducteur, rédacteur, humecter, injecter, dactyle, ductile, tactique, &c.

Ch has two sounds

{ one, which is most general like *sh*,
in *she, shake* ;
the other, which very rarely occurs,
is that of *k* in *chimera*.

EXAMPLES OF *sh*.

Chat
che-val
cher-cher
chi-che
ar-chi-tec-to
ar-chi-tra-ve

cat
horse
to seek
stingy
architect
architrave

ché-ru-bin
ca-té-chis-mo
chou-et-te
chu-te
chu-cho-ter
chyle, &c. &c.

cherubin
catechism
screech-owl
fall
to whisper
chyle

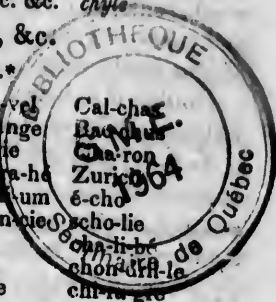
It has also sound in *Achille, Zachée, &c.*

EXAMPLES OF *ch* AS *k*.*

Achab
A-ché-lo-us
An-ti-o-chus
A-cha-ie
A-nar-char-sis
a-na-cho-rète
ar-chan-ge
ar-chan-gel
ar-ché-type
ar-chen-tes
ar-chi-é-pis-co-
pal
chal-cé-doi-no
eu-cha-ris-tie

Cham
Cha-na-an
Chi-o
Cho-rè-be
Cho-ro-ès
Chal-da-i-que
Chal-dée
cha-os
ché-li-doi-ne
cher-so-nè-se
chi-li-ar-que
chal-co-gra-
phie
ca-té-chu-mè-ne
Za-cha-rio

Ma-chi-avel
Mi-chel-ange
Ful-ché-rie
Ti-cho-Bra-hé
Dyr-ra-ché-um
chi-ro-man-
chœur
cho-ris-te
or-ches-tre
i-cho-reux
cho-rè-ge
Na-bu-cho-do-
no-sor

EXAMPLES OF *cht* AS *k*.

Yatch
U-trecht
Maes-tricht

{

are pronounced { Yak
Utrek
Mastrik

{

without sounding the *t*.

Ch has the hard sound of *g* in *drachme*, but is silent in *almanach*. On account of their Italian origin, *vermicelle* and *violoncelle* are, by some, pronounced *violonchelle* *vermichel*.

Ch has uniformly the sound of *k*, in all words where it is followed by a consonant, as *Christ, chrétien, chloris, chronique, isochrone, chronomètre, Arachné, ichneumon, technique, &c.*

* The harsh sound of *ch* is heard in words of Greek or oriental etymology, which have not yet become popular and are not entirely Frenchified.

D, d, is sounded as in English.

Dé-da-le	<i>labyrinth</i>	Dry-a-de	<i>Dryad</i>
do du	<i>plump</i>	dro-ma-dai-re	<i>dromedary</i>
din-don	<i>turkey</i>	dé-di-ca-toi-re	<i>dedicatory</i>

D is always sounded in the middle of words, as *adjectif*, *adverbe*, *admirable*.

It is likewise heard at the end of proper names, as in *David*, *Obed*, *Gad*, *Alfred*, &c. and in some other words, as *Cid*, *Sud*, *Sund*, *Talmud*, *éphod*, *lamed*. *D* final, before a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded as *t*, as *quand il viendra* ; *un grand homme* ; *vend-il* ? which are pronounced *quan-til-viendra*, &c. The *d* final of the following words is always silent in *bond*, *gond*, *fond*, *nid*, *næud*, *muid*, and *pied* ; except in *de fond en comble*, *de pied en cap*, *tenir pied-à-boule*, *avoir un pied-à-terre*, where it is sounded as *t*.

Double *d* is heard in some few words derived from the Latin, as in *ad-dition*, *ad-ducteur*, *red-dition*.

F, f, is sounded like the same letter in English.

EXAMPLE.

Far-fa-det	<i>hobgoblin</i>	fé-bri-fuge	<i>febrifuge</i>
fau-fi-ler	<i>to waste (in sewing)</i>	fruc-ti-fi-er	<i>to fructify</i>
fet-fa	<i>edict of the Mufti</i>	fi-fre	<i>fifer</i>
fan-fa-ron	<i>boaster</i>	for-fait	<i>crime</i>

Final *f* is sounded in all nouns and adjectives ending in *af*, *ef*, *if*, *of*, as *bref*, *brief*, *chef*, *fief*, *nef*, *nerf*, *grief*, *serf*, *relief*, *mêchef*, *Alzof*, *lof*, *tof*, *tuf*, *ouf*, *vouf*, *œuf*, *veuf*, *bœuf*, and *neuf* (new) ; *f* is silent in *clef*, *êteuf*, *chef-d'œuvre*, *œuf frais*, and in these plurals *nerfs*, *œufs*, *bœufs*, *neufs* (new). In *neuf* (nine) when alone, or when it terminates the sentence, *f* is distinctly sounded, but it takes the sound of *v* before a vowel, and is silent before a consonant.

Double *f* is generally sounded, as one *j* alone ; however, in some few words, as *effusion*, *affadir*, *effraction*, it seems more proper to sound both.

G, g, has { before *a, o, u*, the hard sound of *g*, in the English word *go*,
{ and before *e, i, y*, the soft sound of *s* in *pleasure*.

EXAMPLES OF *g* HARD.

Gan-grè-no	<i>gangrene</i>	gut-tu-ral	<i>guttural</i>
Gro-nin-gue	<i>Groningen</i>	gom-me	<i>gum</i>
gai	<i>cheerful</i>	gla-ce	<i>looking-glass</i>
go-gue-nard	<i>joker</i>	Gor-go-ne	<i>Gorgan</i>

EXAMPLES OF *g* SOFT.

Geai	jay	gé-né-ral	general
gé-or-gi-ques	georgics	gens	people
gen-re	gender	gin-gem-bre	ginger
gé-mir	to groan	gym-ni-que	gymnastic

G final is hard in *joug*, and in proper names, as *Agag*, *Doeg*. When *rang*, *sang*, *long*, precede a word beginning with a vowel, *g* final is sounded as *k*. It is silent in *fau-bourg*, *Luxembourg*, *bourg*, *Bourg-l'abbé*, *Bourg-la-Reine*, &c.; and likewise in *sang-sue*, *de sang froid*, *sang-de-dragon*, in *rang*, *sang*, *long*, before a consonant, and always in *doigt*, *legs*, *poing*, *vieux-oing*, *kareng*, *étang*, *seing*, and *vingt*.

Bourg-mestre is pronounced *bourgue-mestre*, and by some persons it is now, and not improperly, written in this latter manner.

Gu forms a distinct syllable in *ar-gu-er*, *aiguë*, *suraiguë*, *ciguë*, *ambiguë*, *contiguë*, *exiguë*, and *bésaiguë*. *Gui* is sounded as a diphthong, that is, the two vowels are heard in *aiguille*, *aiguillade*, *aiguillon*, and in the proper names, *d'Aiguillon*, *de Guise*, *le Guide*. But the *u*, in the inflections of more than forty verbs ending in *guer*, and in many other words, where it stands before *e* and *i*, as intended only to give to *g* the hard sound, is entirely silent, as in *anguille*, *aiguïère*, *aiguade*, *bague*, *bègue*, *figue*, *dogue*, *fougue*, *fugue*, *onguent*, *langue*, *longue*, *nargue*, *vergue*, *morgue*, *distingue*, *gué*, *gui*, *guérir*, *guinier*, *guise*, *languir*, *guinguette*, &c.

Gua takes the mixed sound of the diphthong *goua* in some few words, as *lingual*, *paraguante*, *Guadeloupe*, *Guadaluquiver*, *Guatimala*, *Guastalla*.

Double *g* is only sounded before *e* and *i*, then the first *g* retains the *hard*, and the second adopts the *soft* sound, as in *suggérer*, *suggillation*.

G before *h*, and before several consonants, in the middle of words, retains its hard sound, as in *Berghen*, *Enghien*, *église*, *énigme*, *segment*, *amygdales*. Before *l* there are two exceptions, in the words *imbroglio* and *de Broglio*, where it is sounded liquid, as in *seraglio*, and these words are generally pronounced as if written *imbroille*, *de Broille*.

Gn has two sounds: one *hard* as in the English word *ignorant*, and the other liquid, as in the last syllables of *onion*.

EXAMPLES OF THE HARD SOUND.

Cni-de	gna-pha li-um	ag-na-ti-que	rég-ni-cole
Gno-me	gnos-ti-que	cog-na-ti-que	mag-né-sie
gno-mi-de	ag-nat	ag-nus	stag-nant
gno-mi-que	ag-na-ti-on	ig-née	stag-na-ti-on
gno-mon	cog-nat	ig-ni-cole	di-ag-nos-ti-que
gno-mo-ni-que	cog-na-ti-on	ig-ni-ti-on	mag-nats

EXAMPLES OF LIQUID SOUNDS.

di-gni-té	dignity	ré-gner	to reign
i-gno-rant	ignorant	cham-pa-gne	Champ-ign
com-pa-gnie	company	Bou-lo-gne	Boulogne
si-gner	to sign		
ré-pu-gner	to feel a repug- nance		

G is silent in *signet* and *Regnard*, which are pronounced *sinet*, *Renard*.

H is sometimes aspirate, sometimes mute, as in English; thus, *l'homme*, *le héros*; but there is this difference that the breathing is much softer in French than in English.

h IS ASPIRATED IN

'Habler	to romance
'ha-che	axe
'ha-ir	to hate
'har-po	harp
'haut	high
'hé-ros*	hero
'hé-ris-sen	hedge-hog
'hideux	hideous
'hon-te	shame
'hur-ler	to howl

h IS MUTE IN

ha-bit	coat
her-be	grass
heu-re	hour
heu-reux	happy
hé-roïne*	heroine
hé-ro-ique*	heroic
hé-ro-is-me*	heroism
his-toi-re	history
hi-ver	winter
hor-reur	horror

The aspirate *h* is generally marked in dictionaries, as no general rule can be given on the subject.

H is never aspirated in the middle of a word, except when that word is the compound of another, beginning with an *h* aspirated, as in *s'acheurfer*, *déhaler*, *déhanche*, *déharnacher*, *enharnacher*, *s'enhardir*, *dehors*.

N. B.—Though there is no aspirated *h* before *onze*, *onzième*, and *oui*, it is customary to pronounce and write *le onze*, *le onzième*, and not *l'onze*, *l'onzième*; we say likewise *le oui* et *le non* without elision. *S* final in *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, *ces*, and *les*, is never sounded when placed before the words *oui*, *onze*, as *tous vos oui* et *vos non*; *sur les onze heures*, nor even before *une* in *sur les une heure*.

* Observe that *h* is aspirated in *héros*, but not in its derivatives.

For what concerns *h*, placed after *c* or *g*, see the remarks on those letters.

H, after *r* or *t*, is always silent, as *rhéteur*, *Rhône*, *rhubarbe*, *thé*, *Thomas*, *thym*.

J, *j*, has constantly the sound of *z* in *azure*, or of *s* in *pleasure*.

EXAMPLE.

jus	gravy	jou-jou	toy
ja-mais	never	ju-ju-be	jujube
jo-vi-al	jovial	jeu-nes-se	youth

K, *k* has always a hard sound, as in the English word *king*.

This letter can hardly be considered as belonging to the French alphabet, as it is found only in some few words borrowed from foreign languages, as

Kan-ga-rou	kangaroo	ki-os-que	Turkish pavilion
ker-mès	cochineal	ky-ri-elle	tedious enumeration.

L, *l* has two sounds, the

first, is precisely the same as *l* in the English words *lily*, *law*, &c.
second, resembles that of *ll* in *brilliant*, in which case *l* is called *l mouillée*, (liquid.)

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST.

La-té-ral	lateral	li-las	lilac
lé-gis-la-teur	legislator	lo-cal	local
li-bel-le	libel	lu-ni-so-lai-re	lunisolar

SECOND SOUND.

It is impossible to define exactly the peculiar liquid sound which *l* has in French, in combinations of letters such as these, *aïl*, *eïl*, *œil*, *euil*, *ouil*, *aïll*, *eïll*, *euill*, *ouill*, &c. ; it must be heard from the mouth of a native. It may not be useless, however, to make the following observation, that that liquid sound does not in the least affect that of the vowel or combination of vowels which precede or follow *il*, *ill*. Thus, in *tailleur*, the sound of *ta* and *eur* must be pure and distinct ; nearly as if the word were thus spelt, *ta-ieur* ; the liquid sound of *ill*, forming a sort of diphthong with the last syllable. In *bouillon*, *bou* must be pure and distinct, thus

bou-ion ; in *treillage*, *trè* is also pure—thus, *trè-iage*. In *bail*, *travail*, *sommeil*, the liquid sound is final, and is sounded something between *ie* and *lie*, but rapidly and as it were whispered, *ba-ie*, *tra-ra-ie*, *so-mè-ie*: when followed by a word beginning with a vowel, this final liquid sound blends itself with it thus, *travail utile*, *tra-ra-iu-tile* ; *sommeil agréable*, *so-mmé-ia-gré-able*.

EXAMPLES.

écureuil	é-cu-reu-ie	a squirrel
merveilleux	mer-vè-ieux	wonderful
gazouillage	ga-zou-iage	warbling
orgueil	or-gueu-ie	pride
orgueilleux	or-gueu-ieux	proud
œilade	eu-ia-de	glance
oreille	o-rè-ie	ear
périlleux	pé-ri-ieux	dangerous
treillage	trèi-age	lattice work
bouillon	bou-ion	broth

Il final is liquid in *babil*, *avril*, *Brésil*, *cil*, *mil*, *péril*, but the *l* is silent in *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fenil*, *fusil*, *outil*, *gril*, *nombril*, *sourcil*, *persil*. In *fil*s, a son, the *l* is silent, but it is sounded, though not liquidly, in *fil*, thread ; *fil*s, threads ; *poil*, hair.

Observe that *Milhaut*, *Pardalhac*, and *Sully*, proper names, are pronounced liquid, contrary to the established rule, and that the two latter are nearly the only known instances of an *l* or *ll* sounded liquid, without being immediately preceded by the vowel *i*.

Ill, is not liquid in *illégal*, *illuminer*, *distiller*, *instiller*, *osciller*, *scintiller*, *titiller*, *vaciller*, *fritillaire*, *imbécille*, *mille*, *tranquille*, *ville*, *Achille*, *campanille*, *codicille*, *fibrille*, *Gill*, *maxillaire*, *pupille*, *la Sibylle*, and *sille*. But it is liquid in *famille*, *fil*le, *charmille*, *souquenille*, *carillon*, *piller*, *pillage*, &c.

Double *l* is sounded in the following words, *allégorie*, *allusion*, *appellatif*, *appellation*, *belligérant*, *bellicueux*, *collation de bénéfices*, *follicule*, *malléole*, *velléité*, *collusion*, *constellation*, *constellé*, *ébullition*, *Gallican*, *Gallicisme*, *intellect*, &c. *malléable*, *médullaire*, *palliatif*, *pellicule*, *équipoller*, *hellénisme*, and in proper names, as *Apollon*, *Bellone*, *Dolabella*, *Pallas*, *Sylla*, &c.

M, *m*, corresponds in sound with the same letter in English.

EXAMPLES.

Mar-me-la-de	marmalade	mo-mie	mummy
mar-mot-te	marmot	mo-nient	moment
mé-mo-ra-ble	memorable	Mu-sul-man	Mussulman
mir-mi-don	myrmidon	mur-mu-re	murmur
mi-mi-que	mimic	mys-tè-ro	mystery

Né-r
na-ti
no-m
no-n

N
G
T

e, ils
Do

nuel,
few

En
comp
vient,

En
comp

enhar
P,

Pa-pil
pe-pin
pied-pl
prin-ci
pro-pos

Ph i
P is
baptism
gypse,
rapsod
baptèm

è-iage. In
is sounded
as it were
owed by a
and blends
neil agré-

M final is nasal and not sounded in *faim, daim, nom, renom, parfum*; it is not nasal, and is sounded in *Amsterdam, Rotterdam, Sem, Cham, item, Jérusalem, Sédim, Ibrahim*, and most proper names, except *Joachim*.

M, n, are both articulated in *amnistie, calomnie, hymne, insomnie, indemnité*, (pr. *indamnité*), *somnambule, automnal*, but are sounded as one *n* alone in *automne, damner*, and derivatives.

Double *m* is sounded as one *m*, except in words beginning with *imm*, such as *immortel, immensité*. In compound words such as *emmancher, emmener*, the preposition is heard distinctly *en-man-cher*; *Emmanuel* is pronounced *Emanuel*. In *femme, différemment, ardemment*, the *e* preceding *mm* is sounded a *fa-me*; but in *lemme*, *e* is sounded *è*. See Observations.

N, n, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Né-nu-far	Nenuphar	non-ne	nun
na-ti-o-nal	national	Ni-ni-ve	Nineveh
no-mi-nal	nominal	noc-tur-ne	nocturnal
no-na-gé-nai-re	a man of ninety	nym-phe	nymph

N nasal, see Tables I and II and observations following.

Gn have two sounds, which see at letter *g*.

The termination *ent* of the third person of verbs is sounded *e, ils parlent, ils aimeraient*, pr. *ils par-le, ils aimeraie*.

Double *n* is not sounded except in *an-nexe, an-nal, annuel, an-notation, an-nuler, in-né, in-nové, in-novation*, and a few other cases.

En final, and in all the persons of *venir, tenir*, and their compounds, is sounded like *in, ancien, mien, chien, citoyen, il vient, il tiendra*.

En is sounded nasally at the beginning of the following compound words, *enivrer, enamourer, enorgueillir, ennuyer, enhardir, enharmonique*.

P, p, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Pa-pil-lon	butterfly	pou-pée	doll
pe-pin	pippin	po-pu-lai-re	popular
pied-plat	mean fellow	pour-pro	purple
prin-ci-pe	principle	pur-pu-rin	purplish
pro-pos	discourse	py-ra-mi-de	pyramid

Ph is sounded as *f*, *philosophe, phosphore, physique*.

P is sounded distinctly in *adapter, adopter, capter, captieux, baptismal, aptitude, exception, exemption, inept, contempteur, gypse, Septembre, Sepuagésime, corruption, rupture, apsides, rapsodies, symptôme, redemption, rédempteur*; but is silent, in *baptême, baptiser, baptistère, Baptiste, exempt, exempter*,

sculpter, sculpteur, sculpture, je romps, il corrompt, sept, septième, temps, printemps, prompt, and derivatives.

Final *p* is always sounded in *Alep, cap, Gap, jalap*, and *julep*, it is also heard in *trop, beaucoup*, and *coup*, when before a vowel, but never in *champ, camp, drap, loup, sirop*, and *galop*.

In *aps, relaps*, and *rapt*, both the final consonants are pronounced, but both are silent in *ceps de vigne*.

Double *p* is sounded as one only.

Q has generally the sound of *k* in *king*.

Qu, has three sounds, { *ke*, by far the most general before any vowel.
kou, before *a* in some particular words.
ku, before *e*, or *i* in some others.

EXAMPLES OF *k*.

Quai	<i>wharf</i>	ques-tion	<i>question</i>
qua-li-té	<i>quality</i>	sé-ques-tre	<i>sequestration</i>
quel-que	<i>some</i>	queue	<i>tail</i>
qui-con-que	<i>whosoever</i>	a-queux	<i>watery</i>
qui-pro-quo	<i>blunder</i>	a-que-duc	<i>aqueduct</i>
quo-li-bet	<i>pun</i>	é-qui-vo-que	<i>ambiguity</i>
quin-qui-na	<i>Peruvian bark</i>	se-re-quin-quer	{ <i>to trick oneself</i> <i>out</i>
que-nouil-lo	<i>distaff</i>		

&c. &c. &c.

EXAMPLES OF *kou*.

A-qua-ti-que	<i>aquatic</i>	qua-ter-ne	<i>quaternion</i>
é-qua-teur	<i>equator</i>	qua-dra-gé-naire	<i>a man of forty</i>
é-qua-ti-on	<i>equation</i>	qua-dra-gé-si- }	<i>quadragesimal</i>
qua-cro	<i>quaker</i>	mal	
qua-dra-ture	<i>quadrature</i>	a-qua-ti-le	<i>aquatile</i>
	{ <i>ancient chariot</i>	a-quar-el-le	<i>water colour</i>
qua-dri-ge	{ <i>with four</i>	li-qua-tion	<i>liquation</i>
	{ <i>horses</i>	in-quar-to	<i>quarto size</i>
qua-dru-pè-de	<i>quadruped</i>	lo-qua-ci-té	<i>loquacity</i>
qua-dru-ple	<i>quadruple</i>		

EXAMPLES OF *ku*.

E-ques-tre	<i>equestrian</i>	é-qui-mul-ti-ple	<i>equi-multiple</i>
li-que-fac-tion	<i>liquefaction</i>	é-qui-ta-tion	<i>horsemanship</i>
ques-teur	<i>questor</i>	quin-tu-ple	<i>quintuple</i>
ques-tu-re	<i>questura</i>	quin-tile	<i>quintile</i>
quin-quen-nium	<i>quinquennium</i>	quin-quen-nal	<i>quinquennial</i>
équi-la-tè-re	{ <i>of equal di-</i>	quin-dé-cem virs	<i>quindecimviri</i>
	{ <i>mensions</i>	quin-qué-rème	<i>ancient galley</i>
é-qui-la-té-ral	<i>equilateral</i>		
é-qui-an-gle	<i>equiangular</i>	quin-quer-co	{ <i>a term of the</i> <i>ancient gym-</i> <i>nasium</i>
é-qui-dis-tant	<i>equi-distant</i>		

In *quinguagénaire*, a man of fifty, and *quinguagésime*, *quinguagesima*, the first syllable corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *équestre*, and the second corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *aquatique*. *Q* final is sounded in *coq*, *cing*, except when *cing* precedes a word beginning with a consonant, *cing livres*.

R, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Ra-re-té	scarcity	rhyth-me	rhythm
ras-sa-ler	to hearten	sour-dre	to spring
ra-bou-gri	stunted	cour-roux	wrath
re-brous-ser	to recoil	il coui-ra	he will run
ri-gou-reux	rigorous	cor-ro-de-ra	it will corrode
rom-pre	to break	cor-ro-bo-re-ra	it will corroborate
rou-vrir	to open again		
ru-gir	to roar	ir-ra-dia-ti-on	irradiation
ru-ral	ru-ral	ir-ro-ra-ti-on	irrigation
rus-tre	a boor	tor-ré-fac-ti-on	torrefaction

R is always sounded at the end of words after the vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, except in *Monsieur*, in which it is silent.

Er, ier, the terminations of the infinitive of verbs of the first conjugation, and of many adjectives and nouns, are pronounced *é* and *ié*. *Parler, marcher, bouger, premier, singulier, cordonnier, boulanger*.

But in the following words the termination *er*, is pronounced *air*.

EXAMPLES.

Cher	dear	ou-tre-mer	ultramarine
fer	iron	bel-vé-der	belvidere
ver	worm	Lu-ci-fer	Lucifer
mer	sea	Pa-ter	the Lord's
fier	haughty		prayer
gas-ter	stomach	fra-ter	hair-dresser
hi-cr	yesterday		village school-
hi-ver	winter	ma-gis-ter	master
a-mer	bitter	Stat-hou-der	Statholder
can-cer	cancer	Ju-pi-ter	Jupiter
en-fer	hell	Al-ger	Algiers
é-ther	ether	Gess-ner	Gessner
a-vant-hier	the day before	Ni-ger	Niger, a river
	yesterday	cuiller	a spoon

In terminations like *ers, ert, erd, art, ard, arts, ort, ord, ords, oris, r* alone is sounded *canard, morts, pervers*.

When the following adjectives and a few others precede a substantive beginning with a vowel, the *r* is sounded, that is, there is what is called a *liaison*.

<i>R</i> sounded	Le premier acte	<i>the first act</i>
	son dernier ouvrage	<i>his last work</i>
	un singulier évènement	<i>a singular event</i>
	un entier abandon	<i>an entire cession</i>
<i>R</i> not sounded	un léger obstacle	<i>a slight obstacle</i>
	il est le premier à vous promettre et le dernier à vous tenir parole.— <i>He is the first to promise, and the last to keep his word.</i>	
<i>R</i> not sounded	C'est un homme léger et inconstant, entier en tout ce qu'il veut, et singulier en tout ce qu'il fait.— <i>He is a light versatile character, positive in all he undertakes, and singular in all he does.</i>	

Final *r* in the present of the infinitive of all the verbs, of the first conjugation, may be sounded when preceding a word beginning with a vowel; in conversation, this distinction is, however, seldom observed.

Rh. See *h*.

Double *r* is not sounded, except, 1st, in *aberration*, *abhorrer*, *horreur*, *errer*, *torréfier*, and their derivatives. 2dly, in words beginning with *irr*, as *irrévocable*, *irrégulier*, *irruption*, &c.; 3rdly, in the future and conditional of the verbs *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*, and their derivatives—*j'acquerrai*, *je mourrais*, *nous courrions*, &c.

S, *s* has two { *hard*, as in the English word *sister*.
sounds, { *soft*, as in *rose* and *please*.

S has the hard or hissing sound at the beginning of words, and the soft sound, in the middle, between vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Sai-son	season	sour-noi-se	a sullen woman
sai-sie	seizure	sup-po-sez	suppose
sé-sa me	se-samum	sé-dui-sant	alluring
si-se	situate	Su-se	Susa
sou-bi-se	soubise	Sy-ra-cu-se	Syracuse
sot-ti-se	silly action	Syn thè-se	Synthesis
sous-en-ten-te	mental reservation		

In *Sbire*, *Svelte*, *Sganarelle* and *Sdili* for *De'os*, it has the soft sound; and, in familiar conversation, *aller à Sedan*, *il est le second de sa classe*, are pronounced as if these words were written *azdan*, *le zgon*. Before *ch*, *s* is mute, as in *Schall*, *Schaffhouse*, *Schelling*, *Schiste*, *Schorl*.

Sh in *shérif*, a sheriff, is sounded as in English,

Sce, *sei*, *scy*, are pronounced as *se*, *si*, *sci*, at the beginning of words, and as double *s*, in the middle, as *Scène*, *scien*, *Scythie*, &c. *efferves-cences*, *efflores-cence*, *turgescence*, *incandes-cence*, *reminis-cence*, *recipis-cence*, *mis-cible*,

res-cinder, sus-ception, sus-citer, sus-citation, vis-cère, vis-céral, trans-cendance, and a few others. But *sc* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *l*, *r*, have the hard sound of *sk*, as *scapulaire, scolie, sclérotique, scribe, esclave, scrupule, &c.*

S has the hard sound, in the middle of a word, when preceded or followed by a consonant, as in *transe, transir, Transylvanie, convulsion, valse, espace, ustensile, statistique, jasmin, dispos, aspirant, prisme, digestion, austérité, obstacle, &c. &c. &c.* However, it takes the soft sound, or that of *z*, in *Alsace, Arsace, Asdrubal, asbeste, balsamine, balsamique, bisbille, Israël, Israélite, Esdras, Thisbé, presbitère, transaction, transiger, transitoire, intransitif, transalpin, Lesbos, Isboeth, Brigsaw, Ryswick, Louisbourg, Augsbourg, Presbourg, Philipsbourg*, and some few others.

S takes the soft sound when between two vowels, as in *base, Thèse, bise, rose, ruse, &c.* Except compound words, in which it has the hard sound of the initial *s* of the radical word, as in *désuétude, entresol, monosyllable, polysyllable, parasol, tournesol, préséance, présupposer, resaisir, resaluer, vraisemblable*, and some derivatives.

Final *s* is heard in *as, allas, argus, bibus, blocus, bolus, agnus, fœtus, sinus, Phébus, les, us, virus, aloes, bis, jadis, irris, gratis, lapis, les, lis, la Lys, (a river), mais, métis, vis, tournevis, Amadis, Adonis, Paris (the shepherd), pathos, Athos, Lesbos, Minos, Délos, Paros, Brutus, Vénus, Régulus, Protésilas, Blas, Gil Blas, Las Casas, Rheims, Sens, Mars, Rubens, Cérès, Damoclès*, finally in all Latin words not in common use, and in proper names, Greek, Latin and foreign, &c. But it is always silent as the mark of the plural, *les hommes, les chats, les livres, les canifs, les chefs, &c.* in all persons of verbs, *tu parlas, tu mangeais, nous rions, &c.* in all words in common use, *repas, des bas, cas, appas, trépas, tapis, souris, propos, clos, depuis, toujours, &c.* and in *Jésus-Christ, fleur-de-lis*.

The *s* final of an adjective, pronoun and adverb, is joined to the initial vowel of the next word, and has the soft sound, *vous avez*, pron : *vou zavez*.

Though there is no *s* in *quatre*, yet, before *yeux*, it is, in conversation, pronounced as if there were one, *quatre zieux*.

Finally, double *s* is commonly sounded as one, as in *je ressassasse, assassinasse, Mississipi, etc.* There are some words, however, in which the double *s* is heard, as *assation, assonnance, dissonance, accessible, inaccessible, admissible, inad-*

missible, missive, scissile, scission, scissure, fissure, fissipède, assentiment, asservir. Thus there is a difference in pronunciation between these phrases: *C'est un homme à SENTIMENS, il aime à SERVIR ses amis, and il faut son ASSENTIMENT, cet ambitieux voudrait ASSERVIR l'univers, and again between l'alun de plume est SCISSION, and LA EICILE est une île triangulaire, &c.*

T is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Tac-ti-que	tactics	a-mi-tié	friendship
tes-ta-teur	testator	sou-tien	support
thé-â-tre	theatre	nous par-tions	we were going
to-ta-li-té	totality	ti-are	tiana
tour-te-rel-le	turtle	bas-ti-on	bastion
ti-tu-lai-re	titulary	bi-jou-tier	jeweller
ti-thy-ma-le	tithymal	Ma-thi-as	Mathias
chré-tien	christian	Pon-thieu	Ponthieu
le tien	thine	tu sou-tiens	thou supportest
pitie	pity	&c. &c. &c.	

Ti is sounded *ci* in words derived from the Greek or the Latin languages, in all words ending in *tion, attention, portion, &c.* except *question, gestion, digestion, combustion, mixture.* In all words ending in *tie, démocratie, inertie, ineptie, &c.* except *partie, modestie, dynastie, Eucharistie, hostie, partie.*

Tieux, tial, tient, are also sounded *cieux, cial, cient, ambiteux, captieux, patient, patienter.*

Tien, final is sounded *cién,* in names of nations and proper names, *Doctélien, Egyptien, Béotien.*

EXAMPLES.

Par-tial	partial	pa-tient	patient
par-tia-li-té	partiality	pa-tien-ter	to bear patiently
par-tiel	partial	Ga-la-tie	Galatia
pa-tien-ce	patience	Bé-o-tie	Beotia
im-pa-tien-ce	impatience	ac-tion	action
quo-tient	quotient	bal-bu-tier	to stammer
cap-tieux	captious	in-i-tier	to initiate
ar-gu-tie	cavil	bal-bu-tia	he stammered
cau-tion-ne-ment	bail	bal-bu-tie-ment	stammering
am-bition	ambition	in-i-tié	initiated
am-bition-ner	to wish	Vé-ni-tien	Venetian

Th is sounded as a single *t*, *théologie, théâtre, thé.* In the combinations *st*, the *s* and *t* are heard distinctly. *T* final is not heard; *gout, rat, défaut, statut, &c.* except in the following words: *apt, rapt, fat, malt, mat, pat, opiat, exeat, transeat, vivat, spall, spath, Goliath, nel, fret, tacet, Thibet, aconit, déficuit, granit, introit, prêterit, transit, subit, dot, Astaroth, azi-*

ure, fissipède,
ce in pronun-
à SENTIMENS,
NTIMENT, cet
rain between
une île trian-

mus, brut, comput, chut, bismuth, indult, lut, occiput, sinciput,
both *s* and *t* are articulated in *Le Ch. ist, l'est* (east) *Pouest,*
Brest, lest, têt, Pest, toast, and *entre le xist et le zest*; but
neither of these letters is heard in *Jésus-Christ*, which is pro-
nounced *Jésus-Cri*:

The final *t* of *sept, huit*, is heard at the end of a sentence, and before a vowel, but not before a consonant, *j'en ai huit, huit livres, sept ans.*

In words ending in *art, est, ort, ourt*, the *t* final is silent. *T* is always silent in the conjunction *et*, which is pronounced *é*. Double *t* is not heard.

friendship
support
were going
ra
tion
seller
thias
nthieu
supportest

V, v, has the same sound in French as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Val-ve	<i>valve.</i>	vi-vo-ter	<i>to live poorly</i>
val-vu-le	<i>valvule</i>	vi-ré-voi-té	<i>{ quick irregular</i>
val-de-vil-le	<i>ballad</i>		<i>lar walk.</i>
ver-ve	<i>poetic fire</i>	vi-ré-veau	<i>windlass</i>
vi-va-ce	<i>vivacious</i>	veu-ve	<i>widow</i>
vis-à-vis	<i>opposite</i>	veu-va-ge	<i>widowhood</i>
vi-vre	<i>to live.</i>		

W is generally pronounced as single *v* in *Wolfram, Warwick, Windsor, Walcourt, Wallon, Warsowie, Westphalia, Wirtemberg, Woiga, Weser, Wendover, Ryswick, &c.* except in *wist* and *wiski*, where it has the English sound; but, in *Newton*, the first syllable *new* is pronounced as *neu*, in *neutralité*.

X, x, has the four different sounds of $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ks, \text{ in } \textit{axe, expense} \\ gz, \text{ in } \textit{exhibit, exhale} \\ ss, \text{ in } \textit{bliss, mossy} \\ z, \text{ in } \textit{Xenophon} \end{array} \right.$

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST SOUND, *ks*.

axe	<i>axis</i>	Xan-tip-pe	<i>Xantippe</i>
sexe	<i>sex</i>	o-xy-gè-ne	<i>oxygen</i>
ri-xe	<i>altercation</i>	pa-ra do-xe	<i>paradox</i>
bo-xer	<i>to box</i>	flu-xi-on	<i>defluxion</i>
lu-xe	<i>luxury</i>	ex-sic-ca-tion	<i>excitation</i>
ex-cé-der	<i>to exceed</i>	ex-suc-cion	<i>exsuction</i>
ex-cel-ler	<i>to excel</i>	ex-su-da-ti-on	<i>exsudation</i>
ex-cès	<i>excess</i>	ex-su-der	<i>exude</i>
ex-cep-ter	<i>to except</i>	ex-ci-per	<i>{ to plead an ex-</i>
ex-ci-se	<i>excise</i>		<i>ception.</i>
A-lex-an-dre	<i>Alexander</i>		

EX/MPLES OF THE SECOND SOUND, gz.

Na-vi-er	<i>Xaverius</i>	ex-au-cer	} to hear favor- ably to raise to produce to disinter
Xé-no-phon	<i>Xenophon</i>	ex-haus-ser	
ex-il	<i>exile</i>	ex-hi-ber	
ex-or-de	<i>exordium</i>	ex-hu-mer	
ex-ubé-ran-ce	<i>exuberance</i>		
ex-a-men	<i>examination</i>		

In the
al is not
lowing
anseai,
nit, dé-
e, azi-

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD SOUND, *ss*.

Aix	Aix	Soixante	Sixty
Aix-la-Chapelle	Aix-la-Chapelle	Bruxelles	Brussels
Auxerre	Auxerre	Luxeuil	Luxeuil
Auxonne	Auxonne.		

EXAMPLES OF THE FOURTH SOUND, *z*.

Deuxième	second	dix écus	ten crowns
sixième	sixth	dix hommes	ten men
dixième	tenth	deux aunes	two ells
dix-huit	eighteen	beaux yeux	fine eyes
dix-neuf	nineteen	&c. &c.	

The first sound of this letter (*hs*.) is by far the most general, and is found in words beginning with *exce*, *exci* and *ers*.

The second sound (*gz*) takes place in all words beginning with *x* or *ex*, followed by a vowel, or the letter *h*, as *le Xanthe*, *Xénocrates*, *Ximènes*, *exorable*, and several others with those already mentioned in the second examples.

The third sound *ss* is only found in the above examples, and in *six* and *dix*, when unaccompanied by substantives, as in *de seize ôtez six*, *reste dix*, where *six* and *dix* are pronounced with the hissing sound of *ss* in the English word *bliss*.

The final *x* of adjectives, *doux*, *heureux*, and such like, is silent before a consonant, and has the fourth sound when before a vowel, *doux accent*, *heureux père*.

The *x* final of *six*, *dix*, is sounded like *ss* at the end of a sentence, *il en a dix*; like *z*, before a vowel, *il a dix ans*, and is silent before a consonant, *six livres*.

X final is silent, *je veux*, *perdrix*, *feux*, *flux*, &c. except *Ajax*, *Astianax*, *borax*, *storax*, *Halifax*, *Epiponax*, *Dax*, *climax*, *thorax*, *Pertinax*, *Syphax*, *index*, *perplex*, *Beatrix*, *Erix*, *Félix*, *préfix*, *phénix*, *Fox*, *Palafox*, *Coysevox*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *larynx*, *syriux*, *onyx*, *Styx* and *Pollux*.

N. B.—*X* takes the sound of *sh* only in *Don Quixote*, generally pronounced *Don Kishot*, or rather *Don Ghishot*. *Z*, *z*, is generally pronounced as *z* in *zome*, or *s* in *rose*.

EXAMPLES.

Zi-za-nie	tare	zig-zag	zig-zag
zé-nith	zenith	zin-zo-lin	reddish purple
zo-no	zone	Zuy-der-zée	Zuyder-see

In *assez*, *chez*, *nez*, and in the second person of verbs, *vous avez*, *vous parlez*, the termination *ez* is pronounced *és*.

In proper names, especially Spanish names, the same termination *ez* is sounded *èce*, *Alvarez*, *Senez*, and also in *Metz*.

ZZ in Italian words is either sounded as one *z* or according to Italian pronunciation, by those to whom it is familiar.

12. PRACTICAL EXERCISES

OF THE PRONUNCIATION OF MONOSYLLABLES.

Gran	fat	je vends	I sell
ma	my	je	I
ta	thy	me	me
sa	his, her, it	ne	not
la	the, her, it	te	thee
las	tired	ce	this, that
pas	step	se	himself, etc.
un plat	a disk	lo	the, him, it
bac	ferry-boat	de	of
sac	sack, bag	lé	breadth
arc	arch, bow	né	born
parc	park	mais	but
bal	ball	mes	my, pl.
cap	cape	tes	thy, pl.
car	for	ses	his, her, its, pl.
par	by, through	les	the, them
part	share	pré	meadow
art	art	près	near
char	chariot	prêt	ready
dard	dart	ver	worm
lard	bacon	vers	to wards
tard	late	vert	green
quand	when	il perd	he loses
rang	rank	il sert	he serves
blanc	white	peur	fear
sans	without	il meurt	he dies
dans	in	pleurs	tears
gland	acorn	leur	their, them
pan	skirt of a coat	sel	salt
cran	notch	tel	such
plant	plantation	quel	which
plan	plan	sec	dry
flanc	flank	bec	beak
grand	great	chef	chief
en	in	bref	short
il fend	he splits	neuf	new
gens	people	Est	East
lent	slow	vingt	twenty
main	hand	crin	horse-hair
il ment	he lies	lin	flax
il pend	he hangs	brin	sprig
il prend	he takes	pain	pain
ceint	girt	pin	bread
cinq	five	pine	pine
sain	wholesome	vin	wine
sein	bosom	fi	fy
saint	holy	frit	son
seing	signature	lis	fried
il rend	he returns	pris	lily
il sent	he smells, feels	prix	taken
			price

ris	laugh	pont	bridge
riz	rice	long	long
ni	neither, nor	fond	bottom
nid	nest	ils font	they do
si	if	jone	rash
il fit	he did	non	no
mis	put	gond	hinge
plis	folds	nom	name
fil	thread	plomb	lead
vil	vile	ru	naked
vif	lively	du	of the, sing. m.
sot	fool	il dut	he owed
tôt	soon	bru	daughter-in-law
elcs	shut up	brut	rough
nos	our	il but	he drank
vos	your	cru	raw
gros	big	il crut	he believed
trop	too much	je fus	I was
trot	trot	jus	juice
croc	hook	lu	read
or	gold	il lut	he read
bord	edge	plus	more
fort	strong	tu	thou
tort	wrong	vu	seen
je sors	I go out	flux	flux
sort	fate	glu	bird-lime
port	port	duc	duke
il mord	he bites	suc	juice
vol	theft	sur	upon
choc	shock	mur	wall
roc	rock	nul	no, none
bloc	block	bout	end
troc	exchange	joug	yoke
dot (pr. dote)	dowry	nous	we, us
on	one, people, they	vous	you
bon	good	clou	nail
bond	bound	cou	neck
ton	thy	coup	blow, stroke
son	his, her, its	trou	hole
ils sont	they are	mou	soft
mon	my	tout	all
don	gift	toux	cough
dont	of which, etc	pou	louse
done	therefore	cour	yard
front	forehead	il pleut	it rains
rond	round	peu	little, few
blond	light (hair)	il veut	he is willing

13. ON DISSYLLABLES.

OR WORDS OF TWO SYLLABLES.

A-bus
a-chat
ac-teur

abuse
purchase
actor

â-ge
ai-greur
â-me

age
acidity
soul

a-nneau	ring	cou-ple	couple
ar-deur	ardour	cou-reur	runner
ar-gent	money	cou-ssin	cushion
as-tre	star	cou-vent	convent
au-cun	none	crê-me	cream
a-veu	confession	cri-me	crime
a-vis	advice	crot-te	dirt
au-tre	other	croû-te	crust
bal-con	balcony	da-me	lady
ban-que	bank	dan-seur	dancer
ba-que	a bark	dé-bit	sale
ba-teau	boat	de-bout	{ standing up- right
bâ-ton	stick	de-mi	half
beau-té	beauty	dé-pôt	deposit
bè-gue	stammerer	dé-sert	wilderness
bê-te	beast	dessert	dessert
beur-ro	butter	dis-cours	speech
bi-ble	bible	dou-leur	pain
blâ-me	blame	é-cu	crown
bon-heur, pr. bo-	{ happiness	en-clin	inclined
nheur		en-fant	child
bon-té	goodness	é-poux	spouse
bos-quet	grove	es-poir	hope
bou-quet	nosegay	é-tain	powder
bour-geon	bud	ex-cès	excess
bour-ra	surly	fes-tin	feast
bra-sseur	brewer	fê-te	festival
bri-gand	robber	fi-lou	pickpocket
bru-que	abrupt	fla-con	decanter
bru-te	brute	flam-beau	flambeau
bu-flet	cupboard	flû-te	flute
bu-reau	office	fo-rêt	forest
bus-te	bust	fou-dre	thunderbolt
ca-deau	present	four-mi	ant
ca-fé	coffee	fri-pon	knave
ca-hot	jolt	fu-reur	fury
ca-non	cannon	gaie-té	cheerfulness
ca-ve	cellar	gar-çon	boy
cau-se	cause	gâ-teau	cake
cer-cle	circle	ga-zon	turf
ci-seau	chisel	gen-dre	son-in-law
cl-ment	clement	gen-re	gender
cli-mat	climate	gi-got	leg of mutton
cloi-son	partition	gla-çon	piece of ice
co-hue	mob	gôû-té	luncheon
co-mmun	common	gout-te	drop
com-pas	compasses	grâ-ce	favour
com-te	earl	gron-deur	grumbler
con-gé	holiday	gru-au	gruel
con-te	tale	guê-re	little
co-quin	rogue	guer-re	war
cor-deau	line	gueu-le	mouth (of a beast)
côté	side		

gui-de	guide	pé-cheur	sinner
hai-ne	hatred	pei-ne	trouble
hal-le	market-hall	pein-tre	painter
har-pe	harp	pè-re	father
hâ-te	haste	peu-ple	people
hau-teur	height	peu-reux	fearful
ha-sard	chance	pin-te	paint
hê-tre	beech	plu-me	feather
hom-me, pr. ho-	man	por-trait	picture
mme		pour-pre	purple
hon-neur, pr ho-	honour	prin-ce	prince
nneur		pru-neau	prune
hon-te	shame	ra-goût	ragout
hor-reur	horror	rè-gle	rule
hôte	landlord	rè-gne	reign
hu-main	human	re-ne	queen
im-pie	impious	ren-ta-	annuity
ju-ge	judge	rè-ve	dream
jour-née	day	ri-re	laughing
lai-teux	milky	rou-to	road
la-quais	footman	ru-se	trick
lar-cin	theft	sa-bré	sabre
lar-geur	breadth	sa-lut	salute
li-queur	liquor	sa-tin	satin
lo-gis	dwelling	sau-ce	sauce
longueur	length	sau-teur	tumbler
mar-bre	marble	sé-jour	residence
mar-chand	tradesman	si-gna!	signal
ma-ri	husband	si-gne	sign
mère	mother	som-bre	dark
meu-ble	furniture	sou-hait	wish
mon-de	world	sou-pe	soup
mons-tre	monster	sou-ris	smile
mou-le	mould	su-crè	sugar
mou-lin	mill	sus-pect	suspicious
ni-gaud	silly fellow	ta-che	spot
nou-veau	new	tâ-che	task
œu-vre	work	tam-bour	drum
on-guent	ointment	tom-beau	grave
or-dre	order	to-me	volume
ou-bli	oblivion	tou-pie	top
pa-rent	relation	tour-neur	turner
par-rain, pr. }	godfather	trai-neau	sledge
pa-rain		trô-ne	throne
pâ-te	dough	trou-peau	flock
pâ-té	pie	veu-ve	widow
pat-to	paw	vi-gno	vine
pê-cho	fishing	zé-le	zeal
pê-ché	sin	zé-lé	zealous
pé-cheur	fisherman		

14. WORDS OF THREE SYLLABLES.

A-bi-mc	<i>abyss</i>	char-la-tan	<i>quack</i>
a-bré-gé	<i>abridgment</i>	char-ret-te	<i>cart</i>
a-bri-cot	<i>apricot</i>	châ-ti-ment	<i>chastisement</i>
ab-so-lu	<i>absolute</i>	chau-de-mer.t	<i>warmly</i>
ab-sur-de	<i>absurd</i>	chau-diè-re	<i>copper</i>
ac-tri-ce	<i>actress</i>	chau-fla-ge	<i>fuel</i>
a-flai-re	<i>business</i>	chau-ssu-re	<i>shoes, stockings</i>
am-pou-le	<i>blister</i>	ci-viè-re	<i>hand-barrow</i>
ap-pé-tit	<i>appetite</i>	cla-vc-cin	<i>harpsichord</i>
â-pre-té	<i>asperity</i>	clo-a-que	<i>sewer</i>
a-rai-gnée	<i>spider</i>	co-li-que	<i>colic</i>
ar-moi-re	<i>cabinet</i>	co-llé-ge	<i>college</i>
ar-tis-le	<i>artist</i>	co-lli-ne	<i>hill</i>
as-si-du	<i>assiduous</i>	co-lo-nne	<i>column</i>
a-tro-ce	<i>atrocious</i>	co-lo-ris	<i>colouring</i>
au-ber-ge	<i>inn</i>	co-mé-die	<i>comedy</i>
a-voi-ne	<i>oats</i>	co-mé-dien	<i>comedian</i>
aus-tè-re	<i>austere</i>	co-mmerç-ant	<i>merchant</i>
ba-bio-le	<i>bauble</i>	com-pa-gnie	<i>company</i>
bas-ses-sc	<i>baseness</i>	com-pa-gnon	<i>companion</i>
bâ-ti-ment	<i>building</i>	con-dui-te	<i>behaviour</i>
bé-le-ment	<i>bleating</i>	con-qué-rant	<i>conqueror</i>
ber-gè-re	<i>shepherdess</i>	con-què-te	<i>conquest</i>
bé-ti-se	<i>stupidity</i>	cons-tam-ment	<i>constantly</i>
bien-fai-sant	<i>benevolent</i>	con-ti-gu	<i>contiguous</i>
bien-sé-ant	<i>becoming</i>	cor-do-nnier	<i>shoemaker</i>
bien-ve-nu	<i>welcome</i>	co-ri-ace	<i>tough</i>
blan-châ-tre	<i>whitish</i>	cor-ni-chon	<i>girkin</i>
bles-su-re	<i>wound</i>	cou chet-te	<i>couch</i>
boi-se-rie	<i>vainscot</i>	cou-ro-nne	<i>crown</i>
bor-du-re	<i>edging</i>	cou-te-las	<i>hanger</i>
bou-lan-ger	<i>baker</i>	cou-te-lier	<i>cutter</i>
bou-ta-de	<i>whim</i>	cou-tu-re	<i>seam</i>
bou-ti-que	<i>shop</i>	cra-moi-si	<i>crimson</i>
bras-se-rie	<i>brewhouse</i>	cré-du-le	<i>credulous</i>
bra-vou-re	<i>valour</i>	cri-ti-que	<i>critic</i>
brecu-va-ge	<i>drink</i>	cru-au-té	<i>cruelly</i>
bro-de-rie	<i>embroidery</i>	cui-si-ne	<i>kitchen</i>
brou-et-te	<i>wheelbarrow</i>	cul-bu-te	<i>tumble</i>
brû-lu-re	<i>burning</i>	cu-re-dent	<i>tooth-pick</i>
brus-que-ment	<i>bluntly</i>	dé-com-bres	<i>rubbish</i>
ca-de-nas	<i>padlock</i>	dé-goû-tant	<i>disgusting</i>
cam-pa-gne	<i>countryside</i>	dé-jeû-ner	<i>breakfast</i>
ca-ré-me	<i>lent</i>	de-meu-re	<i>abode</i>
car-ross-e	<i>coach</i>	dés-ho-nneur	<i>dishonour</i>
cein-tu-re	<i>girdle</i>	des-po-te	<i>despot</i>
cc-pen-dant	<i>however</i>	dis-ci-ple	<i>pupil</i>
cham-pi-gnon	<i>mushroom</i>	dis-grâ-ce	<i>disgrace</i>
cha-pe-lier	<i>hatter</i>	dro-guis-te	<i>druggist</i>
cha-pel-le	<i>chapel</i>	droi-tu-re	<i>uprightness</i>
cha-pi-tre	<i>chapter</i>	é-cha-faud	<i>scaffold</i>

é-chel-le	<i>ladder</i>	im-pu-ni	<i>unpunished</i>
é-che-veau	<i>skein</i>	in cer-die	<i>conflagration</i>
é-cu-me	<i>froth</i>	in-co-nnu	<i>unknown</i>
em-pe-reur	<i>emperor</i>	in-gé-nu	<i>ingenuous</i>
em-plâ-tre	<i>plaster</i>	i-nhu-main	<i>inhuman</i>
em-plet-te	<i>purchase</i>	in-sec-te	<i>insect</i>
en-clu-mc	<i>anvil</i>	ins-truc-tif	<i>instructive</i>
en-ga-geant	<i>engaging</i>	i-voi-re	<i>ivory</i>
en-ne-mi	<i>enemy</i>	i-vro-gne	<i>drunkard</i>
en-sei-gne	<i>sign</i>	ja-quet-te	<i>jacket</i>
é-pa-gneul	<i>spaniel</i>	jour-na-lier	<i>journeyman</i>
é-pi-ce	<i>spice</i>	lai tiè-re	<i>milk woman</i>
é-pi-cier	<i>grocer</i>	lan-gou-reux	<i>languishing</i>
é-pou-se	<i>wife</i>	len-til-le	<i>lentil</i>
es-ca-lier	<i>stair-case</i>	li-ma-çon	<i>snail</i>
es-pa-ce	<i>space</i>	ma-ga-sin	<i>warehouse</i>
es-pè-co	<i>kind</i>	mal-a-droit	<i>awkward</i>
es-quis-se	<i>sketch</i>	ma-nœu-vre	<i>labourer</i>
es-tra-gon	<i>stragon</i>	mar-mi-ton	<i>scullion</i>
é-tei-gnoir	<i>extinguisher</i>	mas-cu-lin	<i>masculine</i>
é-tour-di	<i>thoughtless</i>	mé-con-tent	<i>discontented</i>
é-vê-ché	<i>bishoprick</i>	mé-moi-re	<i>memory</i>
é-veil-lé	<i>awake</i>	mé-na-ger	<i>thrifty</i>
ex ces-sif	<i>immoderate</i>	men-son-ge	<i>falsehood</i>
ex-em-ple	<i>example</i>	mé-pri-se	<i>mistake</i>
fa-bu-leux	<i>fabulous</i>	mé-tho-de	<i>method</i>
fa-ça-de	<i>front</i>	mo-des-tie	<i>modesty</i>
fai-en-ce	<i>delft-ware</i>	mon-ta-gnard	<i>highlander</i>
fa-ri-neux	<i>mealy</i>	mou-tar-de	<i>mustard</i>
fa-rou-che	<i>fierce</i>	mur-mu-re	<i>murmur</i>
fi-las-se	<i>flax</i>	na-tu-rel	<i>natural</i>
fleu-ri-ste	<i>florist</i>	nau-fra-ge	<i>shipwreck</i>
foi-bles-se	<i>weakness</i>	né-an-moins	<i>nevertheless</i>
fo-lâ-tre	<i>playful</i>	no-bles-se	<i>nobility</i>
fou-droy-ant	<i>thundering</i>	noi-râ-tre	<i>blackish</i>
four-bis-seur	<i>sword-cutter</i>	o-bli-geant	<i>obliging</i>
four-ru-re	<i>fur</i>	om-bra-ge	<i>shade</i>
fram-boi-se	<i>raspberry</i>	o-pro-bre	<i>disgrace</i>
fri-su-re	<i>curling</i>	o-ra-geux	<i>stormy</i>
froi-ssu-re	<i>bruising</i>	or-fè-vre	<i>goldsmith</i>
gi-ro-fle	<i>cloves</i>	or-phe-lin	<i>orphan</i>
go-be-let	<i>goblet</i>	pa-moi-son	<i>fainting-fit</i>
gou-lû-ment	<i>speedily</i>	pan-tou-fle	<i>skipper</i>
gué-ri-son	<i>cure</i>	pa-pe tier	<i>stationer</i>
gui-mau-ve	<i>marsh-mallow</i>	pa-ra-sol	<i>umbrella</i>
hâ-lei-ne	<i>breath</i>	pa-ren-te	<i>kinswoman</i>
' har-di-ment	<i>boldly</i>	pa-rois-se	<i>parish</i>
' ha-ri-cot	<i>French bean</i>	pas-sa-ble	<i>tolerable</i>
hor-lo-ge	<i>clock</i>	pois-sar-de	<i>fishwoman</i>
hor-ri-ble	<i>horrid</i>	poi-tri-ne	<i>breast</i>
ho-tes-se	<i>landlady</i>	por-tiè-re	<i>coach door</i>
i gno-rant	<i>ignorant</i>	pos-tu-re	<i>posture</i>
iin-men-se	<i>immense</i>	po-ta-ge	<i>porridge</i>

pous-siè-re	dust	sou-cou-po	saucer
pré-tex-te	pretence	soup-co-nneux	suspicious
prin-ces-se	princess	spec-ta-cle	sight
pro-mes-se	promise	splen-di-de	splendid
pro-tec-teur	protector	suc-ces-seur	successor
pu-é-ril	childish	su-prê-me	supreme
pui-ssan-ce	power	symp-tô-me	symptom
que-rel-le	quarrel	tein-tu-re	dying
ra-piè-re	rapier	ten-dres-se	tenderness
ra-tiô-re	rat-trap	té-né-breux	dark
ré-col-te	crop	thé-â-tre	theatre
ré-ser-vé	reserved	thé-iè-ro	tea-pot
re-ssour-ce	resource	toi-let-te	toilet
re-trai-te	retirement	tour-ne-vis	screw-driver
rê-ve-rie	meditation	tou-te-fois	nevertheless
rou-geâ-tre	reddish	tri-che-rie	cheat
rus-ti-que	rural	tri-om-phe	triumph
scan-da-leux	scandalous	trou-pet-te	trumpet
scru-pu-leux	scrupulous	tu-mul-te	tumult
sé-an-ce	sitting	va-can-cés	holidays
ser-ru-ro	lock	ver-get-te	brush
sif-fle-ment	whistling	ver-mis-seau	small worm
sim-ple-ment	plainly	vic-toi-re	victory
so-bri-quet	nick name	vi-gou-reux	vigorous
so-len-nel	solemn	vil-la-geois	countryman
so-nnet te	little bell	voi-tu-re	carriage
so-no-re	sonorous	zé-phîr	zephyr

15. OF GENDER.

There are but two genders in French, the masculine and feminine.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, as *un homme*, a man; *un lion*, a lion.

The feminine gender denotes the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman; *une lionne*, a lioness.

The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine. Foreigners experience great difficulty in that respect, for, as the article, pronoun and adjective which refer to a noun, must agree with it *in gender*, as well as *in number*, much attention must be paid to ascertain the former. To enable them to do this, no general rules can efficiently be given, on account of the numberless exceptions which occur. We think that *ear* and *practice* are the safest and most correct guides which can be followed, and, in fact, they are the only ones which the French themselves have, who hardly ever make a mistake, if we except the uneducated; we, therefore, strongly recommend them to the English learners. Unwilling, however, to withhold from them any part of the as-

sistance they may look for in a grammar like this, we will give some general rules with their exceptions.

16. GENERAL RULES.

TO ASCERTAIN THE GENDER OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVES IN FRENCH, WITH THEIR EXCEPTIONS.

1. God, his angels, cherubim and seraphim, are of the masculine gender.

2. All *diminutives of animals*, when there is but one common denomination for both sexes, are of the masculine gender, whatever may be the gender of the root from which they are derived, as *un lionceau, un souriceau, un perdreau, un cornillas, un carpillon, un couleuvreau, un vipereau, un bécasseau*, &c. except *une bécassine*; but these two latter, although derived from the word *bécasse*, and belonging to the *genus*, are not of the same *species*. In other cases, the diminutives follow the gender their sex indicates, as *un poulain, une pouliche, un cochet, une poulette*.

3. Diminutives of inanimate objects generally follow the gender of their roots, as *batelet, maisonnette, globule*, from *bateau, maison, globe*, &c.; but *un corbillon, un soliveau, un cruchon, une savonnette, un trousseau*, from *la corbeille, la solive, la cruche, le savon*, and *la trousse*, and many others do not.

4. All the names of the days, months, and seasons of the year, are of the *masculine gender*, except *automne*, which is of both genders; when, however, the diminutive *mi* (half) is prefixed to the name of a month, the compound word then takes the feminine gender, as *la mi-mai, la mi-août, la mi-carême*; *mi* standing for *demi*, f.; *la St. Jean, la St. Michel*, and other saints' days are feminine; *fête de* being understood, as *la FÊTE DE St. Jean*.

- | | | | | |
|----------|---|--|---|----------------|
| 5. NAMES | { | of trees, except <i>yeuse</i> , a sort of oak.
of shrubs, with some exceptions,
of metals, without excepting <i>platine</i> , formerly
feminine,
of minerals, a few excepted,
of colours, without excepting
<i>l'Isabelle, le Feuille-morte</i> , &c. though they have
a feminine termination. | } | ARE MASCULINE. |
| 6. NAMES | { | of mountains, except when the words <i>Montagne, côte</i> ,
are understood; <i>les Cordillières, les Alpes</i> .
of winds, except <i>la bise, la tramontane, la brise</i> , and
<i>les moussons</i> .
of towns, except those which necessarily take the
article <i>la</i> before them, as <i>la Rochelle, la Ferté-
 sur-Aube</i> , &c. and others. | } | ARE MASCULINE. |

7. Ordinal, distributive, and proportional numbers, adjectives, and infinitives of verbs, prepositions and adverbs, all these, when used substantively, are masculine, as *le tiers, le quart, un cinquième, le quadruple, le beau, le sublime, le boire, le manger, le mieux, le pour, le contre, un parallèle*, (a comparison,) &c. except *la moitié*, and the elliptical forms of speech, *une courbe, une tangente, une perpendiculaire, une parallèle, une antique*, used for *une ligne courbe, une ligne tangente*, &c. *Antique* is feminine, for the same reason; the word *médaille*, or *statue* appearing to be understood.

8. Names of virtues are of the feminine gender, except *courage, mérite*.

17: GENDERS OF NOUNS,

TO BE KNOWN FROM THEIR TERMINATION.

9. The termination in an *e* mute, is called a feminine termination; any other is called masculine. This distinction arises probably from the circumstance that most nouns of the feminine gender end with an *e* mute, thus *la table, la rivière, la rue, la plante, la tête, la fenêtre*; but to this general rule there are innumerable exceptions, which we will notice as we speak of other terminations.

10. Names of states, empires, kingdoms and provinces are of the gender which their terminations indicate; except *le Bengale, le Mexique, le Péloponèse, le Maine, le Perche, Rouergue, le Bigorre, le Vallage, la Franche-comté*, and perhaps a few more.

11. The names of fruits, grain, plants, and flowers, follow pretty generally the gender of their terminations, but there are too many exceptions to be introduced here.

18. TABLE,

SHOWING THE GENDER OF ALL WORDS WHICH DO NOT END IN *e* MUTE.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
0	-0	{ amitié, inimitié, moi-	4
	-tié	tié, pitié	
11 { Aparté, arrêté, béné-	-té	{ absurdité, beauté, cha-	500
dicité, comté, cés,		rité, cité, dignité,	
été, pâté, traité, lé,		fidélité, générosité,	
thé, Léthé		etc. etc.	
40 { alibi, biribi, lundi, gui,	-i	{ Fourmi, merci, gagui,	4
grand merci, etc. ...		après-midi	
15 convoi, effroi, etc.	-oi	{ foi, loi, paroi	3
30 { ergo, vertigo, indigo,	-o	albugo, virago	2
etc.			

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
10	fichu, cru, écu, tissu, etc.	-u	bru, glu, tribu, vertu.
200	aloyau, anneau, etc.	-au	eau, peau, surpeau, sans-peau.
6	bref, chalef, chef, fief, grief, relief.	-ef	clef, nef, soif.
3	daim, essaim, abat-faim.	-aim	faim, male-faim.
100	an, ban, cran, écran, pan, etc.	-an	maman.
200	bain, baise-main, avant-main, garde-main, tourne-main, essuie-main, gain, frein, basin, etc.	-in	fin, main, nonnain.
4	scion, bastion, bastion, Ixiqn.	-cion -sion -tion -gion -nion -xiqn -bion -dion -lion -mion -pion -rion -vion	succion, cession, friction, gestion, region, opinion, réflexion, fluxion, etc. etc.
30	gabion, taudion, million, lion, ardélion, fourmillion, trémion, capion, turnion, camion, lampion, septentrion, brimborion, gavion, etc.	-cion -sion -tion -gion -nion -xiqn -bion -dion -lion -mion -pion -rion -vion	rébention, dent-delion, alluvion.
8	alcyon, clayon, crayon, rayon, sayon, trayon, lamproyon, Amphitryon.	-yon	.....
1	brise-raison.	-aison	cargaison, etc. etc.
11	peson, bison, grison, groison, horizon, sison, tison, oison, poison, contre-poison, buson.	-eson -ison -uson	garnison, guérison, prison, trahison, cloison, froison, moisson, pavoison, toison, camuson.
15	basson, caisson, cavesson, taison, poisson, cosson, buisson, frison, hérisson, maudisson, nourrisson, palisson, polisson, unisson, saucisson, courson.	-sson	paission, boission, moisson, cuisson, salisson, mousson.
4	arcanson, échanson, tenson, pinson.	-nson	chanson.
20	charançon, caveçon, courçon, pinçon, suçon, etc.	-çon	façon, contrefaçon, malfaçon, leçon, rançon.

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

30	bridon, guéridon, etc.	-don	dondon.	1
150	tendron, jeuno tendron, baron, etc.	-lon -ron	laideron, couillon, toillon	3
70	abattis, apprentis, iris, tourne-vis, etc.	-is	brebis, souris, chauve-souris, vis, iris	5
15	bois, mois, carquois, harnois, etc.	-ois	fois	1
12	adent, chiendent, liondent, laquedent, cure-dent, occident, trident, etc.	-dent -gent	dent, surdent, gont	3
700	acharnement, assortiment, etc.	-ment	jument	1
250	ballet, billet, bosquet, minuit, conduit, réduit, etc. billot, brutal, complot, etc. bout, goût, ragoût, etc.	-et -uit -ot -out	forêt, nuit, dot, glout	4
15	paix, choix, crucifix, prix, etc. taux, houx, courroux, époux, etc.	-ix -aux -oux	paix, croix, noix, poix, voix, perdrix, chaux, faux, toux	9
20	art, départ, champart, rempart, effort, port, sort, tort, etc.	-art -ort	hart, part, mort, malement	4
40	fer, ver, hiver, etc. air, éclair, etc. tour, contour, four, etc.	-er -air -our	cuiller, mer, chair, cour, tour	5
900	bonheur, malheur, labeur, honneur, déshonneur, cœur, anticœur, crève-cœur, chœur, chou-fleur, pleurs, équilibre, secteur, etc.	-eur	aigreur, ampleur, ardeur, blancheur, candeur, chaleur, chandeleur, clameur, couleur, douceur, douleur, épaisseur, erreur, fadeur, défauteur, ferveur, fleur	76

passe-fleur, sans-fleur, fraîcheur, frayeur, froideur, fureur, grandeur, grosseur, hauteur, horreur, humeur, laideur, langueur, largeur, lenteur, liqueur, longueur, lourdeur, leur, maigreur, moiteur, noircœur, odeur, pâleur, pesanteur, peur, primeur, profondeur, puanteur, pudeur, impudeur, rigueur, raideur, rondeur, rougeur, rousseur, rumeur, saveur, senteur, sœur, souleur, splendeur, sueur, teneur, terreur, tièdeur, torpeur, touffeur, tumeur, valeur, non-valeur, vapeur, verdeur, vigueur, and mœurs; besides basseur, ranceur, trémeur, three words now obsolete, making in the whole the number of seventy-six.

There are a great many proper names of females, which, though they may not have the feminine termination, are of that gender, as the learner, from their nature, will easily comprehend; such are, among the heathens, *Pallas, Cérès, Thetis, Venus, Junon, Didon*, etc. Among christian names, *Sara, Deborah, Elizabeth, Agnès*, etc. and many of these are contractions, as *Fanchon* for *Fanny*, *Lison*, *Louison*, *Marion*,

Manon, Nanon, Jeanneton, Madelon, Tonton, Cataut, Margot, Goton, Babet, Babeau, Isabeau.

As this list of exceptions will be found pretty accurate, all other nouns, that belong to this termination, must be strictly considered as being of the masculine gender, since they are not enumerated in this Table.

19. A TABLE OF SUBSTANTIVES,

THAT ARE MASCULINE IN ONE SIGNIFICATION AND FEMININE IN ANOTHER.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
<i>Assistant, helper</i>	<i>Aide</i>	<i>Aid, help, support</i>
<i>eagle, a great genius</i>	<i>aigle</i>	<i>a standard</i>
<i>an angel</i>	<i>ango</i>	<i>a kind of thornback</i>
<i>an alder tree</i>	<i>aune</i>	<i>an ell, a sort of measure</i>
<i>barb, a Barbary horse</i>	<i>barbo</i>	<i>beard</i>
<i>Bard, a poet</i>	<i>barde</i>	<i>{ a slice of bacon, horse- armour</i>
<i>red-breast</i>	<i>berce</i>	<i>cow-parsnip</i>
<i>a sort of privateer</i>	<i>capre</i>	<i>caper (a fruit)</i>
<i>a scroll or ornament in } painting</i>	<i>cartouche</i>	<i>cartouch, cartridge</i>
<i>a caravan, a boy</i>	<i>coche</i>	<i>a notch, a saw</i>
<i>cornet, a standard bearer</i>	<i>cornette</i>	<i>a woman's head-dress</i>
<i>a couple, a man and wife</i>	<i>couple</i>	<i>a brace, a pair, two of a sort</i>
<i>Croat, a Croatian soldier</i>	<i>cravate</i>	<i>a cravat, neckcloth</i>
<i>a crape</i>	<i>crêpe</i>	<i>a pancake</i>
<i>an echo</i>	<i>écho</i>	<i>Echo, a nymph</i>
<i>ensign, an officer</i>	<i>enseigne</i>	<i>a sign post</i>
<i>example, model, instance</i>	<i>exemple</i>	<i>a copy for writing</i>
<i>a gimlet, a piercer</i>	<i>forêt</i>	<i>a wood, a forest</i>
<i>a large vat</i>	<i>foudre</i>	<i>lightning, thunderbolt</i>
<i>keeper, warden</i>	<i>garde</i>	<i>watch, hilt, nurse</i>
<i>hoar frost</i>	<i>givre</i>	<i>a snake (in heraldry)</i>
<i>the rolls, a register</i>	<i>greffe</i>	<i>a graft</i>
<i>gules in heraldry</i>	<i>gueule</i>	<i>the mouth of beasts</i>
<i>guide, director</i>	<i>guide</i>	<i>reins in driving</i>
<i>heliotrope, sunflower</i>	<i>héliotrope</i>	<i>heliotrope, jasper</i>
<i>iris, the rainbow, iris of } the eye</i>	<i>iris</i>	<i>{ sprig-crystal, a proper name</i>
<i>lacker, a kind of varnish</i>	<i>laque</i>	<i>lacca, gum-lac</i>
<i>a book</i>	<i>livre</i>	<i>a pound</i>
<i>a hat of otter's hair</i>	<i>loutre</i>	<i>an otter</i>
<i>handle of a tool</i>	<i>manche</i>	<i>a sleeve, English channel</i>
<i>a labourer</i>	<i>manœuvre</i>	<i>the working of a ship</i>

N. B.—Of this table it is to be remarked, that the French word stands in the middle column and its signification on the right hand and on the left. When it has the meaning which stands on the left, it is masculine; when that which stands on the right it is feminine.

MASCULINE.

memoir, a bill
 thanks
 mood, mode
 a pier, or mound
 mould, cast, form
 a ship-boy
 the philosopher's stone
 office, prayers
 ombre, a game at cards
 singular is mas.
 page of a prince, etc.
 a merry andrew
 a hand's breadth
 pantomime
 Easter, Easter-day
 a comparison
 pendulum
 le Perche, in France
 summit, highest pitch
 anybody, nobody (a pro-
 noun)
 spade, at cards
 gnatsnapper, a bird
 a plane-tree
 a stove, a canopy
 port, a military station
 punto at cards
 purple colour, purples,
 (a disease)
 a pretence
 quadril at cards
 the calling back a hawk
 rest, relaxation
 a glass coach
 a sort of pear-tree
 Satyr, a sylvan god
 serpentarius
 nap, slumber
 a smile
 a porter
 holder, a book-keeper
 a tour, turn, trick
 triumph
 trumpeter
 space
 a vase, vessel
 a hat of vignon wool
 a veil

FEMININE.

mémoire
 merci
 mode
 rôle
 moule
 mousse
 œuvre
 office
 ombre
 orgue
 page
 pailasse
 palme
 pantomime
 pâque
 parallèle
 pendule
 perche
 période
 personne
 pique
 pivoine
 plane
 poêle
 poste
 ponte
 pourpre
 prétexte
 quadrille
 réclame
 relâche
 remise
 sans-peau
 satire
 serpenteaire
 sonime
 souris
 suisse
 teneur
 tour
 triomphe
 trompette
 vague
 vase
 vigogne
 voile
 memory
 pity, mercy
 fashion
 mole, moon-calf
 muscle, a shell-fish
 moss, a plant
 action, an author's work
 pantry, larder, buttery
 shade, shadow
 plural is feminine
 page in a book
 a straw bed
 { the anch of a palm-
 tree, victory
 a dumb show
 the passover
 a parallel
 a clock
 pole, perche, a fish
 period, epocha.
 a person (a noun)
 a pike
 peony, a flower
 plane, an instrument
 a frying-pan
 the post for letters
 the laying of eggs
 purple fish, purple die
 pretext
 { party of horse in a tour-
 nament
 a catch-word (in printing)
 harbour
 a coach-house, a remittance
 a sort of pear
 a satire, a lampoon
 snake-root, dragon's wort
 sum, load, name of a river
 a mouse
 Switzerland
 tenor, purport, content
 tower, rook at chess
 a trump
 trumpet
 a wave, surge
 { the slime in ponds, lakes,
 etc.
 a vigon, or llama
 a sail

20. A VOCABULARY,

FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

IN TWENTY-THREE CHAPTERS.

•• In the following Vocabulary, the Gender has been affixed only to those Nouns that are not included in the preceding Rules.

OF THE UNIVERSE IN GENERAL.

Dieu	God	pluie	rain
créateur	creator	arc-en-ciel	rainbow
Jésus-Christ	Jesus Christ	ondée	shower
Trinité	Trinity	neige	snow
Saint-Esprit	Holy Ghost	grêle	hail
ange	angel	glace	ice
archange	archangel	gelée	frost
prophète	prophet	dégel	thaw
Messie	Messiah	rosée	dew
sauveur	saviour	créature	creature
rédeempteur	redeemer	globe m.	globe
Vierge Marie	Virgin Mary	sphère	sphere
apôtre	apostle	hémisphère m.	hemisphere
évangéliste	evangelist	horizon	horizon
martyr	martyr	degré	degree
saint	saint	longitude	longitude
paradis	paradise	latitude	latitude
ciel	heaven	points cardinaux pl.	cardinal points
enfer	hell	orient, ou est	east
diable	devil	occident, ou ouest	west
nature	nature	septentrion, ou nord	north
univers	universe	midi, ou sud	south
monde m.	world	climat	climate
élément	element	région	region
terre	earth	continent	continent
eau	water	Europe	Europe
feu	fire	Asie	Asia
air	air	Afrique	Africa
firmament	sky	Amérique	America
étoile	star	empire m.	empire
planète	planet	royaume m.	kingdom
comète	comet	république	republic
constellation	constellation	pays	country
soleil	sun	colonie	colony
rayon du soleil	sun-beam	principauté	principality
lune	moon	électorat	electorate
éclipse	eclipse	province	province
orage m.	storm	comté	shire or county
tonnerre m.	thunder		
éclair	lightning		
brouillard	fog		

île	island	détroit	strait
presqu'île	} peninsula	courant	current
péninsule		marée	tide
Chersonèse	Chersonesus	flux	flwing
cap	cape	reflux	ebbing
promontoire m.	promontory	vague	wave
isthme m.	isthmus	flots pl.	billows, waves
montagne	mountain	ondes m.	waters
mont	mount	havre m.	haven
colline	hill	port	harbour
sommet	summit	lac	lake
pente, ou pen-	} declivity	rivière	river
chant		fleuve m.	great river
hauteur	eminence	embouchure	mouth of a river
vallée	valley	ruisseau	brook
vallon	dale	débordement	overflow
abîme m.	abyss	gluge m.	ice
désert	desert	inondation	inundation
plaine	plain	écluse	flood-gate, sluice
marais	marsh or fen	digue	dyke
rivo	bank (of a river)	étang	pond
rivage m.	shore	vivier	fish-pond
côte	coast	réservoir	bason
rocher*	rock	abreuvoir	horse-pond
roche*	rock	bain	bath
roc*	rock	citerne	cistern
écueil*	shoal	fontaine	fountain
banc*	sand bank	sourco	source
récif	reef of rocks	puits	well
brisants*	breakers, surf	pompe	pump
cime	top	bateau	boat
pierro	stone	barque	bark
pont	bridge	bac	ferry-boat
chaussée	causeway, road	coche d'eau m.	barge
gué	ford	gabare	lighter
quai	wharf or quay	navire m.	ship
route	road	vaisseau	vessel
sentier	path	paquebot	packet-boat
fossé	ditch	flamme	blaze
gravier	gravel	étincelle	spark
sable m.	sand	chaleur	heat
sablon	small sand	fumée	smoke
poussière	dust	incendie m.	conflagration
océan	ocean	chauffage m.	fuel
mer	sea	charbon	coals
golf m.	gulf	charbon de terre	pit coal
baie	bay	charbon de bois	charcoal
rade	road (for ships)	braise	small coal
anse	creek	tourbe	} turf
canal	channel		

* These seven words do not convey in French the same idea; the four latter relate to the sea.

bois	wood	lundi	monday
bûche	log of wood	mardi	tuesday
fagot	faggot	mercredi	wednesday
coupeaux <i>pl.</i>	chips	jeudi	thursday
cendre	ashes	vendredi	friday
suie	soot	samedi	saturday
feu	fire	dimanche	sunday
atmosphère	atmosphere	heure	hour
vent	wind	demi-heure	half an hour
zephyr	zephyr	quart-d'heure	{ quarter of an hour
vapeur	vapour		{ hour
lumière	light	aurora	aurora
ténèbres <i>pl.</i>	darkness	aube	dawn
chaleur	heat	matin	morning
froid	cold	matinée	forenoon
nue, nuée	cloud	midi	noon
nuage <i>m.</i>	cloud	l'après-midi	{ the afternoon
nielle	blight	l'après-dinée	{ evening
humidité	dampness	soir	
serein	milddew	soirée	
tourbillon	whirlwind	crêpuscule <i>m.</i>	twilight
orage <i>m.</i>	storm	nuit	night
tempête	tempest	minuit	midnight
ondée	shower	minute	minute
calme <i>m.</i>	calm	seconde	second
éternité	eternity	moment	moment
temps	time	instant	instant
siècle <i>m.</i>	age or century	saison	season
époque	epoch	printemps	spring
période <i>m.</i>	period	été	summer
date	date	automne	autumn
an, année	year	hiver	winter
mois	month	carnaval	carnaval
janvier	january	carême <i>m.</i>	lent
février	february	mi-carême	midlent
mars	march	pâque	easter
avril	april	pentecôte	whit-sunday
mai	may	la Saint Jean	midsummer
juin	june	l'avent	advent
juillet	july	noël	christmas
août	august	fête	festival
septembro	september	équinoxe <i>m.</i>	equinox
octobre	october	solstice <i>m.</i>	the solstice
novembre	november	canicule	the dog-days
décembre	december	fenaïson	hay-harvest
semaine	week	moisson	harvest
jour	day	vendange	vintage
journée	day	tonte	shearing-time
aujourd'hui	to-day	semailles <i>pl.</i>	sowing-time
demain	to-morrow	congé	holiday
hier	yesterday		

g
h
f
s
e
g
fi
vi
vi
en
je
ac
vi
vi
de
je
je
je
gé
na
pig
ma
fen
ve
ve
or
or
hé
hé
ma
ma
hôt
hôt
dom
serv
vois
jois
com
com
corp
mem
tron
tête
crân
front
visag
traits
œil
yeux
sourc
paup

II. OF MAN.

genre humain	mankind	nez	nose
homme	man	narines pl.	nostrils
femme	woman	bouche	mouth
sexo	sex	lèvres pl.	lips
enfant	child	dent	tooth
garçon	boy, youth, lad	gencives pl.	gums
filie	girl	mâchoire	jaw-bone
vierge	virgin	langue	tongue
virginité	virginity	palais	palate
enfance	infancy	joues pl.	cheeks
jeunesse	youth	fossette	dimple
adolescence	adolescence	menton	chin
virilité	manhood	barbe	beard
vieillesse	old age	tempes pl.	temples
décépitude	decrepitude	oreille	ear
jeune homme	young man	cheveux pl.	hair
jeune fille	young girl	cou	neck
vieillard	old man	gosier	throat
géant	giant	sein	bosom
nain	dwarf	poitrine	chest
pignée m.	pigmy	ventre m.	belly
mari	husband	ceinture	waist
femme	wife	côté	side
veuf	widower	hanche	hip
veuve	widow	reins pl.	loins
orphelin	orphan (boy)	genou	knee
orphelino	orphan (girl)	jarret	ham
héritier	heir	rotule	knee-pan
héritière	heiress	jambe	leg
maître	master	mollet	calf of the leg
maîtresse	mistress	piéd	foot
hôte	landlord	talon	heel
hôtesse	landlady	orteil	toe
domestique	man servant	bras	arm
servante	maid servant	coude m.	elbow
voisin m.	} neighbour	aisselle	the arm-pit
voisine f.		épaule	shoulder
compagnon m.	} companion	main	hand
compagne f.		poing	fist
corps	body	poignet	wrist
membre m.	member	doigt	finger
tronc	trunk	pouce	thumb
tête	head	ongle m.	nail
crâne m.	skull	côte	rib
front	forehead	cerveau	} brain
visage m.	face	cervelle	
traits pl.	features	squelette m.	skeleton
œil	eye	cœur	heart
yeux pl.	eyes	poumon	lungs
sourcils pl.	eye-brows	foie m.	liver
paupière	eye-lid	rate	spleen

estomac	stomach	souffle m.	breath
entrailles pl.	entrails	haleine	breath
sang	blood	respiration	respiration
humeurs pl.	humours	éternuement	sneezing
glande	gland	vue	sight
poil	hair	ouïe	hearing
chair	flesh	odorat	smell
peau	skin	goût	taste
pores m. pl.	pores	toucher	touch
nerf	nerve	sentiment	sense
artère	artery	obscurité	darkness
veine	vein	ombre	shade
os	bone	son	sound
moelle	marrow	bruit	noise
ride	wrinkle	odeur	smell
bouton	pimple	puanteur	stink
santé	health	saveur	flavor
tempérament	constitution	sensations pl.	sensations
embonpoint	plumpness	chatouillement	tickling
maigreur	leanness	plaisir	pleasure
teint	complexion	joie	joy
rougeur	redness	douleur	pain
pâleur	paleness	faim	hunger
port	carriage	soif	thirst
démarche	gait	dégoût	distaste
geste m.	gesture	maladie	disease
vivacité	liveliness	mal	complaint
enjouement	sprightliness	incommodité	illness
gaieté	gaiety	infirmité	infirmité
beauté	beauty	indisposition	illness
charmes m.	charms	mal de dents	tooth-ache
attraits pl.	attractions	mal de tête	head-ache
appas pl.	beauties	mal aux yeux	bad, sore eyes
agrément	pleasantness	migraine	megrim
laideur	deformity	vertige m.	dizziness
taille	figure, size	évanouissement	swoon
voix	voice	défaillance	fainting, sinking
parole	speech	faiblesse	swoon
silence m.	silence	démangeaison	itching
action	action	pesanteur	heaviness
mouvement	motion	engourdissement	numbness
repos	rest	insomnie	sleeplessness
grimace	grimace	coup	blow
ris, rire m.	laughter	contre-coup	counter-blow
souris, sourire	smile	égratignure	scratch
[m.]		écorchure	excoriation
humeur	temper	entorse	sprain
soupir	sigh	foulure	strain
gémissement	groan	enflure	swelling
assoupissement	drowsiness	tumeur	tumour
sommeil	sleep	mourtrissure	bruise
songe m.	dream	contusion	contusion
rêve m.	dream	blessure	wound

cicatrice	scar	chirurgien	surgeon
ulcère m.	ulcer	apothicaire m.	apothecary
gangrène	mortification	accoucheur	man-midwife
coupure	cut	sage-femme	midwife
brûlure	burn	consultation	consultation
cor	corn	ordonnance	prescription
durillon	callosity	remède m.	remedy
enrouement	hoarseness	drogues pl.	drugs
rhume m.	cold	poudres pl.	poultices
toux	cough	pillules pl.	pills
coquelucho	hooping-cough	saignée	bleeding
surdité	deafness	lancette	lancet
frénésie	frenzy	gouttes pl.	drops
folie	lunacy	bain	bath
rage	madness	régime m.	diet
goutte	gout	sirup	syrup
convulsions pl.	convulsions	agonie	agony
vapeurs pl.	vapour	mort	death
fièvre	fevers	cadavre m.	corpse
frisson	shivering	vie	life
accès	fit	guérison	recovery
délire m.	delirium	rechute	relapse
crise	crisis	symptôme m.	symptom
médecine	physic	convalescence	convalescence
médecin	physician		

III. OF THE MIND AND ITS FACULTIES.

âme	soul	pénétration	penetration
esprit	mind, talent, wit	sagacité	sagacity
génie m.	genius	disposition	disposition
raison	reason, sense	inclination	inclination
entendement	understanding	capacité	capacity
jugement	judgment	mémoire	memory
sens	sense	souvenir	remembrance
pensée	thought	oubli	forgetfulness
idée	idea	stupidité	stupidity
imagination	imagination	passions pl.	passions
fantaisie	fancy	affections pl.	affections
caprice m.	caprice	amour	love
volonté	will	amours pl.	amours
liberté	liberty	haine	hatred
bel esprit	wit	désir	desire
opinion	opinion	probabilité	probability
sentiment	sentiment	appréhension	apprehension
vérité	truth	espérance	hope
erreur	error	confiance	confidence
vraisemblance	likelihood	honte	shame
apparence	appearance	timidité	bashfulness
méprise	mistake	hardiesse	boldness
bévue	oversight	assurance	confidence
science	science	colère	anger
connaissance	knowledge	courroux	wrath

fureur	fury	émulation	emulation
rage	rage	aveur	favour
ressentiment	resentment	valeur	valour
vengeance	revenge	bravoure	stoutness
dépit	spite	courage m.	courage
déplaisir	displeasure	finesse, ruse	cunning
tristesse	sadness	adresse	skill
chagrin	grief	chasteté	chastity
peine	sorrow	innocence	innocence
désespoir	despair	libéralité	liberality
doute m.	doubt	générosité	generosity
soupçon	suspicion	reconnaissance	gratitude
envie	envy	frugalité	frugality
jalousie	jealousy	prospérité	prosperity
pitié	pity	adversité	adversity
miséricorde	mercy	mœurs pl.	manners
compassion	compassion	bonheur	happiness
terreur	terror	récompense	reward
épouvante	fright	prix	prize
indignation	indignation	présent	present
vertu	virtue	don	gift
charité	charity	prêt	loan
justice	justice	grâce	grace
tempérance	temperance	réputation	fame
sobriété	sobriety	vice m.	vice
force	fortitude	défaut	defect
modestie	modesty	imperfection	imperfection
civilité	civility	avarice	avarice
pudeur	bashfulness	avardité	greediness
politesse	politeness	orgueil	pride
honnêteté	honesty	paresse	idleness
complaisance	complaisance	fainéantise	slottfulness
douceur	sweetness	tranquillité	tranquillity
bonté	goodness	paix	peace
amitié	friendship	luxe m.	luxury, pomp
union	union	mollesse	effeminacy
concorde	concord	impureté	lewdness
crainte, peur	fear	débauche	revel
patience	patience	dissolution	dissoluteness
prudence	prudence	libertinage m.	libertinism
économique	economy	désordre m.	disorderly life
habileté	skill	dérèglement	licentiousness
industriel	industry	mépris	contempt
soin	care	raillerie	jest
diligence	diligence	moquerie	mockery
exactitude	exactness	médiancé	detracton
honneur	honour	calomnie	calumny
probité	probity	crime m.	crime
désintéresse-	disinterestedness	malice	malice
ment		méchanceté	wickedness
sagesse	wisdom	tromperie	deceit
constance	constancy	perjure m.	perjury
bienveillance	benevolence	frponnerie	knavery

fourberie
enchantement
injustice
tort
usure
achat
vente
troc
gage *m.*
dépôt
contrat
marché
bassesse
impudence
effronterie
audace
témérité
poltronnerie
opiniâtreté
obstination
cruauté
dispute
querelle
brouillerie
babil
caquet
nonchalance
lâcheté
prodigalité
gourmandise
impolitesse
incivilité
dissension
impatience
imprudence
négligence
malhonnêteté
deshonneur
exil
bannissement

roguey
witchcraft
injustice
wrong
usury
purchase
sale
barter
pledge
trust
contract
bargain
meanness
impudence
effrontery
audaciousness
temerity
cowardice
stubbornness
obstinacy
cruelty
dispute
quarrel
broil
babbling
prating
carelessness
sluggishness
prodigality
gluttony
rudeness
incivility
dissension
impatience
imprudence
negligence
rudeness
disgrace
exile
banishment

pusillanimité
irahison
perfidie
punition
châtiment
légèreté
coquetterie
badinage *m.*
larcin
vol
friponnerie
tromperie
ivrognerie
ivresse
assassinat
meurtre *m.*
mensonge *m.*
fausseté
conte *m.*
serment
malheur
folie
extravagance
coutume
usage *m.*
pratique
habitude
licence
excès
tour
bagatelles *pl.*
faute
faiblesse
inconstance
ingratitude
ambition
faible *m.*
affront
outrage *m.*
insulte

pusillanimity
treachery
perfidiousness
punishment
chastisement
levity
coquetry
sport
robbery
theft
roguey, cheating
deceit
drunkenness
ebriety
murder
manslaughter
lie
falsehood
tale
oath
misfortune
folly
madness
custom
use
practice, custom
habit
licentiousness
excess
trick
trifles
fault
weakness
inconstancy
ungratefulness
ambition
foible
affront
outrage
insult

IV. OF MEATS AND DRINKS.

nourriture
alimens *pl.*
vivres *pl.*
provision
repas
déjeuner
dîner

nourishment
food
victuals
provisions
meal
breakfast
dinner
} formerly a light
meal between
dinner and
supper

souper
festin
régal
pain
croûte
mie
farine
son
pâte
levain
morceau

supper
feast
treat
bread
crust
crumb
flour
bran
dough
leaven
bit, morsel

goûter
collation

tranche	<i>slice</i>	sucré <i>m.</i>	<i>sugar</i>
bouchée	<i>mouthful</i>	cassonade	<i>moist sugar</i>
viande	<i>meat</i>	dessert	<i>dessert</i>
bouilli	<i>fresh boiled beef</i>	fruit	<i>fruit</i>
rôt, rôti	<i>roast meat</i>	pâté	<i>pie</i>
bœuf	<i>beef</i>	gâteau	<i>cake</i>
mouton	<i>mutton</i>	tourte, tarte	<i>tart</i>
agneau	<i>lamb</i>	biscuit	<i>biscuit</i>
veau	<i>veal</i>	macaron	<i>macaroon</i>
porc	<i>pork</i>	crêpes	<i>pancakes</i>
venaison	<i>venison</i>	confitures <i>pl.</i>	<i>sweetmeats</i>
volaille	<i>fowls</i>	gelée	<i>jelly</i>
gibier	<i>game</i>	marmelade	<i>marmalade</i>
gigot	<i>a leg of mutton</i>	conservo	<i>preserves</i>
andouille	<i>chitterlings</i>	tablettes <i>pl.</i>	<i>lozenges, cakes</i>
saucisse	<i>sausage</i>	dragées <i>pl.</i>	<i>sugar-plums</i>
jambon	<i>ham</i>	pralines <i>pl.</i>	<i>burnt almonds</i>
lard	<i>bacon</i>	fromage <i>m.</i>	<i>cheese</i>
moutarde	<i>mustard</i>	beurre <i>m.</i>	<i>butter</i>
soupe	<i>soup</i>	lait	<i>milk</i>
potage <i>m.</i>	<i>potage</i>	crème	<i>cream</i>
bouillon	<i>broth</i>	œuf	<i>egg</i>
consommé	<i>gravity soup</i>	coque	<i>shell</i>
ragoût	<i>ragout</i>	blanc	<i>white</i>
fricassée	<i>fricassée</i>	jaune <i>m.</i>	<i>yolk</i>
jus	<i>gravity</i>	boisson	<i>drink</i>
sauce	<i>sauce</i>	liqueur	<i>liquor</i>
poisson	<i>fish</i>	thé	<i>tea</i>
salade	<i>sallad</i>	café	<i>coffee</i>
sel	<i>salt</i>	chocolat	<i>chocolate</i>
huile	<i>oil</i>	limonado	<i>lemonade</i>
vinaigre <i>m.</i>	<i>vinegar</i>	ponche <i>m.</i>	<i>punch</i>
verjus	<i>verjuice</i>	vin	<i>wine</i>
anchois	<i>anchovies</i>	bière	<i>beer</i>
épices <i>pl.</i>	<i>spices</i>	cau-de-vie	<i>brandy</i>
poivre <i>m.</i>	<i>pepper</i>	nectar	<i>nectar</i>
gingembre <i>m.</i>	<i>ginger</i>	ambrosia	<i>ambrosia</i>
muscade	<i>nutmeg</i>	cidre <i>m.</i>	<i>cider</i>
mâcis	<i>mace</i>	poiré	<i>perry</i>
girofle <i>m.</i>	} <i>cloves</i>	hydromel	<i>mead</i>
(clous de)		sirop	<i>syrup</i>
canelle	<i>cinnamon</i>	lie	<i>dregs</i>
oublies <i>pl.</i>	<i>wafers</i>		

V. OF THE DRESSING APPAREL, ETC.

habillement	<i>dress</i>	gilet de peau	<i>under waistcoat</i>
hardes	<i>clothes</i>	manches <i>pl.</i>	<i>sleeves</i>
habit	<i>coat</i>	poches <i>pl.</i>	<i>pockets</i>
habit complet	<i>a suit</i>	bouton	<i>button</i>
veste	} <i>jacket, round</i>	doublure	<i>lining</i>
gilet		couture	<i>seam</i>
gilet de laine	<i>waistcoat</i>	eulette	<i>breeches</i>
	<i>fannel waistcoat</i>	pantalon	<i>pantaloon</i>

gousset	job
drap	cloth
soie	silk
velours	velvet
serge	serge
basin	dimity
flanelle	flannel
étouffe	stuff
manteau	cloak
surtout	surtout
redingote	great coat
linge m.	linen
toile	linen
batiste	cambric
mousseline	muslin
linon	lawn
chemise	shirt
jabot	frill
cravate	cravat
bas pl.	stockings
jarrettières pl.	garters
laine	wool
fil	thread
coton	cotton
maille	stitch
trou	hole
chaussons pl.	socks
guêtres pl.	gaiters
souliers	shoes
escarpins pl.	pumps
semelle	sole
bottes pl.	boots
boucles pl.	buckles
cuir	leather
chapeau	hat
perruque	wig
jupon	petticoat
satin	under-petticoat
taffetas	satin
gaze	taffety
coiffure	gauze
	head-dress

coiffe	cap
collier	necklace
boucles	ear-rings
d'oreilles pl. }	gloves
gants pl.	mitten
mitaines pl.	apron
tablier	slippers
mules pl.	ring
pantoufles pl. }	jewel
bague	bracelet
bijou	lace
bracelet	blond lace
dentelle	fan
blonde	muff
éventail	clasp
manchon	pin
agrafe	needle
épingle	case
aiguille	thimble
étui	mask
dé	veil
masque m.	snuff-box
voile m.	snuff
tabatière	tobacco
tabac(en poudre)	purse
tabac (à fumer)	money
bourse	pocket-book
argent	scissors
porte-feuille m.	pencil
ciseaux pl.	handkerchief
crayon	spectacles
mouchoir	opera-glass
lunettes pl.	spectacles
lorgnette	nosegay
conserves pl.	cane
bouquet	string
canne	sword
cordon	watch
épée	box or case
montre	chain
boîte	
chaîne	

VI. OF A HOUSE AND FURNITURE.

maison	house
hôtel	mansion
—	hotel, lodging
	house
hôtellerie	inn
château	castle, country seat
palais	palace
couronne	crown

trône m.	throne
sceptre m.	sceptre
aile	wing
pavillon	pavilion
fondements pl.	foundation
mur, muraille	wall
bâtiment	building
mâtériaux pl.	materials
pierre	stone

brique	<i>brick</i>	marteau	<i>knocker</i>
mortier	<i>mortar</i>	serrure	<i>lock</i>
chaux	<i>lime</i>	clé, or clef	<i>key</i>
plâtre <i>m.</i>	<i>plaster</i>	verrou	<i>bolt</i>
ciment	<i>cement</i>	fenêtre	<i>window</i>
tuile	<i>tile</i>	vitre	<i>glass</i>
ardoise	<i>slate</i>	volet	<i>shutter</i>
charpente	<i>timber work</i>	balcon	<i>balcony</i>
poutre	<i>beam</i>	store <i>m.</i>	<i>blind</i>
solive	<i>joist</i>	grenier	<i>garret</i>
échelle	<i>ladder</i>	toit	<i>roof</i>
cave	<i>vaull</i>	gouttière	<i>gutter</i>
cellier	<i>cellar</i>	malle	<i>trunk</i>
tonneau	<i>cask</i>	boîte	<i>box</i>
futaille	<i>vessel</i>	caisse	<i>chest</i>
boutique	<i>shop</i>	cassette	<i>casket</i>
atelier	<i>work-shop</i>	coffre <i>m.</i>	<i>coffer</i>
magasin	<i>warehouse</i>	logement	<i>lodging</i>
vestibule <i>m.</i>	<i>hall</i>	ameublement	<i>furniture</i>
salle	<i>parlour or sitting</i>	cheminée	<i>chimney</i>
salon		âtre <i>m.</i> foyer	<i>heart</i>
escalier	<i>stairs</i>	soufflet	<i>pair of bellows</i>
office	<i>pantry, butler's</i>	pelle	<i>shovel</i>
	<i>room</i>	pincettes <i>pl.</i>	<i>tongs</i>
cuisine	<i>kitchen</i>	fourgon	<i>poker</i>
garde-manger <i>m.</i>	<i>larder</i>	garde-feu <i>m.</i>	<i>fender</i>
boulangerie	<i>bakehouse</i>	bouilloire	<i>boiler</i>
brasserie	<i>brewhouse</i>	couvercle <i>m.</i>	<i>lid</i>
lingerie	<i>laundry</i>	poêle	<i>fry g-pan</i>
écurie	<i>stable</i>	poêle on	<i>skillett</i>
remise	<i>coach-house</i>	casserole	<i>saucepan</i>
puits	<i>well</i>	fourneau	<i>stove</i>
étage <i>m.</i>	<i>story</i>	allumette	<i>match</i>
appartement	<i>apartment</i>	pierre à fusil	<i>flint</i>
chambre	<i>room</i>	briquet	<i>steel</i>
antichambre	<i>anti-chamber</i>	four	<i>oven</i>
salle à manger	<i>dining room</i>	clou	<i>nail</i>
salon de compagnie	<i>drawing-room</i>	essuie-main	<i>towel</i>
cabinet de toilette	<i>dressing-room</i>	bassinoire	<i>warming-pan</i>
chambre à coucher	<i>bed-room</i>	panier, corbeille	<i>basket</i>
galerie	<i>gallery</i>	faïence	<i>self ware</i>
cabinet	<i>closet</i>	poterie	<i>earthenware</i>
boudoir	<i>lady's sitting</i>	pot	<i>pot</i>
	<i>room</i>	cruche	<i>pitcher</i>
garderobe	<i>wardrobe</i>	lampe	<i>lamp</i>
porte	<i>door</i>	lanterne	<i>lantern</i>
porte-cochère	<i>gate</i>	savon	<i>soap</i>
seuil	<i>threshold</i>	amidon	<i>starch</i>
jalousie	<i>lattice</i>	balai	<i>broom</i>
gond	<i>hinge</i>	banc	<i>seat, form</i>
		escabeau	<i>stool</i>
		plancher	<i>floor</i>

parquet	{ (drawing-room)	cire	wax
plafond	floor	mouchettes pl.	snuffers
lambris	ceiling	porte-mou-	{ snuffer-stand
cloison	wainscot	chette m.	
tapisserie	partition	éteignoir	extinguisher
	{ hangings, tapes-	vergettes pl.	brush
tapis	try	buffet	cupboard
lit	carpet, cloth	cabaret	stand
alcove	bed	tasse	cup
châlit	alcove	soucoupe	saucer
chevet	bedstead	théière	tea-pot
oreiller	bolster	cafetière	coffee-pot
paillasse	pillow	chocolatière	chocolate-pot
matelas	straw mattras	sucrier	sugar-bason
draps pl.	matrass	jatte	bowl
couvertures pl.	sheets	table	table
courte-pointe	bed-clothes	nappe	cloth
rideau	counterpane	serviette	napkin
tringle	curtain	assiette	plate
anneau	curtain-rod	plat	dish
sofa	ring	couteau	knife
fauteuil	sofa	cuiller, ou cuil-	{ spoon
siège m.	arm-chair	lière	
chaise	seat	salière	salt-cellar
coussin	chair	huilier	oil cruet
armoire	cushion	moutardier	mustard pot
commode	press	aiguière	ewer
trumeau	chest of drawers	coupe, tasse	cup
toilette	pier-glass	gobelet	goblet
miroir	toilet	verre m.	glass
peigne m.	looking-glass	bouteille	bottle
pomade	comb	bouchon	cork
poudre	pomatum	tire-bouchon m.	corkscrew
houppes	powder	carafe	flagon, decanter
parfum	puff	bibliothèque	library
tableau	perfume	bureau	bureau
dessin	picture	tiroir	drawer
coloris	drawing	cachet	seal
portrait	colouring	lettre	letter
paysage m.	portrait	enveloppe	cover
miniature	landscape	adresse	direction
chandelier	miniature	signature	signature
bobèche	candlestick	sonnette	bell
chandelle	socket	estampe	print
bougie	candle	médaille	medal
	wax-light		

VII. OF THE CITY.

ville	town, city	passage m.	passage
village m.	village	place	square
bourg	borough	cul-de-sac	blind alley
rue	street	pyramide	pyramid
carrefour	cross-way	obélisque m.	obelisk

pavé	pavement	auberge	inn
ruisseau	kennel	café	coffee-house
marché	market	enseigne	sign
denrées pl.	provisions	affiche	bill
boucherie	meat market	pont	bridge
poissonnerie	fish market	arche	arch
triperie	rag fair	pilier	pillar
édifice m.	edifice	bateau	boat
façade	front	quai	quay
frontispice	frontispiece	bourse	exchange
colonne	column	banque	bank
pilastre m.	pilaster	agiotage m.	stock-jobbing
base	base	douane	custom-house
piédestal	pedestal	poste	general post
statue	statue	petite poste	twopenny post
arcade	arcade	trésorerie	treasury
portique m.	portico	amirauté	admiralty
aqueduc	aqueduct	arsenal	arsenal
dôme m.	dome	faubourg	suburbs
paroisse	parish	boulevards pl.	bulwarks
salle de comédie	play-house	ramparts pl.	ramparts
théâtre m.	theatre	barrière	turnpike
coulisses pl.	scenes	guinguette	tea-garden
décorations	decorations	forge	forge
toile	curtain	verrerie	glass-house
foyer	green-room	fonderie	foundry
orchestre m.	orchestra	carosse m.	coach
parterre m.	pit	impériale	roof
loge	box	portière	door of a coach
amphithéâtre	first gallery	glaces pl.	windows
paradis	upper gallery	timon	coach-pole
billet	ticket	roue	wheel
couvent	convent	essieu	axle-tree
monastère m.	monastery	équipage m.	equipage
cellule	cell	harnois pl.	harness
hermitage m.	hermitage	rènes pl.	reins
solitude	solitude	bride	bridle
retraite	retirement	licou	halter
université	university	selle	saddle
collège m.	college	bât	pack-saddle.
école	school	arçon	saddle-bow
pension	boarding-school	sangle	girth
parlement	parliament	étriers pl.	stirrup
chambre des pairs	house of lords	éperons pl.	spurs
chambre des communes	house of commons	berline	berlin
prison	prison	cabrioles	curricule
cachot	dungeon	chaise	chaise
hôpital	hospital	fiacre m.	hackney-coach
infirmerie	infirmary	charratto	cart
taverne	tavern	fourgon	waggon
cabaret	public-house	remise	coach-house
		rasoir	razor
		cuir	strap

moule
machine

mould
machine

moulin

mill

VIII. OF TRADES, ARTS, PROFESSIONS, ETC.

boulangier	baker	joaillier	jeweller
barbier	barber	menuisier	joiner
forgeron	blacksmith	serrurier	locksmith
relieur	book-binder	maçon	bricklayer
libraire m.	bookseller	couturière	mantua-maker
chaudronnier	brazier	maitre d'hôtel	steward
brasseur	brewer	mercier	mercier
boucher	butcher	meunier	milller
ébéniste	cabinet-maker	peintre	painter
charpentier	carpenter	pâtissier	pastry-cook
charron	wheelwright	paveur	pavior
sculpteur	sculptor	colporteur	pedlar
chimiste	chymist	parfumeur	perfumer
horloger	clock-maker	médecin	physician
confiseur	confectioner	plâtrier	plasterer
carrossier	coach-maker	plombier	plumber
tonnelier	cooper	potier	potter
corroyeur	currier	imprimeur	printer
coutelier	cutler	sellier	saddler
fourbisseur	sword-cutter	lingère	sempstress
teinturier	dyer	cordonnier	shoe-maker
distillateur	distiller	pelletier	skinner
droguiste	druggist	forgeron	smith
graveur	engraver	chirurgien	surgeon
maréchal	farrier	apothicaire	apothecary
poissonnier	fishmonger	arpenteur	surveyor
fondeur	founder	tailleur	tailor
fruitier	fruiterer	tanneur	tanner
fourreur	furrier	bijoutier	jeweller
jardinier	gardener	tourneur	turner
doreur	gilder	entrepreneur	undertaker
verrier	glass-maker	tapissier	upholsterer
vitrier	glazier	horloger	watch-maker
gantier	glover	tisserand	weaver
orfèvre	goldsmith	perruquier	hair-dresser
épicier	grocer	ouvrage	work
armurier	gun-smith	ouvrier	workman
chapelier	hatter	ouvrière	workwoman
aubergiste	innkeeper	manceuvre	labourer

IX. OF THE COUNTRY, HUSBANDRY, FLOWERS, TREES, ETC.

campagne	country	hameau	hamlet
chemin	way	enclos	close
sentier	foot-path	château	castle
boue	mud	terre	estate
fange	mire	cour	yard
poussière	dust	basse-cour	poultry-yard
bourbier	slough	colombier	pigeon-house
ornière	cart-rut	laiterie	dairy

écurie
fruiterie

stable
fruit-loft

jardin
jardinage *m.*

garden
gardening

X. FLOWERS.

neuriste
parterre
fleur
iris
primevère
narcisse *m.*
jacinthe
tulipe
violette
pensée
égantier
marguerite
impériale
martagon
lis
muguet
oreille d'ours
anémone
renoncule
jonquille
giroflée
œillet
campanule
gantelée
rose
jasmin

florist
parterre
flower
flags
cowslip
narcissus
hyacinth
tulip
violet
heartsease
sweet-briar
daisy
turk's cap
mountain lily
lily
may-lily
auricula
anemone
ranunculus
jonquil
stock-gilliflower
carnation
bell flower
rose
jasmine

tubéreuse
réseda
chèv-re-feuille *m.*
seringat
lilas
souci
amaranthe
pavot
coquelicot
ponceau
bluet, barbeau
tournesol
camomille
belle-de-nuit
éternelle
immortelle
balsamine
ancolie
passe-rose
hépatique
pied d'alouette
pivoine
scabieuse
julienne
planche
plate bande
tuberoses
mignonette
honey-suckle
seringa
lilac
marigold
amaranth
poppy
wild-poppy
blue-bell
sun flower
camomile
great nightshade
cassidony
balsam
columbine
hollyhock
hepatica
lark spur
piony
scabious
rocket
bed
flower-border

XI. FRUITS.

amande
pomme
abricot
cerise
guigne
châtaigne
marron
groseilles pl.
groseille
figue
aveline
raisin
prune
reine-claude
citron
ananas
nêfle

almond
apple
apricot
cherry
black heart
cherry
chestnut
large chestnut
currants
gooseberry
fig
filbert
grapes
plum
green-gage
lemon
pine apple
medlar

melon
mûre
brugnon
noisette
orange
pêche
poire
citrouille
coin
framboise
fraise
noix
épine-vinette
grenade
olive
cerneaux
melon
mulberry
nectarine
hazel-nut
orange
peach
pear
pumpion
quince
raspberry
strawberry
walnut
barberries
pomegranate
olive
fresh or unripe
walnuts

arbre
arbris
écorc
branch
feuille

XII. OF HERES AND PLANTS.

alods	aloe	moutarde	mustard
angelique	angelica	capucine	nasturtium
artichaut	artichoke	ortie	nettle
asperge	asparagus	ognon	onion
citron	plant	persil	parsley
basilic	basil	panais	parsnip
fève	bean	pois	peas
haricot	French bean	pariétaire	pellitory
poirée	beet	plante	plant
betterave	beet-root	plantain	plantain
ourrache	borage	pavot	poppy
bardane	burdock	pomme de terre	potatloe
primprenelle	burnet	courge	pumpkin
chou	cabbage	pourpier	purslain
carotte	carrot	rave	radish
céleri	celery	radis	Spanish radish
cerfeuil	chervil	roseau	reed
choux-fleurs pl.	caruliflowers	rue	rue
mâches pl.	corn-sala	jonc	rush
cresson	cresses	rhubarbe	rhubarb
concombre m.	cucumber	safran	saffron
dent-de-lion	dandelion	sauge	sage
patience	dock	sariette	savery
chi. orée	endive	ciboule	scullion
fenouil	fennel	échalote	shallot
fougère	fern	oseille	sorrel
ail	garlick	véronique	speedwell
calebasse	gourd	épinards pl.	spinage
ciguë	hemlock	tanaisie	tansy
herbe	herb	ivraie	tare
raifort	horse-radish	estragon	stragon
joubarbe	house-leek	chardon	thistle
lierre m.	ivy	thym	thyme
poireau	leek	serpolet	wild thyme
...ne	lettuce	trêfle m.	clover
réglisse	licorice	navet	turnip
...e	mallows	valériane	valerian
guimauve	marsh-mallows	végétaux pl.	vegetables
marjolaine	marjoram	légumes m. pl.	vegetables
réséda	ignionette		greens
menthe	mint	verveine	vervain
gui	mistletoe	absynthe	wormwood
mousse	moss	mille-feuille	yarrow

XIII. OF TREES AND SHRUBS.

arbre m.	tree	graine	seed
arbrisseau	shrub	rejeton	sucker
écorce	bark	abricotier	apricot-tree
branche	branch	cerisier	cherry-tree
feuille	leaf	châtaignier	chestnut-tree

VOCABULARY.

citronnier
coignassier
figuier
noyer
oranger
pêcher
pommier
poirier
prunier
arbusier
frêne
tremble
hêtre
bouleau
buis
genêt
sureau

lemon-tree
quince-tree
fig-tree
walnut-tree
orange-tree
peach-tree
apple-tree
pear-tree
plumb-tree
arbutus
ash-tree
aspen
beech-tree
birch-tree
box
broom
elder-tree

orme
sapin
coudrier
houx
lilas
tilleul
myrte
chêne
osier
romarin
égiantier
épino
buisson
aubépine
vigne
saule
if

elm
fir-tree
hazel-tree
holly
lilac
lime-tree
myrtle-tree
oak
osier
rosemary
sweet brier
thorn
thorn bush
white-thorn
vine
willow tree
yew-tree

XIV. PROMISCUOUS WORDS.

grange
hutte
chaumière
seigneurie
dîme
métairie
sillon
pré, prairie
arpent
fossé
champ
pâturage m.
terroir
parc
haie
bruyère
dunes
lande
commune
plaine
garenne
fondrière
marais
platebande
serre
serre chaude
bouligrin
berceau
bosquet
grotte
vignoble m.
pépinière
taillis
hallier

barn
hut
thatched-house
manor
tilthe
farm
furrow
meadow
acre
ditch
field
pasture-ground
soil
park
hedge
heath
downs
waste land
common
plain
warren
bog
marsh
border
green-house
hot-house
bowling-green
bower
grove
grotto
vineyard
nursery
coppice
thicket

paysage m.
perspective
vue
cascade
canal
agriculture
labourage m.
bétail
fumier
terreau
récolte
moisson
vendange
houblon
grain
blé
orge
avoine
riz
seigle m.
millet
lin
chanvre m.
chênevis
épi
gerbe
tige
tuyau
paille
chaume m.
fein
fourrage m.
fermier
paysan

landscape
prospect
view
cascade
canal
agriculture
tillage
cattle
dung
mould
crop
harvest
vintage
hops
corn
wheat
barley
oats
rice
rye
millet
flax
hemp
hemp-seed
ear (of corn)
sheaf (of corn)
stalk
blade
straw
stubble
hay
fodder
farmer
peasant

laboureur
moissonneur

ploughman
reaper

faucheur
berger

mower
shepherd

XV. OF QUADRUPEDS.

bête	beast	daim mâle	buck
animal	animal	daim femelle	doe
animal domestique	domestic animal	chevreuil	roe-buck
bête de somme	beast of burden	chevrette	roe
monture	saddle horse	lion	lion
cheval	horse	lionne	lioness
cavalle	mare	lionceau	lion's whelp
jument	mare	tigre	tiger
étalon	stallion	tigresse	tigress
poulain	colt	ours	bear
pouliche	filly	ourson	bear's cub
bidet	pony	zèbre m.	zebra
âne	ass	giraffe	camel-leopard
ânesse	she-ass	léopard	leopard
ânon	young ass	caméléopard	camel-leopard
mulet	mule	rhinocéros	rhinoceros
mule	she-mule	hippopotame, m.	river-horse
bête à cornes	horned beast	éléphant	elephant
bœuf	ox	chameau	camel
buffle n.	buffalo	dromadaire m.	dromedary
taureau	bull	lama	lama
vache	cow	buffle m.	buffalo
génisse	heifer	hiène	hyena
veau	calf	panthère	panther
bouvillon	bullock	once	ounce
renne m.	rein-deer	licorne	unicorn
brebis	ewe	élan	elk
mouton	wether	loup	wolf
bélier	ram	louve	she-wolf
agneau	lamb	louveteau	wolf's cub
chèvre	she-goat	lynx	lynx
bouc	he-goat	renard	fox
chevreau	kid	taisson	rock
cochon	hog	blaireau	badger
porc	pig	castor	beaver
pourceau	pig	hermine	ermine
truie	sow	marte, zibeline	marten, sable
cochon de lait	sucking pig	écureuil	squirrel
cochon d'inde	guinea pig	'hérisson	hedge-hog
verrat	boar	porc-épic	porcupine
sanglier	wild boar	loutre	otter
laie	wild sow	raton	raccoon
marcassin	young wild boar	furet	ferret
bête fauve	deer	lièvre	hare
cerf	stag	'hase	doe-hare
biche	hind	levraut	leveret
faon	fawn	lapin	rabbit
daim	fellow-deer	chien	dog
		chienne	bitch

lévrier	greyhound	fouine	pole-cat
levrette	greyhound bitch	loir	dormouse
dogue	bull dog	marmot	marmot
mâtin	mastiff	taïpe	mole
limier	blood-hound	rat	rat
bichon	lap-dog	souris	mouse
épagneul	spaniel	tortue	tortoise
basset	terrier	bétail, bestiaux	cattle
barbet	shagged-dog	troupeau	flock, herd
chiien d'arrêt	pointer	pâtre, berger	shepherd
meute de chiens	pack of hounds	bergère	shepherdess
chat, matou	cat, tom-cat	vacher, bouvier	cow-herd
chatte	cat, puss	porcher	swine-herd
chaton	kitten	chasse	hunting
minon	puss	chasseur	hunter
minet, minette	young kitten	braconnier	poacher
singe m.	monkey	gibier, venaison	game
guenon	ape	fusil	gun
magot, babouin	baboon	gibecière	pouch
gazelle	antelope	tiré	shooting
belette	weasel	tireur	shooter
putois	pole-cat	garde-chasse	gamekeeper

XVI. OF BIRDS.

oiseau	bird	rossignol	nightingale
oiselet, oisillon	little bird	chardonneret	goldfinch
volaille	fowl	pinson	chaffinch
coq	cock	verdier	greenfinch
poule	hen	bouvreuil	bullfinch
poulet	chicken	linot, linette	linnet
poussin	young chicken	rougegorge	redbreast, robin
cochet	cockrel	mer. m.	blackbird
poularde	pullet	grive	thrush
chapon	capon	geai	jay
coq-d'Inde,	} turkey-cock	pie	magpie
dindon		alouette	lark
dinde	turkey-hen	bergeronnette	wagtail
dindonneau	young turkey	alcyon, ou	} king's fisher
oie	goose	martin-pêcheur	
jar	gander	pivert	wood-pecker
oison	gosling	mésange	tit
canard	drake	pluvier	plover
cane	duck	roitelet	wren
caneton, canette	duckling	vanneau	lapwing
pigeon	pigeon	butor	bittern
colombe	dove	hecfigue m.	beccafico
serin, canari	canary bird	étourneau	starling
perroquet	parrot	sansonnet	starling
perruque	parrot	bruant	yellow-hammer
moineau, pas-	} sparrow	coucou	cuckoo
sereau		freux, grolle	rook
hirondelle	swallow	corbeau	raven
martinet	marten	corneille	crow

hibou	owl	ortolan	ortolan
chouette	screech-owl	tourterelle	turtle dove
buse	buzzard	gêlinotte	godwit
choucas	chough	francolin	francoline
aigle	eagle	ramier	wood-pigeon
aiglon	aglet	marceuse	sea-duck
épervier	esparrrow-hawk	sarcelle	teal
émouchet	musket-hawk	grue	crane
milan	kite	courlis	curlew
faucon	falcon	foulque	coot, moorcock,
cormoran	cormorant		or hen
plongeon	didapper	poule d'eau	moor-hen
héron	heron	paon	peacock
cicogne	stork	paonne	peahen
outarde	bustard	paonneau	young peacock
pélican	pelican	cygne m.	swan
autour	goshawk	autruche	ostrich
vautour	vulture	pintade	pintado
griffon	griffin	fou-de-bassan	gannet
huppe	lapwing	pingoin	razor-bill
mouette	gull	chauve-souris	bat
perdrix	partridge	chasse aux	} forking
bartavelle	{ large red par- tridge	oiseaux	
perdreau	young partridge	appeau	bird-call
caille	quail	gluaux	lime twigs
cailleveau	young quail	trébuchet	bird trap
faisan	pheasant	filets	nets
faisandeau	young pheasant	oiseleur	bird-catcher
bécasse	woodcock	oiselier	bird-seller
bécassine	snipe	volière	aviary

XVII. OF FISHES.

poisson	fish	sardine	sprat
esturgeon	sturgeon	thon	tunny
turbot	turbot	plie	plaice
saumon	salmon	congre m.	conger
rouget	roach	merlan	whiting
brochet	pike	merluce	haddock
carpe	carp	hareng	herring
truite	trout	sèche	cuttle fish
perche	perch	limande	burt, bret-fish
cabillaud	haddock	lamproie	lamprey
morue	stock fish	homard, lan-	} lobster
raie	skate	gouste	
tanche	tench	écrevisse de	
éperlan	smell	mer	
maquereau	mackerel	écrevisse	crawfish
surmulet	mullet	crab m.	crab
carrelet	flounder	salicouque	prawn
barbeau	barbel	chevrette	shrimp
alose	shad	anguille	eel
sole	sole	anchois	anchovy

goujon	<i>gudgeon</i>	chien marin	<i>sea-dog</i>
véron	<i>minnow</i>	loup marin	<i>sea-wolf</i>
lotte, barbotte	<i>eel-pout</i>	hérisson de mer	<i>sea-urchin</i>
loche	<i>loach, ground-</i>	frai	<i>fry</i>
mortue salée	<i>ling</i>	fretin	<i>young fish</i>
barbue	<i>salt-fish</i>	laite	<i>soft roe</i>
marsoin	<i>brill</i>	œufs	<i>sparrow, hard roe</i>
espadon	<i>sea-hog, por-</i>	museau	<i>snout</i>
porcelaine	<i>poise</i>	oules	<i>gills</i>
tortue	<i>saw-fish</i>	nageoirs	<i>fins</i>
huitre	<i>sea-snail</i>	écailles	<i>scales</i>
pétoncle	<i>tortoise</i>	coquilles	<i>bones</i>
moule	<i>oyster</i>	arrêtes	<i>claws</i>
baleine	<i>cockle</i>	pinces	<i>bait</i>
cachalot	<i>muscle</i>	appât, amorce	<i>fisherman</i>
requin	<i>whale</i>	pêcheur	<i>fishery</i>
dauphin	<i>cachalot</i>	pêche	<i>angling</i>
	<i>shark</i>	pêche à la ligne	
	<i>dolphin</i>		

XVIII. OF REPTILES AND INSECTS.

grenouille	<i>frog</i>	tique	<i>tick</i>
serpent	<i>serpent</i>	pou	<i>louse</i>
couleuvre	<i>adder</i>	lente	<i>nit</i>
vipère	<i>viper</i>	puce	<i>flea</i>
scorpion	<i>scorpion</i>	punaise	<i>bug</i>
aspic	<i>aspick</i>	chenille	<i>caterpillar</i>
basilic	<i>basilisk</i>	papillon	<i>butterfly</i>
dragon	<i>dragon</i>	mouche	<i>fly</i>
tarentule	<i>tarantula</i>	abeille	<i>bee</i>
crapeau	<i>toad</i>	frelon	<i>hornet</i>
lézard	<i>lizard</i>	bourdon	<i>drone</i>
sangsue	<i>leech</i>	guêpe	<i>wasp</i>
limace	<i>slug</i>	taon	<i>oxfly</i>
ver	<i>worm</i>	cousin	<i>gnat</i>
ver-luisant	<i>glow-worm</i>	cantharide	<i>Spanish-fly</i>
ver-coquin	<i>vine-grub</i>	haneton	<i>cockchafer</i>
ver-à-soie	<i>silk-worm</i>	sauterelle	<i>grasshopper</i>
escargot	<i>snail</i>	cigale	<i>balm-cricket</i>
escarbot	<i>beetle</i>	araignée	<i>spider</i>
grillon	<i>cricket</i>	toile d'araignée	<i>cobweb</i>
perce-oreille m.	<i>ear-wig</i>	essaim d'abeilles	<i>swarms of bees</i>
teigne	<i>moth</i>	miel	<i>honey</i>
ciron	<i>hand worm</i>	cire	<i>wax</i>
fourmi	<i>ant</i>	rayon de miel	<i>honeycomb</i>
charançon	<i>weevil</i>	ruche	<i>hive</i>
cloporte m.	<i>wood-louse</i>	fourmilière	<i>ant-hill</i>

XIX. OF METALS, &c.

or	<i>gold</i>	cuivre	<i>copper</i>
argent	<i>silver</i>	airain	<i>brass</i>
platine	<i>platina</i>	laiton	<i>latten</i>
vermeil	<i>silver-gilt</i>	bronze	<i>bronze</i>

similor	pinchbeck	salpêtre	salpêtre
fer	iron	bitume	bitumen
fil d'archal	wire	antimoine	antimony
acier	steel	arsenic	arsenic
fer-blanc	iron-tinned	alun	alum
étain	pewter	couperose f.	copperas
plomb	lead	vitriol	vitriol
mercure	mercury	carmin	carmine
vif-argent	quicksilver	pastel	pastel
soufre	sulphur	ocre f.	ochre
nitre	nitre	vermillon	read lead

XX. OF COLOURS.

blanc	white	rouge	red
noir	black	jaune	yellow
bleu	blue	brun	brown
vert	green	pourpre	purple
gris	grey	écarlate	scarlet
orangé	orange colour	indigo	indigo

XXI. OF PRECIOUS STONES.

diamant	diamond	améthyste	amethyst
topaze	topaz	cornaline	cornelian
émeraude	emerald	onix	onyx
saphir	sapphire	agate	agate
escarboucle	carbuncle	corail	coral
rubis	ruby	perle	pearl

XXII. OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES.

France	France	Chine	China
Italie	Italy	Mogol	Mogul
Espagne	Spain	Bengale	Bengal
Portugal	Portugal	Malabar	Malabar
Turquie	Turkey	le Japon	Japan
Allemagne	Germany	Barbarie	Barbary
Suisse	Switzerland	Egypte	Egypt
Prusse	Prussia	Biledulgerid	Biledulgerid
Pologne	Poland	Zaara	Zaara
Bohême	Bohemia	Nigritie	Nigritia
Hongrie	Hungary	Guinée	Guinea
Hollande	Holland	Ethiopie	Ethiopia
les Pays-Bas	the Netherlands	Zanguebar	Zanguebar
Angleterre	England	Monomotapa	Monomotapa
Ecosse	Scotland	Monoémugi	Monoemugi
Irlande	Ireland	Caffrie	Caffria
Russie	Russia	Abbyssinie	Abyssinia
Danemarc	Denmark	Canada	Canada
Suède	Sweden	Pensylvanie	Pensylvania
Norvège	Norway	le Maryland	Maryland
Tartarie	Tartary	la Virginie	Virginia
Arabie	Arabia	la Caroline	Carolina
Perse	Persia	la Géorgie	Georgia
Inde	India	le Pérou	Peru

le Paraguay
le Chili
le Brésil

Paraguay
Chili
Brazil

la Guiane
St. Dominigue
la Jamaïque

Guiana
St. Domingo
Jamaica

XXIII. COMMON NATIONAL NAMES.

Français, *e*
Italien, *ne*
Espagnol, *e*
Portugais, *e*
Turc, *que*
Allemand, *e*
Prussien, *ne*
Suisse, *esse*
Polonais, *e*
Bohémien, *ne*
Hongrois, *e*
Hollandais, *e*
Autrichien, *ne*

French
Italian
Spanish
Portuguese
Turkish, Turk.
German
Prussian
Swiss
Pole
Bohemian
Hungarian
Dutch
Austrian

Flamand, *e*
Anglais, *e*
Ecosais, *e*
Irlandais, *e*
Russe
Danois, *e*
Suédois, *e*
Norvégien, *ne*
Persan, *e*
Chinois, *e*
Américain, *e*
Japon, *e*
Lapon

Flemish
English
Scotch
Irish
Russian
Dane
Swede
Norwegian
Persian
Chinese
American
Japanese
Laplander

INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES.

22. OF THE PREPOSITIONS *of, from, to*, AND OF THE ARTICLE *the, a*.

The English definite article *the*, is rendered by

le before a noun masculine } in the singular.
la before a noun feminine }

and *les* before nouns of either gender, in the plural.

The indefinite *a* or *an* is rendered by *un* before a noun masculine, and by *une* in the feminine.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Le livre</i>	<i>the book</i>	<i>un homme</i>	<i>a man</i>
<i>la rue</i>	<i>the street</i>	<i>une femme</i>	<i>a woman</i>
<i>les plantes</i>	<i>the plants</i>	<i>un héros</i>	<i>a hero</i>

EXERCISES.

<i>The wood ;</i> <i>bois m.</i>	<i>the forest ;</i> <i>forêt f.</i>	<i>the houses ;</i> <i>maisons pl.</i>	<i>the men ;</i> <i>hommes pl.</i>	<i>the court ;</i> <i>cour f.</i>
<i>the foot ;</i> <i>pie d m.</i>	<i>the arms ;</i> <i>bras pl.</i>	<i>the room ;</i> <i>chambre f.</i>	<i>the garden ;</i> <i>jardin m.</i>	<i>the windows ;</i> <i>fenêtres pl.</i>
<i>a history ;</i> <i>histoire f.</i>	<i>a novel ;</i> <i>roman m.</i>	<i>a foreigner ;</i> <i>étranger m.</i>	<i>a walk ;</i> <i>promenade f.</i>	<i>a day ;</i> <i>jour m.</i>
<i>a night ;</i> <i>nuit f.</i>	<i>the sun ;</i> <i>soleil m.</i>	<i>the moon ;</i> <i>lune f.</i>	<i>the stars ;</i> <i>étoiles pl.</i>	<i>a body ;</i> <i>corps m.</i>
<i>a crown.</i> <i>écu m.</i>			<i>a card ;</i> <i>carte f.</i>	

23. The prepositions *of* and *from* are rendered literally by *de* and *to* by *à*.

When followed by the definite article, they are rendered in this manner :

<i>of the</i>	{	<i>du*</i> before a noun masculine singular beginning with a
<i>and</i>		<i>consonant or h aspirated</i>
<i>from the,</i>		<i>de la</i> before a noun feminine singular
<i>by</i>		<i>de l'</i> before any noun beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute
		<i>des</i> before any noun in the plural.

* Observe that you must not say *de le, à le, de les, à les*, but that the article and preposition are contracted into one word, *du, au, des, aux*.

INTRODUCTION

to the by, { *au* before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated
 à la before a noun feminine singular
 à l' before any noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute
 aux before any noun in the plural.

And when these prepositions are followed by *a* or *an*, thus :

of a or } by { *d'un* before a noun masculine
 from a } { *d'une* before a noun feminine
 to a by { *à un* before a noun masculine
 { *à une* before a noun feminine.

EXAMPLES.

Du parc	of the park	à l'esprit	to the mind
de la rivière	of the river	aux carrosses	to the coaches
de l'esprit	of the mind	d'un jour	of a day
des carrosses	of the coaches	d'une nuit	of a night
au parc	to the park	à un jour	to a day
à la rivière	to the river	à une nuit	to a night

EXERCISES.

The palace of the king ;	of the queen ;	of the man ;	of the
palais m.	roi m.	reine f.	homme h m.
men ;	to the king ;	to the queen ;	to the man ;
hommes pl.			to the men ;
from a balcony ;	from a window ;	of a prince ;	to a princess ;
balcon m.	fenêtre f.	— m.	princesse f.
of the gardens ;	of the evening ;	to the courtiers ;	of a table ;
jardins pl.	soir m.	courtisans pl.	— f.
to the master ;	to a lady ;	of the soul ;	of the horse ;
maître m.	dame f.	âme f.	cheval m.
of the houses ;	of a carpet.		to a cat ;
maisons pl.	tapis m.		chat m.

24. These same prepositions, when followed by the possessive pronouns, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, and *their*, will be both rendered thus :

					singular.		plural.
					m.	f.	
of or from	{ my thy his, her, or its, our your their	}	by de	{ mon ton son notre votre leur	mon	ma	m. and f. mes
					ton	ta	tes
					son	sa	ses
					notre	notre	nos
	{ my thy his, her, its our your their	}	by à	{ mon ton son notre votre leur	votre	votre	vos
					leur	leur	leurs
					mon	ma	mes
					ton	ta	tes
	{ my thy his, her, its our your their	}	by à	{ mon ton son notre votre leur	son	sa	ses
					notre	notre	nos
					votre	votre	vos
					leur	leur	leurs

And likewise, when followed by the demonstrative *this* or *that*, *these* or *those* :

of or from <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> , by <i>de</i> to <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> , by <i>à</i>	{	<i>ce</i> before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated
		<i>cet</i> before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute
		<i>cette</i> before a noun feminine

of or from <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> , by <i>de</i> to <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> , by <i>à</i>	{	<i>ces</i> before nouns plural of either gender.
---	---	---

EXAMPLES.

de mon père	of my father	à leur travail	to their work
à ta mère	to thy mother	de cette terrasse	from this terrace
de son frère	of his brother	de ce lieu	of that place
de notre ville	of our town	de cet homme	of this man
à votre maison	to your house	de ces arbres	of these trees

EXERCISES.

Of my clothes; of thy handkerchief; of his pocket; from your
habits pl. mouchoir m. poche f.
letters; of our treasure; to their house; of this steeple; of that
lettres pl. trésor m. maison f. clocher m.
hero; of this tower; of these models; from my sister; to
héros m. h asp. tour f. modèles pl. sœur f.
your relations; the top of this mountain; to my friend
parens pl. sommet m. montagne f. ami m.
from these pleasures; of our duties; to their connexions; of
plaisirs pl. devoirs pl. liaisons pl.
his acquaintances; to my neighbours.
connaissances pl. voisins pl.

25. OF ELISIONS.

The *apostrophe* (') marks the suppression of a vowel before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as in *l'église*, for *la église*, etc. This suppression is called *elision*: *a*, *e*, are the only two vowels which are thus cut off; *i* is cut off in *si*, before *il* and *ils*, *s'il*, *s'ils*, *o* and *u* are never cut off.

The *a* is suppressed only in *la* feminine, both when an article and a personal pronoun.

But the *elision* of *e* occurs, not only in the definite article and personal pronoun *le*, but also in many monosyllables, such as *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *qu'*, and in the compound of *que*, such as, *parceque*, *quoique*, *puisque*, *jusque*, *và que*, etc.

EX/MPLES OF ELISIONS.

of	la	in l'amitié	for	la amitié	the friendship
	la	l'herbe		la herbe	the grass
	le	l'oiseau		le oiseau	the bird
	le	l'honneur		le honneur	the honour
	je	j'ai		je ai	I have
	me	il m'oublie		il me oublie	he forgets me
	te	je t'aime		je te aime	I love thee
	se	il s'habille		il se habille	he dresses himself
	le	vous l'aidez		vous le aidez	you help him
	la	vous l'obligez		vous la obligez	you oblige her
of	ce	c'est vrai	for	ce est vrai	it is true
	de	un coup-d'œil		un coup de œil	a glance
	ne	n'oubliez pas		ne oubliez pas	do not forget
	que	qu'attendez-vous		que attendez-vous	what do you expect?
	si	si il arrivait		si il arrivait	if it happened
	si	s'ils pouvaient		si ils pouvaient	if they could
	parceque	parcequ'il faut		parceque il faut	because it is requisite
	quoique	quoiqu'il fasse		quoique il fasse	whatever he may do
	puisque	puisque on vous dit		puisque on vous dit	since they tell you
	jusque	jusqu'à demain		jusque à demain	till to-morrow
of	vu que	vu qu'il obtiendra	for	vu que il obtiendra	since he will obtain
	dès que	dèsqu'on saura		dès que on saura	as soon as it is known
	quelque	quelqu'un vient		quelque un vient	somebody comes

The *e* of the preposition *entre* is not cut off generally before *eux, elles, autres*, good writers prefer leaving it, thus *entre eux, entre elles, entre autres*; but in the following compound words there must be an elision:

Entr'acte	an interlude	for	entre-acte
s'entr'aider	to help another		se entre-aider
entr'ouïr	to hear imperfectly		entre-ouïr
entr'ouvrir	to half open		entre-couvrir

EXERCISE.

The soul; the heroine; the mind; he loves him; she
 âme f. héroïne f. esprit m. il aime 2 te 1; elle
 loves her; I love this man; you understand me; he es-
 2 la 1; je aime homme m. vous entendez 2 me 1; il es-
 teems thee; he goes away; it was the golden age; do not go
 time 2 te 1; se en-va ce était de or 2 âge 1; * ne aller

there; if he comes; if they please; what has he said? till
pas là; si vient; ils veulent; que a-t-il dit? jusque
 night; though he says; since he knows; when he saw;
au soir m. quoique dise; puisque sait; lorsque vit;
 between them; somebody is come,
entre eux; quelque un est venu.

26. OF NEGATIONS.

The negation *not*, is rendered by *ne-pas*, of which *ne* is placed *before* the verb, and the *pas* *after*.

Never is rendered by *ne-jamais*; *nobody* by *ne-personne*; *nothing*, by *ne-rien*, which are placed in the same order as *ne-pas*.

EXAMPLES OF NEGATIVE PHRASES.

N.B. The ^ shows the place of the verb.

Not	{ ne^pas	} as {	je ne suis pas, etc. I am not, etc.
	{ ne^point		nous n'avons point we have not
never	ne^jamais		il ne joue jamais he never plays
nothing	ne^rien		vous ne dites rien you say nothing
nobody	ne^personne		je ne vois personne I see nobody
not a jot	ne^goutte	}	je ne vois goutte { I do not see, or I
no where	ne^nulle part		{ see not in the least
			je ne vais nulle part I go no where

In compound tenses, the negations are always placed before and after the auxiliary verb; as *nous n'avons point parlé, we have not spoken*; *on n'aurait jamais cru, one could never have believed*.

EXERCISE.

I do not say; I have not said; I have never seen; I never (tell a
 * dis ai dit ai vu mens
 falsehood); I do nothing; I have done nothing; is he not ar-
 fais ai fait est-il ar-
 rived? does not he come? I see nothing; has he never seen? he
 rivé * 2 vient I vois a-t- vu
 never loses his time; that (is worth) nothing; I met nobody.
 perd temps m. cela vaut rencontraï

27. OF WORDS WHICH ARE ALIKE IN BOTH LANGUAGES.

There are many words which are alike in both languages, and others which differ only in their termination.

The expressions, which are perfectly alike, are particularly those that have the following terminations:

-ai as { animal, cardinal, fatal, général, local, moral, natal, original,
 { principal, etc.

-ble	as	capable, fable, etc. bible, éligible, etc. noble, double, soluble, insoluble, etc.
-ace	..	face, grimace, grace, place, préface, race, surface, trace, etc.
-ance	..	chance, complaisance, extravagance, ignorance, lance, tempérance, etc.
-ence	..	abstinence, conférence, continence, diligence, éloquence, patience, etc.
-ice	..	artifice, auspices, édifice, justice, injustice, office, orifice, précipice, solstice, etc.
-acle	..	miracle, oracle, obstacle, réceptacle, tabernacle, spectacle, etc.
-ade	..	ambuscade, cavalcade, brigade, esplanade, sérénade, retrograde, etc.
-age	..	âge, adage, bandage, cage, cordage, image, page, plumage, rage, etc.
-ège	..	colège, privilège, sacrilège, siège, etc.
-ge	..	vestige, doge, barge, charge, orange, forge, rouge, refuge, déluge, etc.
-ule	..	globule, ridicule, animalcule, corpuscule, formule, module, mule, pustule, valvule, etc.
-ile	..	bile, débile, agile, docile, ductile, facile, fragile, nubile, reptile, versatile, etc.
-ine	..	carabine, fascine, doctrine, héroïne, machine, marine, famine, mine, rapine, etc.
-ion	..	action, fraction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, religion, etc.
-ant	..	arrogant, constant, élégant, éléphant, pétulant, piquant, poignant, vigilant, etc.
-ent	..	absent, accident, compliment, augment, content, élément, fréquent, serpent, etc.

28. Many other English words require only the change of termination, in the following manner :

-ary	into	-aire	as	military	militaire
-ory	....	-oire	..	glory	gloire
-cy	....	-ce	..	clemency	clémence
-ty	....	-té	..	beauty	beauté
-ous	....	-eux	..	dangerous	dangereux
-our	....	-eur	..	favour	faveur
-or	....	-eur	..	error	erreur
-ine	....	-in	..	clandestine	clandestin
-ive	....	-if	..	expressive	expressif
-rie	....	-rie	..	fury	furie
-cracy	....	-cratie	..	aristocracy	aristocratie

N. B. Adjectives in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -eux \\ -if \\ -in \end{array} \right\}$ make their feminine in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -euse \\ -ive \\ -ine \end{array} \right\}$

EXERCISE.

The beauty of that fable; the horror of vice; the utility of
 f. cette f. f. h. m. art. m. f. art.

double, solu-
 face, trace,
 lance,
 eloquence,
 orifice,
 spectacle,
 made, re-
 plumage,
 refuge,
 module,
 nubile,
 marine,
 question,
 poignant,
 élément,
 range of

science; the atrocity of this action; the violence of his passions;
 f. f. celle f. f. ses pl.
 the simplicity of that machine; an audacious conspirator; the
 l. celle f. 2 m. 1
 absurdity of that opinion; the military evolutions; an industrious
 f. celle f. pl. 2 pl. 1 2
 nation; an important victory; an alimentary pension; a dangerous
 f. 1 2 f. 1 2 f. 1 2
 animal; a figurative expression; a famous general; his constant
 m. 1 2 f. 1 m. sa 2
 generosity; he is incapable of attention; his impudence is visible;
 f. 1 il est son
 his fidelity is in dubitable; she is very attentive; your clemency is
 sa f. elle est très- f. votre f.
 admirable; the destruction of his fortune was the consequence of
 f. sa f fut f.
 his temerity; she is very scrupulous; his condition is horrible; his
 sa f. très f. sa f. ses
 parents are very miserable; this history is incontestable; your
 pl. sont très- pl. celle f. votre
 facility is prodigious; his perfidy is odious; it was a horrible
 f. sa l. f. ce ét. ;
 famine; the sublimity of his sentiments is still preferable to the
 f. f. ses m. encore
 energy of his expressions; it was a decisive action; the carnage
 ses f. c'était f. 2 f. 1 m.
 was terrible; that obstacle is invincible; this instrument is not
 cet cet m.
 harmonious; the prosperity of the wicked is not durable; your
 f. méchants pl. vos
 insidious presents are not acceptable; his memory is truly extra-
 2 pl. 1 sont pl. f. vraiment
 ordinary; that is his principal occupation; a central position; his
 ce est son f. 2 f. 1 f. 2 f. 1 son
 extravagance is visible; these arguments are insoluble.
 f. ces m. pl.

PART I.

OF WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR NATURE AND INFLECTIONS.

Their are in French nine sorts of words, or parts of speech,
 namely :

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun, | 4. Pronoun, | 7. Preposition, |
| 2. Article, | 5. Verb, | 8. Conjunction, |
| 3. Adjective, | 6. Adverb, | 9. Interjection. |

ty of
 art.

CHAPTER I.

29. OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

The substantive is a word which serves to name a person, or thing, as *Pierre*, Peter ; *livre*, book, etc.

There are two sorts of substantives, the *substantive proper*, or *proper name*, and the *substantive common*, also called *appellative*.

The *proper name* is that which is applied to a particular person, or thing, as *César*, Cesar ; *la Tamise*, the *Thames*.

The *substantive common* is that which belongs to a whole class of objects. The word *homme*, man, is a substantive common, as it is applicable to any individual, that is to *Pierre*, or *Paul*, or *Jean*.

Of these nouns some are *collective*, and others *abstract*.

Collectives express either a whole mass, as *une armée*, an army : *une forêt*, a forest ; or a partial assemblage, as *une quantité de*, etc. a certain quantity of ; *la plupart*, most part, etc.

Abstract nouns are the names of qualities abstracted from their subjects : as, *surface*, *rondeur*, *science*, *sagesse* ; *surface*, roundness, knowledge, wisdom, etc.

In substantives are to be considered *Gender* and *Number*.

30. OF GENDERS.

There are *only* two genders the *masculine* and *feminine*.

The masculine belongs to the male kind, as *un homme*, a man ; *un lion*, a lion, etc.

The feminine belongs to the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman ; *une lionne*, a lioness, etc.

This distinction applies also, in French, to inanimate objects, which are either masculine or feminine, as, *un livre*, a book, is masculine ; *une table*, a table, is feminine, etc.

31. OF NUMBER.

There are two numbers ; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular* expresses *one single* object, as *un homme*, *un livre*.

The *plural* announces *more* objects than *one*, as *des hommes*, *des livres*.

Some nouns have no plural, such as names of passions, senses, metals : *l'ivrognerie*, drunkenness ; *l'ouïe*, hearing ; *le courage*, courage ; *l'or*, gold ; *l'argent*, silver.

Some have no singular; *les annales*, annals; *les ancêtres*, ancestors; *les mouchettes*, snuffers; *les épinards*, spinach.

Proper names have no plural, as *Londres*, *Paris*, *Milton*, etc.

32. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF SIMPLE SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The plural is formed in French, as in English, by the addition of an *s* to the singular.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.		Plural.
<i>le roi</i>	the king	<i>les rois</i> the kings
<i>la reine</i>	the queen	<i>les reines</i> the queens

EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE.

1. Words ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.		Plural.
<i>le fils</i>	the son	<i>les fils</i> the sons
<i>la voix</i>	the voice	<i>les voix</i> the voices
<i>le nez</i>	the nose	<i>les nez</i> the noses

2. Words ending in *au*, *eu*, *ou* form their plural by adding an *x*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.		Plural.
<i>bateau</i>	boat	<i>bateaux</i> boats
<i>feu</i>	fire	<i>feux</i> fires
<i>bijou*</i>	jewel	<i>bijoux</i> jewels
<i>vœu</i>	vow	<i>vœux</i> vows

3. Words ending in *al*, *ail*, change their terminations into *aux* to form the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.		Plural.
<i>cheval</i>	horse	<i>chevaux</i> horses
<i>travail</i>	work	<i>travaux</i> works

* Those in *-ou*, that take *x* in the plural, are *chou*, *caillou*, *bijou*, *genou*, *hibou*, *joujou*, *pou*; the others now follow the general rule and take *s*, as *clou*, *clous*; *verrou*, *verrous*, &c.

† Several nouns in *-al*, as *bal*, *cal*, *pal*, *régal*, *carnaval*, *local*, &c. follow however the general rule, simply taking *s*.

‡ Those in *-ail*, making their plural in *aux*, are particularly *bail*, *sous-bail*, *corail*, *émaill*, *soupirail*, *travail*, *vantail*, *ventail*; the rest, as *attirail*, *détail*, *éventail*, *gouvernail*, *portail*, *serail*, &c. follow the general rule.

4. Polysyllables ending in *ant*, *ent* form their plural by the addition of an *s*, thus: *enfant*, *enfants*, *moment*, *moments*, *commencant*, *commençants*.

M. Lézicac's rule on this subject was to drop the *t* and put an *s*. *enfant*, *enfants* and it has long been optional to adopt the one or the other way; but the French Academy having, in the new edition of their dictionary, adopted the first orthography, it has been thought right to follow their example.

Monosyllables ending in *ent*, *ant* form their plural by the addition of an *s*: as *gant*, *gants*, *chant*, *chants*, *dent*, *dents*.

5. The following six words are quite irregular as to the formation of the plural:

Singular.		Plural.	
ail	garlic	aulx	heads of garlic
bétail	cattle	bestiaux	cattle
aïeul	grandfather	aïeux	ancestors
ciel	heaven	cieux	heavens
œil	eye	yeux	eyes
berceail	sheepfold	has no plural	

33. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

1. When the word is composed of an adjective and noun, both take the mark of the plural.

<i>un chef-lieu</i>	county town	<i>des chefs-lieux</i>
<i>un petit-maître</i>	a dandy	<i>des petits-maîtres</i>
<i>un loup-garou</i>	a hobgoblin	<i>des loups-garous</i>
<i>un franc-alléu</i>	a free-hold	<i>des francs-alléus</i>
<i>un arc-boutant</i>	a buttress	<i>des arcs-boutants</i>

To this rule there are exceptions: in some words compounded of a noun and an adjective, one of them takes the *s*, and the other does not; in some both remain in the singular, as:

<i>un rouge-gorge</i>	a robin red-breast	<i>des rouge-gorge</i>
<i>un hôtel-Dieu</i>	a hospital	<i>des hôtels-Dieu</i>
<i>un arc-en-ciel</i>	a rainbow	<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i>

These differences and apparent contradictions arise from the following considerations:

Rouge gorge is an elliptical form of which the full sense is *oiseau à rouge gorge*; *des rouge gorge*, consequently, means *des oiseaux à rouge gorge*, and cannot assume the sign of the plural. *Hôtel Dieu* is also elliptical, and its full sense is *hôtel de Dieu*; there may be more hotels than one,

but there is but one *Dieu*. The same may be said of *arcs* and *ciel*, in *des arcs-en-ciel*.

From what precedes may be established into a precise rule, viz: that the *s* cannot be affixed to those words to which and idea of plurality cannot be attached.

2. One of the components of a compound substantive, or even each of them, may be a verb, an adverb, a preposition, all undeclined parts of speech to which the *s* cannot be attached.

<i>un essuie-mains</i>	a towel	<i>des essuie-mains</i>
<i>un essuie-main</i>		<i>des essuie-main</i>
<i>un passe-partout</i>	a master key	<i>des passe-partout</i>
<i>un avant-coureux</i>	a fore runner	<i>des avant-coureurs</i>
<i>un vice-amiral</i>	a vice admiral	<i>des vice-amiraux</i>

3. When the component words are taken from the Latin or from any foreign language, no *s* is added to the plural.

<i>des te-deum</i>	<i>des post-scriptum</i>
<i>des mezzo-terme</i>	<i>des vade-mecum</i>
<i>des auto-da-fé</i>	

4. In all words compounded of *porte* and a noun substantive, no *s* is to be added to the latter.

<i>un porte-étendard</i>	standard bearer	<i>des porte-étendard</i>
<i>un porte-épée</i>	sword bearer	<i>des porte-épée</i>
<i>un porte-mouchettes</i>	snuffers stand	<i>des porte-mouchettes</i>

EXERCISE.

The flowers of the gardens; the niceties of the languages; the
fleurs *jardin* *délicatesse* *langue*
palaces of the kings; the woods of those countries; the wallnuts of
palais *roi* *bois* *ces* *pays* *noix*
their orchards; the pictures of those painters; the feathers of these
leurs vergers *tableau* *ces* *peindre* *plume* *ces*
birds; the melody of their voices; the gods of the pagans; the
oiseau = f. s. *leurs voix* *dieu* *païen*
jewels of my sisters; the cabbages of our gardens; those charming
bijou *mes sœur* *chou* *nos jardin* *ces charmant*
places; the horses of my stable; the fans of these ladies; the
2 lieu *1 cheval* *mes écurie* *éventail* *ces* *dame*
(front gates) of those churches; the actions of my ancestors; the
portail *ces* *église* *mes* *aïeul*
evils of this life; the victories of those generals; the works of
mal *cette vie* *ces* *travail*
these architects; the corals of those seas; the (learned men) of
ces *—* *toite* *corail* *ces* *mar* *savant*

those times; the presents of my parents; the teeth of your comb
ces temps-là — mes — dent votre peigne
 the playthings of our children; the heads of these nails.
joujou nos enfant tête ces clou.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

34. The *Article* is a small word prefixed to substantives, to determine the extent of their signification.

The French article is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le before a masculine} \\ \text{substantive} \\ \text{la before a feminine} \\ \text{substantive} \end{array} \right\}$ the plural is *les* for both genders.

EXAMPLE.

Singular.		Plural.	
le jour	the day	les jours	the days
la nuit	the night	les nuits	the nights

EXERCISE.

The sun, the moon and the stars are the glory of nature.
soleil m. lune f. étoile f. pl. sont = f. art—f.

The king, the queen, and the princes are well pleased. The rose,
roi m. reine f. —m. pl. très-satisfaits — f.

the violet, the tulip, the narc. the hyacinthe, the gilliflower,
violette f. tulip f. narc. n. jacinthe f. giroflée f.

the jasmine, the lily, the h. ackle, the ranunculus are the
jasmin m. lis m. chèvre-feuille m. renoncule f.

delight of the sight Poetry, painting and music are (sister arts)
délices f. pl. vue f. art. poésie f. art. peinture f. art musique sœur f. pl.

The day and the night are equally necessary.
jour m. nuit f. également nécessaire.

OF THE ELISION OF THE ARTICLE *le, la*.

35. The articles *le, la* form but one word with the noun following, if the latter begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate. This suppression of a letter is called *Elision*.

EXAMPLE.

l'argent	| instead of |	le argent	the money
l'histoire		la histoire	the history

36. The same elision takes place also with regard to the preposition *de*, when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not aspirate.

EXAMPLE.

gage d'amitié
parole d'honneur

token of friendship.
word of honour

EXERCISE.

The soul of man without cultivation is like a diamond
âme f. art. homme h. m. sans culture f. est comme diamant m.
(in the rough) The history of Spain is sometimes very interesting.
brut h. m. Espagne quelquefois très-intéressante.

(Look at) the amaranthe and the anemone; what beauty! Self-
Considérez amaranthe f. — f. quelle = f. art. amour-

love and pride are always the offspring of a weak mind.
propre art. orgueil toujours partage m. faible 2 esprit m. 1.

Honesty, innocence, honour, and the love of
art. Honnêteté h. m. art. — art. honneur. h. m. amour art.

virtue are (very much) esteemed. Summer, autumn, and
vertu f. tres- estimés art. été art. automne art.

winter are very changeable. France is separated from Italy
hiver h. m. variables art. — séparée de Italie

by the Alps, and from Spain by the Pyrenees (An. act) of
par Alpes pl. art. — — pl. acte

ambition. She was struck with horror. He is full of vanity.
— Elle était frappée de — Il est rempli orgueil

In a fit of humour.
dans un accès —

CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLES *le, la, les*, AND
PREPOSITION *de, à*.

37. It has been observed page 37, that the articles *le, la, les* are contracted into one word with the preposition *de, à*, when they are used in connexion before a word beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

EXAMPLES.

Du roi	is instead of	<i>de le roi</i>	<i>of the king</i>
du héros	—	<i>de le héros</i>	<i>of the hero</i>
au roi	—	<i>à le roi</i>	<i>to the king</i>
au héros	—	<i>à le héros</i>	<i>to the hero</i>
des rois	—	<i>de les rois</i>	<i>of the kings</i>
des reines	—	<i>de les reines</i>	<i>of the queens</i>
aux rois	—	<i>à les rois</i>	<i>to the kings</i>
aux reines	—	<i>à les reines</i>	<i>to the queens</i>

EXERCISE.

The top of the mountains and the bottom of the valleys are
sommet m. montagne fond m. vallée

equally agreeable. Silk is soft to the touch. The happiness
également agréables. art. Soie f. douce *toucher m. bonheur m.*
 of a feeling man is to relieve the wants of the poor. A man
sensible 2 1 de subvenir à besoin pauvre m.s.
 given to pleasure was never a great man. He obeyed the orders
livré art. plaisir m. ne fut grand Il obéit à ordres
 of the king. The warbling of birds, the murmuring of
gazouillement m. art. oiseau —re m. art.
 streams, the enamel of meadows, the coolness of woods,
ruisseau émail m.art. prairie fraîcheur f. art. bois
 the fragrance of flowers, and the sweet smell of plants,
parfum m. art. fleur douce odeur f. art. plante
 contribute greatly to the pleasure of the mind and to the health of
contribuent beaucoup esprit santé f.
 the body.
corps m.

De and *à* are never contracted with *la*.

EXAMPLES.

De la reine of the queen | *à la reine* to the queen

Nor are *de* and *à* contracted with *le*, before a masculine substantive singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXAMPLES.

De l'esprit of the mind | *de l'homme* of man
A l'esprit. to the mind | *à l'homme.* to man

Contraction does not take place either when the adjective *tout*, all, every, intervenes between *de* or *à*, and the article.

EXAMPLES.

de tout le monde of every body
de tous les hommes of all men
à tout le monde to every body
à tous les hommes to all men
de toutes les vertus of all virtues
à toutes les maisons. to all houses

The hope of success strengthened the cause of virtue
espérance f. art. réussite f. fortifia —f. art. vertu f.
 and weakened the audaciousness of rebellion. Fire of
affaiblit audace f. art. —f. art. Feu m. art.
 imagination, strength of mind, and firmness of soul,
—f. art. force f. art. esprit art. fermeté f. art. âme
 are gifts of nature. We saw with horror that man
des dons m.pl. art. —f. Nous vîmes avec =
 given up to avarice and to voluptuousness. Good cultivation
*livré * art. — à art. volupé f. art. Bonne culture f.*

is that which contributes most to the fertility of the soil. More
est ce qui contribue le plus = *terre f. Plus*
 or less pain is the lot of every body. The history
ou moins de peine *partage m. tout art. monde m.* =
 of man under all the circumstances of life, is the study of the
art. sous toutes art. circonstance f. art. vie f. étude
 wise. Playfulness does not become all ages, nor
*sage m. art. Enjouement m. * ne sied ni à tout art.—m. pl. ni à*
 all dispositions.
art. caractère m. pl.

OF THE ARTICLE.

38. In French, the article always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.

<i>le livre que je cherche</i>	the book which I am looking for
<i>la femme que je vois</i>	the woman whom I see
<i>les hommes qui étudient</i>	the men that study

EXERCISE.

The father and the mother, the brothers and the sisters, the
père m. mère f. frère m. pl. sœurs f. pl. art.
 uncles and the aunts, and several other relations were
oncles m. pl. art. tante f. pl. plusieurs autres parent m. pl. étaient
 present. What we value is health, frugality, liberty,
présens. Ce que nous estimons c'est art. santé f. art. =f. art. =f.
 vigour of mind and body; it is the love of virtue,
art. vigueur f. art. art. corps m. ce amour m. art. f.
 the fear of the gods, fidelity to all mankind,
crainte f. de dieu m. pl. art. =f. envers art. monde m. art.
 moderation in prosperity, fortitude in adversity,
—f. dans art. =f. art. force f. art. =f. art.
 courage, good morals, and the abhorrence of flattery.
—m. art. bonnes mœurs f. pl. horreur f. h. m. art. =f.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

39. *Some*, signifying a little of, a small portion or quantity of, a few, is rendered by *du, de la, des, de l'* before a vowel and *h* not aspirate; but *some* is hardly ever used in English, whereas *du, de la, des* must always be expressed in French.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je mange du pain</i>	I eat bread
<i>Il prend de la peine</i>	He takes pains
<i>Nous mangeons du hachis</i>	We eat some hash
<i>Elle conçoit de la haine</i>	She conceives a hatred
<i>Vous avez de l'amitié</i>	You have friendship

Vous prenez de l'humeur
Nous cueillons des pommes
Ils vendent des oranges

You get into an ill humour
We gather apples
They sell oranges

EXERCISE.

Give me some bread and butter. Offer him some
donnez-moi pain m. pr. part. beurre m. Offrez-lui
 meat. Take some salt. (There is) mustard. We
viande f. Prenez sel m. Voilà pr. art. moutar le f. Nous
 have some girkins. Shall I offer you some fowl? Shall I
avons cornichons pl. Vous offrirai-je poulet m. Vous
 help you to some fruit? I will take (with pleasure) some
*servirai-je * —m. Je prendrai volontiers*
 broth. Bring me some bread. Pour me out some beer.
*bouillon m. Apportez-moi Versez-moi * bière f.*
 Drink some wine. Take some tea. Put (in it) some sugar
Buvez vin m. Prenez thé m. Mettez-y sucre m.
 and milk. I hear some noise. It hails. She
pr. art. lait m. J'entends bruit m. Il tombe grêle f. s. Elle
 has pride. Have you any ink and pens?
a pr. art. orgueil m. Avez-vous pr. art. encre f. pr. art. plumes pl.
 Put some oil and vinegar in the sallad.
Mettez huile, h m. pr. art. vinaigre m. dans salade f.
 Eat some lobster. He has received some gold and
Mangez pr. art. homard m. h. asp. Il a reçu or m.
 silver.
pr. art. argent m.

40. *Du, de la, des de l'* are not used generally after a negation, nor before a noun preceded by an adjective. In those cases, *de* alone is used without any distinction of gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne mange pas de pain I do not eat bread
Il ne prend jamais de peine he takes no pains
Ils vendent de bonnes oranges they sell good oranges

EXERCISE.

Do not give me any bread. We have good girkins. I will not
Ne me donnez pas avons bons Je ne prendrai pas
 take broth. We drink excellent wine. She has no pride.
bouillon Nous buvons ——— vin Elle n'a pas
 Have you no ink? Do you not take salt? We never drink wine.
Ne prenez-vous pas jamais
 Do you never eat fruit?
ne mangez-vous jamais

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

41. The adjective is a word, which is added to a substantive to express its quality, as,

bon père	good father	bonne mère	good mother
beau livre	fine book	belle image	fine image

These words *bon*, *bonne*, *beau*, *belle*, are adjectives, because they express the qualities of *père*, *mère*, *livre*, *image*.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, or the word *chose*. Thus, *habile*, skilful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say *personne habile*, skilful person, *chose agréable*, agreeable thing.

In French, the adjective agrees in *gender* and *number* with the substantive to which it relates. This difference of *gender* and *number* is generally marked by the termination of the adjective.

42. OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

All adjectives ending, in the singular, in *e* mute, are of *both* genders.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Un homme aimable</i>	An amiable man
<i>Une femme aimable</i>	An amiable woman

Adjectives ending, in the masculine, in *e*, *i*, *u*, *t*, *d*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

m.	f.	
prudent	prudente	prudent
sensé	sensée	sensible
poli	polie	polite
tortu	tortue	crooked
instruit	instruite	well-informed
grand	grande	large

Adjectives in *-el*, *-eil*, *-ien*, *-on*, *-et*, *-as*, *-ès*, *-ais*, *-os*, *-ot*, *-ul*, *-il*, form their feminine, by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>				
cruel	cruelle	cruel	=	50	} of each termination.
pareil	pareille	like	=	3	
ancien	ancienne	ancient	=	80	
bon	bonne	good	=	18	
net	nette	clean	=	34	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
bas	basse	low	épais	épaisse	thick
cas	casse	cracked	métis	métisse	mongrel
gras	grasse	fat	gros	grosse	big
las	lasse	tired	sot	sotte	silly
expres	expresse	express	vieillot	vieillotte	oldish
profès	professe	professed	nul	nulle	no
		} monk or nun	gentil	gentille	genteel

Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *ve*.

EXAMPLES.

bref	brève	short
actif	active	active
naïf	naïve	ingenuous
neuf	neuve	new

Adjectives ending in *-x* change *-x* into *se*.

EXAMPLES.

honteux	honteuse	ashamed
vertueux	vertueuse	virtuous
jaloux	jalouse	jealous

Adjectives ending in *eur*, derived from verbs, and which might be more properly called substantives, were it not that they have a feminine, form that feminine in various manners; they are few in number, and change as follows:

EUR, EUSE.

complimenteur	—teuse	fond of compliments
connaisseur	—sseuse	connaisseur, judge
demandeur	—deuse	one who asks
flatteur	—tteuse	flattering
menteur	—teuse	deceiving
parleur	—leuse	talker
rêveur	—veuse	dreamer
moqueur	—ueuse	sneering
trompeur	—peuse	deceiver
etc., etc.		

EUR, ERESSE.

baillieur	bailleresse	donor
demandeur	—deresse	plaintiff
défendeur	—deresse	defendant

enchanteur	—teresse	charmer
pêcheur	—cheresse	sinner
vengeur	—geresse	avenger
	etc. etc.	

EUR, RICE.

accusateur	—trice	accuser
acteur	—trice	actor
bienfaiteur	—trice	benefactor
admirateur	—trice	admirer
séducteur	—trice	seducer
protecteur	—trice	protector
conservateur	—trice	preserver
conducteur	—trice	leader
ambassadeur	—trice	ambassador

Auteur, docteur, imprimeur, professeur, have no feminine.

All real adjectives ending in *eur*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e*; they are about twelve in number: *antérieur, citérieur, extérieur, intérieur, inférieur, meilleur, mineur, majeur, postérieur, supérieur, ultérieur, prieur*.

EXERCISE.

She is decent. This house is well situated. This pear
Elle — *Cette maison f. bien situé* *poire f.*
 is too ripe. She is tall and well formed. This story is
trop mûr *grand* *bien fait* *histoire f.*
 very entertaining. This person is very volatile. This mountain
très-amusant *personne f. bien léger* *montagne f.*
 is steep. This road is not very safe. The door is not
escarpé *route f.* *sûr* *porte f.*
 open. This room is dark. This street is too narrow. It is
ouvert *chambre f. obscur* *rue f.* *étroit* *Ce*
 is an ancient custom. She has carnation lips. His
coutume f. *a vermeil 2 art. lèvres f. pl. 1.* *Sa*
 memory will be immortal. His manners are natural. The
=f. sera *—tel* *Ses manières f. pl. naïf*
 engagement was warm. (That is) an original thought. This
action f. fut vif *Voilà* *neuf 2 pensé f. 1.*
 cloth is the best of all. These are delusive promises.
éttoffe f. meilleur f. pl. *trompeur 2 promesse f. pl. 1.*
 He seduces by his fawning manners. The delightful valley
séduit par flatteur 2 manières f. pl. 1. *délicieux vallée f.*
 of Tempe is in Thessaly. The grass is very thick. The soup
Tempé dans art. = f. *herbe f.* *soupe f.*
 is too fat. It is a foolish undertaking. This water is not clean.
sot entreprise f. *Cette eau f.* *net*



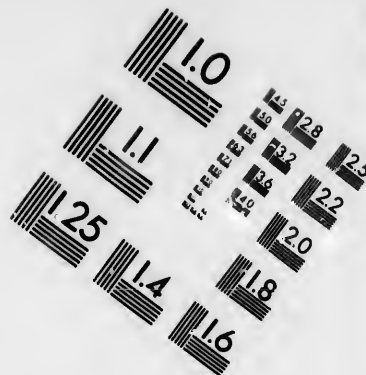
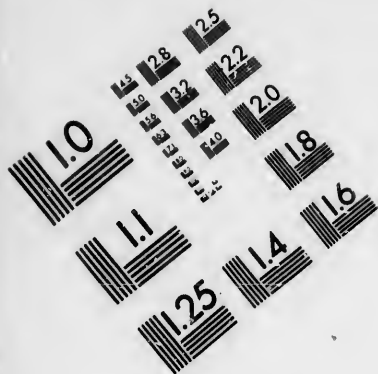
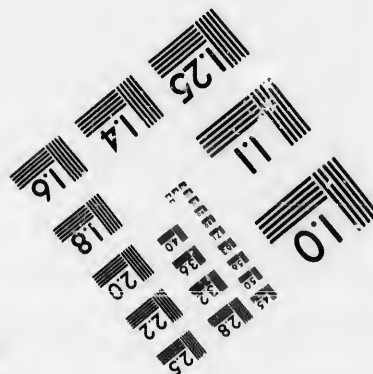
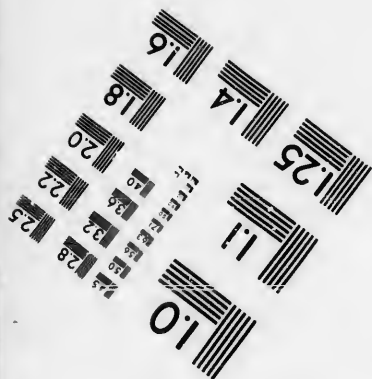
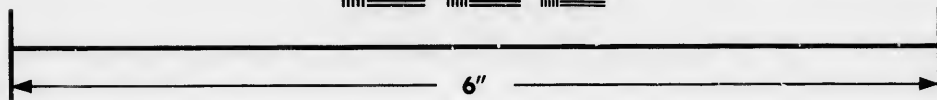
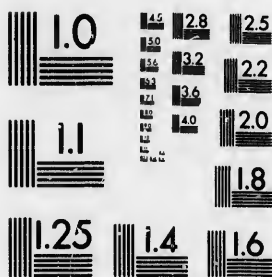


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

It is a very silly story. The law is express upon that point.
 C'est *histoire* f. *loi* f. *sur ce* — m.
 The avenging thunder smote that impious wretch. He
vengeur 2 *foudre* f. 1. *frappa* cet *impie* *
 (held out to us) a protecting hand.
tendit 2 nous 1. — leur 2 main f. 1.

OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

43. There are some adjectives which are irregular in the formation of their feminine. They will be found nearly all contained in the following list :

m.	f.	m.	f.
*beau	belle	*fou	folle
†bel	fine	†fol	mad
*nouveau	nouvelle	*mou	molle
*nouvel	new	†mol	soft
*vieux	vieille		
†vieil	old		
m.	f.	m.	f.
blanc	blanche	fauz	fausse
franc	franche	rouz	fausse
frais	fraiche	douz	douce
Grec	Grecque	aigre-douz	aigre-douce
public	publique	tiers	tierce,
caduc	caduque	tors	torse or
Turc	Turque	torte	twisted
long	longue	coi	coile or coie
benin	benigne	favori	still, snug
malin	maligne	jumeau	favorite
sec	sèche	traître	traitresse
			traitor

The following adjectives ending in *et*, not only form their feminine by the addition of *e* mute, but require the grave accent on the penultimate *e*.

m.	f.
concret	concrète
d'scret	discrète
indiscret	indiscrète
inquiet	inquiète
complet	complète
incomplet	incomplète
replet	replète
suret	surète
prêt	prête

Préfix m. makes *préfixe f.* and is the only adjective in *-x*, which retains this letter and follows the SECOND RULE.

* *Beau, nouveau, vieux, fou, mou*, before a consonant or *h* not aspirate,
 † Before a vowel and *h* mute.

Some adjectives have no feminine, as *bisché, dispose, fat, paillet*, etc. ; others have no masculine, as *blette*, etc.

SINGULARITY OF DEMI, FEU, NU.

43. *Demi, nu*, have a peculiarity which must be noticed. When they precede the noun, they are undeclined ; when they follow it, they agree with it.

une demi-livre	half a pound	
une demi-heure	half an hour	
un demi-cent	half a hundred	
une livre et demie	one pound and a half	
deux heures et demie	half past two	
trois cents et demi	three hundred and a half	
nu-pieds	les pieds nus	bare feet
nu-tête	la tête nue	bare head

Feu is undeclined when preceding the article and a possessive pronoun ; it is declined when following them.

Feu la reine	la feue reine	the late queen
--------------	---------------	----------------

The adjectives *bas, bon, court*, etc. being used with a verb, become adverbs, and are not declined.

ces fleurs sentent bon	these flowers smell nice
elle parle bas	she speaks low
ils demeurèrent court	they stood short
elle se fait fort d'y aller	she takes upon herself to go.

REMARKS ON TOUT, QUELQUE.

44. *Tout, all*, means also *every*, in a sort of distributive sense.

je vous souhaite toute espèce de bonheur, I wish you every happiness.

Tout is very frequently prefixed to an adjective in the sense of *quite, entirely*, and is, consequently, undeclined.

ces enfants, tout aimables qu'ils sont, me fatiguent	amiable as these children are, they fatigue me
ils étaient tout étourdis	they were quite astounded

But it has this peculiarity that, when placed before an adjective feminine, beginning with a consonant, it is declined.

c'est une tête toute vide	it is a head quite empty
elles étaient toutes tremblantes	they trembled all over

Quelque, before a noun plural, qualified or not by an adjective, takes *an s*.

quelques richesses que vous ayez, ne soyez pas prodigue. *whatever be your riches do not be lavish.*

quelques bonnes actions que vous fassiez, soyez modeste. *whatever good actions you do, be modest.*

Quelque before an adjective, means *however*, and is not declined,

quelque riches qu'ils soient, ils ne donnent rien. *however rich they be, they give nothing.*

Quel que, quelle que, quels que, quelles que; here, *quel* is a sort of pronoun adjective which must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, and which is the subject of the verb following :

quels que soient vos desseins, et quelles que soient vos vues. *whatever be your designs and your views.*

quelles que soient votre naissance et votre fortune. *whatever be your birth and fortune.*

Observe that the verb is in the subjunctive mood after *quelque, quelques, quel que.*

EXERCISE.

He drank a glass of brandy quite pure. My sisters were
but verre m. eau de vie f. — étaient.
quite put out. Hope, deceitful as it is, leads us to the
déconcerté art. espérance trompeur f. nous mène
 end of life through a pleasant path. She was quite
fin f. art. vie par agréable 2 chemin m. 1. fut
 astonished when she saw us. Whatever advantages you
étonnée vit 2 nous 1. avantage que vous
 have (do not make) too sure of success. (I will not have
ayez ne soyez pas art. succès m. Je ne veux pas
 her), however beautiful she may be. You must conquer your
d'elle jolie qu'elle soit il faut vaincre
 inclinations whatever they be. (Let us know) your choice
pénchants m. soient faites-nous savoir choix m.
 whatever it may be. That soup is very good. There is no truth
 soupe f. Il n'y a nul vérité f.
 in all that. It is in the newest fashion. It is a fine statue
dans tout cela. à nouveau mode f. beau = f.
 He lives in a state of luxurious idleness. This wax is not
*Il vit dans * * mou oisiveté f. cire f.*
 very white. She is as fresh as a rose. The paint on that
** comme — f. peinture f.*
 wainscot is not dry. His answer is a mere evasion. The
lambris m. réponse f. franc défaite f.
 thing is public. That plant possesses a pernicious property.
chose f. herbe f. a malin 2 qualité f. 1.
 She is of a benevolent disposition. This woman is jealous and
*a * benin 2 humeur f. femme f. jaloux*
deceitful. His temper is gentle. This colour is too red.
faux Son humeur f. doux couleur f. trop roux

The
 le
 les
 C
 Cou
 Do
 Ne
 OF

4
 adje
 ral
 term
 form
 bles
 gran
 past,

1.
 termi
 2.
 beau
 Th
 equal
 no p
 conju
 tral,
 some
 Ca
 nal,
 used
 follow
 Am
 have
 Pas
 4.
 tice,
 but th
 retain
 makes

These old clothes are good for nothing. He ran bare
hardes f. pl. ne à rien il courait nu
 legged in the streets. Give me a guinea and a half.
*les jambes f. par Donnez-moi guinée f. **
 Cut half a yard. The late princess was idolized.
Coupez en aune f. — cesse chéri
 Do not stand in the cold air (without your hat).
Ne restez pas art. tête f. nu à l'air.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

45. GENERAL RULE. The formation of the plural in adjectives follows the same rules as those given for the plural of substantives. All adjectives having the feminine termination in *e* mute, or ending in *e, i, u, c, d, g, f, n, t*, form their plural by the addition of an *s*, as: *aimable, aimables; docile, dociles; poli, polis; goulu, goulus; grand, grands; long, longs*. This rule applies to the participles past, *aimé, aimés; reçu, reçus*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *-s*, or *-x*, do not change their termination in the plural, as *gros, gras, hideux*.

2. Those ending in *-au*, take *x* in the plural, as *beau, beaux, nouveau, nouveaux*.

Those in *-al*, change this termination into *aux*, as *égal, equal, égaux; général, généraux*; but most of these have no plural masculine, as *amical, austral, boréal, canonical, conjugal, diamétral, fatal, filial, final, frugal, jovial, lustral, matinal, naval, pastoral, pectoral, spécial, vénal*, and some others.

Canonical, clérICAL, conjectural, colossal, déloyal, diacONal, ducal, électoral, équinoxial, final, fiscal, are seldom used in the plural masculine; wherever they are, they follow the general rule.

Amical, automnal, colossal, frugal, glacial, jovial, total, have no plural masculine.

Pascal makes *pascals*, but *fatals* ought to be avoided.

4. Polysyllables ending in *-nt*, according to general practice, may drop the *t* in the plural, as *excellent, excellens*; but the Academy keep the *t*, (see page 70). Monosyllables retain it, as *lent, slow, lents*; but the adjective *tout*, all, makes *tous*.

EXERCISE.

They are *envious* and *jealous*. Those fowls are large and
 Its = *jaloux* poulet m. pl. *gros*
 fat. Owls are *frightful* birds. (These are)
gras art. *Hibou* m. pl. *des hideux* 2 oiseau m. pl. 1. *Voilà*
beautiful jewels. The two new operas have succeeded.
de beau bijou m. pl. *deux nouveau* — m. pl. *ont réussi*
 Nien are only equal (in the) infirmities of nature. The
 art. 2 ne 1 que 4 égal 3 par les = art.—f.
 general officers are assembled. This fruit is excellent.
 — 2 officers m. pl. 1. — *blé* ces — m. pl. *sont* —
 His improvement is slow, but solid. All his friends have
 Ses progrès, m. pl. *sont* *lent* *solide* ses *ami* m. pl.
 been very glad to see him. Those ladies are tired with
été bien *aise de* *voir* 2 le 1 *ces* *dame* f. pl. *las de*
 walking. You have powerful enemies; but their efforts
marcher Vous avez de *puissant* ennemi m. pl. *mais leurs* — m. pl.
 will be vain and useless. The four cardinal points are the
seront — *inutile* *quatre* — 2 *point* pl. 1
 east, west, south, and north.
orient, m. art. *occident* m. art. *midi* m. art. *nord* m.

OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

46. Grammarians commonly reckon *three* degrees of comparison; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective expressing the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution, as *beau*, *belle*.

EXAMPLES.

A child *gentle*, *amiable*, and *docile*, is beloved by every body.
enfant m. *doux* *aimable* — *aimé* *de tout le monde*
 An *ingenious* candour, an *amiable* simplicity and a *lively*
 — *nu* 2 = f. 1 = f. *piquant* 2
 artlessness are the charm of youth. The sight of an *agreeable*
naïveté f. l. *charme* m. art. *jeunesse* f. *vue* f. *agréable*
 landscape is a *varied* and rapid source of *delightful* sensations.
paysage m. *varié* 2 *rapide* 3—f. l. *délicieux* 2 —f. pl. 1.

47. The *comparative* is so called, because it draws a comparison between two or many objects. When two things are compared, the one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other; hence three sorts of comparison, that of *superiority*, of *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The *comparative of superiority* is formed by putting *plus*, *more*, before the adjective, and *than* is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La rose est plus belle que la violette. The rose is more beautiful than the violet.

By, in comparison before a noun of number, is rendered by *de*.

He is taller by two inches. *Il est plus grand de deux pouces.*

EXERCISE.

The republic of Athens was more illustrious than that of
république f. Athènes a été illustre celle

Lacedemon. Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil;
Lacédémone Homère était peut-être grand génie m. Virgile

but Virgil had a more delicate and more refined taste than Homer.
mais a eu fin 2 délicat 3 goût m. 1. h m.

Milton appears (to me) more sublime than all the other epic
paraît 2 me 1 autre 1 épique 3

poets. The river is deeper by four feet.
poète m.pl. 2. rivière f. profond

The comparative of inferiority is formed by prefixing *moins*, less, to the adjective, and rendering also *than* by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La violette est moins belle que la rose The violet is less beautiful than the rose

EXERCISE.

Shipwreck and death are less fatal than the pleasures which
art. Naufrage m. art. mort f. funestes plaisirs m. qui

attack virtue. The violet is less brilliant to the eye than the
attaquent art. f. f. brillant yeux

lily, a true emblem of modesty and of pride
*lis m. * véritable 2 emblème m. 1. art. = f. de art. orgueil m.*

Autumn is less varied than spring, but it is richer:
art. Automne f. varié art. printemps m. elle riche.

In the comparative of equality the first *as* is rendered by *aussi* in affirmative, and by *si*, in negative phrases; the second *as* is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose the tulip is as beautiful as the rose
La tulipe n'est pas si belle que la rose the tulip is not so beautiful as the rose

EXERCISE.

Pope's images are as perfect as his style is harmonious.
De Pope 2 art. —f.pl. 1. parfait son —m. =

Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as
art. Délicatesse f. art. goût m. don m. art. —f. rare

true genius. The love of our neighbour is as necessary in
 art. *vrai génie m.* *amour du * prochain* = *dans*
 society for the happiness of life, as in christianity for
 art. = *pour* *bonheur m.* art. *vie f.* art. — *nisme m.*
 eternal salvation. It is as easy to do good as to do
 art. — *nel 2 salut m. 1.* *aisé de faire art. bien m. de*
 evil. Paris is not so large as London. James will not be
 art. *mal m.* — *m.* *grand* *Londres* *Jacques ne sera pas*
 so rich as his brother.
riche son frère.

Meilleur, pire, moindre are the comparatives of *bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, which are irregular in the formation of the degrees. Thus :

<i>bon</i>	good	<i>meilleur</i>	better	<i>le meilleur</i>	the best
<i>mauvais</i>	bad	<i>pire</i>	worse	<i>le pire</i>	the worst
<i>petit</i>	small	<i>moindre</i>	smaller	<i>le moindre</i>	the smallest

48. N.B. As most beginners are apt to confound these comparative adjectives with the comparative adverbs, *MIEUX*, *PIS*, and *MOINS*, because they are generally rendered by the same English words *better*, *worse* and *less*, it may be advisable to subjoin here these comparative adverbs with their positives, that the difference of meaning may serve as a distinction.

ADJECTIVES.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better, is the comparative of <i>bon</i> , good, and is used instead of <i>plus bon</i> , which is never said.
	<i>Pire</i> signifies <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse, or more wicked, and is used instead of this.
	<i>Moindre</i> means <i>plus petit</i> , less or smaller, and is used instead of these terms.
ADVERBS.	<i>Mieux</i> ,* better, is the comparative of <i>bien</i> , well, and is used instead of <i>plus bien</i> , more well, which is said in neither language.
	<i>Pis</i> * is the comparative of <i>mal</i> , badly, and is used for <i>plus mal</i> , worse, which, however, may be used.
	<i>Moins</i> is the comparative of <i>peu</i> , little, and is used for <i>plus peu</i> , which is never said.

EXAMPLES.

Ce fruit-là est bon, mais celui-ci est meilleur	<i>That fruit is good, but this is better</i>
Sa condition est mauvaise, mais elle a été pire	<i>His condition is bad, but it has been worse</i>

* There are some instances of *pis* and *mieux* used adjectively, but this is not the place to mention them.

Ne faut pas confondre d'unis particuliers, par exemple de plus

Ma dépense est petite, mais la vôtre est moindre
 Il se conduit bien, mais elle se conduit encore mieux
 Il se portait mal, mais il est pis que jamais
 Je parle peu, vous parlez encore moins.

*My expense is small, but yours is smaller
 He behaves well, but she behaves still better
 He was badly, but he is worse than ever
 I speak little, you speak still less*

EXERCISE.

His reasoning is not better than yours. Your style is a great deal better than that of his brother. The wall is less than that of the next wall. This column is less than the other in height and thickness. The remedy is worse than the disease. Your horse is worse than mine.

Son raisonnement m. le vôtre Votre — m. de beaucoup celui son épaisseur f. ce mur m. celle voisin 2 1 Cette colonne f. autre en hauteur f. en grosseur f. remède m. mal m. cheval m. le mien.

49. The adjective is in the *superlative* degree, when it expresses the quality in a high or in its highest state: hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative*.

50. The *superlative absolute* is formed by putting *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, before the adjective; it is called *absolute*, because it does not express any comparison with, or relation to, any other objects.

EXAMPLE.

London est une très-belle ville London is a very fine city

REMARK. The adverbs *extrêmement*, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely, are likewise marks of the superlative absolute.

EXAMPLE.

Cet homme est extrêmement savant That man is extremely learned
 Dieu est infiniment heureux God is infinitely blessed

EXERCISE.

That landscape is very diversified, very extensive, and infinitely agreeable on every side. The Alps are very high and very steep. The style of Fénelon is very rich, and very harmonious, but it is

*Ce paysage m. varié étendu
 agréable de toutes parts f. pl. haut escarpé
 —m. — il*

sometimes prolix; that of Bessuet is *extremely sublime*, but it is *quelquefois prolix* celui *élevé*

sometimes harsh and unpolished.

dur

rude

51. The *superlative relative* is formed by prefixing the article *le, la, les*, according to the gender of the noun, to the comparative, and is called *relative* because it expresses comparison with, or relation to, another subject.

The article *le, la, les* is not used in the superlative degree when a possessive pronoun precedes the noun.

EXAMPLES.

Londres est la plus belle des villes *London is the finest of cities*
 Je préfère une maison de campagne au plus beau palais *I prefer a country house to the finest palace*
 C'est mon plus grand ennemi *He is my greatest enemy*
 Voici nos meilleurs voisins *These are our best neighbours.*

Plus and *moins*, with the article, are repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE.

The most beautiful comparison that there is perhaps in any *beau comparaison f. que il y ait peut-être dans aucun*
 language is that which Pope has drawn from the Alps, in his Essay *langue f. celle que tiré f. de Alpes, dans son essai*
 on Criticism. *The most able men* are not always the most *sur art. critique f. habile gens m. pl. toujours*
virtuous. The most ancient and most general of all kinds of *vertueux. f.—me f. ant. espèce f. pl.*
 idolatry was the worship rendered to the sun. *The least excusable* *= était culte m. rendu soleil m. —*
 of all errors is that which is wilful. *I will show you*
art.—f. celle qui volontaire. Je montrerai 2 vous 1
 my prettiest flowers. *These are her richest gifts. I have not*
mes joli fleur f. précieux don m. Je ai
 read his best work.
lu son ouvrage m.

CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

52. The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

Le bon père	<i>The good father</i>
La bonne mère	<i>The good mother</i>
De beaux jardins	<i>Fine gardens</i>
De belles promenades	<i>Fine walks</i>

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular; *beaux* is in the masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine, and plural, etc.

EXERCISE.

These hills are covered with trees loaded with
 ses coteau m. pl. couvert de arbre m. pl. chargé de
 fruit, already ripe. A pure stream rolls its limpid
 —no. pl. déjà mûr clair ruisseau m. roule son limpide 2
 water through the midst of meadows enamelled with
 cristal m. 1 à milieux m. prairie f. pl. émaillée de
 flowers. (Every thing) interests the heart in this abode
 fleur f. pl. tout intéresse cœur m. ce séjour m.
 which is full of charms. Fly, inconsiderate youth,
 * * plein attire m. pl. Fuyez, —dérè 2 jeunesse f. 1
 fly from the enchanting allurements of a vain world; its
 * —leur 2 attrait 1 —2 monde m. 1. ses
 perfidious sweets are a slow poison, which (would destroy
 —de 2 douceur f. pl. 1. lent 2 —m. 1. qui détruirait
 in your soul the noble enthusiasm of goodness, and
 dans âme —enthousiasme m. art. bien m.
 precious seeds of sublime virtues.
 = germe m. art. —2. vertu 1.

53. When the adjective relates to two substantives singular, of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender.

EXAMPLE.

Le roi et le berger sont égaux The king and the shepherd are
 après la mort equal after death.
 Ma mère et ma sœur sont vives My mother and sister are quick

EXERCISE.

Uprightness and piety are much esteemed, even by the
 art. droiture f. art. piété f. très-estimé même de
 wicked. Man, in the most elevated rank, and
 méchant pl. art. dans (le plus élevé) 2 art. rang m. 1
 man in the most obscure situation are equally precious
 art. obscur 2 art. état m. 1 également =
 in the eyes of God. Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated
 à m. pl. célèbre
 among the nations of Asia.
 parmi peuples art.

54. When the two substantives, to which the adjective relates, are of different genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural.

EXAMPLE.

Mon père et ma mère sont contents. *My father and mother are contented.*

EXERCISE.

His probity and disinterestedness are known (every where.)
 = f. son désintéressement m. connu partout
 The love of life, and the fear of death, are
 amour m. art. vie f. crainte f. art. mort f.
 natural to man. ignorance and self-love are
 — rel art. art. — f. art. amour-propre m.
 equally presumptuous. My sister and brother were very alien-
 présumptueux. Ma f. mon m. ont été =
 tive to the instructions of their masters.
 — leur maître m. pl.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

55. Numbers are divided into five classes, viz: cardinal, ordinal, collective, distributive, and proportional.

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.
1 un, uno	<i>premier</i>	<i>first</i> unité, unit
2 deux	<i>deuxième, second</i>	2d couple, pair, couple
3 trois	<i>troisième</i>	3rd trio
4 quatre	<i>quatrième</i>	4th deux couples, two couples
5 cinq	<i>cinquième</i>	5th
6 six	<i>sixième</i>	6th { demi-douzaine, half a dozen
7 sept	<i>septième</i>	7th
8 huit	<i>huitième</i>	8th huitaine, week
9 neuf	<i>neuvième</i>	9th { neuvaïne, nine days of prayer
10 dix	<i>dixième</i>	10th dizaine, half a score
11 onze	<i>onzième</i>	11th
12 douze	<i>douzième</i>	12th douzaine, dozen
13 treize	<i>treizième</i>	13th
14 quatorze	<i>quatorzième</i>	14th
15 quinze	<i>quinzième</i>	15th quinzaine, fortnight, etc.
16 seize	<i>seizième</i>	16th
17 dix-sept	<i>dix-septième</i>	17th
18 dix-huit	<i>dix-huitième</i>	18th
19 dix-neuf	<i>dix-neuvième</i>	19th

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLEC- TIVE NOUNS.
20 vingt	vingtième	20th vingtaine, a score
21 vingt-et-un	vingt-et-unième	21st
22 vingt-deux	vingt-deuxième, etc.	22nd
30 trente	trentième	30th { trentaine, a score and a half
31 { trente-et- un, etc.	{ trente-unième	31st
40 quarante	quarantième	40th quarantaine, two score
41 { quarante- et-un, etc.	{ quarante-unième	41st
50 cinquante	cinquantième	50th { cinquantaine, two score and a half
51 { cinquante- et-un, etc.	{ cinquante-unième	51st
60 soixante	soixantième	60th soixantaine, three score
61 { soixante-et- un, etc.	{ soixante-unième	61st
70 soixante-dix	soixante-dixième	70th
71 { soixante- onze	{ soixante-onzième	71st
72 { soixante- douze, etc.	{ soixante-douzième	72d
80 quatre-vingts	quatre-vingtième	80th — four score
81 { quatre- vingt-un, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-un- ième	81st
90 quatre- vingt-dix	{ quatre-vingt-dix- ième	90th
91 { quatre- vingt- onze, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-onz- ième	91st
100 cent	centième	100th 1 centaine, one hundred
101 cent-un, etc.	cent-un-ième, etc.	101st
200 deux-cents	deux-centième	200th 2 centaines, 2 hundred
1000 { mille	millième	1000th 1 millier, 1 thousand
2000 { deux mille, etc.	{ deux millième, etc.	2000th { 2 milliers, 2 thousand
10,000 { dix mille	dix-millième	10,000th 1 myriade, 1 myriad
1,000,000 { mille fois mille	{ million-ième, millionth	1 million 1 million

Un milliard or billion, a thousand millions, un trillion, etc.

Cent takes an *s* when immediately before the noun ; it does not take it when followed by another number : *trois cents hommes ; trois cent cinquante hommes*.

Mille never takes the *s* in the plural : *deux mille hommes*.

In dates, *mille* is contracted into *mil* : *mil huit cent trente-cinq*.

There are many other numerical expressions used in poetry, music, games, etc. : as, *distique, tercet, quatrain, sixain, huitain*, etc. *solo, duo, trio, quatuor, quinque, quinte, octave*, etc. *beset, sonnez*, etc.

Un millier is very often employed for one thousand weight, but *quintal* is never used except in the sense of one hundred weight.

The distributive numbers are those which express the different parts of a whole : as, *la moitié*, the half ; *le quart*, the quarter ; *un cinquième*, a fifth, etc.

The proportional denote the progressive increase of things : as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the treble ; *le centuple*, a hundred fold, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

56. A *pronoun* is a word substituted in the place of a noun.

There are several kinds of pronouns, as the *personal possessive, relative, absolute, demonstrative* and *indefinite*.

SECTION I.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

57. *Personal pronouns* are used in the places of persons and things, to avoid their being repeated.

58. There are three *persons* : the first who speaks, the second who is spoken to, and the third is the person or thing spoken of.

Singular.

Subject.	je mo me moi moi de moi <i>for à moi I</i> <i>.. moi to me</i> <i>.. à moi me</i> <i>.. moi to me</i> <i>— of me</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>je loue Dieu</i> <i>il me donne</i> <i>il me blesse</i> <i>donnez-moi</i> <i>aïd-z-moi</i> <i>il parle de moi</i>	<i>I praise God.</i> <i>he gives me, or to me</i> <i>he hurts me</i> <i>give me, or to me</i> <i>help me</i> <i>he speaks of me.</i>
Object.			

Plural.

Subject.	nous	we	nous louons Dieu	we praise God
Object.	{ nous for à nous to us		il nous donne	he gives us
	{ nous .. nous us		il nous blesse	he hurts us
	{ de nous .. — of us		il parle de nous	he speaks of us

They are both masculine and feminine; that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

59. In general, *je* and *me* are put before the verb; *moi*, *de moi*, *à moi* after it, and *nous* before or after, as the case requires.

EXERCISE.

I cast my eyes upon the objects which surrounded me, and
portai vue f. s. sur objet environnaient me
 saw with pleasure that all was calm and tranquil. Do you not
*je vis avec que était calme tranquille * 3 1-4*
 see in all the features of my father that he is satisfied with
voyez 2 dans trait m. pl. que content de
 me? We have told the truth. What were they saying of us?
*moi avons dit vérité f. Que * on 2 disait 1*
 If we desire to be happy, we must not deviate from the
Si désirons de ne devons pas nous écarter de
 path of virtue.
sentier m. art.

60. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Subject.	tu	thou	tu crains Dieu	thou fearest God
	{ te for à toi to thee		il te parle	he speaks to thee
	{ te .. toi thee		il te voit	he sees thee
Object.	{ toi .. à toi to thee		donne-toi la peine	give thyself the trouble
	{ toi .. toi thee		habille-toi	dress thyself
	{ de toi .. — of thee		nous parlons de toi	we speak of thee

Plural.

Subject.	vous	ye, or you	vous louez Dieu	you praise God
Object.	{ vous for à vous to you		il vous parle	he speaks to you
	{ vous .. vous you		il vous respecte	he respects you
	{ de vous .. — of you		il parle de vous	he speaks of you

In general, *tu* and *te* are put before the verb; *toi*, *de toi*, *à toi*, are placed after; *vous* is placed either before or after, according as the case requires.

REMARK. Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu*: as, *vous êtes bien bon* you are very good, for *tu es bien bon*.

EXERCISE.

Thou art greater than I; and from thee I have (at once)
es moi toi ai en même temps 2
 learnt humility and wisdom. I (was telling) you that
appris 1 art. = f. art. sagesse f. disais le que
 dancing is to the body what taste is to the mind. You have
art. danse f. m. ce que art. goût m. esprit m. avez 2
 shown us great talents; when (will you show) us great virtues
montré 3 1 de —m. quand montrerez-vous 2 1 de f. pl.
 How amiable you are! How good you are to have thought of
Que 3 1 êtes 2 3 1 2 de vous être occupé
 us! (It was said) of you the other day, that you intended to
On disait autre jour m. vous vous proposiez de
 spend a winter in London (in order to) see every thing curious
passer m. à —dres pour voir tout ce =6
 which that city presents.
que 1 cette 2 ville 3 offre 4 de 5.

61. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

Singular.

Sub.	{	il m. he	il perd son temps	he loses his time
		elle f. she	elle travaille	she is always at work
Obj.	{	lui m. for à lui to him	dites-lui que	tell him that I
			je lui parlerai	will speak to him
	{	lui f. .. à elle to her	dites-lui que	tell her that
			vous lui donnerez	you will give her
	{	de lui of him	il parle de lui	he speaks of him
		.. d'elle of her	il parle d'elle	he speaks of her
	{	lui m. le him	je ne connais que lui de	I know but him capable
		.. avec lui with him		
	{	le m. for lui him	je le méprise	I despise him
		la f. .. elle her	je la respecte	I respect her
{	{	elle f. elle her	Il ne connaît qu'elle	he know but her
			venez avec elle	come with her
		le m. for cela it	je ne le savais pas	I did not know it.

Plural.

Sub.	{	ils m. they	ils chantent	{ they sing
		elles f. they	elles rient	{ (gentlemen) they laugh (ladies)

Obj.	leur m. for à eux to them	{ payez-leur ce que vous leur devez	{ pay them what you owe to them, (to men)
	leur f. for à elles to them	{ dites-leur que je désire leur parler	{ tell them that I wish to speak to them (to ladies)
	les m. for eux them	{ vous les trouverez	{ you will find them (men)
	les f. for elles them	il les admire	he admires them (ladies)
	eux m. . . . them	{ je ne vois qu'eux	{ I see but them (gentlemen)
	elles f. . . . them	{ allez sans eux il ne connaît qu'elles	{ go without them he knows but them (ladies)
		partez sans elles	go without them

Il, ils, le, les masculine, *elle, elles, la, les* feminine are used in speaking of things as well as of persons; but *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, lui, leur* are not. See Y, em. No. 64, 65.

62. When the verb is interrogative, the pronoun, which is its subject, is always put after it; the interrogative *do*, used in English, has no equivalent in French, and is consequently not expressed.

Singular

Subject	{ je	I	dois-je payer ?	must I pay ?
	{ tu	thou	as-tu dit ?	hast thou said ?
	{ il	he	chante-t-il bien ?	does he sing well ?
	{ elle	she	travaille-t-elle ?	does she work ?

Plural.

Subject	{ nous	we	irons-nous ?	shall we go ?
	{ vous	you	viendrez-vous ?	will you come ?
	{ ils m.	they	chantent-ils ?	do they sing ?
	{ elles f.	they	travaillent-elles ?	do they work ?

EXERCISE.

He loved them because they were gentle, attentive, and grateful.
aimait m. parce que doux = reconnaissant

He (was saying) (to them,) do you not know that the nature of
*disait * 3 1-4 savez 2 que propre m.*

merit is to excite envy ? She often exhorted me to
art. mérite m. de exciter art. envie f. souvent 2 exhortait 1

the study the most useful, that of the human heart. They make us
étude f. utile celle 2 m. 1. font

love virtue, more by their examples than by their words,
aimer art. f. par leur exemple parole f. pl.

What has been said of them ? Did they speak of them ?
*Que 1. on 3. a-t-2 * dit eux * on 2 parlait 1 elle*

Do you not see *her*? With what pleasure she plays! Look at
 * 4 1-5 *voyez* 3 2 *quel* *joue* *Regardez*
 that magnificent building, it unites gracefulness to beauty.
ce *magnifique* *bâtiment* *m.* *réunit* *art.* *grâce* *f.* *art.* *beauté* *f.*
 Ignorance is vain, it sees difficulties in nothing. Do not judge
art.—*f.* *vain* *ne voit de* = *à rien* *ne jugez pas*
 from appearances, they are deceitful. Take one of these
sur art. *apparences* *f.* *trompeur* *Prenez* *ces*
 roses, they smell so sweet.
 —*f.* *sentent* *si bon.*

63. REFLECTED AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

		Singular.			Examples.
Object.	{	soi	{ with a prepo- sition	{ chacun tire à soi	{ every one draws to himself
		soi	{ governed by the verb	{ l'égoïsme fait qu'on ne voit que soi	{ selfishness makes a person- see none but himself
Object.	{	se	for à soi, à lui- même	{ il se donne des louanges	{ he gives himself praises
		se	.. à elle- même	{ elle se fait illusion	{ she imposes on her- self
		se	.. soi, or lui- même	{ il se perd	{ he ruins himself
		se	.. soi, or elle- même	{ elle se flatte	{ she flatters herself
Object.	{	se	for à eux-mêmes	{ ils s'attribuent la gloire, etc	{ they attribute to themselves the glory of, etc.
		se	.. à elles-mêmes	{ elles se prescrivent pour règle de etc.	{ they prescribe to themselves as rule to, etc.
		se	.. l'un à l'autre	{ ils s'entredonnent, ou se font des ca- deaux	{ they exchange gifts
		se	.. eux-mêmes	{ ils se sont désho- norés	{ they have dis- graced them- selves
		se	.. elles-mêmes	{ elles se sont flattées	{ they have flattered themselves
		se	.. l'un l'autre	{ ils s'entraident	{ they help one an- other
		se	.. { les uns les autres	{ les rats, dit-on, s'entre-dévorent	{ rats, it is said, eat one another

REMARK, *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* after a preposition.

EXERCISE.

In a thousand instances, we do not watch sufficiently over ourselves.
 * mille occasion f. on * veille assez sur soi
 The glory of the world (passes away) in an instant. He gives
 = f. monde m. s'évanouit en — m. donne
 himself (a great deal) of trouble. She tires herself. People should
 se beaucoup peine f. lasse se On doit
 (very seldom) speak of themselves. Virtue is amiable in itself. We
 rarement parler soi art. f. de soi On
 must take upon ourselves the care of our own affairs.
 doit prendre sur soi soim m. ses propre affaire f. pl.

OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE EN.

64. This pronoun is personal when it means of *him*, of *her*, of *them*, of *it*, of *them*, and may be called the genitive case of *je*, *nous*, *tu*, *vous*, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*. It is relative when it is used in reference to an object or place antecedently named, and signifies *out of it*, *out of them*, *some of it*, *some of them* and *from that place*, or *thence*.

As a personal pronoun, it may be used in speaking of persons, although its chief use is about things; but, as a relative pronoun, its use is confined to things and places.

EXAMPLES.

EN for	de lui of him	{ cet homme vous plaît, vous en par- lez souvent	{ that man pleases you, you speak of him often
	d'elle of her	{ je ne crois pas, cette femme sincère, je m'en méfie	{ I do not believe that woman sincere, I distrust her
	" of it, m.	{ lisez son poème, et dites-moi ce que vous en pensez	{ read his poem, and tell me what you think of it.
	" of it f.	{ sa conduite est mau- vaise, je m'en plain- drai	{ his conduct is bad; I will complain of it.
	" of them m.	{ quant à ces événe- ments nous en par- lons souvent	{ as for these events, we often mention them
	" of them f.	{ que dites-vous de ces gravures, en êtes-vous content?	{ what do you think of these plates, are you pleased with them?
	" some of them	{ ces fruits paraissent bons, j'en mange- rais volontiers	{ these fruits look good, I should like to eat some of them
	" some of them	{ voilà de belles oran- ges, voulez-vous m'en donner?	{ These are beautiful oranges, will you give me some?

EN for	de cela <i>of that</i>	on ne m'a pas trompé, j'en suis sûr	I have not been imposed upon, I am sure of it
	d'ici <i>hence</i>	il arriva à Paris, comme j'en parlais	he arrived at Paris as I was setting off
	de là <i>thence</i>	vous allez à Paris et monsieur en vient	you are going to Paris, this gentleman comes from thence

OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE PRONOUN Y.

65. The use of *y*, as a pronoun, is strictly confined to things. It is employed in all those cases in which the oblique case is marked by the preposition *à*. Speaking of persons, we say : *je pense à votre frère, je donne mes soins à votre frère* ; and, when not naming the person, we say : *je pense à lui, je lui donne mes soins* ; thus speaking of things, we must say : *je pense à votre affaire, je donne mes soins à votre affaire*, and speaking relatively, *j'y pense, j'y donne mes soins*.

Y is also used in reference to a place antecedently named, and when *here, there* are understood in English.

EXAMPLES.

Y for	à lui <i>to him</i>	c'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous y*	he is an honest man, trust to him*
	à elle <i>to her</i>	la poussière gâtera ce tableau, si on n'y met pas un verre	the dust will spoil this picture, if you don't put a glass to it
	" <i>to it, m.</i>	si votre lettre est finie, mettez-y l'adresse.	if you have finished your letter, put the direction to it
	" <i>to it, f.</i>	ce sont de belles promesses, mais je ne m'y fie pas	these are fine promises, but I do not trust to them
	" <i>to them, f.</i>	donnez-moi vos ordres, et j'y obéirai ponctuellement	give me your commands, and I will punctually obey them
	" <i>to them m.</i>	ces arguments sont pressants, je n'y vois point de réplique	these arguments are cogent, I see no reply to them
	" <i>in them</i>	allons, n'en parlons plus, il ne faut plus y penser	come, say no more, we must not think about it any longer
	à cela <i>to it</i>	nous partons de Londres, quand vous y venez	we set off from London, when you come hither
	ici <i>here</i>	c'est un endroit charmant, je compte m'y fixer	it is a fine place, I intend to settle there
	là <i>there</i>		

* *Se fier and penser* alone admit *y*, in speaking of persons.

REMARK. *Y* and *en* are always put before the verb, except with the imperative affirmative second person.

EXERCISE.

They speak (a great deal) of it. You like French authors,
On parle beaucoup aimez art. français 2 auteur 1
 you are always speaking of them. That is a delicate affair; the
 * 2 *parlez 1 Ce délicat 2 = f. 1.*
 success of it is doubtful. See them; I consent to it, but do
*succès m. douteux Voyez consens 2 1 **
 not trust them. That is a fine appointment: he had
 1-5 *vous 2 fiez 4 y 3 Ce place f. **
 long aspired to it. He has done it; but he
depuis long-temps —rait 2 1 a fait ne 1
 will get nothing by it.
gagnera 3 rien 4 y 2

§ II.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

66. These pronouns denote the possession of things. When we say, *mon habit*, my coat; *votre maison*, your house; *son jardin*, his, or her garden; it is the same, as saying *l'habit qui est à moi*, the coat which belongs to me; *la maison qui est à vous*, the house which belongs to you; *le jardin qui est à lui*, or *à elle*, the garden which belongs to him, or to her.

67. These pronouns are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always joined to a noun, which they precede, *mon livre*, my book; and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun, as *le mien*, mine.

By some, these pronouns have also been called adjectives, because they agree in gender and number with the noun. *Mon frère*, my brother; *ma sœur*, my sister.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO ONE PERSON.

Singular				Plural			
for the	1st person	mon, m.	ma, f.	mes, m. f.	my		
	2nd —	ton, m.	ta, f.	tes, m. f.	thy		
	3rd —	son, m.	sa, f.	ses, m. f.	his, her, its		

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO MANY PERSONS.

Singular				Plural			
for the	1st person	notre, m. f.		nos, m. f.	our		
	2nd —	votre, m. f.		vos, m. f.	your		
	3rd —	leur, m. f.		leurs, m. f.	their		

EXAMPLES.

Mon père, ma mère et mes frères
sont à la campagne, avec vos
amis et leurs enfants.

*My father, mother, and brother
are in the country, with your
friends and their children.*

Mon cousin est allé consoler sa
sœur, qui a perdu son fils.*

*My cousin is gone to visit and
console his sister, who has lost
her son.*

68. *Mon, ton, son*, are used before a noun feminine, when beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, *mon ame*, my soul; *ton humeur*, thy humour; *son amitié*, his friendship, in order to avoid the meeting of the two vowels, or hyatus, *ma ame, ta humeur, sa amitié*.

EXERCISE.

My principles, my love, of retirement, my taste
—*pe* goût m. pour art. retraite f. amour m.
for (every thing) that (is connected) with learning, and
tout ce qui tient à art. instruction,
my detestation of all spirit of party, (every thing) has
haine f. h. asp. pour esprit parti tout a 2
induced me to prefer a life passed in the closet, to the
porté 3 1 préférer * art. vie f. * de * cabinet
active life of the world. Do not think, my daughter, that thy
— 2 f. 1 m. * pense que
candour, thy ingenuousness, thy taste, so delicate and so
= f. ingénuité f. goût, m. délicat
refined, and even thy graces, can shelter thee from.
fin même — puissent mettre à l'abri de
censure. His wit, his talents, his honesty, and
art. — f. esprit m. — m. honnêteté f. h. m.
even his (good nature) make him beloved by every body.
même bonhomie f font aimer de tout le monde
Our constancy and our efforts will (at last) surmount all
— f. — m. * enfin 2 surmonteront 1
obstacles. I see nothing that can (be censured)
art. — m. pl. vois 2 n 1 rien 3 que on puisse reprendre
in your conduct. Their taste for the fantastical, the mon-
dans conduite f. pour bizarre, m. mon-
strous, and the marvellous gives to all their compositions
strucux, m. merveilleux m. donne — f.

* Observe that the pronoun does not agree with the possessor as in English, thus, *his father, her father* are both rendered by *son père*, and *his mother, her mother*, by *sa mère*, no regard being paid to *his* or *hers*, but to the gender of *father* and *mother*.

although very fine in themselves, an air of deformity, which
quoique en elles-mêmes — m. difformité f. qui
 shocks at first sight.
choque à art. coup-d'œil, m.

69. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO ONE PERSON.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>m. Plur.</i>	<i>f. Plur.</i>
1st	Le mien,	la mienne,	Les miens,	les miennes, <i>mine</i>
2nd	Le tien,	la tienne,	Les tiens,	les tiennes, <i>thine</i>
3rd	Le sien,	la sienne,	Les siens,	les siennes, <i>his, her, its</i>

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO SEVERAL PERSONS.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>Pl. of both Gen.</i>
1st	Le nôtre,	la nôtre,	Les nôtres, <i>ours</i>
2nd	Le vôtre,	la vôtre,	Les vôtres, <i>yours</i>
3rd	Le leur,	la leur,	Les leurs, <i>theirs</i>

The use of these pronouns is to avoid the repetition of a noun antecedently named.

EXAMPLE.

Avez-vous toujours votre cheval ? *Have you still your horse ? I have*
 je n'ai plus le mien ; *for* je n'ai *no longer mine,*
 plus mon cheval.

EXERCISE.

Is it your temper or hers, that hinders you from living well
ce humeur f. qui empêche 2 1 de vivre
 together ? If it be yours, it is easy for you to remedy it
*ensemble ce est il 2 aisé 3 * 1 d'y porter remède*
 by mastering (your temper) ; if it be hers, redouble your
*en, prenant sur vous-même ; ce redoublez de **
 kindness, attention, and good behaviour ; it is
complaisance de — de good procédé m. pl. il
 very seldom that this method (proves unsuccessful). If my
très-rare ce moyen ne réussisse pas Si
 friends had served me with the same zeal as yours, it
avaient 2 servi 3 1 même zèle m. que
 is very certain that I (should have) succeeded : but yours have
très sûr aurais réussi ont
 been all warmth, and mine all ice. All the pictures which we
été de feu de glace tableau m. que
 expected from Rome are arrived : there are some that are a
attentions arrivés il y en a qui
 little damaged ; but yours, his and mine are in good
peu endommagés en
 condition. We know perfectly well what are your
*savons parfaitement * quels*

amusements in town, and I assure you we are very
 — à art. ville f. — 2 1 que sommes bien
 far from envying you them; but if you knew
 éloigné pl. envier 3 1 2 connaissez quels
 sont ours in the country, it (is most likely) you
 à compagne f. il y a toute apparence que
 (would not be long) in giving them the preference. You
 ne tarderiez pas à donner 2 leur 1 préférence f.
 have opened your heart to me with that noble frankness
 avez 2 ouvert 3 1 — franchise f.
 which so well becomes an honest man: this confidence well
 qui si 2 3 sied 1 à honnête confiance f. 2
 deserves mine.
 mérite 1.

REMARK. When through politeness *vous* is used for *tu*, then *votre*, *vos*, are used instead of *ton*, *ta* *tes*, and *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres*, for *le tien* *la tiennes*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*.

EXAMPLES.

Que vous ressemblez peu à How little you resemble your
 vos ancêtres? ancestors.
 Quand vous aurez entendu When you have heard our rea-
 nos raisons, nous écouterons les sons, we will listen to yours.
 vôtres.

§ III.

70. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns serve to designate and point out objects. They are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always placed before the noun, and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun antecedently named. Both agree in gender and number with the noun.

CONJUNCTIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

71. The demonstrative relative pronouns are in the singular.

Ce masc. before a consonant or an *h* aspirate
Cet masc. before a vowel or an *h* mute
Cette fem. in all cases

MASCULINE SINGULAR.

Ce livre, *this* or *that* book
Ce héros, *this* or *that* hero.

Cet homme, *this* or *that* man
Cet enfant, *this* or *that* child

FEMININE SINGULAR.

cette fille	this or that girl
cette ame,	this or that soul
cette histoire	this or that story
cette haine	that hatred

The plural of *ce, cet, cette*, is *ces*. It is common to both genders, and is used before vowels and consonants.

ces livres, these or those books	ces hommes, these men
de ces héros, of these or those heroes	ces enfants, those children
à ces filles, to these or those girls	ces histoires, these stories.

Ci and *là* are often added to the noun, either to point it out more distinctly or speak of it more emphatically.

Cet homme-là, that man	Ces poires-ci sont bonnes, these pears are good.
------------------------	--

RELATIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS,

72. The relative demonstrative agree also in gender with the noun, and are

MASCULINE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Celui-ci, this	Celui-là, that
Ceux-ci, these	Ceux-là, those

FEMININE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Celle-ci, this	Celle-là, that
Celles-ci, these	Celles-là, those

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are used without *ci, là*, before a preposition and a relative pronoun.

J'aime mieux mon jardin que celui de mon frère	I like my garden better than my brother's
On ne peut les comparer à ceux que nous avons vus à Paris.	They are not to be compared with those we saw at Paris.
Je le donnerai à celui qui arrivera le premier	I will give it to him who comes in first

73. *Ceci*, this ; *cela*, that ; are, as it were, of the neuter gender, and are used to express *this thing, that thing*, when the object is not named

Je n'aime pas cela	I do not like that
Ceci n'est pas pour vous	This is not for you

CE QUI, CE DONT, &c. FOR WHAT.

74. *Ce* is much used in conjunction with the relative pronoun.

Ce qui me plaît

Co dont jo parlo

Co à quoi je m'applique

Ce quo jo dis

Co dont jo dépends

That which (or what) pleases me
What I speak of (or that of which I speak)

What I apply to, (or that thing to which I apply)

What I say (or that thing which I say)

What I depend upon (that thing upon which I depend)

OBSERVE that the pronoun *what* is commonly used in English as if a contraction of *that which*, and is, accordingly, always expressed by two words in French, a demonstrative and a relative pronoun.

75. *ce* IN EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

Ce is also much used in French, as the nominative or subject of *être*, in descriptive sentences, that is, when we name the nature, object of a thing, and even a person.

C'est une tabatière,
C'est un officier général
Ce sont de bons enfants,

It is a snuff-box,
He is an officer general
They are good children

See *Syntax. Demonstrative Pronouns.*

EXERCISE.

Nothing is so opposite to that true eloquence, the office
ne 3 rien 1 opposé véritable —f. fonction
(of which) is to ennoble (every thing), as the use of
tion f. 2 1 de 1 ennoblir 3 tout 2* que emploi m.
those refined thoughts, and hunting after those light,
those fin 2 pensée f. 1. recherche f. de léger 2
airy unsolid ideas, which like a leaf of
délié 2 sans consistance 4 idée f. 1. qui comme feuille f.
beaten metal, acquire brightness only by losing
battu 3 —m. 1 ne prennent de art. éclat m. que en perdant
part of their solidity. This man has nothing in common
* art. = f. h. m. de commun
with that hero. This long restrained hatred broke,
h asp. 1 long-temps 3 contenu 4 haine f. 2. éclata
and was the unhappy source of those dreadful events
ful malheureux —f. terrible événe-
ment m. pl. Ce It is a great pleasure to me, It was a great
pain to us. The pleasures of the wise resemble in
déplaisir * nous. ressemblent 2-3
nothing those of a dissipated man. He that suffers himself to (be
1 4 o. dissipé 2 1 se laisse

ruled) by his passions, must renounce happiness.
dominer par ses passions, doit renoncer à art. m.

This stuff (will suit) you admirably. I desire you
étouffe-ci f. siéra 2 l à merveille que

to take this. That action is blameable. This
prenez m. -là is digne de blâme

scene is calculated to interest all men, but that cannot
-ci faite pour intéresser art. -là ne saurait

succeed. (Here are) certainly two charming prospects, this
réussir Voilà certainement beau perspective f. pl.

has something (in it) more cheerful, but many people
quelque chose de * riant bien de art. personne f. pl.

think that more striking and more majes-
trouvent à quelque chose de imposant de majes-

tic. The body perishes, the soul is immortal: yet all
tueux. périt cependant

the cares are for that, while we neglect this. What
m. tandis que négligeons f.

means this? That is true. It is not that. This is low and
veut dire Ce bas

mean, but that is grand and sublime.
rampant

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

76. *Relative pronouns* are those which relate to a noun preceding, called the *antecedent*. In the phrase *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays, *qui* relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme* is then the *antecedent* of the pronoun relative *qui*.

Relative pronouns are used as follows according as they refer to persons and things: *

qui, common to persons and things	who	Dieu qui voit tout	{ God who sees every thing the horses which are running
	which	{ les chevaux qui courent	

* Much attention must be paid to the distinction between persons and things, as the use of some of the pronouns is common, and the use of others is restricted to persons.

<i>de qui</i> , said of persons only; <i>dont</i> , common to persons and things, <i>d'où</i>	of whom, or from whom	<i>l'homme dont</i> or <i>de qui</i> vous parlez <i>les femmes dont</i> , or <i>de qui</i> il se moque <i>le livre dont</i> vous parlez <i>les livres dont</i> vous parlez <i>la maison d'où</i> (de laquelle) il est sorti <i>le marchand dont</i> le magasin est brûlé <i>les enfants dont</i> il a placé le père	<i>the man of whom</i> you speak <i>the women whom</i> he laughs at <i>the book of which</i> you speak <i>the books of which</i> you speak <i>the house out of which</i> he came <i>the merchant whose</i> warehouse is burnt <i>the children whose</i> father he placed
	of which, or from which		
	whose		
<i>à qui</i> , said of persons only	to whom	<i>l'homme à qui</i> vous adressez <i>l'affaire à laquelle</i> vous mettez tant d'intérêt <i>les dépenses auxquelles</i> vous êtes obligé <i>le but où</i> (auquel) vous tendez	<i>the man to whom</i> you apply <i>the business in which</i> you are so interested <i>the expences to which</i> you are obliged <i>the thing at which</i> you aim
	to which		
<i>que</i> , common to persons and things.	whom	<i>l'homme que</i> vous cherchez <i>les lois que</i> nous observons.	<i>the man whom</i> you seek <i>the laws which</i> we observe
	which		

RELATIVE PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS.

<i>qui</i> referring to persons	pour qui est cette lettre ?	for whom is this letter ?
	avec qui irez-vous à Paris ?	with whom do you go to Paris ?
<i>lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> , <i>lesquels</i> , <i>lesquelles</i> , common, but chiefly said of things of which the gender is known	ce sont de ces choses avec lesquelles il ne faut pas badiner	these are things with which you must not trifle
	c'est bien là la maison dans laquelle il est entré	this is indeed the house which he went in
<i>quoi</i> , said of things not named, of which the gender has not been expressed	pourquoi faites-vous cela	what do you do that for ? (for what reason ?)
	de quoi parlez-vous ?	what are you speaking of ?
	avec quoi fait-on de l'encre	what is ink made of ?

Qui, *que*, and *dont*, are of both genders and both numbers.

Lequel is a compound of *quel* and of the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with which it is joined, and forms but one word.

Singular.		Plural.	
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles

which
of which
to which

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent.

Quoi is always governed by a preposition.

77. *Qui*, relative, is common to persons and things and is of both genders and numbers; the verb which follows it, and adjective which refer to it, must be of the same number and gender as the antecedent.*

EXAMPLES.

Moi qui suis son fils
Mon frère qui est si bon
L'enfant qui joue
Les enfants qui étudient
Vous qui riez
Les livres qui instruisent

I who am his son.
My brother who is so kind.
The child who plays.
The children who study.
You who laugh.
The books which instruct.

In the first example, the verb is in the first person singular, to agree with *moi*, and, in the second, *bon* is masculine singular, to agree with *frère*.

78. *Dont*, whose, of whom, of which, from whom, from which, is common to persons and things, and *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles* have the same meaning, but are used only when the object is particularly pointed out, or distinguished from others of the same nature.

EXAMPLES.

La tour dont nous apercevons les
créneaux doit être très-élevée,
Ce dont je vous ai parlé l'autre
jour n'a pas réussi.
C'est une démarche de laquelle
tout dépend.

The tower whose battlements we
perceive must be very high.
What I was speaking to you of
the other day did not succeed.
It is a step on which every thing
depends.

79. *A qui*, of both genders and numbers, (to whom, to which,) is never used in reference to things, but *auquel*, à

* The relative pronoun is so important a part of a sentence, its use in French so different from what it is in English, that it has been thought better to anticipate a little, and to place here at once rules which properly belong to the syntax, but which it is quite necessary the learner should understand whilst he is doing the exercises which precede that part of the grammar, which belongs to the relative pronoun according to the usual order.

laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles which agree in gender and number with the antecedent.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme à qui vous avez écrit, *The man to whom you wrote, did not answer.*
 Sont-ce là les choses auxquelles vous pensez ? *Are those the things you think of?*

EXERCISE.

I who did not suspect (so much) falsehood; cunning,
 and perfidy, in a man whom I loved blindly, followed
 his counsels. Thou, who art candour and innocence itself,
 trust not too lightly. The great empire of the Egyptians
 which was, (as if) detached from all others, was
 not of long duration. We who know the value of time
 ought to make a good use (of it), instead of wasting
 it in idleness and frivolity. What! is it you, my
 daughter, who (would wish) that I (should love) you less? The
 greatest men, who were the ornament and glory of Greece,
 Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus and Solon, went
 to learn wisdom in Egypt. Is this the man whose house
 was burnt down last week. I know the books of which
 you (are speaking). It is a project to which he has devoted
 much time. Who is the lady to whom you (paid a visit) this
 morning? Come in the (drawing room) I will show you the
 table on which he (was writing).
 à écrivait.

80. *Que* is also common to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

c'est moi que l'on demande *it is I whom they ask for*
 c'est toi que l'on appelle *it is thou whom they call*
 la femme que je vois si bien parée *the woman whom I see so well dressed*
 c'est nous que vous offensez *it is we whom you offend*
 c'est vous que je cherche *it is you I am seeking*
 les dames que vous voyez *the ladies whom you see*

EXERCISE.

I whom temptation surrounded on every side *fell*
 a. t. séduction f. environnait de tout part f. pl. je tombai
 into the snare. It is you *whom* the public voice calls to that
 dans piège m. Ce 2 f. l. appelle
 office. A power, which terror and force have founded,
 place f. puissance f. art. = f. art. — f. fondé, f.
 cannot be of long duration. It is we *whom* they persecute with
 ne peut durée f. l'on poursuit avec
 unexampled rage. You *whom* every body respects,
 une sans exemple 2 fureur f. 1 tout le monde respecte
 hasten to (show yourself). (Every thing) in the universe
 hâtez-vous de paraître Tout dans univers m.
 alters and perishes; but the writings which genius has
 s'altère périt écrit m. pl. art. génie m.
 dictated, shall be immortal.
 dicté m. pl. seront — tel

81. *D'où* is very often used for *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*; and *où* for *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend *That is the object he has in view*
 Ce sont des affaires, où (aux- *Those are affairs with which I am*
 quelles) je suis embarrassé *perplexed*
 Voilà une chose d'où (de laquelle) *That is an affair on which the*
 dépend le bonheur public. *public happiness depends*
 Tels sont les lieux par où (par *These are the places through which*
 lesquels) il a passé *he passed.*

82. *Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, are generally used after prepositions, and also in the sense of *which*, when it is necessary to distinguish between objects of the same nature.

EXAMPLES.

Sont-ce là les personnes avec les- *Are those the people with whom he*
 quelles il passe son temps ? *spends his time*
 Ce sont de ces moments dans les- *These are the moments in which a*
 quels on oublie tous ses cha- *man forgets all his sorrows*
 grins

C'est une de ces dames, mais je ne sais laquelle *It is one of these ladies, but I do not know which*

83. *Quoi* comes after prepositions, and is used in speaking of things of which the gender is not ascertained; it is generally used to express *what, what thing, which thing*.

EXAMPLE.

Dites-moi en quoi je puis vous être utile *Tell me in what thing I can be of use to you*
 De quoi a-t-il été question ? *What has been the matter ?*
 On dansa jusqu'à minuit, après quoi il y eut un souper superbe *They danced until twelve, after which there was a beautiful supper*

EXERCISE.

The protection on which he relied has been too weak.
 —f. *sur* *comptait* *faible*
 That after which a true philosopher sighs most ardently
Ce après vrai —p^{he} m. soupire art. ardemment
 is to spread that sentiment of universal benevolence which
de répandre —m. —scl 2 bienveillance f. 1
 should unite and (bring together) all men. These are con-
devrait unir rapprocher art. Ce sont de art.
 ditions without which the thing (would not have been) concluded.
sans f. n'aurait pas été fait f.
 Nature, of whose secrets we (are ignorant) (will
 art. —f. * 1 art. —m. pl. 4 2 *ignorons 3 sera*
 always be) a source of conjecture to mankind. What does
toujours —f. 3 —f. pl. 4 pour 1 art. homme 2
 he complain of so bitterly? The only moments, in which his
se plaint amèrement seul —pl.
 soul is yet opened to pleasure, are those which he devotes
s'ouvre encore art. ceux consacrer
 to study. The mountains from whence gold (is
 art. *f. pl. on 1 art. or 3*
 extracted), are not in general barren. The different countries
*tire 2 * en —infertile pl. —pays m. pl.*
 through which he has passed have furnished his pencil with
par a passé ont fourni à pinceau m. de
 romantic and picturesque scenes.
 art. —tiq^{ue} 2 *pittoresque 3 —1.*

84. OF THE PRONOUN ABSOLUTE *QUI*, AND OTHER PRONOUNS USED IN QUESTIONS.

Who and *whom* are rendered by *qui*, in questions.

EXAMPLES.

Qui vous a dit cela ? *Who told you that ?*
 Qui voulez-vous inviter ? *Whom do you wish to invite ?*
 Savez-vous qui l'a dit ? *Do you know who said so ?*

What (or *what thing*) is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

Que voulez-vous dire ?
Que fait-il en haut ?

What do you mean ?
What is he doing up stairs ?

Quoi must be used after prepositions, and also with adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

À quoi pensez-vous ?
Quoi de plus beau ?

What are you thinking of ?
What can be finer ?

What, which, joined to a noun, is rendered by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*.

EXAMPLES.

Quel habit mettez-vous ?
On ne sait quelle route il a pris

What coat shall you put on ?
No one knows which road he has taken.

Quel homme est-ce ?

What sort of a man is he ?

What and which, used relatively, are rendered by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà deux habits ; lequel mettez-vous ?
Avec laquelle de ces dames voulez-vous danser ?

There are two coats, which will you put on ?
With which of those ladies do you wish to dance ?

EXERCISE.

Who (will not agree) that life has few and real pleasures and
ne conviendra pas art. f. peu de vrai plaisir, m.
many dreadful pains ? (Some one) entered
beaucoup de affreux 2 peine f. pl. 1. On entra
secretly ; guess who it was. What have you read in that book
secrètement ; devinez * * lu m.
that can have excited in your soul emotion and enthu-
qui puisse avoir porté art. — f. art. enthousiasm ? I know not what to think (of it) : About what did you
siasme m. ne sais penser 2 en 1 à avez-vous
find them occupied ? (There is) in that discourse I know
trouvés occupé m. pl. Il y a discours m. sais 2
not what which appears to me designing. What have you
ne 1 sembler * insidieux
remarked good, beautiful and sublime in Homer ? What
remarqué de pr. pr.
more brilliant, and, at the same time, more false, than the
pr. brillant en * même pr.

expressions of a man, who has (a great deal) of wit; but
beaucoup *esprit* *qui*
 wants judgment? *What* grace, *what* delicacy, *what* har-
manque de jugement? *grâce f.* *délicatesse f.*
 mony, *what* colouring, *what* beautiful lines in Racine! *What*
 = f. *coloris m.* *vers m.* — 1
 then must have been that extraordinary man, to whom seven
donc 3 *doit* 2 *avoir été* = 2 — 1
 cities contested the glory of having given birth? *Ho*
se sont disputé = f. *avoir donné art. jour m.*
 (does not know) what model to follow. I have told you *what* man
ne sait pas *modèle m.* suivre* *ai dit*
 it is. *Which* of those ladies do you think the most amiable?
ce f. *dames f.* 2 trouvez* 1 f.
 Choose *which* of those two pictures you like best.
Choisissez m. 4 5 6 *tableau m.* 7 1 *aimez* 2 art. *mieux* 3

§ VI.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

85. *Indefinite pronouns* are those which have a vague and indefinite signification, and which have reference to persons and things in general, without particularizing. They are of four sorts.

FIRST CLASS.

86. Those that are never joined to a substantive.

ON*	one	on aime à se flatter	{ one is apt to flatter ones self
	a man	{ on n'est pas toujours maître de soi	{ a man cannot always command his own temper
	a woman	{ on n'est pas toujours maîtresse d'aller où* l'on veut	{ a woman cannot always go where she pleases
	somebody	on frappe à la porte	{ somebody knocks at the door
	people	{ on pense et* l'on dit tout haut	{ people think and say openly
	they	{ on raconte diverse- ment cette histoire	{ they relate that story differently
	we	{ on acquiert l'expéri- ence à ses dépens	{ we acquire experience at our own expense

* *On* is an abbreviation or a contraction of *homme*, which in old French was spelt *hom*. No doubt but that formerly it was usual to say, when speaking in a vague sense, *homme dit*, *homme étudie*, from which mode of expression *on* has been derived.

wit; but
esprit qui
ey, what har-
sse f.
Racine! What
—
to whom seven
birth? Ho
jour m.
l you what man

st amiable?
f.
ke best.
2 art. micux 3
ave a vague
reference to
rizing.

ive.
pt to flatter ones

cannot always
and his own

n cannot always
ere she pleases
ly knocks at the

ink and say

ate that story
ntly
re experience at
n expense

ON	you	<i>on trouve partout des importuns</i>	<i>you will find troublesome people every where</i>
	I	<i>on prévient qu'on n'a point eu l'intention de, etc.</i>	<i>I beg to observe, that I had no intention to, etc.</i>
	I	<i>quand on vous dit quet l'on compte sur vous</i>	<i>when I tell you that I depend upon you</i>
	they	<i>si l'on vous blâme et si l'on le loue, on a tort</i>	<i>if they blame you and praise him, they are wrong.</i>
	quelqu'un	<i>one somebody some one</i>	<i>quelqu'un m'a dit, somebody told me.</i>
	quiconque	<i>whoever whosoever</i>	<i>qui connaît les hommes, apprend à s'en défier, whoever knows mankind, learns to distrust them.</i>
	chacun	<i>each every one</i>	<i>chacun s'en plaint, every one complains of him.</i>
	autrui	<i>other people others</i>	<i>n'enviez pas le bien d'autrui, do not covet the property of others.</i>
	personne	<i>nobody no one</i>	<i>ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas que l'on vous fit, do not do to others what you would not have done to you</i>
	rien	<i>nothing not anything any thing</i>	<i>la fierté ne convient à personne, pride becomes nobody</i>
			<i>rien ne lui plaît, nothing pleases him.</i>
			<i>y a-t il rien qui puisse lui plaire? is there any thing that can please him?</i>

SECOND CLASS.

87. Those which are always joined to a substantive.

quelque	some	<i>si cela était vrai, quelque historien en aurait parlé, if that were true, some historian would have mentioned it</i>
chaque	each, every	<i>à chaque jour suffit sa peine, sufficient for the day is the evil thereof</i>
quelconque	<i>whoever whatever</i>	<i>il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse l'y obliger, no reason whatever can oblige him to it</i>
certain	<i>certain some</i>	<i>certain homme, a certain man</i>
un	<i>a, an</i>	<i>certaines nouvelles, some news</i>
		<i>j'ai vu un homme, I saw a man</i>
		<i>prenez une orange, take an orange</i>

in old French
to say, when
which mode

† Instead of *et on, ou, on, si on*, it is better for euphony, to part these words with an *l*, thus: *et l'on, ou l'on, si l'on*, when the next word does not begin with an *l*, as seen by the examples; and instead of *les habitudes qu'on contracte, ce après quoi on court, quoiqu'on croie, un homme à qui on reproche*, say rather: *les habitudes que l'on contracte, ce après quoi l'on court, bien que l'on croie, un homme à qui l'on reproche.*

THIRD CLASS.

88. Those which are sometimes used in conjunction with a substantive, and sometimes relatively.

nul	no, one	{ nulle raison ne peut le convaincre, <i>no reason can convince him</i> nul d'eux ne l'a rencontré, <i>not one of them has met him</i>
pas un	no, not one	{ il n'y a pas une erreur dans cet ouvrage, <i>there is not one error in that work</i> pas un ne le dit, <i>not one says so</i>
aucun	no, none	{ Je ne connais aucun de vos juges, <i>I know none of your Judges</i> il n'a fait aucune difficulté, <i>he has made no difficulty</i>
autre	other	{ servez-vous d'une autre expression, <i>make use of another expression</i> je vous prenais pour un autre, <i>I took you for another</i>
même	same	{ c'est le même homme que je vis hier, <i>he is the same man I saw yesterday</i> cet homme n'est plus le même, <i>that man is no longer the same.</i>
tel	{ such like	{ il tint à peu près un tel discours, <i>he made nearly such a discourse</i> je ne vis jamais rien de tel, <i>I never saw any thing like it</i>
plusieurs	{ several many	{ il est arrivé plusieurs vaisseaux, <i>several vessels have arrived.</i> il ne faut pas que plusieurs pâtissent pour un seul, <i>many must not suffer for one</i>
tout	{ all every every thing	{ tous les êtres créés, <i>all created beings</i> tout disparaît devant Dieu, <i>everything vanishes before God</i>

FOURTH CLASS.

89. Of those followed by *que*.

qui que	whoever	{ qui que tu sois, <i>whoever thou mayest be</i> qui que ce soit, <i>whoever it may be</i>
quoi que	whatever	{ quoi que ce soit, <i>whatever it may be</i> quoi que vous disiez, <i>whatever you may say</i>
quelque	{ whatever however	{ quel que soit cet homme, <i>whoever that man may be</i> quel que soit votre courage, <i>whatever your courage may be</i>
tel que	such as	{ cette étoffe est telle que vous la voulez, <i>this stuff is such as you wish for</i>

quelque— que	{ whatever however	{ quelque raison que vous donniez, what- ever reason you may give quelque puissant que vous soyez, how- ever powerful you may be
tout—que	however	{ tout savant qu'il est, however learned he may be

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

90. The *Verb* is a word, the chief use of which is to express action, feeling, existence; it has persons, moods, and tenses.

In the phrase *la vertu est aimable*, virtue is amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* belongs to *la vertu*; likewise in this sentence, *le vice n'est pas aimable*, vice is not amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* does not belong to *le vice*; the word *est* expresses this affirmation.

That concerning which we affirm or deny a thing is called the *subject*, and what is affirmed or denied is called its *attribute*. In the two preceding sentences, *vertu* and *vice* are subjects of the verb *est*, and *aimable* is the attribute affirmed respecting the one, and denied with respect to the other.

91. There are in verbs *two numbers*, the singular and plural, and, in each number, *three persons*:

I. The first person is that who speaks; it is designated by *je*, I, in the singular, and by *nous*, we, in the plural: as, *je pense*, I think; *nous pensons*, we think.

II. The second is the person spoken to, expressed by *tu*, thou, in the singular, and by *vous*, you, in the plural: as, *tu penses*, thou thinkest; *vous pensez*, you think.

III. The third is the person spoken of, known by *il*, he, or *elle*, she, in the singular, and by *ils* or *elles*, they, in the plural: as, *il* or *elle* *pense*, he or she thinks; *ils* or *elles* *pensent*, they think.

All substantives, either common or proper, are of the third person, when not addressed or spoken to: *les lions rugissent*, lions roar; *ces arbres sont beaux*, these trees are beautiful; *les soldats se battent*, soldiers are fighting.

REM.—A word is known to be a *verb*, when it admits the personal pronouns: thus, *finir*, to finish, is a verb, because we can say, *je finis*, *tu finis*, *il*, or *elle* *finit*, etc.

92. There are *five moods*, or modes of conjugating verbs.

i. The *infinitive mood* expresses the nature of the action, feeling, without any reference to persons, numbers or time, as, *aimer*, to love; *avoir aimé*, to have loved.

ii. The *indicative* simply indicates and asserts a thing in a direct manner; as, *j'aime*, I love; *il aime*, he loved.

iii. The *conditional* affirms a thing with a condition, as *j'aimerais*, *si*, etc. I should love, if, etc.

iv. The *imperative* is used for commanding, exhorting, requesting, or reproving; as, *aime*, love (thou); *aimons*, let us love.

v. The *subjunctive mood* expresses an action in a manner which is subordinate; it is always preceded of a verb, conjunction, or phrase implying the necessity, desire, apprehension that a thing should be, as *il faut que nous partions*, it is necessary that we should go.

93. There are three tenses, the *present*, which declares a thing now existing, or doing, as, *je lis*, I read; the *past*, denoting that the thing has been done, as, *j'ai lu*, I did read; the *future*, denoting that the thing will be done, as, *je lirai*, I shall read. In order to specify in a precise and correct manner, the moment when the action has taken, or will take place, the verb has several forms: thus, *je lisais*, I was reading; *je viens de lire*, I have just read; *je venais de lire*, I had just read, etc. Numerous examples of these latter forms are given at the end of the grammar. See No. 19, *Examples on the Difficulties*.

There are five kinds of verbs, the *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *pronominal*, and *impersonal*.

94. The *verb active*, or *transitive*, is that which expresses an action, the object of which may be *quelqu'un*, some person, or *quelque chose*, some thing; as *aimer Dieu*, to love God; *aimer l'étude*, to love study. The object of this action is called the *regimen*, or *government* of the verb active.

N. B. A simple question will show this *regimen* as, *qu'est-ce que j'aime?* what do I love? answer, *Dieu*, God. *Dieu* is then the regimen of the verb *j'aime*.

95. *Passive verbs* express that the action is suffered by the subject; they are conjugated by means of the auxiliary *être*, and the participle past of the active voice, as *je suis aimé*, I am loved. Thus, to change the verbs from active to passive in these sentences, *mon père m'aime*, my father

loves me ; *le milan a enlevé le serin*, the kite has carried off the canary bird, they must be turned in this way, *je suis aimé de mon père*, I am loved by my father ; *le serin a été enlevé par le milan*, the canary bird has been carried off by the kite.

96. The *verb neuter*, or *intransitive*, is that which has no direct regimen, that is, after which you cannot put a substantive, without a proposition. *Aller* to go, is a neuter, verb, because one cannot say, *aller Londres*, to go London, but *aller à Londres*, to go to London. *Plaire*, to please, is likewise a verb neuter, as we cannot say in French, *plaire quelqu'un*, to please somebody, but *plaire à quelqu'un*.

The *pronominal verbs* are those in which each person is conjugated through all the tenses, with two pronouns.

as	<i>je me</i> , I myself	<i>nous nous</i> we ourselves
	<i>tu te</i> , thou thyself	<i>vous vous</i> { you yourself, or ye yourselves
	<i>il se</i> , he himself	<i>ils se</i> { they themselves
	<i>elle se</i> , she herself	<i>elles se</i> }

There are four sorts of *pronominal verbs* :—

97. I. The *reflective*, when the action of the verb falls upon the subject, as *je me flatte*, I flatter myself ; *il se loue*, he praises himself. Almost all active verbs are susceptible of being *reflective*.

II. The *pronominal verb neuter*, which indicates only a state, a disposition of the subject as, *se repentir*, to repent ; *se désister*, to desist ; *s'enfuir*, to run away.

III. The *reciprocal verb* expresses a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects, and consequently has no singular ; such are, *s'entr'aider*, to help one another ; *s'entre-donner*, to give each other.

IV. The *pronominal verb impersonal*, is only used in the third person singular. Active verbs frequently assume this form in a passive sense, for the sake of brevity and energy ; as, *il se bâtit*, there is building ; *il se faisait*, there was doing ; *il se conclut*, there was concluded ; *il s'est dit*, it has been said ; *il se donnera une grande bataille*, a great battle will be fought.

98. The *impersonal verb* is only used in the third person singular, with the pronoun *il* for its subject. *Neiger*, to snow, is an impersonal verb, as it cannot be applied to any person, or thing ; *il neige*, it snows, *il neigeait*, it did snow.

Neuter verbs may be used impersonally, as *il vint un homme*, there came a man, instead of *un homme vint*, a man came.

Though the greater part of the French verbs are regular, there are, however, as in other languages, some that are *irregular*, and others that are *defective*. Regular verbs are those which are conjugated conformably to a general principle. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from that general principle in the formation of their persons and tenses; and defective verbs are those which, in certain tenses, or persons, are not used.

OF CONJUGATIONS.

To conjugate is to give all the persons and tenses of a verb through all its different inflections.

The French generally admit four regular conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

The	FIRST	ends in	-er	as, parler, almer, chanter, donner, etc.
	SECOND		-ir	as, finir, avertir, punir, ternir, etc.
	THIRD		-oir	as, recevoir, apercevoir, devoir, etc.
	FOURTH		-re	as, rendre, vendre, mordre, battre, etc.

100. The French, like most modern nations, not having a sufficient number of inflections in their verbs to specify exactly the moment at which the action takes place, supply this deficiency with two auxiliary verbs, *avoir* and *être*, to have and to be.

Besides *avoir* and *être*, which are the only verbs generally recognised as auxiliaries, there are four others which are as fully deserving of that name, in consequence of their being frequently used in conjunction with the infinitive, to express *times* and *circumstances*, which the simple tenses are insufficient to do. These four verbs are *aller*, *venir de*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*. (See models of their use, No. 19, of the EXAMPLES ON DIFFICULTIES.)

Those tenses, which are formed from the infinitive, are called simple tenses, as *parler*, *je parle*, *je parlais*, *je parlai*, *je parlerai*, etc. Those which are formed by the conjunction of the participle with *être* and *avoir*, or of the infinitive with *venir de*, *aller*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*, are compound tenses, as *j'ai parlé*, *je viens de parler*.

101. CONJUGATION.

OF THE
VERB AVOIR, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

avoir	PRESENT. to have	avoir eu	PAST. to have had
-------	---------------------	----------	----------------------

PARTICIPLES.

ayant	PRESENT. having	} ayant eu	PAST. having had
eu, m. eue, f.	PAST. had		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

j'ai	I have
tu as	thou hast
il, or elle a	he or she has
nous avons	we have
vous avez	you have
ils, or elles ont	they have

PRETERIT INDEFINITE, or compound of the present.

j'ai eu	I have	} had
tu as eu	thou hast	
il a eu	he has	
nous avons eu	we have	
vous avez eu	you have	
ils ont eu	they have	

IMPERFECT.

j'avais	I had	} or was having
tu avais	thou hadst	
il avait	he had	
nous avions	we had	
vous aviez	you had	
ils avaient	they had	

PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

j'avais eu	I had	} had
tu avais eu	thou hadst	
il avait eu	he had	
nous avions eu	we had	
vous aviez eu	you had	
ils avaient eu	they had	

EXERCISE.

102. In the following exercises, the substantive being taken in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to use the partitive *du, de, l', de la, des*, according to the gender and number. See Rule the 39th.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

j'eus	<i>I had</i>
tu eus	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent	<i>they had</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

j'aurai	<i>I shall or will have</i>
tu auras	<i>thou shalt or will have.</i>
il aura	<i>he will have</i>
nous aurons	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez	<i>you will have</i>
ils auront	<i>they will have</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR, or compound of the preterit.

j'eus eu	<i>I had</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu eus eu	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut eu	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes eu	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes eu	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent eu	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE ANTERIOR, or compound of the future.

j'aurai eu	<i>I shall or will have</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu auras eu	<i>thou wilt have</i>	
il aura eu	<i>he will have</i>	
nous aurons eu	<i>we shall have</i>	
vous aurez eu	<i>you will have</i>	
ils auront eu	<i>they will have</i>	

PRESENT.

I have books.	thou hast friends.	He has honesty.	She
<i>livre</i>	<i>ami</i>	<i>honnêteté f. h m.</i>	
has sweetness.	We have credit.	You have riches.	They
<i>douceur f.</i>	<i>— m.</i>	<i>richesse pl. m.</i>	
have virtues.	They have modesty.		
<i>vertu f.</i>	<i>f. = f.</i>		

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had pleasure.	Thou hast had gold.	He has had patience	
<i>plaisir m.</i>	<i>or m.</i>	<i>— f.</i>	
She has had beauty.	We have had honours.	You have had	
<i>= f.</i>	<i>honneur</i>		
friendship.	They have had sentiments.	They have had feeling.	
<i>amitié f. m.</i>	<i>— f.</i>	<i>sensibilité f.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

I had ambition.	Thou hadst wealth.	He had sincerity.	She
<i>— f.</i>	<i>bien m.</i>	<i>= f.</i>	
had graces.	We had oranges.	You had pears.	They had apples.
<i>—</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>poire m.</i>	<i>pomme</i>
They had lemons.			
<i>f. citron</i>			

PLUPERFECT.

I had had apricots.	Thou hadst had nectarines.	He had had	
<i>abricot</i>	<i>brugnon</i>		
walnuts.	She had had hazel-nuts.	We had had chesnuts.	You
<i>noix</i>	<i>noisette</i>	<i>châtaigne.</i>	
had had figs.	They had had medlars.	They had had filberts.	
<i>figue m.</i>	<i>nêfle f.</i>	<i>aveline.</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

j'aurais	<i>I should or would have</i>
tu aurais	<i>thou shouldst have</i>
il aurait	<i>he should have</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should have</i>
vous auriez	<i>you should have</i>
ils auraient	<i>they should have</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST. or compound of the conditional.

j'aurais eu	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais eu	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait eu	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions eu	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez eu	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient eu	<i>they should</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I had plums.	Thou hadst cherries.	He had strawberries.	She
<i>prune</i>	<i>cerise</i>	<i>fraise</i>	
had pine-apples.	We had almonds.	You had currants.	They had
<i>ananas</i>	<i>amande</i>	<i>groseille</i>	<i>m.</i>
raspberries.	They had grapes.		
<i>framboise</i>	<i>f. raisin m. pl.</i>		

103. In the following exercises, the addition of an adjective, after the substantive, will make no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had had very black ink.	Thou hadst had honest
<i>fort 2 noir 3 encie f. 1.</i>	<i>honnête 2</i>
friends. She had had uncommon graces.	We had had very ripe
<i>amis 1 rare 2 1.</i>	<i>2 mûr 3</i>
grapes. You had had exquisite melons.	They had had ready
<i>1 exquis 2 — m. 1</i>	<i>comptant 2</i>
money.	
<i>argent m. 1.</i>	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have studious pupils.	Thou wilt have horrid
<i>appliqué 2 élève m. 1.</i>	<i>horrible 2</i>
pains. He will have ridiculous ideas.	We shall have use-
<i>peine f. 1. ridicule 2 idée f. 1.</i>	<i>in-</i>
less cares. You will have true and real pleasures.	They will
<i>tile 2 soin m. 1. 2 réel 3 m. 1.</i>	
have poignant griefs.	
<i>cuisant 2 chagrin m. 1.</i>	

104. But if the adjective precedes the substantive, then *de, or d'*, only is to be used without any regard to the number or the gender of the noun.

L.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have had good paper. Thou wilt have had excellent
 fruit. She will have had charming flowers. We shall have had
 m. pl. *charmant fleurs f.*
 good pens. You will have had large buildings. They will
plume f. *grand bâtiment m.*
 have had fine clothes.
superbe habit m.

PRESENT OF THE CONDITIONAL.

I should have fine engravings. Thou shouldst have pretty play-
gravure f. *joli jou-*
 things. He should have immense treasures. We should have
jou m. *trésor m.*
 beautiful pictures. You would have pretty houses. They should
tableau m.
 have long conversations.
 — f.

105. *De* is also to be used alone, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun, after an adverb of quantity, such as *beaucoup*, a great deal, great many; *peu*, little, few; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *trop*, too much, too many, etc; except *bien*, much, many, which requires *du, de la, de l', des*.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should* have had a great deal of trouble. Thou wouldst have
peine f.
 have had more pleasure. He would have had (a vast deal) of
de *infiniment*
 knowledge. We should have had more opportunities of succeeding.
connaissance f. pl. *de occasion f. pl.* *réussir*
 You would certainly have had many advantages over him.
certainement *beaucoup de avantage sur lui*
 They would have had many enemies.
bien ennemi

* *Would, should, could*, are not always mere signs of the conditional: they are, on the contrary, more frequently used as having a distinct and separate sense, expressing *will, duty, or power*. In such cases, they are also to be rendered in French by separate words, such as *vouloir, devoir, pouvoir*. The attention of the Scholar will be called to that necessary distinction hereafter; but for the present, that is, in the course of the following introductory exercises on the conjugation of verbs, he must consider *would, could, and should* as being used in their first capacity only, that is, as *Signs of the conditional*.—See 386.

N.B. *J'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu*, I should have had, &c. is also used for the conditional past.

IMPERATIVE.

aie, or aye	have (thou)
qu'il ait	let him have
ayons	let us have
ayez	have (ye)
qu'ils aient	let them have

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

	PRESENT.
que	that
j'aie	I may have
tu aies	thou mayest have
il ait	he may have
nous ayons	we may have
vous ayez	you may have
ils aient	they may have

COMPOUND TENSES.

	PRESENT.
que	that
j'aie eu	I may
tu aies eu	thou mayst
il ait eu	he may
nous ayons eu	we may
vous ayez eu	you may
ils aient eu	they may

} have had

106. When the verb is followed by several substantives, the proper article and proposition must be repeated before each.

IMPERATIVE.

Have thou patience, perseverance, and courage. Let him have modesty and more correct ideas. Let her have more decency. Let us have courage and firmness. Have ye gravy soup, nice roast beef and a pudding. Let them have ale, rum, and punch. Let them have morals and conduct.

f. *mœurs* f.pl. *conduite* f.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may have many friends. That thou mayest have good reasons to give him. That he may have elevated sentiments. That we may have courage and magnanimity. That you may have delightful landscapes, and beautiful sea-pieces. That they may

beaucoup
donner 1 lui 2
élevé 2 —m.1.
bravoure f.
délicieux 2 paysage m.pl. 1
marine f.pl.

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

que	that
j'eusse	I had, or might have
tu eusses	thou might'st have
il eût	he might have
nous eussions	we might have
vous eussiez	you might have
ils eussent	they might have

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

que	that
j'eusse eu	I might
tu eusses eu	thou mightest
il eût eu	he might
nous eussions eu	we might
vous eussiez eu	you might
ils eussent eu	they might

} have had.

have more condescension and more prepossessing manners.
 ————dance 2 prévenant 3 manière f. pl. 1.

PRETERIT.

That I may have had wine, beer, and cider. That thou mayest
 vin m. bière f. cidrem.
 have had a good horse, and a fine dog. That he may have had
 cheval m. chien m.
 enlightened judges. That we may have had snow, rain, and wind.
 éclairé 2 juge m. 1 neige f. pluie f. vent m.
 That you may have had a great dining-room, and a beautiful drawing-
 salle à manger f. superbe salon de
 room, a pretty dressing-room, and a delightful bed-
 compaigni m. joli cabinet de toilette m. charmant chambre-
 room. That they may have had vast possessions, fine meadows,
 à coucher f. vaste ——— f. prairie f.
 and delightful groves.
 délicieux 2 bois m. 1.

IMPERFECT.

That I might have a sword, a musket, and pistols. That thou
 épée f. fusil m. pistolet m.
 might'st have a knife, a spoon, and a fork. That we might
 couteau m. cuillère f. fourchette f.
 have a penknife, pencils, and good copies. That he might have
 canif m. pinceau m. modèle m.
 a coach, a good house, and furniture, simple but elegant. That
 carrosse m. f. meuble m. pl. ——— mais ———
 you might have health and great respect. That they might have
 santé f. un considération f.
 fruitful lands.
 fertile 2 terre f. 1.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had friendship. That thou might'st have had
 amitié f.
 gloves, boots, and horses. That he might have had zealous and
 gant m. botte f. cheval m. zélé 2

SENTENCES ON THE SAME VERB, WITH A NEGATIVE.

107. *De, d'* is also used, without any regard to the gender or the number of the noun, after a negative phrase.

EXAMPLES.

Je n'ai pas de livres	<i>I have no books</i>
tu n'avais pas de bien	<i>thou hadst no wealth</i>
nous n'avons pas eu d'amitié	<i>we have had no friendship</i>
si vous n'aviez pas eu de puissants amis	<i>if you had not had powerful friends</i>
ils n'auront pas d'ennemis	<i>they will not have enemies</i>
il n'aurait pas de plaisir.	<i>he would not have any pleasure</i>

faithful servants. That we might have had fine clothes, precious
fidèle 3 domestique m. 1. = f. 2
 jewels, and magnificent furniture. That you might have had warm
bijou m. 1 magnifique 2 chaud 2
 friends. That they might have had greatness of soul and pity.
1 grandeur f. pitié f.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I have no precious medals. We have no useless things.
= 2 médaille f. 1 inutile 2 chose f. 1

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had no perseverance. We have had no generosity
— f. = f.

IMPERFECT.

Thou hadst not a beautiful park. You had no good cucumbers.
parc m. concombre m.

PLUPERFECT.

He had had no fine houses. They had had no money.
argent m.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

He had no answer to his letter. They had no carpets
réponse f. lettre f. tapis m.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Thou hadst no kindness. You had had no great talents.
complaisance f. — m.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have no great difficulty. We shall not have company at
grand difficultés f. monde à
 dinner.
dîner

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

You will not have had quiet days.
tranquille 2 m. 1

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

He would not have had pictures. They would have no leisure.
mauvais tableau m. *loisir* m.

PAST.

I should have had no griefs. We should have had no troubles.
chagrin m. pl. *peine* f.

IMPERATIVE.

Have no such whims. Let him not have such absurd ideas.
caprice m. *si absurde* 2 f. pl.

Let us not have discussions of this sort. Have no such whims.
espèce f. *tel caprice* m.

Let them not have foreign servants.
étranger domestique

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may have no protectors. That we may have no success.
= m. *succès* m.

PRETERIT.

That he may have had no perseverance. That they may have had
no valour. — f.
bravoure f.

IMPERFECT.

That thou might'st have no taste. That you might not have a just
reward. *gout* m. *juste*
récompense f.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have had good advice. That we might not have
had any news. *avis* m. pl.
nouvelle f. pl.

THE VERB AVOIR, INTERROGATIVELY AND AFFIRMATIVELY.

108. In interrogations, the pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, is placed after it, and they are joined by an hyphen, *ai-je*? In compound tenses, the pronoun is placed immediately after the auxiliary *ai-je eu*? When the third

person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb, and *il, elle*, in order to avoid the hiatus occasioned by the meeting of the two vowels: *a-t-il? aura-t-il?* This applies to *on: aura-t-on?*

EXAMPLES :

ai-je des livres ?	have I books ?
avais-tu du bien ?	hadst thou wealth ?
eut-elle ce courage ?	had she that courage ?
Jean a-t-il de l'argent ?	has John any money ?
avons-nous eu de bons conseils ?	have we had good counsels ?
aviez-vous eu de la prudence ?	had you had prudence ?
aura-t-il de l'argent ?	will he have money ?
aura-t-elle eu des protecteurs ?	will she have had protectors ?

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT

Hast thou needles ?	Have you coloured maps ?
<i>aiguille f.</i>	<i>enluminé 2 carte f. 1</i>

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I had good friends ?	Have we had much fortune ?
<i>bon ami</i>	<i>_____ f.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Had she time ?	Had they large buildings ?
<i>le temps</i>	<i>grand bâtiment m.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Had she sufficient means ?	Had they extensive fields ?
<i>suffisant moyens m.</i>	<i>spacieux 2 champ m. 1</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had he good shoes ?	Had they looking glasses ?
<i>soulier m.</i>	<i>f. miroir m.</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Hadst thou had lace ?	Had you had odoriferous shrubs ?
<i>dentelle f.</i>	<i>odoriférant 2 arbuste m. 1</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Shall I have gold and silver ?	Shall we have (good luck) ?
<i>m. argent m.</i>	<i>bonheur</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Will they have had company ?
<i>compagnie f.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Shouldst thou have happy moments? Would you have good
heureux — m.
 wine and nice liqueurs?
vin m. fin 2 liqueur f. l

PAST.

Would he have had uncommon patience? Would they have had
extraordinaire
 rich clothes.
habit m.

THE SAME VERB INTERROGATIVELY AND
NEGATIVELY.

109. This form is the same as the preceding, except that the first negative *ne* is placed before the verb, and the second, *pas* or *point*, after the pronoun: *ai-je? n'ai-je pas? ai-je eu? n'ai-je pas eu?*

EXAMPLES.

n'a-t-elle pas beaucoup d'esprit?	has she not a great deal of wit?
n'avons-nous pas eu de bons procédés?	have we not had considerable regards?
n'aviez-vous pas eu de nouvelles robes?	had you not had new gowns?
n'aura-t-il pas de ressources?	will he have no resources?

109. (*bis*). It has been said (107) that, after negations, *de* must be used before the noun substantive, without any regard to its gender or number, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, used in affirmative sentences: as *je n'ai pas d'argent*, *elle n'a pas d'amis*. Yet, in interrogative and negative sentences, there are some cases when *du*, *de la*, *des*, may be used, and others when *de* must: thus,

1st. n'ai-je pas du mépris pour lui?	have I not contempt for him?
n'avez-vous pas des livres?	have you not books?
n'avez-vous pas de l'argent?	have you not money?
2nd. n'avez-vous pas de livres?	have you no books?
n'avez-vous pas d'argent?	have you no money?

Although the first examples are under the interrogative form, they are intended for affirmations. By a figure, called *litote*, one form has been substituted to another, thereby to convey more meaning than the simple assertions *j'ai du mépris pour lui*; *vous avez des livres*; *vous avez de l'argent*, would be able to do. Thus, for instance, *you com-*

*plain of being dull how can that be, have you not books?
instead of saying since you have books?*

EXAMPLES.

n'ai-je pas des livres ?	<i>have I no books ?</i>
n'avais-tu pas des amis ?	<i>hadst thou no friends ?</i>
n'auront-elles pas eu des consolations ?	<i>will they have had no consolations ?</i>

In the second examples, on the contrary, nothing but mere questions is intended, there is no substitution of form, no other meaning *understood*, but the one expressed. The difference is also somewhat marked in English.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Hast thou no diamonds ? Have you no indulgent parents ?
diamant m. _____ 2 _____ m. 1

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Hast thou not had contempt and even hatred for that man ?
mépris m. même haine f. h. asp. pour cet

Have you not had better examples ?
meilleur exemple m.

IMPERFECT.

Had he not a rigid censor ? Had they not inattentive children ?
sévère 2 censeur m. 1 = 2 enfant m. 1

PLUPERFECT.

Had I not had other views ? Had we not had amethysts, rubies,
autre vue f. pl. améthyste f. rubis m.
and topazes ?
topaze f.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had we not perfidious friends ?
perfide 2 1

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Had he not had too studied expressions ? Had they not had
2 recherché 3 _____ f. 1
excellent models ?
_____ modèle m.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Wilt thou not have a more regular conduct ? Will you not have
plus 2 réglé 3 conduite f. 1
fashionable dresses ?
à la mode 2 robe f. 1

OF THE VERB.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall we have had sufficient time then ?
assez de temps.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should she not have clear and just ideas ? Would they not have
clair 2 3 f. 1
 more extensive knowledge ?
2 étendu 3 connaissances f.pl. 1

PAST.

Would she not have had any objection ? Would they have had no
 reward ?
récompense f.

110. CONJUGATION

OF THE

AUXILIARY VERB *ÊTRE*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

être *to be*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

avoir été *to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

étant *being*

PAST.
été *been*

PAST,

} *ayant été* *having been*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

je suis *I am*
tu es *thou art*
il, ou elle est *he or she is*
nous sommes *we are*
vous êtes *you are*
ils } *sont* *they are*
elles

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

j'ai été *I have been*
tu as été *thou hast been*
il a été *he has been*
nous avons été *we have been*
vous avez été *you have been*
ils ont été *they have been*

111. GENERAL RULE. In those sentences in which there is an adverb, it must be placed between the verb and the adjective or participle : *il n'est jamais content ; il est toujours récompensé.*

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

j'étais	<i>I was</i>
tu étais	<i>thou wast</i>
il était	<i>he was</i>
nous étions	<i>we were</i>
vous étiez	<i>you were</i>
ils étaient	<i>they were</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

je fus	<i>I was</i>
tu fus	<i>thou wast</i>
il fut	<i>he was</i>
nous fûmes	<i>we were</i>
vous fûtes	<i>you were</i>
ils furent	<i>they were</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais été	<i>I had been</i>
tu avais été	<i>thou hadst been</i>
il avait été	<i>he had been</i>
nous avions été	<i>we had been</i>
vous aviez été	<i>you had been</i>
ils avaient été	<i>they had been.</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.*

j'eus été	<i>I had been</i>
tu eus été	<i>thou hadst been</i>
il eut été	<i>he had been</i>
nous eûmes été	<i>we had been</i>
vous eûtes été	<i>y' had been</i>
ils eurent été	<i>they had been</i>

The following exercises, on the verb *être*, are composed of four forms of sentences, affirmative, interrogative, and negative; interrogative and negative.

When, in a question, the substantive is expressed, it must always begin the sentence, and the pronoun still be put after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Mon frère est-il venu ? *is my brother come ?*
la reine n'est-elle pas arrivée ? *is not the queen arrived ?*

PRESENT.

I am very glad to see you. *aise de voir* Art not thou pleased with that book. *satisfait de*
Is she really amiable ? *véritablement* We are happy. *heureux* Are you not too obliging. *complaisant* Are your friends still in London. *encore à Londres*

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I not been constant ? *posé* Hast thou always been steady ? *posé*
has been faithful. *fidèle* Have we not been firm and courageous ? *ferme* You have been charitable. *charitable* Have those men always been good and benevolent ? *bienfaisant*

* Exercises upon this tense would be as yet too complicated, as may be seen by this sentence : *à peine y eus-je été cinq ou six minutes qu'il arriva*, I had scarce been there five or six minutes when he arrived.

SIMPLE TENSES

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.	
je serai	<i>I shall or will be</i>
tu seras	<i>thou wilt be</i>
il sera	<i>he will be</i>
nous serons	<i>we shall be</i>
vous serez	<i>you shall be</i>
ils seront	<i>they shall be</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
j'aurai été	<i>I shall or will</i>
tu auras été	<i>thou wilt</i>
il aura été	<i>he will</i>
nous aurons été	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez été	<i>you will</i>
ils auront été	<i>they will</i>

} *have been*

IMPERFECT.

I was too busy to see you.	Wast not thou troublesome?
<i>occupé pour recevoir</i>	<i>importun</i>
Was this girl idle?	Were we not too untractable?
<i>fille paresseux</i>	<i>indocile</i>
not quiet enough.	They were vain, light, and coquettish.
<i>tranquille 2 assez 1</i>	<i>f. — frivole coquette</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had hitherto been very indifferent.	Hadst not thou been too
<i>jusqu'alors</i>	<i>insouciant</i>
imprudent?	Had his wife been sufficiently modest and reserved?
<i>épouse</i>	<i>assez assez réservé</i>
We had not yet been sufficiently attentive.	Had you been envious
<i>encore</i>	<i>appliqué</i>
and jealous?	They had not been grateful
<i>jalous</i>	<i>reconnaissant</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Perhaps I was not sufficiently prudent.	Wast thou discreet
<i>peut-être que</i>	<i>assez discret 2</i>
enough on that occasion?	Was not that princess too proud?
<i>1 en — f. — cresse</i>	<i>fier</i>
were very unhappy.	Were not you too hasty?
	<i>prompt</i>
much satisfied.	
<i>fort satisfait</i>	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

To-morrow I shall be at home till (twelve o'clock.)	Wilt thou
<i>demain</i>	<i>chez moi jusqu'à midi</i>
always be restless, brutal, and sour?	Will your father be
<i>inquiet bourru</i>	<i>chagrin Monsieur</i>
at home this evening?	Shall not we be more diligent?
<i>chez lui</i>	<i>soir m. 1</i>
then be ever capricious, obstinate, and particular.	Will not your
<i>2 1 3 quints: opiniâtre</i>	<i>pointilleux</i>
scholars be troublesome?	
<i>écolier incommode</i>	

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

je serais	<i>I should, would, or could be</i>
tu serais	<i>thou wouldst be</i>
il serait	<i>he would be</i>
nous serions	<i>we should be</i>
vous seriez	<i>you would be</i>
ils seraient	<i>they would be</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

j'aurais été	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais été	<i>thou wouldst</i>
il aurait été	<i>he would</i>
nous aurions été	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez été	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient été	<i>they would</i>

This form *j'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été, nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été*, is also used instead of the conditional past, *j'aurais*.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall not I have been too severe? Thou wilt have been too distrustful. Shall we not have been desirous enough? Will not *défiant* *empressé* 2 1 you have been inconsiderate? Will not the judges have been just? *indiscret* *juge*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would not be so rash. Wouldst thou be as consistent in thy *téméraire* *conséquent dans* behaviour as in thy language? Would not his son be ready in time? *conduite f.* *propos m. pl.* *fil* *prêt à* Should we always be incorrigible? You would not be disinterested *désintéressé* 2 enough. Would not those ladies be always ready? *1* *dame* *prêt*

PAST.

(But for) your instructions, I should have been proud and *sans* *conseil m. pl.* *dédaigneux* haughty. Wouldst not thou have been malicious and sarcastic? *hautain* *malin* *ricaneur* Would not that man have been quite destitute? Certainly, we *entièrement dépourvu* should not have been so ridiculous. Would not you have been *si ridicule* more kind and indulgent? They would not have been so *doux* *plus complaisant* rude. *malhonnête*

IMPERATIVE.

sois	be (thou)
qu'il soit	let him be
soyons	let us be
soyez	be (ye)
qu'ils soient	let them be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.			PRETERIT.		
que	that		que	that	
je sois	I may, can,	or	j'aie été	I may, can, or	
	should be			should	
tu sois	thou may'st be		tu aies été	thou mayest	} have been
il soit	he may be		il ait été	he may	
nous soyons	we may be		nous ayons été	we may	
vous soyez	you may be		vous ayez été	you may	
ils soient	they may be		ils aient été	they may	

112. When the noun is expressed, its place is immediately after *que*: *que votre fils soit plus poli*, let your son be more polite.

Be liberal, but with discretion. Do not be so lavish. Let us be sing. _____ avec _____ sing. prodigue.

equitable, humane, and prudent. Let us not be greedy. Be economical _____ humain _____ avide économe

and temperate. Do not be thoughtless. Let him be more patient, _____ sobre pl. léger

Let her be ready at six o'clock. Let your children be better _____ prêt à six heures enfant mieux

(taken care of). Let these (poor men) be admitted. Let them _____ soignés malheureux admis

not be so hasty in their conclusions.
prompt à porter un jugement.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

113. In the preceding exercises, and in the tenses of the subjunctive mood, we have given such English sentences as might lead the learner to suppose that the French *que je parle*, and the English *that I may speak*, are always equivalent, and that the use of the subjunctive mood corresponds in both languages; but it is indeed very far from being the case, as the following examples will show.

1. Je désire qu'il vienne *I wish him to come*
2. Voulez-vous que je vous le dise? *do you wish me to tell it you?*

3. Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne *I do not think he will come*
 4. Cachez cela, de peur qu'il ne le voie *hide that, lest he sees it, or lest he should see it*
 5. Dites-le lui, afin qu'il vienne à temps *tell it him, in order that he may come in time*
 6. Il faut que j'y sois à deux heures *I must be there at two o'clock*

Here are six sentences in which the subjunctive mood is necessarily used in French, and there is but one in which it is used in English, the fifth. The use of the subjunctive mood in French depends upon the preceding or governing sentence, and is determined by rules which will be found in their proper place. (*See Syntax*) We will confine ourselves, for the present, in these exercises on the various tenses of the subjunctive, to giving full sentences; that is, we will add the introductory part after which that mood is required.

It must further be added that the conjugation *that* is often omitted in English, whereas *que* is and must always be expressed in French.

PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Is it possible that he is so credulous? We wish that thou
est-il possible —le *nous désirons*
 mayest be more modest. Is it true that she is so obstinate? They
 —te *est-il vrai* *entêtée*
 wish you to be more assiduous. It is not expected that you should
désire —du *on ne s'attend pas*
 be back so early. We fear they will be deceived.
de retour de si bonne heure. *nous craignons* *trompé*

PRETERIT.

It is possible that I may have been too hasty and too impatient.
il se peut *emporté*
 I cannot believe that he may have been so puffed with pride. It is
je ne saurais croire *bouffi d'orgueil m. c'est*
 (a pity) that she has been so fickle. My father regrets that we have
dommage *volage* *mon père regrette*
 been so headstrong. It is wrong that you should have been so
entêté *il est mal*
 covetous. I cannot think that they have been so unreasonable.
avare *je ne puis croire* *dérasonnable.*

IMPERFECT.

Could you doubt my being humane and generous? We wish
avez-vous pu douter *humain* = *nous voudrions*
 thou wert more careful. We told it to her in order that she might
sageux *nous le lui avons dit afin*

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

que	that
je fusse	I might or could be
tu fusses	thou mightst be
il fût	he might be
nous fussions	we might be
vous fussiez	you might be
ils fussent	they might be

COMPOUND TENSES

PLUPERFECT.

que	that
j'eusse été	I might, or could
tu eusses été	thou might'st
il eût été	he might
nous eussions été	we might
vous eussiez été	you might
ils eussent été	they might

} have been

not be so arrogant. Prayers were offered to the gods that we might
on offrit des prières aux dieux pour

be victorious. It would be better if you were not so stern. We
 = *il vaudrait mieux que* *sévère nous*

used all our efforts that they might be successful.
avons fait tous nos efforts afin que *heureux*

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been more studious. That thou mightst have
 been more circumspect. That she might have been more attentive
circumspect =
 to her duties. That we might have been less addicted to
devoir m.pl. *livré à*
 pleasure. That you might have been more assiduous and more
art. m. pl. *assidu* *plus*
 grateful. That they might have been less daring.
reconnaissant *hardi*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

114. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF SOME OF THE VERBS ENDING IN *er*.

The infinitive ends in *er*: as, *aimer*, to love; *parler*, to speak.

i. In verbs ending in *-ger*, the *e* is retained in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may have the soft sound, in every tense and person, as in the infinitive: as, *mangeant*, *jugeant*, *je négligeai*.

ii. In verbs ending in *-cer*, a cedilla is put under *c*, for the same reason, when followed by *a* or *o*: as, *suçant*, *plaçant*, *j'essaçai*.

iii. In verbs ending in *-oyer* and *-uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*: as, *j'emploie*, *il essuie*, *j'appuierai*, *il nettoierait*.

iv. This practice is extended by some to verbs in *-ayer*, and *-eyer*: as, *il paie*, *j'essaierai*, *elle grassèye*, or *grassiè*.

v. In some few verbs ending in *-eler* and *-eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled in those inflections, which receive an *e* mute, after these consonants: as, from *appeler*, *il appelle*, from *jeter*, *je jetterai*, etc.

vi. The first person singular of the present of the indicative changes *e* mute into acute *é*, in interrogative sentences; as, *négligé-je?* *aimé-je?* This remark is also applied to some verbs of the second conjugation ending in *-vrir*, *-frir*, and *-lir*: as *offré-je?* *cueillé-je?*

There are but two irregular verbs in *er*, *aller*, *envoyer*, which will be found in their proper place.

115. PARADIGM, OR MODEL.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
parl- <i>er</i>	to speak	avoir parl- <i>é</i>	to have spoken

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

parl-ant	speaking	}	ayant parlé	having spoken
	PAST.			
parl-é m. -ée f.	spoken			

REMARKS.

All the verbs of the first conjugation follow the termination of the verb *parler*.

EXAMPLE.

	parl-er	aim-er	expliqu-er	avou-er
	parl-ant	annon-çant	engag-eant	défray-ant
	parl-é	agré-é	décri-é	dédommag-é
je	parl-e	dans-e	ignor-e	renvoi-e
tu	parl-es	din-es	rejet-tes	renouvel-les
il	parl-e	chant-e	bégai-e	grassèy-e
nous	parl-ons	berç-ons	choy-ons	chang-eons
vous	parl-ez	régn-ez	essuy-ez	épel-ez
ils	parl-ent	caress-ent	ennu-ient	appel-lent

And so on through the whole verb.

It must be remembered, in writing the following exercises on the various conjugations,

I. That the adverb comes after the verb, in simple tenses, or between the auxiliary and the participle, in compound ones.

II. That *du, de la, de l', des*, are always placed before any noun which is not taken in the general sense, and whenever *some* may be understood.

III. That *de* alone is used, after negations, without regard to the gender or the number, and also when the noun is preceded by an adjective.

IV. That personal pronouns, in the objective case are generally placed before the verb, except the imperative affirmative 1st pers. pl. 2nd pers. sing. and pl.

V. That the signs of the interrogation *do, did*, are not rendered in French; nor are they rendered when emphatically joined to the English verb thus: as *I do love*.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

parl-e	<i>I speak, am speaking, or do speak</i>
tu parl-es	<i>thou speakest</i>
il parl-e	<i>he speaks</i>
nous parl-ons	<i>we speak</i>
vous parl-ez	<i>you speak</i>
ils parl-ent	<i>they speak</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÉTERIT INDEFINITE.

j'ai parl-é	<i>I have</i>
tu as parl-é	<i>thou hast</i>
il a parl-é	<i>he has</i>
nous avons parl-é	<i>we have</i>
vous avez parl-é	<i>you have</i>
ils ont parl-é	<i>they have</i>

spoken

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I readily give that plaything to your sister. Do I prefer
volontiers donner *joujou m.* *f.* *préférer*
 pleasure to my duty? Dost not thou incense thy enemies? He
 art. m. *devoir m.* *irriter* *ennemi*
 does not give salutary advice to his friends. We do sincerely love
donne un = 2 avis m. 1. *sincèrement*
 peace and tranquillity. We do not neglect (any thing) to please
 art. *paix f.* art. *=f.* *négliger* *rien* *pour plaire*
 you. Do you not admire the beauty of that landscape? Do not
admirer *=f.* *paysage m.*
 your parents comfort the afflicted? They (make use of) every
consoler *affligé m. pl.* *employer* *tous art.*
 means to succeed.
moyen m. pour réussir

PRÉTERIT INDEFINITE.

I have (given up) my favourite horse to my cousin. Hast thou
céder *favori 2 cheval m. 1* *—m.*
 not exchanged watches with my sister? Has the tutor given
changer de montres *précepteur* *de*
 fine engravings to his pupil? We have spoken (a long while) of
gravure f. pl. *élève* *long-temps*
 your adventure. Have you not insisted too much on that point?
aventure f. *insister* ** sur* *—m.*
 Have your aunts prepared their ball dresses?
tante préparer *de bal 2 habit m. pl. 1.*

IMPERFECT.

I unceasingly thought of my misfortunes. Didst thou dread
sans cesse penser à *malheur m. pl.* *redouter*
 his presence and firmness? He exhibited in his person all the
—f. *pron. fermeté f.* *retracer en* *f.*

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

je parl-ais	<i>I did speak, or was speaking</i>
tu parl-ais	<i>thou didst speak</i>
il parl-ait	<i>he did speak</i>
nous parl-ions	<i>we did speak</i>
vous parl-iez	<i>you did speak</i>
ils parl-aient	<i>they did speak</i>

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

je parl-ai	<i>I spoke</i>
tu parl-as	<i>thou spakest</i>
il parl-a	<i>he spoke</i>
nous parl-âmes	<i>we spoke</i>
vous parl-âtes	<i>you spoke</i>
ils parl-èrent	<i>they spoke</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais parl-é	<i>I had</i>	} <i>spoken</i>
tu avais parl-é	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait parl-é	<i>he had</i>	
nous avions parl-é	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez parl-é	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient parl-é	<i>they had</i>	
PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.		} <i>spoken</i>
j'eus parl-é	<i>I had</i>	
tu eus parl-é	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut parl-é	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes parl-é	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes parl-é	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent parl-é	<i>they had</i>	

virtues of his ancestors. Did not that woman accuse her friend of
 f. ancêtre accuser ami f.
 levity? We did not protect that bad man. You despised a vain
 légèreté f. protéger méchant mépriser — 2.
 erudition. Did the Romans disdain so weak an enemy!
 — f. 1 Romain dédaigner faible 2 m. 1.

PLUPERFECT.

I Had drained an unhealthy marsh Hadst thou not married
 dessécher malsain 2 marais m. 1 épouser
 a rich man, but unluckily without education? Had his father
 malheureusement sans — f.
 rejected these advantageous offers? We had not long listened
 rejeter avantageux 2 offre f. 1 long-temps écouter
 to the singing of the birds. Had you already studied
 * chant m. oiseau m. déjà étudier art.
 geography and history? Had not his friends procured him a
 = f. art. = procurer 2 lui
 troop of cavalry?
 compagnie f. cavalerie

There is a fourth preterit, called *preterit anterior indefinite*, which is used instead of the preterit anterior, when speaking of a time not entirely elapsed: as, *j'ai eu achevé mon ouvrage ce matin, cette semaine*, etc. and not *j'eus achevé*, as it is found in every conjugation. We shall insert it here: *j'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé, il a eu parlé, nous avons eu parlé, vous avez eu parlé, ils ont eu parlé*.

TENSES.

ECT.

had	} spoken
hadst	
had	
had	
had	
had	} spoken
hadst	
had	
had	
had	

I had	} spoken
thou hadst	
he had	
we had	
you had	
they had	

her friend of
ami f.
espised a vain
priser — 2.
my!
1.

not married
épouser
Had his father
ng listened
temps écouter
studied
étudier art.
cured him a
curer 2 lui

prior indefi-
rior, when
eu achevé
not j'eus
shall insert
arlé, nous
é.

SIMPLE TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

je parl-erai	I shall or will speak
tu parl-eras	thou shalt speak
il parl-era	he shall speak
nous parl-erons	we shall speak
vous parl-erez	you shall speak
ils parl-eront	they shall speak

COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

j'aurai parl-é	I shall or will	} have spoken
tu auras parl-é	thou shalt	
il aura parl-é	he shall	
nous aurons parl-é	we shall	
vous aurez parl-é	you shall	
ils auront parl-é	they shall	

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I gave them peaches	and flowers out of my garden.	Thou
leur pêche f. pl.	fleurs f. pl. de mon jardin	
forgottest an essential circumstance.	Did not your cousin relate	
oublier essentiel 2. circonstance f.	raconter	
that charming history with (a great deal) of grace ?	He lightly	
—mant = f. avec beaucoup	légèrement	
judged of my intentions.	Did we not show	courage
juger *	montrer de art. — m. pr	
perseverance, and firmness.	Did you not visit the grotto and:	
art. persévérance pr. art. fermeté f.	visiter grotte f.	
the grove ? They did not generously forgive their enemies ?		
bois m.	généreusement pardonner à —	

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had soon wasted my money, and exhausted my resources.	
bientôt manger argent m.	épuiser ressource f.
Hadst thou very soon reinforced thy party.	Had not Alexander
* vite renforcer	parti m. Alexandre
soon surmounted all obstacles.	We sat down to table as soon
surmonter tous art. = m. pl. nous nous mêmes à — aussitôt	
as we had closed the shutters and drawn the curtains.	Had you not
que fermer volets tirer rideau	
quickly dined.	They retired to their quarters when they
promptement dîner	ils rentrèrent aux casernes quand
had dispersed the mob.	
disperser populace f.	

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall relieve the poor.	Wilt thou faithfully keep that secret ?
soulager pauvre m. pl.	fidèlement garder — m.
Will he consult	enlightened judges ? He will support you
consulter de art. éclairé 2	juge 1 appuyer
with all his credit.	We shall not prefer pleasure to glory
de — m.	préférer art. m. art. f.

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

je parl-erais I should, would, or could speak

tu parl-erais thou shouldst speak

il parl-erait he should speak

nous parl-erions we should speak

vous parl-eriez you should speak

ils parl-eraient they should speak

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

j'aurais parl-é I should, would, or could

tu aurais parl-é thou shouldst

il aurait parl-é he should

nous aurions parl-é we should

vous auriez parl-é you should

ils auraient parl-é they should

have spoken

J'eusse parlé, tu eusses parlé, il eût parlé, nous eussions parlé, vous eussiez parlé, ils eussent parlé, are also used for the conditional past. This remark holds good for every verb.

and richès to honour. With such conduct will you not
 art. pl. art. *par une telle conduite*
 grieve your father and mother? Will they not astonish their
affliger pron. *étonner*
 hearers?
auditeur m. pl.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall soon have finished this book. By thy submission wilt thou
achever m. *soumission* f.
 not have appeased his anger? The country will be happy when
apaiser *colère* f. *ce pays* *heureux*
 the king shall have triumphed over his enemies. We shall be better
trionpher de *plus*
 pleased with ourselves, when we shall have rewarded the merit of
content de nous *récompenser* *mérite* m.
 this good man. Will you not have flown to his assistance then?
de bien 2 1 *voler* *secours* m.
 Will not our servants have (brought back) our horses then?
domestique m. *ramené* *cheval*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I would not plan such vain projects. Thou wouldst not avoid so
former — *projet* m. *éviter* 2
 great a danger. Would not his attorney (clear up) that business?
 3 1 4 *procureur débrouiller* *affaire* f.
 We would (drive away) the importunate. Would you not discover
chasser *importun* m. pl. *dévoiler*

IMPERATIVE.

parl-e*	speak (thou)
qu'il parl-e	let him speak
parl-ons	let us speak
parl-ez	speak (ye)
qu'ils parl-ent	let them speak

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

	PRESENT.
que	that
je parl-e	I may or can speak
tu parl-es	thou mayest speak
il parl-e	he may speak
nous parl-ions	we may speak
vous parl-iez	you may speak
ils parl-ent	they may speak

COMPOUND TENSES

	PRETERIT.
que	that
jaie parl-é	I may or can
tu aies parl-é	thou mayest
il ait parl-é	he may
nous ayons parl-é	we may
vous ayez parl-é	you may
ils aient parl-é	they may

that atrocious plot? They would not unravel the clue of that
atroce 2 complot m. l dé mêler fil m.

intrigue.

—f.

PAST.

I should have liked hunting, fishing, and the country.
aimer art. chasse f. campagne f.

Wouldst thou not have played? Would he not have bowed to the
jouer saluer

company? Would we gladly have praised his pride and
compagnie f. avec plaisir 2 louer 1 orgueil m.

incivility You would have awakened every body. Would
pron. malhonnêteté f. éveiller tout le monde

those merchants have paid their debts?
négoçant payer dette f. pl.

IMPERATIVE.

In all thy actions, consult the light of reason. Never
dans — f. pl. consulter lumière art. f.

yield to the violence of thy passions. Let us love
le abandonner — f.

justice, peace, and virtue. Let us not cease to
art. — f. art. f. art. f. cesser de

* The second person singular of the imperative of this conjugation, and likewise of some verbs of the second ending in *vir. frir. lir*, take an *s* after *e*, before the word *y* and *en*, as *portes-en à ton frère*, carry some to thy brother; *offres-en à ta sœur*, offer some to thy sister; *cueilles-en aussi pour toi*, gather some alike for thyself; *apportes-y les livres*, bring there thy books.

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

que	that
j' parl-asse	I might, could or would
tu parl-asses	thou mightst
il parl-ât	he might
neus parl-ussions	we might
vous parl-assiez	you might
ils parl-ussent	they might

speak

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT.

que	that
j'eusse	I might, could or would
tu eusses	thou mightst
il eût	he might
nous eussions	we might
nous eussiez	you might
ils eussent	they might

have spoken

work. Sacrifice your own interest to the public good. Do
*travailler sacrifier * intérêt m. pl. 2 bien 1*
 not omit such useful and interesting details.
négliger de si utile 2 intéressant 3 art. — m. pl. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Must I ever listen to a severe censor of my defects? I wish
faut il t'nijours 2 écouter 1 — 2 = m. 1. défaut m. pl. je souhaite*
 that thou mayest find real friends. He must study, in order
trouver de vrai il faut qu'il travaille afin
 that he may adorn his speeches with the graces of a pure diction.
parer discours de — 2 — f. 1.
 We have retired in order that she may remain alone and quite.
nous nous sommes retirés afin rester
 Provided we do not so hastily condemn the world. It is not
pour que légèrement condamner monde m. il n'est
 well to sulk incessantly. We pay them well that they may
pas bien bouder sans cesse nous les payons bien afin que
 work more willingly
travailler plus volontiers

PRETERIT.

It is not unlikely that I have spoken rashly. Do you not
il n'est pas improbable imprudemment ne croyez-
 believe that he has carried despair into the heart of his
vous pas porter art. désespoir m. dans ame
 friend? Can any one imagine that we should have blamed a conduct
pourra-t-on s'imaginer blâmer conduite f.
 so prudent and so wise? I easily conceive your having exasperated
sage je conçois facilement que exaspérer
 so petulant a disposition. That they may not have (taken advantage)
— 2 caractère m. 1 profiter
 of the circumstances.
circonstances f. pl.

IMPERFECT.

That I might not copy his example. That thou mightest (give up)
imiter *exemple* m. *abandonner*
 perfidious friends. That he might inhabit a hut
de — *de* 2 art. 1 *habiter* *chaumière* f.
 instead of a palace. That we might fall at the feet of an
au lieu *palais* m. *tomber à* *pied* m.
 illegitimate king. That you might respect the laws of your
illégitime 2 1 *respecter* *loi* f. pl.
 country. That they might not speak — at random
pays m. *à tort et à travers*.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have burnt that work. That thou mightest not
brûler m.
 have contemplated the beauties of the country. That he might have
contempler = *campagne*
 improved his natural abilities. That we might not have
perfectionner — *rel* 2 *moyens* m. 1.
 gained the victory. That you might have delighted the public.
remporter = f. *enchanter* — m.
 That they might have struck their enemies with fear.
frapper *de crainte*

116. SECOND CONJUGATION.

IN -IR.

This conjugation is divided into five branches, which are distinguished by the *participle present*, the *first person of the indicative*, and the *preterit*, thus :

1 punir	punissant	je punis	je punis
2 dormir	dormant	je dors	je dormis
3 ouvrir	ouvrant	j'ouvre	j'ouvris
4 venir	venant	je viens	je vins
5 courir	courant	je cours	je courus

The first branch contains upwards of two hundred and eighty verbs, the second contains seven radical verbs, and eleven derivatives.

As there are many verbs of the first branch, the infinitives of which end in *mir*, *tir*, *vir*, like those of the second branch, as may be seen from the following table, some confusion may arise in conjugating the one or the other, that is,

the learner might be led, by analogy, to say *ralentant, je ralentais*, or *dormissant, je dormissais*. To avoid this confusion effectually, he will do well to learn the second branch by heart, especially as the few verbs of which it is composed, are very commonly used.

The third branch has four radical verbs, and five derivatives.

The fourth branch has two radical verbs and twenty-three derivatives.

The fifth has one radical, and seven derivative verbs.

TABLE OF THE FIVE BRANCHES.

FIRST BRANCH,

<i>ralent-ir</i>	<i>to slacken</i>	<i>asserv-ir</i>	<i>to enslave</i>
<i>retent-ir</i>	<i>to resound</i>	<i>sév-ir</i>	<i>to punish</i>
<i>appesant-ir</i>	<i>to make heavy</i>	<i>assouv-ir</i>	<i>to glut</i>
<i>nant-ir</i>	<i>to pledge</i>	<i>appauvr-ir</i>	<i>to impoverish</i>
<i>renform-ir</i>	<i>to plaster</i>	<i>tern-ir</i>	<i>to tarnish</i>
<i>afferm-ir</i>	<i>to strengthen</i>	<i>vern-ir</i>	<i>to varnish</i>
<i>répart-ir</i>	<i>to distribute</i>	<i>garn-ir</i>	<i>to garnish</i>
<i>avert-ir</i>	<i>to inform</i>	<i>fourn-ir</i>	<i>to furnish</i>
<i>dessert-ir</i>	<i>to unset a stone</i>	<i>bén-ir</i>	<i>to bless</i>
<i>sort-ir</i>	<i>to obtain</i>	<i>henn-ir, etc.</i>	<i>to neigh</i>
<i>assort-ir</i>	<i>to match</i>		
<i>ressort-ir</i>	{ <i>to be under the jurisdiction of</i>		

SECOND BRANCH.

Roots.		Derivatives.	
<i>dor-mir, je dors,</i>	<i>to sleep</i>	{ <i>redor-mir</i>	<i>to sleep again</i>
		{ <i>endor-mir</i>	<i>to tuck asleep</i>
<i>men-tir je mens,</i>	<i>to lie</i>	{ <i>se rendor-mir</i>	<i>to fall asleep again</i>
		{ <i>démen-tir</i>	<i>to give the lie</i>
<i>sen-tir, je sens,</i>	<i>to feel</i>	{ <i>consen-tir</i>	<i>to consent</i>
		{ <i>pressen-tir</i>	<i>to foresee</i>
<i>par-tir*, je pars,</i>	<i>to set out</i>	{ <i>ressen-tir</i>	<i>to resent</i>
		{ <i>dépar-tir</i>	<i>to divide</i>
<i>sor-tir*, je sors,</i>	<i>to get out</i>	{ <i>repar-tir</i>	<i>to set out again</i>
<i>ser-vir, je sers,</i>	<i>to serve</i>	{ <i>ressor-tir</i>	<i>to go out again</i>
		{ <i>desser-vir</i>	<i>to clear the table</i>

se repen-tir, je me repens, to repent, has no derivative.

* N. B.—*Partir, repartir, sortir*, and *ressortir*, of the second branch, take the auxiliary *être*. *Venir* and its derivatives, are likewise conjugated with *être*, except *prévenir* and *subvenir*, which take *avoir*; *convenir* also takes *avoir*, when it means *to suit*, but it takes *être*, when it signifies *to agree*. *Avenir* is a defective and obsolete verb, only used impersonally.

THIRD BRANCH.

ou-vrir	to open	}	rou-vrir	to open again
côu-vrir	to cover		entr'ou-vrir	to half op.
off-rir	to offer		décou-vrir	to discover
souff-rir	to suffer		recou-vrir	to cover again
souff-rir to suffer has no derivative.			mésouf-frir	to underbid

FOURTH BRANCH.

Roots. Derivatives.		Roots. Derivatives.		
VENIR to come	contre-venir	to contravene	s'abs-tenir	to abstain
	a-venir	to happen	appar-tenir	to belong
	con-venir*	to agree	con-tenir	to contain
	de-venir	to become	de-tenir	to detain
	discon-venir	to deny	entre-tenir	to keep up
	inter-venir	to intervene	main-tenir	to maintain
	par-venir	to attain	ob-tenir	to obtain
	pré-venir	to prevent	re-tenir	to retain
	pro-venir*	to proceed	sou-tenir	to uphold
	re-venir	to come again		
	sur-venir	to befall		
	sub-venir*	to relieve		
	se sou-venir	to remember		
	se ressou-venir	to recollect		
			TENIR to hold	

FIFTH BRANCH.

COURIR,	accourir,	to run to	parcourir,	to run over
COURANT,	concourir,	to concur	recourir,	to recur
JE COURS,	discourir,	to discourse	secourir	to succour
to run	encourir,	to incur		

117. PARADIGMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
to punish	to feel	to open	to hold	to run
pu-nir †	sen-tir †	ou-vrir †	t-ener †	cou-rir †

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

punishing	feeling	opening	holding	running
pu-nissant	sen-tant	ou-vrant	te-nant	cou-rant

* See Note in page 146.

† The italics show the letters which are altered from the infinitive, in the formation of the different persons.

PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>punished</i> pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
<i>to have punished</i> avoir pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
<i>having punished</i> ayant pu-ni		<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I punish</i> je pu-nis	<i>feel</i> sen-s	<i>open</i> ou-vre	<i>hold</i> t-iens	<i>run</i> cours
<i>tu pu-nis</i> il pu-nit	sen-s sen-t	ou-vre ou-vre	t-iens t-ient	cours court
<i>nous pu-nissons</i> <i>vous pu-nissez</i> <i>ils pu-nissent</i>	sen-tons sen-tez sen-tent	ou-vrons ou-vrez ou-vrent	t-ient te-nons te-nent	cour cou-rons cou-rez. cou-rent

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I have punished</i> j'ai pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> t-enu	<i>run</i> cou-ru
--------------------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	----------------------

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did punish</i> je pu-nissais*	<i>feel</i> sen-tais*	<i>open</i> ouv-rais*	<i>hold</i> t-enaais	<i>run</i> cou-raais*
---------------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I choose this picture.</i> choisir - tableau m.	<i>I feel all the unpleasantness of your</i> désagrément m.
<i>situation. Whence comest thou?</i> — d'où venir	<i>Does he thus define that word?</i> * ainsi définir mot m.
<i>Does his mother (go out) so early?</i> * sortir tôt	<i>Do we not (set off) for the</i> * partir
<i>country? Do you not sympathise with his sorrows?</i> campagne f. * compatir à	<i>Do you</i> mal. m. pl. "
<i>not (tell a lie)? They (are finishing) at this moment. They</i> mentir finir dans * art. — m.	
<i>(act contrarily) to your orders.</i> contrevenir ordre.	

* The first person only of those tenses, which are invariably conjugated alike, will now be given, the scholar will easily supply the rest. Those tenses are, the imperfect, *je punissais*, the future and conditional, *je punirai, je punirais*.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'avais pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>t-enu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>je pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-tis</i>	<i>ouv-ris</i>	<i>t-ins</i>	<i>cou-rus</i>
<i>tu pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-tis</i>	<i>ouv-ris</i>	<i>t-ins</i>	<i>cou-rus</i>
<i>il pun-it</i>	<i>sen-tit</i>	<i>ouv-rit</i>	<i>t-int</i>	<i>cou-rut</i>
<i>nous pu-nîmes</i>	<i>sen-tîmes</i>	<i>ouv-rîmes</i>	<i>t-inmes</i>	<i>cou-rûmes</i>
<i>vous pu-nîtes</i>	<i>sen-tîtes</i>	<i>ouv-rîtes</i>	<i>t-întes</i>	<i>cou-rûtes</i>
<i>ils pu-nirent</i>	<i>sen-tirent</i>	<i>ouv-rirent</i>	<i>t-inrent</i>	<i>cou-rurent</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'eus pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>t-enu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>je pu-nirai</i>	<i>sen-tirai</i>	<i>ou-vrirai</i>	<i>t-iendrai</i>	<i>cour-rai</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'aurai pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>t-enu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

IMPERFECT.

I fortified his soul against the dangers of seduction. I served
p munir contre — art. — f. servir
my friends warmly. Didst not thou amuse him with fair
*avec chaleur * entretenir de beau*
promises? He generally complied with the wishes of his family.
promesse f. pl. en général consentir à désir m. pl. famille f.
Were we sleeping then? Did you not belie your character?
dormir démentir caractère m.
The children were running about the garden. We (used to) discourse,
courir dans discourir
on interesting subjects. My sister (used to come) every
intéressant 2 sujet m. 1 venir tous
morning to see me. Did you not go out in you pleased?
les matins sortir vouliez
Did not the master punish you severely?
sévèrement

PRETERIT.

I softened my father by my submission. I foresaw that terrible
fléchi soumission f. pressentir — 2
catastrophe. Thou didst not (come again) as thou hadst pro-
— f. 1. revenir comme le ind-2 pro-
mised. He did not succeed through thoughtlessness. Did not his
mis réussir par étourderie f.
daughter (set out again) immediately. Did not Alexander sully
repartir sur-le-camp ternir

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I should punish
je pu-nirais

<i>feel</i> sen-tirais	<i>open</i> ou-vrirais	<i>hold</i> t-iendrais	<i>run</i> cour-raïs
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

PAST.

I should have punished
j'aurais pu-ni

<i>fell</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cour-ru
-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

IMPERATIVE.

punish (thou)
pu-nis

qu'il pu-nisse

pu-nissons

pu-nissez

qu'ils pu-nissent

<i>feel</i> sen-s	<i>open</i> ou-vre	<i>hold</i> t-iens	<i>run</i> cours
<i>sen-le</i>	<i>ou-vre</i>	<i>t-ienne</i>	<i>cou-re</i>
<i>sen-lons</i>	<i>ou-vrons</i>	<i>te-nons</i>	<i>cou-rons</i>
<i>sen-lez</i>	<i>ou-vrez</i>	<i>te-nez</i>	<i>cou-rez</i>
<i>sen-tent</i>	<i>ou-vrent</i>	<i>t-iennent</i>	<i>cou-rent</i>

his glory by his pride? Did we (go out) of the city before him?
sortir ville f. avant lui

We never betrayed that important secret. Did not you agree to
trahir —2 —m. 1. *consentir de.*

(leave it to me)? They served their country with courage.
vous en rapporter à moi *pays*

FUTURE.

Shall I not obtain this of you? What will become of thee, if I
obtenir cela de *que* *devenir* * tu

forsake thee? Will he not embellish his country seat?
abandonner *embellir* maison de campagne f.

He will not sleep quietly. Sha'll we consent to that ridiculous
tranquillement 2

bargain? With time and patience, you (will
marché n. 1 *avec de* art m. pr. art. f. *venir*

accomplish) your object. We shall not sully the splendour of
à bout de *dessein* m. *ternir* *éclat* m.

our life by an unworthy action. Will those men enrich their
indigne 2 —1 *enrichir*

country by their industry? Will not our friends offer us their
pays *industrie* *offrir*

assistance? (Take off) your coat and you will run faster.
secours *ôtez* *courir*

CONDITIONAL.

I would open the door and the window. I should still cherish
porte f. *fenêtre* f. *chérir*

life. Would'st not thou interfere in that affair? Would
art. *intervenir* f.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>that I may punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu-nisse	sen-te	ou-vre	t-ienne	cou-re
que tu pu-nisses	sen-tes	ou-vres	t-iennes	cou-res
qu'il pu-nisse	sen-te	ou-vre	t-ienne	cou-re
que nous pu-nissions	sen-tions	ou-vrions	te-nions	cou-rions
que vous pu-nissiez	sen-tiez	ou-vriez	te-niez	cou-riez
qu'ils pu-nissent	sen-tent	ou-vrent	t-iennent	cou-rent

PRETERIT

<i>that I may have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
que j'aie pun-i	sen-ti	ouv-ert	te-nu	cou-ru

IMPERFECT.

<i>that I might punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu-nisse	sen-tisse	ouv-risse	t-inse	cou-russe
que tu pu-nisses	sen-tisses	ouv-risses	t-insses	cou-russes
qu'il pu-nît	sen-tît	ouv-rît	t-int	cou-rût
que nous pu-nissions	sen-tissions	ouv-rissions	t-inssions	cou-russions
que vous pu-nissiez	sen-tissiez	ouv-rissiez	t-inssiez	cou-russiez
qu'ils pu-nissent	sen-tissent	ouv-rissent	t-inssent	cou-russent

my brother (set off again) without taking leave of us? You would
repartir sans prendre congé

not succeed in injuring him in the public opinion. You would
parvenir à nuire lui —2 —f.1.

never soften that hard hearted man. Could they foresee their
attendrir cœur de rocher pressentir

misfortune? Would men always (grow old) without growing
malheur art. vieillir sans devenir inf.1

wiser, if they reflected on the shortness of life. I would
réfléchir ind.-2 sur brièveté f. art.

visit France and Italy if (I had the means.)
parcourir art.— art = mes moyens le permettaient.

IMPERATIVE.

Shudder with horror and terror. Do not open the door
Frémir de = de effroi m. ouvrir

to any one in my absence. Let him not suffer such insults.
personne souffrir pareil insulte f.

Do not go out in the rain. Let us not run so fast. Let us
sortir à courir

feed the poor. Let us gain glory by our perseverance. Let
nourrir m.pl. obtenir art.= f. —

us not divulge our secrets to every body. Do not maintain so
découvrir — tout le monde soutenir

absurd an opinion.
de 2 —f.1.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I might have punished</i> que j'aie puni	<i>fell</i> senti	<i>opened</i> ouvert	<i>held</i> tenu	<i>run</i> cou-ru
--	----------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE,

PRESENT

That I may never stain my reputation. (That I may be before-hand)
fêtrir f. *prévenir*
 with such dangerous enemies. I will not have thee (go out) this
de art. si = 2 1 *veux* *que tu sortir*
 morning. That he may not obtain his ends. That we may become
matin m. *parvenir à* *fin f. pl.* *devenir*
 just, honest, and virtuous. That you may punish the guilty. (We
honnête *vertueux* *coupable pl. nous*
 all pray) that you may return covered with laurels. That
prions tous pour *revenir* *couvert de laurier m. pl.*
 they may establish wise and just laws. That they may agree
établir de 2 3 art 1 *convenir*
 about the conditions. You must run faster, if you wish to
de *il faut que vous* *voulez le*
 overtake him. I sincerely wish he may long enjoy his good fortune.
rattrapper *désirer* *long-temps jouir de* *bonheur m.*

IMPERFECT.

That I might stir the whole neighbourhood. That I might not
ébourdier 2 tout 1 voisinage m.
 (bring about my designs. That he might not bear his disgrace
venir à bout de *projet m. pl.* *soutenir* —f.
 with firmness. That we might disobey the laws. That we might
fermeté *désobéir à*
 belong to that great king. That you might renounce your errors
appartenir *revenir de* =
 and prejudices. That they might weaken the force of their
pr. pron. préjugé *affaiblir* f.
 reasons. That they might hold the most absurd ideas.
raisonnement *tenir à* 2 *art. 1*

118. THIRD CONJUGATION.

IN -OIR.

PARADIGM.

This conjugation contains only seven verbs, which are

<i>perc-evoir</i>	<i>to receive</i>	<i>déc-evoir</i>	<i>to deceive</i>
<i>aperc-evoir</i>	<i>to perceive</i>	<i>d-evoir</i>	<i>to owe</i>
<i>conc-evoir</i>	<i>to conceive</i>	<i>red-evoir</i>	<i>to owe again.</i>

and *recevoir*, which serves as a paradigm. *Percevoir* is a law term, and *apercevoir* is often reflected.

In all tenses in which *c* comes before *o* or *u*, it takes the cedilla, in order that it may retain its soft sound.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
<i>re-ceive</i>	to receive	<i>avoir re-çu</i>	to have received

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		}	PAST.	
<i>re-ceiving</i>	receiving		<i>ayant re-çu</i>	having received
<i>re-çu</i>	received			

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE.	
<i>I receive</i>	<i>we receive</i>	<i>j'ai re-çu</i>	<i>I have received</i>
<i>je re-çois</i>	<i>nous re-cevons</i>	<i>tu as etc.</i>	<i>thou, etc.</i>
<i>tu re-çois</i>	<i>vous re-cevez</i>		
<i>il reçoit</i>	<i>ils re-çoivent</i>		
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>I did receive</i>	<i>we did receive</i>	<i>j'avais re-çu</i>	<i>I had received</i>
<i>je rec-évais</i>	<i>nous rec-evions</i>		
PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR.	
<i>I received</i>	<i>we received</i>	<i>j'eus re-çu</i>	<i>I had received</i>
<i>je re-çus</i>	<i>nous re-çûmes</i>	<i>tu eus etc.</i>	<i>thou etc.</i>
<i>tu re-çus</i>	<i>vous re-çûtes</i>		
<i>il re-çut</i>	<i>ils re-çurent</i>		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I see the summit of the Alps covered with perpetual
apercevoir *sommet* *Alpes f.pl.* *de éternel* 2
 snow. What gratitude dost thou not owe to her who (has
neige f.pl. 1 *reconnaissance f.* *devoir* *celle* 1
 discharged) (the duty of a mother) (to thee) (in thy infancy ?)
remplir 3 5 *près de* 4 2
 does not your pupil understand that rule which is so simple ? We
écolier concevoir *règle f.* * *
 do not owe a large sum. Do you not perceive the snare ? Ought
devoir *gros somme f.* *piège m.* *devoir* 5
 firm and courageous men to yield to circumstances ?
des 1 3 = 4 2 * *céder* *art. circonstance*

SIMPLE TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall receive *we shall receive*
je re-cevrai *nous rec-evrons*

COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

j'aurai re-çu *I shall have received*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I should receive *we should receive*
je re-cervrais *nous rec-evrions*

PAST.

j'aurais re-çu *I should have received*

IMPERATIVE.

re-çois
qu'il re-çoive

receive thou
let him receive

re-cevons *let us receive*
re-cevez *receive ye*
qu'ils re-çoivent *let them receive*

IMPERFECT.

I received a letter from her daily. *Did he see the castle*
tous les jours *apercevoir* *château*
from such a distance? *We did not receive our income*
*si * loin* *percevoir* *revenu m. pl.*
regularly. *Did you not receive great attentions?* *Did those*
régulièrement *de* *honnêteté f. pl.* ***
tyrants conceive all the blackness of their crimes?
tyran concevoir *noirceur f.*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I perceived him walking by moon-light. *He saw him*
le qui se promenait à art. clair de la lune m.
in the middle of the river struggling for his life. *Did we not*
au milieu *se débattant contre la mort*
immediately perceive the snare? *You did not receive his letters in*
time. *Did the ministers conceive the depth of his plan?*
temps *—tre* *profondeur f.* *— m.*

FUTURE.

Shall I receive any letters to-day? *We shall soon see*
de art. *aujourd'hui* *apercevoir*
the spire of the village. *Go and see him; I am sure he will*
clocher m. *— m. allez * le voir* *que*
receive you well. *Will they never understand so simple a thing?*
concevoir *— 2 chose 1*

CONDITIONAL.

I would receive them more politely. *Should a wise man thus*
devoir *2 1 ainsi 2*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

that I may receive *que je rec-oive* that we may receive *que nous rec-oyions*
 que tu rec-oives *que vous receviez*
 qu'il rec-oive *qu'ils rec-oyent*

IMPERFECT.

that I might receive *que je rec-usse* that we might receive *que nous rec-ussions*
 que je rec-usses *que vous rec-ussiez*
 qu'il rec-ût *qu'ils rec-ussent*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT.

que j'aie rec-u } that I may
 que tu, etc. } have re-
 qu'il, etc. } ceived

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse re-çu } that
 que tu, etc. } I might
 } have re-
 } ceived.

(give himself up) to despair? You would easily perceive so
s'abandonner 1 art. *désespoir* m.
 gross a trick. Would not my sisters receive their friend with
grossier 2 use f. 1.
 tenderness?
tendresse f.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Conceive the horror of his situation. Do not receive that mark
 of confidence with indifference. Let us entertain *marque f.*
confiance *concevoir* * de art. horror of
 vice. Receive his advice with respect and gratitude. Receive *pour*
 art. m. *avis*
 no more of his letters. *lettre*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may receive *de art.* consolations. It is not credible that he
 should not conceive a thought so well explained. I understand that
pensée f. *développé* je comprends
 you may not perceive the danger of books which are contrary to
 art. * * contre *
 good morals. See that they do not collect unjust
 art. *mœurs f. pl.* *voyez à ce qu'ils* *percevoir de injuste*
 taxes.
 art. —f. pl. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

IN -RE.

119. This conjugation has five branches.

The first ends in	{	-andre	as	répandre	to spit
		-endre	..	vendre	to sell
		-ondre	..	répondre	to answer
		-erdre	..	perdre	to lose
		-ordre	..	inordre	to bite
the second ends in	{	-aire	..	plaire	to please
			..	taire	to keep secret
the third ends in	{	-aître	..	repaitre	to feed
		-aitre	..	connaître	to know
the fourth ends in	{	-uire	..	instruire	to instruct
			..	contraindre	to constrain
the fifth ends in	{	-aindre	..	peindre	to paint
		-eindre	..	joindre	to join
		-oindre	..		

IMPERFECT.

I did not believe that he perceived the secret designs of the
je ne croyais pas *caché 2 dessein 1*
 enemy's general. We were obliged to receive every body with
*2 * 1* *il fallait que vous*
 civility. It was likely that you might not perceive the
honnêteté *il était probable*
 depth of this book. That they might not perceive the
profondeur f.
 masts of the ship.
mât m. pl. *vaisseau m.*

120. PARADIGMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Branch 1	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
to render	to please	to appear	to reduce	to join
rend-re	pl-aire	pa-raître	rédui-re	join-d-re

PAST. (*To have*).

<i>rendered</i> avoir ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —pl-u	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> —ré-duit	<i>joined</i> —joint
---------------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>rendering</i> ren-dant	<i>pleasing</i> plai-sant	<i>appearing</i> pa-raissant	<i>reducing</i> rédui-sant	<i>joined</i> joi-gnant
------------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------

PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>rendered</i> ren-du	<i>pleased</i> plu	<i>appeared</i> pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> réduit	<i>joined</i> joint
---------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------

COMP. PAST PARTICIPLE.

Avoir rendu Ayant rendu	} plu	| pa-ru	| réduit	| joint
----------------------------	-------	-------	--------	-------

INDICATIVE

PRESENT.

<i>I render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
je rends	pl-ais	pa-raïs	réduis	joins
tu rends	pl-ais	pa-raïs	réduis	joins
il rend	pl-ait	pa-raît	réduit	joint
nous ren-dons	plai-sons	pa-raissons	rédui-sons	joi-gnons
vous rend-ez	plai-sez	pa-raissez	rédui-sez	joi-gnez
ils ren-dent	plai-sent	pa-raissent	rédui-sent	joi-gnent

PRETERIT INDEFINITE. (*I have*)

<i>rendered</i> j'ai ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —pl-u	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> —réduit	<i>joined</i> —joint
--------------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did render</i> je ren-dais	<i>please</i> plai-sais	<i>appear</i> par-raissais	<i>reduce</i> rédui-sais	<i>join</i> joi-gnais
------------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had rendered</i> j'avais ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —plu	<i>appeared</i> —paru	<i>reduced</i> —réduit	<i>joined</i> —joint
---	------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I know his fiery and <i>connaître bouillant</i> 2	impetuous temper. = 3	I expect his <i>caractère m.1 attendre</i>
return with impatience. <i>retour</i>	Does he fear death? <i>craindre</i> art. f.	Does not virtue please every body? We do not compel you to adopt this <i>contraindre de adopter</i>
opinion. We suppress for the present —f. <i>taire</i>	several interesting circum- —m- <i>intéressante</i> 2	

PRETERIT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
<i>je ren-dis</i>	<i>plus</i>	<i>pa-rus</i>	<i>rédui-sis</i>	<i>joi-gnis</i>
<i>tu ren-dis</i>	<i>plus</i>	<i>pa-rus</i>	<i>rédui-sis</i>	<i>joi-gnis</i>
<i>il ren-dit</i>	<i>plut</i>	<i>pa-rut</i>	<i>rédui-sit</i>	<i>joi-gnit</i>
<i>nous ren-dîmes</i>	<i>plûmes</i>	<i>pa-rûmes</i>	<i>rédui-sîmes</i>	<i>joi-gnîmes</i>
<i>vous ren-dîtes</i>	<i>plûtes</i>	<i>pa-rûtes</i>	<i>rédui-sîtes</i>	<i>joi-gnîtes</i>
<i>ils ren-dirent</i>	<i>plurent</i>	<i>pa-rurent</i>	<i>rédui-sirent</i>	<i>joi-gnirent</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
<i>j'eus ren-du</i>	<i>plu</i>	<i>pa-ru</i>	<i>rédui-t</i>	<i>joint</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>je rend-rai</i>	<i>plai-rai</i>	<i>pa-raî-trai</i>	<i>rédui-rai</i>	<i>joi-n-drai</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have*)

<i>rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
<i>j'aurai rep-du</i>	<i>plu</i>	<i>pa-ru</i>	<i>rédui-t</i>	<i>joint</i>

stances. Do you not confound these notions (with one another?)
 f. 1 *confondre* *d'une avec l'autre*
 You captivate your hearers by your modest exterior. Do your
séduire *auditeurs m. pl.* 2 = m. 1
 sons acknowledge their errors? Do not those workmen waste their
reconnaître = *ouvrier perdre*
 time about trifles?
à bagatelle pl.

IMPERFECT.

I did not displease by my conduct. I pitied those sad victims
déplaire *plaindre* *triste victime f. pl.*
 of the revolution. Did not this dog bite? She pleased every
 —f. *chien mordre* *plaire à tout*
 body. He never seemed satisfied. Did he not beat every body
le monde paraître content *battre*
 at draughts? We did not hear well because we were too far.
aux dames entendre *éloigné*
 She was painting. His presence diffused joy wherever he
peindre *répandre* *par tout où*
 appeared. They led us into error.
se montrait induire en

PRETERIT.

I sold every thing I had before my departure. She compelled
vendre tout ce que ind. 2. *contraindre*

Branch 5.

joined
 joi-gnis
 joi-gnis
 joi-gnil
 joi-gnâmes
 joi-gnîtes
 joi-gnèrent

joined
 joint

join
 join-drai

joined
 joint

one another ?)
 avec l'autre

rior. Do your
 n. 1

n waste their
 perdre

victimes
 victime f. pl.

pleased every
 plaie à tout

t every body
 re

ere too far.
 éloigné

wherever he
 er tout où

he compelled
 contraindre

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Branch 1. I should render jo ren-drais	Branch 2. please pl-ai-rai	Branch 3. appear pa-rai-trai	Branch 4. reduce ré-duit-rai	Branch 5. join join-drais
--	----------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

PAST (I should have).

rendered j'aurais ren-du	pleased —plu	appeared —pa-ru	reduced —ré-duit	joined —joi-nt
-----------------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------------	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

render (thou) ren-ds qu'il ren-de ren-dons ren-dez qu'ils ren-dent	please plais plaise plai-sons plai-sez plai-sent	appear pa-rai pa-raisse pa-raissons pa-raissez pa-raissent	reduce réduis réduise rédui-sons rédui-sez rédui-sent	join joins joi-gne joi-gnon joi-gnez joi-gnent
---	---	---	--	---

him to speak the truth. They started before us, but we joined
 de dire partir rejoindre
 them at Paris where they (waited for) us. After giving him a
 attendre ind. 2 donner inf. 2
 good dinner, we took him back to his cottage in our own car-
 recon uirs * chaumière f.
 riage. They put out all the candles which alarmed us a little.
 éteindre lumières f. ce qui étonner ind. 3
 My dog ran after him and bit him in the leg.
 courir ind. 3. mordre à

FUTURE.

Shall I hear him when he calls ? I shall not conceal
 entendre appeler, ind. 7 taire 2
 my mind from you. Will not the general compel the offi-
 façon de penser 3 * 1 contraindre offi-
 cers to join their respective corps ? Will not a thought,
 = f.
 true, grand, and well expressed, please ? (We shall make our
 exprimé, plaie paraî-
 appearance) on this great stage next month. Shall
 tre sur théâtre m. art. prochain 2 mois m. 1
 we describe all the horror of this terrible night ? Will you
 dépeindre — 2 nuit f. 1
 not re-model a work so full of errors ? Will you know your
 refondre plein erreur f. reconnaître
 things again ? They will assiduously correspond with their
 effet m. pl. * assidûment correspondre
 friends.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should I, by these means, gain the desired end ? I
 moyen m. s. atteindre à désiré 2 but m. 1

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may*).

Branch 1	Branch 2.	Branch 3	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
render	please	appear	reduce	join
que je ren-de	plaise	pa-raisse	rédui-se	joi-gne
tu ren des	plaises	pa-raisses	rédui-ses	joi-gnes
il ren-de	plaise	pa-raisse	rédui-se	joi-gne
nous ren-dions	plaisions	pa-raissions	rédui-stions	joi-gnions
vous ren-diez	plaisiez	pa-raissiez	rédui-siez	joi-gniez
ils ren-dent	plaisent	pa-raissent	rédui-sent	joi-gnent

would (carry on) the undertaking with success. Would his mother
conduire entreprise f.

wait with (so much) patience? Could sincerity displease a
attendre tant de art. = f. déplaire à

man (of sense)? Should we sell our liberty? Should we
sensé vendre

build our house upon that plan? Would you oblige
construire — m. astreindre de art.

young people to live as you do? Would you drive your child
gens pl. vivre comme * réduire

to despair? They should fear public censure. Would
art désespoir m. craindre 2 art. f. 1

my protectors introduce an unknown person into the world?
= introduire inconnu m. *

IMPERATIVE.

Depict in thy idyl all the charms of a rural life. Do
peindre idylle douceur f. champêtre 2 1

not wait for me, for it is uncertain whether I shall
attendre * douteux que re-

return or not. Know the powers of thy mind before thou
venir subj-1 force f. avant de *

write. Let us unite prudence with courage. Let us not
écrire joindre art. f. à art. m.

descend to useless particulars. Do not appear either too
descendre dans des 2 —larité 1 paraître ni

cheerful or too grave. Ye sovereigns make the people happy.
gai ni sérieux * souverain pl. rendre

Sweet illusions, vain phantoms, vanish. (Keep to yourself)
doux — f, — fantôme m. disparaître taire

such truths as may offend.
certain f. pl. qui peuvent offenser.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may fear that host of enemies. That I should please
craindre nuéc f. à

PRÆTERIT. (That I may have).

rendered	pleased	appeared	reduced	joined
que j'eusse ren-du	—plu	—pa-ru	—réduit	—join-t

IMPERFECT. (That I might).

ren-	please	appear	reduce	join-
que je ren-usse	plusse	pa-russe	rédui-sisse	join-ssse
tu ren-usses	plusses	pa-russes	rédui-sisses	join-ssses
il ren-ût	plût	pa-rût	rédui-sit	join-nt
nous ren-dissions	plussions	pa-russions	rédui-sissions	join-ssions
vous ren-dissiez	plussiez	pa-russiez	rédui-sissiez	join-ssiez
ils ren-dissent	pl-ussent	pa-russent	rédui-sissent	join-ssent

PLUPERFECT. (that I might have).

rendered	pleased	appeared	reduced	joined
que j'eusse ren-du	plu	par-u	réduit	join-t

every body, is impossible. That he may not reply to such
ce répondre un si 2
 absurd criticism. That he may lead his pupil step by step
 — f. critique f. 1 *conduire élève pas à*
 to a perfect knowledge of the art of speaking and writing. That
connaissance f. inf. 1. p. inf. 1
 we may confound the arts with the sciences. That you may have
confondre tendre à
 the same end (in view.) That they may not depend on any body.
*but m. * * dépendre de personne*
 That they may not increase our sufferings.
accroître peines

IMPERFECT.

He did not allow us to answer him. They were obliged
Il ne voulait pas que répondre lui Il fallait que
 to appear in full uniform at dinner. He stayed a fort-
*grande — forme m. attendre ind-3 * quinze*
 night in Paris, (in order) that we might rejoin him. That we
jours à afin rejoindre
 might take him to court That you might hear their
conduire art. cour f. entendre
 justification. That you might know your real friends. That they
vrai
 might (wait for) the opinion of sensible persons.
attendre art. sensé 2 f. pl. 1

121. *Pronominal or reflected verbs* are, as it has already
 been said, conjugated with two pronouns, one the subject
 and the other the object. In their compound tenses the par-

Participle past agrees in gender and number with the subject.

EXAMPLES.

je me blesse	<i>I hurt myself</i>
nous nous trompons	<i>we deceive ourselves</i>
elle s'est tuée	<i>she has killed herself</i>

Almost all active verbs may be made reflected, since a person may hurt and deceive himself in the same manner that he hurts or deceives others. This point is common to both languages, but there are two things in which they differ with regard to reflected verbs. First, the compound tenses are conjugated with *to have*, in English, and with *être* in French: *I have hurt myself, je me suis blessé*. Secondly, there are a good many verbs which are used in the reflected form in French which are *neuter* in English; such as *je m'arrête, je me dépêche*, I stop, I make haste. As these latter are very frequently used in conversation we subjoin a list of them.

122. LIST OF COMMON REFLECTED VERBS.

s'abstenir	<i>to abstain</i>	s'intéresser	<i>to feel an interest</i>
s'abonner	<i>to subscribe</i>	se lever	<i>to get up</i>
s'apercevoir	<i>to perceive</i>	se méfier	<i>to distrust</i>
s'asseoir	<i>to sit down</i>	se moquer	<i>to laugh at</i>
se coucher	<i>to lie down</i>		<i>not to care for</i>
se dépêcher	<i>to make haste</i>	se nommer	<i>to be named</i>
se défaire	<i>to get rid</i>	s'occuper	<i>to be busy about</i>
se désespérer	<i>to despair</i>	promener	<i>to walk</i>
se dispenser	<i>to dispense with</i>	se plaindre	<i>to complain</i>
s'entretenir	<i>to converse</i>	se plaindre	<i>to take pleasure</i>
s'endormir	<i>to fall asleep</i>	se porter	<i>to be (in or well)</i>
s'en aller	<i>to go away</i>	se rappeler	<i>to remember</i>
s'efforcer	<i>to endeavour</i>	se réjouir	<i>to rejoice</i>
s'empêcher	<i>to forbear</i>	se rendre	<i>to go, to repair to</i>
s'emporter	<i>to grow warm</i>	se repentir	<i>to repent</i>
s'enfuir	<i>to run away</i>	se souvenir	<i>to remember</i>
s'enquérir	<i>to enquire</i>	se rire	<i>to laugh at</i>
s'étonner	<i>to feel surprised</i>		<i>not to care for</i>
s'éveiller	<i>to wake</i>	se retourner	<i>to turn round</i>
s'évanouir	<i>to faint</i>	se reposer	<i>to rest</i>
s'enquérir	<i>to enquire</i>	se réveiller	<i>to wake</i>
se fâcher	<i>to be angry</i>	se savoir gré	<i>to be glad</i>
se fier	<i>to trust</i>	se servir	<i>to make use of</i>
se garder	<i>to beware</i>	se taire	<i>to be silent</i>
s'habiller	<i>to dress</i>		<i>to mistake or be mis-</i>
s'habituer	<i>to get used</i>	se tromper	<i>taken</i>
se hâter	<i>to hasten</i>	se trouver	<i>to be</i>
s'imaginer	<i>to fancy</i>	se vanter	<i>to boast</i>

* There is one exception which will be found noticed in the chapter of the *Participle Past*.

123. PARADIGM OF A REFLECTED VERB.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

se repentir to repent

PRESENT.

se repentant repenting

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

<i>s'être</i>	{	<i>repenti</i>	}	<i>to have repented</i>
		<i>or</i>		
		<i>repentie</i>		

PARTICIPLES.

PAST.

{	<i>repenti, m.</i>	}	<i>repented</i>
	<i>repentie, f.</i>		
	<i>repentis, m.</i>		
	<i>repenties, f.</i>		

PAST.

<i>s'étant</i>	{	<i>repenti</i>	}	<i>having repented</i>
		<i>or</i>		
		<i>repentie</i>		

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

I repent.

<i>je</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>repens</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>repens</i>
<i>il, or elle</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>repent</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>repentons</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>repentez</i>
<i>ils, or elles</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>repentent</i>

IMPERFECT.

I did repent.

<i>je</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>repentais</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>repentais</i>
<i>il, or elle</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>repentait</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>repentions</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>repentiez</i>
<i>ils, or elles</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>repentaient</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

I have repented.

<i>je</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>suis</i>	{	<i>repenti</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>t'</i>	<i>es</i>		<i>or</i>
<i>il, or elle</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>est</i>		<i>repentie</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>sommes</i>	{	<i>repentis</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>êtes</i>		<i>or</i>
<i>ils, or elles</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>sont</i>		<i>repenties</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had repented.

<i>je</i>	<i>m'</i>	<i>étais</i>	{	<i>repenti</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>t'</i>	<i>étais</i>		<i>or</i>
<i>il, or elle</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>était</i>		<i>repentie</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>étions</i>	{	<i>repentis</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>étiez</i>		<i>or</i>
<i>ils, or elles</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>étaient</i>		<i>repenties</i>

124. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS.

je ne me repens pas
te repens-tu ?
ne nous repentons-nous pas ?
je ne me suis pas repenti
ne se sont-ils pas repentis ?
ne se sont-elles pas repenties ?
ma sœur se repent
ma sœur ne se repent-elle pas ?
vos frères se sont-ils repentis ?

I do not repent
dost thou repent ?
do we not repent ?
I have not repented ?
have they not repented ?
have they not repented ?
my sister repents
does not my sister repent ?
have your brothers repented ?

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

I repented.

je	me	repentis
tu	te	repentis
il or elle	se	repentit
nous	nous	repentîmes
vous	vous	repentîtes
ils or elles	se	repentirent

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.

I had repented

je	me	fus	} repentî,
tu	te	fus	
il or elle	se	fut	} or
nous	nous	fûmes	
vous	vous	fûtes	} repentîes
ils or elles	se	furent	

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I often	walk	by	moonlight.	Dost thou not
souvent	se promener	à	art. clair de la lune m.	se
deceive thyself?	He (is never happy)	but	(when he is doing)	
tromper	ne se plaire	que	à faire	
wrong.	I complain	of his	bad conduct.	(Do we
de art. mal m.	se plaindre	mauvais	conduite f.	
not take too much care of ourselves)?	How do you	do?	They	
s'écouter trop			se porter	se
intend to travel in the	spring.			
proposer	de voyager	à	printemps m.	

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

I (have been)	tolerably well	for some time.	Didst thou not
se porter	assez bien	depuis	
lose thyself in the wood?	(It is said)	that he killed himself	
s'égarer	on dis	se tuer	
(out of) despair.	Have we	flattered ourselves	without foundation?
de	se flatter		fondement
Ladies, have you	walked (this morning)?	Did those ladies	re-
Mesdames	promener	matin m.	à me se
cognise themselves in this	portrait?	You have	mistaken the
reconnaître	à	se tromper	de
house.	We have made	as much haste as we could.	Has he
	se dépêcher	autant que possible	stopped
(on the) road?	I have	fallen asleep.	
en	s'endormir		

† It need hardly be remarked that reflected verbs do not belong to one conjugation alone, but to all. The learner must, therefore, be careful to ascertain to which of them, those which come under his consideration belong. *Se promener* is of the first, *se plaindre* is of the fourth and fifth branch; and *se plaire* is fourth conjugation second branch.

IMPERFECT.

I troubled myself about the affairs of others. You were always
se tourmenter pour autrui se
 complaining of being too warm, and now you are too cold. Were
plaindre d'avoir trop chaud avoir trop froid
 you not comfortable in his house? My mother did not like the
se trouver bien se plaire à
 country, because we went to bed so early. He was a very suspicious
*se coucher de si bonne heure * très soupçonneux*
 man, who never trusted anybody. Did you fancy that he would
 * *il ne se fier à personne s'imaginer*
 return early. Did you not laugh at us?
revenir cond-1 de si bonne heure se moquer de

PLUPERFECT.

I had trusted myself to (very uncertain) guides. Didst thou not
se livrer peu sûr 2 des m. pl. 1 se
 confide too inconsiderately in this man? Had that officer rushed
confier légèrement à —cier se précipiter
 rashly into this danger? We had condemned ourselves. Had
témérairement dans —m. se condamner nous-mêmes
 you not been engaged with trifles? Had those travellers
s'occuper de bagatelle f. pl. voyageurs se
 (gone out) of the right way?
détourner droit chemin m.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I repented too late of having taken such a step. Were you
tard inf-2 fait 2 1 aémurche f
 not well amused yesterday evening? He suffered
s'amuser hier au ne se trouver pas bien
 for his imprudence. We met in the street, but we did not
de —f. se rencontrer rue
 speak. Did not those rash children go too near the
se parler téméraire 2 1 s'approcher trop de
 river? They rejoiced when they heard of his great success.
*ind-3 se réjouir apprendre * succès m. pl.*

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

(As soon as) I had discovered that they sought to deceive
Des que s'apercevoir on chercher ind-2 à tromper
 me, I was on my guard. What didst thou, when thou
se tenir ind-3 garde f. pl. fis ind-3 quand
 didst see thyself thus forsaken? When she recollected all the
se trouver ainsi abandonné se souvenir de

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall repent.

je	me	repentirai
tu	te	repentiras
il or elle	se	repentira
nous	nous	repentirons
vous	vous	repentirez
ils or elles	se	repentiront

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have repented.

je	me	serai	}	repenti
tu	te	seras		or
il or elle	se	sera	}	repentie
nous	nous	serons		repentis
vous	vous	serez	}	or
ils or elles	se	seront		repenties

circumstances, she was quite ashamed. When we had rejoiced
 f. ind-3 *toute honteux* *se réjouir*

sufficiently, we parted. When you had amused yourself suffi-
 assez *se séparer* ind-3 *s'amuser*

ciently at his expence, did you not leave him alone?
 à *dépens* m. pl. *laisser* ind-3 *tranquille*

When they had walked enough, they (sat down) at the foot of a
se promener *s'assirent* à
 tree

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I will yield, (if they convince me). Wilt thou remember the
se rendre si on me convainc *se souvenir de*

engagement that thou makest? What will not he reproach himself
prendre *se reprocher à lui-même*

for)? We shall not forget ourselves (so far as) to (be wanting)
 * *s'oubli* *jusque* *manquer*

in respect towards him. V. you employ the means I (point)
 de lui *servir de* *que* *indi-*

out) to you? Will not these flowers fade?
quer f. *se flétrir.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I have betrayed myself? Wilt thou not have degraded
se trahir *moi-même* *s'avilir*

thyself in his eyes? He will have (been proud) of this trifling ad-
 à *s'enorgueillir* *faible*

vantage. We shall have fatigued ourselves (to no purpose). In
avantage m. *se fatiguer* *inutilement*

the end, you will have been undeceived Will your children have
se désabuser

(loved each other) too much?
s'entr'aimer

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

I should repent.

je	me	repentirais
tu	te	repentirais
il or elle	se	repentirait
nous	nous	repentirions
vous	vous	repentiriez
ils or elles	se	repentiraient

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

I should have repented.

je	me	serais	} repentir or repentirais repentiriez or repentiraient
tu	te	serais	
il or elle	se	serait	
nous	nous	serions	
vous	vous	seriez	
ils or elles	se	seraient	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should I suffer myself to (be drawn) into the
se laisser * *entraîner*
 party of the rebels? Wouldst thou be (so easily)
parti m. * *de si peu de chose* 2
 frightened? Would not the nation submit to so just a
s'effrayer 1 —f. *se soumettre* 3 4 1
 law? We should not like to see the triumph of guilt.
 2 *se plaire* à voir *triomphe art. crime m.*
 Would you dishonour yourselves by such an action? Would those
se déshonorer 2 1
 lords avail themselves of their birth and fortune
seigneur se prévaloir de naissance f. pron. richesses
 (in order to) act against our feelings.
pour faire violence à sentiment.

PAST.

Would I not then have devoted myself entirely to the
se dévouer *alors* *entièrement*
 service of my country? (Had it not been for) thy carelessness,
pays m. *sans* *insouciance f.*
 thou wouldst certainly have grown rich. Would this pleasing
certainement *rule* *11th* *s'enrichir* *doux*
 here have vanished so soon? Should we have degraded our-
espoir m. *s'évanouir* *se dégrader*
 selves to such a degree? You would have reduced yourselves to
 * 2 1 *point m.* *se réduire*
 absolute want. They would have been drowned, if (they
art. plus grand besoin *se noyer* *on*
 had not had assistance).
ne les avait secourus

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.

Repent (thou).

repens-toi
 qu'il or qu'elle *se* repente
 repentons-nous
 repentez-vous
 qu'ils or } *se* repentent
 qu'elles }

NEGATIVE.

Do not repent.

ne te repens
 qu'il or qu'elle *ne se* repente
ne vous repentons
ne nous repentez
 qu'ils or } *ne se* repentent
 qu'elles }

pas

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

That I may repent.

que
 je *me* repente
 tu *te* repentes
 il or elle *se* repente
 nous *nous* repentions
 vous *vous* repentiez
 ils or elles *se* repentent

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT.

That I may have repented.

que
 je *me* sois } repenti
 tu *te* sois } or
 il or elle *se* soit } repentie
 nous *nous* soyons } repentis
 vous *vous* soyez } or
 ils or elles *se* soient } repenties

IMPERATIVE.

O man, remember that thou art mortal. *Do not flatter*
se souvenir *se promettre*
 thyself (that thou wilt succeed easily.) Let us take an exact
un succès facile *se rendre* — 2
 account of our actions. Let us not deceive ourselves. Rest
compte 1 *se flatter* *se reposer*
 yourself in the shade of this tree. Do not expose yourself so
à ombre *s'exposer*
 rashly.
témérairement.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I must rise to-morrow at an earlier hour. I wish that
Il faut que se lever *de * meilleur heure f. souhaiter*
 thou mayest be better. I wish him to conduct himself
se porter mieux *Je désire qu'il * se conduire*
 better. Is it not essential that we should contain ourselves? They
—tiel *se contenir* *On*
 wish that you should early accustom yourselves to industry.
désirer *s'accoutumer de bonne heure* *art. travail m.*
 It is time that they should rest from the fatigue of business.
se délasser *—i.* *art. affaires, f.*

VE.

pent.

repens
repente
repentons
repentez
repentent

} pas

TENSES.

IT.

ve repented.

repenti
or
repentie
repentis
or
repenties

not flatter
se promettre
take an exact
se rendre — 2
selves. Rest
se reposer
pose yourself so
reposer

I wish that
f. souhaiter
conduct himself
se conduire
selves? They
r. On
to industry.
art. travail m.
of business.
art. affaires, f.

IMPERFECT.

That I might repent.

que
je me repentisse
tu te repentisses
il or elle se repentit
nous nous repentissions
vous vous repentissiez
ils or elles se repentissent

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have repented.

que
je me fusse } repenti
tu te fusses } or
il or elle se fût } repentie
nous nous fussions } repentis
vous vous fussiez } or
ils or elles se fussent } repenties

PRETERIT.

Can I have been deceived so grossly? It is
Se peut-il que se tromper grossièrement?
astonishing that thou hast determined to stay. It is not said
étonnant se décider à rester On * dit
that he interfered in this business. It will never be believed that
se mêler de On croira
we have conducted ourselves so ill. It is not suspected that you
se comporter mal. On * soupçonner
have disguised yourselves so ingeniously. (It is not reported) that
se déguiser adroitement On ne dit pas
they have behaved ill.
se conduire

IMPERFECT.

They required that I should go to bed at ten o'clock.
On exigeait se coucher à heures.
They wish that thou shouldst walk oftener. Did they
On voudrait se promener On
not wish that he should practise fencing? Was it ne-
voulait s'exercer à faire des armes
cessary that we should have recourse to this method? Did they
= se servir de moyen, m. on
wish that you should complain of their want of attention? Did
voulait se plaindre manque
they not wish them to make more haste?
on désirer ind-2 que ils se hâter davantage

PLUPERFECT.

Could they wish me to revenge myself? I should have
Aurait-on voulu que se venger avoir cond-1
wished that thou hadst shewn thyself more accommodating.
désirer se montrer moins difficile
I should have wished that he had been less negligent. Would you
avoir cond-1 voulu se négliger moins Auriez-vous
have wished us to have ruined ourselves in public opinion, (in order
voulu que se perdre 2 f. 1 pour

to) satisfy your resentment? I might perhaps have wished that
satisfaire *ressentiment* *J'aurais pu désirer peut-être*
 you had applied yourselves more to your studies. We could
s'appliquer *davantage* *Nous aurions*
 have wished that they had extricated themselves more skilfully
pu désirer *se tirer* *adroitement*
 from the difficulties (in which) they (had involved themselves).
embarras *où* *s'étaient mis*

125. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

A passive verb shows that the action is directed to ourselves, that we *suffer* it; whereas the *active verb* expresses that *we act*, or perform the action, and direct it towards another object, thus: *I love*, is active, *I am loved* is passive. The Greek and the Latin languages have a peculiar form of verbs, called *passive verbs* or *passive voice*, totally distinct from the *active verb* or *active voice*. The French language as well as the English and other modern languages have no such form, and express the passive voice by means of the *participle past* of the active voice with the auxiliary *être*, to be, thus: *je suis aimé*, I am loved. The participle, in that case, being as an adjective, is made to agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLE.

je suis aimé or aimée	I am loved
tu étais estimé or estimée	thou wast esteemed
ce roi fut chéri de son peuple	that king was beloved by his people
elle fut toujours chérie	she was always beloved
mon père fut respecté	my father was respected
ma mère fut révérée	my mother was revered
nous serons loués or louées	we will be praised
vous en serez blâmés or blâmées	you will be blamed for it
ils seraient craints et redoutés	they would be feared and dreaded
elles seraient mieux instruites	they would be better informed
afin que mes fils soient connus	that my sons may be known
je voudrais que les portes fussent ouvertes	I should wish the doors were opened

OBSERVE.—In future, the tenses of the verbs will be promiscuously intermixed; but directions will be given as to those which it is proper to use; that is, marks like these will be found under the verb, *ind-1*, *ind-2*, *ind-3*, etc. The learner will do well, therefore, to consult the *explanations of the abbreviations* given at the beginning of the grammar, that he may be familiar with those marks.

EXERCISES.

My brother was wounded. They were detested. Has she not
 ind-3 *blessé* ils ind-2 *détesté*
 been rewarded? The robbers were apprehended in the park. Has
récompensé ind-4 *saisir*
 not your sister been well received? The boys shall all be punished.
recevoir *écouter* *punir*
 Is the garden door opened? When were these fruits gathered?
porte du jardin *f. ouvrir* ind-4 —m. *cueillir*
 The actress has been crowned.
actrice *couronner*

126. OF NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are of two sorts. 1. Those which express a state, a quality, as : *je languis*, I languish ; *il excelle*, he excels. 2. Those which express an action, which cannot pass over to another object, as : *je dine*, I dine ; *je marche*, I walk ; since we cannot say : *je dine un homme*, I dine a man ; *je marche mon frère*, I walk my brother. Neuter verbs are also sometimes on that account called *intransitive*.

Some neuter verbs admit a substantive after them, as complement, that is to say, as giving full sense to the sentence : *je pense à mon père*, I think of my father ; *je dépends de mon oncle*, I am dependant on my uncle ; *je tremble de peur*, I tremble with fear ; but that substantive is always governed by a preposition.

127. Neuter verbs are not all conjugated with the same auxiliary in their compound tenses ; some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

avoir.

J'ai parlé, I have spoken.
 Nous avons ri, We have laughed.
 Ils ont mangé, They have eaten

être.

Je suis parti, I am gone.
 Ils sont venus, They are or have come.
 Nous sommes tombés, We have fallen.

128. It is important to observe that neuter verbs do not require the same preposition in both languages : Thus, *je pense à mon père*, may not be translated by I think to my father, but of my father. We must also add that a verb,

which is neuter in French, is sometimes active in English, as : *j'obéis à mon père*, I obey my father, and vice versa. This is one of the most material points of difference in the construction of the two languages. It is not here the place to treat it at full-length, because it properly belongs to the Syntax, where it will be found ; meanwhile, it is recommended that the learner should not lose sight of it, and attend to the preposition which, in the course of the exercises, will carefully be affixed to the infinitives of neuter verbs.

EXERCISE.

We will return at five o'clock. Do you speak to that man ?
revenir *parler*
 We resist obstacles. I have not accepted of his offers.
résister à art. — *accepter ind-4* *
 Think of my father. They live on vegetables. We will
penser à *vivre ind-1 de légumes*
 agree about the price. All at once twenty men entered
convenir de *entrer dans ind-3*
 the room. She sleeps. Do not walk so fast. You will fall
dormir *marcher* *tomber ind-7*
 They run. We shall arrive in the morning
courir ind-1 *arriver **

129. OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are those which have only the third person singular, such as : *il pleut*, it rains ; *il neige*, it snows. We subjoin a list of the most common.

pleuvoir	il pleut	it rains
neiger	il neige	it snows
grêler	il grêle	it hails
tonner	il tonne	it thunders
éclairer	il éclaire	it lightens
geler	il gèle	it freezes
dégeler	il dégèle	it thaws
bruiner	il bruine	it drizzles
importer	il importe	it matters
faire chaud	il fait chaud	it is warm
faire froid	il fait froid	it is cold
faire glissant	il fait glissant	to be slipping
faire crotté	il fait crotté	to be dirty
falloir	il faut	it is necessary, must
y avoir	il y a	there is

These verbs are also called *unipersonal*, from their having only the third person singular. *Falloir*, *y avoir*, being very

1015

in English,
vice versa.
rence in the
re the place
ongs to the
t is recom-
t of it, and
he exercises,
er verbs.

commonly used in French, they are conjugated at full length separately.

The genius of the French language admits of using some active and neuter verbs impersonally, such as *dire, il se dit des choses singulières*, singular things are *reported*; *arriver, il arrive des choses singulières*, singular things happen. This peculiarity will be found noticed in the Syntax.

EXERCISE.

to that man ?

of his offers.

s. We will

ered

rer dans ind-3

will fall

tomber ind-7

Does it rain this morning ? Did it hail last
pleuvoir matin m. grêler ind-4 art. dernier 2
night ? It does not snow. I thought it had thundered Does it
f. 1 neiger Je croyais que tonner ind-6
not lighten ? Do you think it freezes ? It is ten o'clock.
éclairer croyez que geler subj. 1 heure pl.
It will freeze long. It (is fit) to act so. It (was of great im-
long-temps convenir de importer beau-
portance) to succeed. It appears that he has not attended to
coup ind-2 de réussir sembler s'occuper de ind-4
that business. It is very slippery in the streets. Is it cold ?
faire glissant rue f. faire froid
It will be very warm to-day. It was very cold all night. Open
bien ind-4 art. nuit f. ouvrir
the window, for it is too warm in this room. Will it not be too
appartement m.
cold ? (I put on) thick boots, for I thought it was very dirty
mettre ind-4 croire ind-2 ind-2
in the streets.

130. CONJUGATION

OF THE

IMPERSONAL VERB, *FALLOIR, IL FAUT*, IT MUST,
IT IS NECESSARY.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT *falloir*
PARTIC. PRES. *none*

PAST *avoir fallu*
PAST *fallu, ayant fallu*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT *il faut*
IMPERFECT *il fallait*
PRETERIT DEF. *il fallut*
FUTURE ABSOL. *il faudra*

PRETERIT IND. *il a fallu*
PLUPERFECT *il avait fallu*
PRETERIT ANT. *il eut fallu*
FUTURE ANT. *il aura fallu*



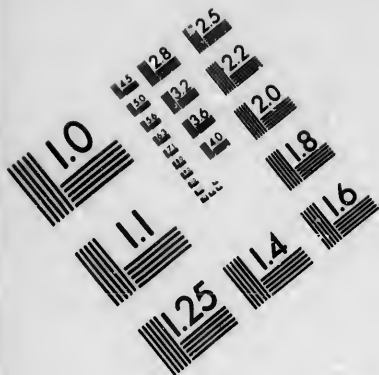
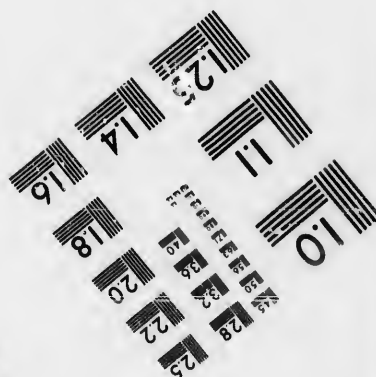
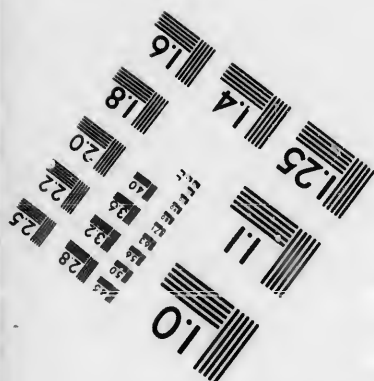
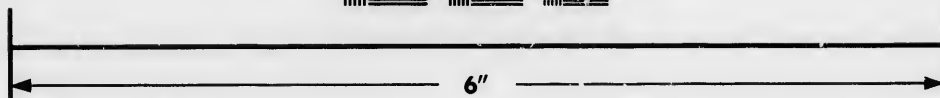
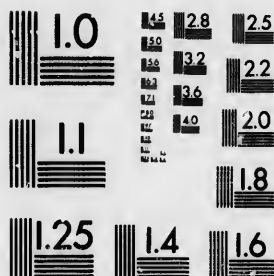


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8 2.5
1.8 3.2 2.2
2.0 3.6 1.8

10
0.1

him to consent to that bargain. We were obliged to (set out
*il * sub-2 marché m. ind-3 partir sub-2*
 immediately. Children should learn every day something by
sur-le-champ art. cond-1 sub-2
 heart. Shall I suffer patiently such an insult? He must have
ind-7 sub-1 1 2 cond-2 être
 been a blockhead not to understand such easy rules.
sub-2 sot 2 pour 1 comprendre inf-1 des si 2 3 règle f. 1
 (How much) does your brother want? He does what is requisite.
combien fait falloir
 Do that as it (should be). What must he have for his trouble?
*faites falloir ind-1 que -2 lui 1 * peine f.*
 You are the man I want. Do not give me any more bread,
*que * de*
 I have already more than I want. I need not ask you whether
*en ne m'en * inf-1 si*
 you will come. I do not think that it is necessary to be a con-
*venir ind-7 crois sub-1 * sor-*
 jurer to guess his motives. I could not suspect that I
cier pour deviner motif pouvais soupçonner
 ought to ask pardon for a fault I have not committed.
*sub-2 * inf-1 — de faute f. que commise*

134. CONJUGATION

OF THE

IMPERSONAL VERB, Y AVOIR, THERE IS.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	y avoir	there to be
PAST	y avoir eu	there to have been
PARTIC. PRES.	y ayant	there being
PARTIC. PAST	y ayant eu	there having been

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	il y a	there is or there are
PRET INDEF.	il y a eu	there has been or there have been
IMPERFECT	il y avait	there was or there were
PLUPERFECT	il y avait eu	there had been
PRETERIT DEF.	il y eut	there was or there were
PRETERIT ANT.	il y eut eu	there had been
FUTURE ABSOL.	il y aura	there will be
FUTURE ANTER.	il y aura eu	there will have been

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	il y aurait	there would be
PAST	il y aurait eu	there would have been

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	qu'il y ait	that there may be
PRETERIT	qu'il y ait eu	that there may have been
IMPERFECT	qu'il y eût	that there might be
PLUPERFECT	qu'il y eût eu	that there might have been

This verb in English is used in the plural, when followed by a substantive plural; in French it remains always in the singular.

EXERCISE.

There must be a great difference of age between those two
il doit f.

persons. *There being (so many) vicious people* in this world,
tant de = 2 *gens m. pl. 1*

is it astonishing that there are so many persons who become the
étonnant sub-1 *devenir*

victims of the corruption of the age? *It is a thousand to*
perversité f. *siècle m.* * *mille à parier contre*

one that he will not succeed. *There would be more happiness if*
réussir ind-7 *de bonheur*

(every one) knew how to moderate his desires. I did not think
chacun savait * * *modérer* *désir* *croire ind-2*

that there could be (any thing) to blame in his conduct. *There*
subj-2 *rien* *à reprendre* *conduite f.*

would not be so many duels, did people reflect that one of the
si *l'on réfléchir ind-2* f.

first obligations of a Christian is to forgive injuries. Could
f. de *chrétien* *de pardonner art.* *pourrait-il*

there be a king more happy than this who has always been the
celui-ci

father of his subjects?
sujet

135. OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of the first conjugation are **ALLER** and **ENVOYER**.

136. INF. PRES.	ALLER, to go.
INF. PAST.	Avoir été, être allé, e, to have gone.
PART. PRES.	Allant, going.
PART. PAST.	Été, allé, allée, gone.
COMP. PAST.	Étant allé, ayant été, having gone.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

je vais	nous allons
tu vas	vous allez
il va	ils vont
IMPERF. j'allais, etc.*	
PRET. j'allai, etc. or je fus, etc.	
FUTURE j'irai etc.	
CONDIT. j'irais, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

va, qu'il aille, allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. que j'aile, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.

IMP. que j'allasse, que tu allasses, qu'il allât, que nous allussions, que vous allassiez, qu'ils allassent.

137. S'EN ALLER, *to go away*; will be given at full length because its conjugation is rather difficult on account of its two pronouns.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT	s'	en aller
PARTIC. PRES.	s'	en allant
PARTIC. PAST		en allé

COMPOUND TENSES.

s'	en être	} allé, allés
s'	en étant	

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	je	m'	en vais*	je	m'	en suis	} allé
	tu	t'	en vas	tu	t'	en es	
	il or elle	s'	en va	il or elle	s'	en est	} allée
	nous	nous	en allons	nous	nous	en sommes	
	vous	vous	en allez	vous	vous	en êtes	} or allés
IMP.	ils or elles	s'	en vont	ils or elles	s'	en sont	
	je	m'	en allais	je	m'	en étais	} allées
	je	m'	en allai	je	m'	en fus	
	je	m'	en irai	je	m'	en serai	} allé &c.
	je	m'	en irais	je	m'	en serais	

Or je (m'en) vas.

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.

qu'il	va	t'	en
		s'	en aille
	allons	nous	en
qu'ils	allez	vous	en
		s'	en aillent

NEGATIVE.

qu'il	ne t'	en va
	ne s'	en aille
	ne nous	en allons
qu'ils	ne vous	en allez
	ne s'	en aillent

} pas

* In future the first person only of tenses regularly conjugated will be given.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.				COMPOUND TENSES.			
PRES. que	je	m'	en aille	je	m'	en sois	allé
	tu	t'	en ailles	tu	t'	en sois	or
	il or elle	s'	en aille	il or elle	s'	en soit	allée
	nous	nous	en allions	nous	nous	en soyons	allés
	vous	vous	en alliez	vous	vous	en soyez.	or
IMP.	ils or elles	s'	en aillent	ils or elles	s'	en soient	allées
	que je	m'	en allasse	je	m'	en fusse	allé, &c

REMARKS.

Je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été, are not synonymous of j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé. The former serve to express the fact of having gone, the latter, the fact of being gone.

The imperative *va* takes an *s* when followed by *y*, or by *en*, as : *vas-y, vas en savoir des nouvelles*, go thither, go and make enquiries about it ; however it takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb, as : *va y donner ordre*, go and see about it.

Puer, to stink ; is defective ; it has no preterit of the indicative, nor the imperfect of the subjunctive.

Tisser, to weave ; is only irregular in the participle past, which makes *tissu* instead of *tissé*.

Envoyer and *renvoyer*, makes in their future absolute and conditional present, *j'enverrai, j'enverrais*, and *je renverrai, je renverrais*.

EXERCISE.

Are you going into the country this evening ? I am going to
ind-7 à campagne f. soir m.

pay some visits. Go there with thy brother. Go and do that
faire * faire

errand. Go there and put every thing in order. Let him go
commission f. * mettre en

to church on holidays. I shall go to London. When
art. église, f. * art. jour pl. de fête.

do they go to Italy ? My sisters are going away next week. We
en Italie ind-1

shall go away early. Do not go away yet. Make haste for
de bonne heure dépêchez-vous

they are going away. I shall send early flowers
de art. printanier 2 f. pl. 1

to those ladies. I would go to Rome, if I could. We would
dame f. pl. pouvais

(send back) our horses. Why do they go away so soon? My *pourquoi*
 brother and sister went yesterday to Windsor. I shall not go
 pron. ind-4
 (any more) a hunting.
*plus à * art. chasse f.*

133. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

BRANCH I. PUNIR.

Bénir, to bless ; has two participles, *béni*, *bénite*, consecrated, (by prayers or religious ceremonies) ; *pain béni*, consecrated bread ; *eau bénite*, holy water ; *béni*, *bénie*, blessed, favored of God. *Peuple béni*, a blessed, happy, Godly nation.

Fleurir, in the common acceptation of *to blossom*, *to come to bloom*, is regular ; but, in the sense of *to flourish*, it makes, *florissant florissait*.

In *hair*, to hate ; the letters *-ai* form throughout two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the second person singular of the imperative *hais*, which are pronounced as one syllable, as if written, *je hès*, *tu hès*, *il hèt*.

Gésir, to lie, is a defective verb, and has only retained *gisant*, *git*, *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *il gisait*, and particularly *ci-git*, here lies.

EXERCISE.

May the name of that good king be *blessed* from generation to *en*
nom m.
 generation. These trees *blossomed* twice every year. The
 ind-2 *deux fois tout art. an pl.*
 arts and sciences *flourished* at Athens in the time of Pericles.
 — art. ind-2 *à Athènes*
 Horace and Virgil *flourished* under the reign of Augustus. We
Virgile ind-2 sous règne Auguste.
 discovered from the top of the mountain a vast plain full of
découvrir haut plaine f. rempli de
flowery meadows. The empire of the Babylonians was
florissant 2 pré m. pl.1 — rien ind-3
 long a *flourishing* one. We did not *hate* the man, but his
*long-temps **

vices. Does she really *hate* that vain pomp and all the display of
pompe f. appareil

grandeur ?
art. —

139. BRANCH II, ON SENTIR.

BOUILLIR, *to boil*.

Par. pres. bouillant—*Past.* bouilli
IND. pres. bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent
Imperf. bouillais—*Pret.* bouillis
Future. bouillirai—*Cond.* bouillirais
IMP. bous, qu'il bouille, bouillons, bouillez, qu'ils bouillent
SUB. pres. bouille—*Imp.* bouillisse

Rebouillir, to boil again, and *ébouillir* to boil away, are conjugated like *bouillir*; this latter is only used in compound tenses, and the infinitive, as: *cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce has boiled a way too much.

FAILLIR, *to fail*.

Part. pres. faillant*—*Past.* failli
IND. pres. faux,* faux,* faut,* faillons,* faillez,* faillent*
Imperf. faillais*—*Pret.* faillis, etc.—*Fut.* faudrai*
COND. faudrais*—*SUBJ. imperf.* que je faillisse

DEFAILLIR, *to faint*, has now only the plural of the

IND. pres. nous défailions, ils défont—*Imperf.* défaillois.
Pret. défailis—*Pret. indef.* j'ai défaili, and *INF. pres.* défailir

N.B. The tenses marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

EXERCISE.

Take that water off the fire, it *boils* too fast. Do not
retirer f. de dessus m. f. fort

let the soup (*boil away*) (so much). That sauce has (*boiled*
laisser 1 pot 3 tant 2 —f. est f.

away) (too much). Boil that meat again; it has not *boiled*
trop faites rebouillir viande f. * f. 2

long enough.

* assez 1

FUIR, *to fly, to run away*.

Part. pres. fuyant—*Past.* fui.
IND. pres. fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
Imperf. fuyais—*Pret.* fuis—*Fut.* fuirai—*COND.* fuirais.
IMP. fuis, fuie, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
SUBJ. pres. fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
Imperf. fuisse, or rather, prisse la fuite.

MOURIR, to die.

Part. pres. mourant—*Past. mort.*

IND. pres. meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.

Imp. mourais—*Pret.* mourus—*Fut.* mourrai—*COND.* mourrais.

IMP. meurs, meure, mourons, mourez, meurent.

SUBJ. pres. meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

Imperf. mourusse—*Comp. tenses.* je suis mort, j'étais mort, etc.

REM.—*S'enfuir*, to run away, is conjugated after *fuir*. *Mourir* takes the auxiliary *être*; and when reflected, *se mourir* signifies to be dying, or emphatically and figuratively to be dying with. It is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the indicative.

EXERCISE.

He (was near) losing his life in that encounter. He (was
faillir perdre * art. *rencontre f.* *faillir*
 near) falling into the snare which was laid for him. His
 ind-4 *donner* *piège m. qu'on avait tendu* * *lui* *
 strength *faills* him. Give us something to eat
 art. *force f. pl.* *défaillir lui.* *donnez-nous* * *manger 2*
 directly; we are fainting with fatigue and hunger. I cannot get at
 vite 1 *se mourir* de — pr. *faim.* *ne puis rencontrer*
 him, he shuns me. Would he not avoid flatterers, If he
fuir *fuir art.* *flatteur m. pl.*
 knew all their falsehood, He died of a (very painful) disease.
 ind-2 *fausseté f.* de *cruel 2* *maladie f. l*
 She died of grief (for the loss of) her son. He is dying
 ind-4 *chagrin m. d'avoir perdu* *se mourir*
 She was dying with grief, when the fear of death at last
se mourir de *crainte f. art.* *enfin*
 wrested her secret from her.
arracher ind-3 —m. * *lui.*

Quérir, to fetch; is used, in familiar conversation, after
venir, *envoyer*, *aller*, as: *envoyez quérir*, send for; *allez*
quérir, go and fetch.

ACQUÉRIR, to acquire.

Part. pres. acquérant—*Past.* acquis.

IND. pres. acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, ac-
 quèrent.

Imper. acquérais—*Pret.* acquis—*Fut.* acquerrai—*COND.* acquér-
 rais.

IMP. acquiers, acquière, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.

SUBJ. pres. acquière, -es, -e, acquérions, -iez, acquièrent.

Imperf. acquisse.

S'enquérir, to enquire; and *requérir*, to request; are conjugated as *acquérir*.

Conquérir, to conquer, is seldom used but in the IND. *pret.* je conquis, etc., and in the SUBJ. *imperf.* que je conquisse. Its chief use is in the *compound tenses*.

Oùir, to hear, is only used in the INF. *pres.* *ouïr* Part. *past.* *ouï*. IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, etc. and SUBJ. *imperf.* que j'ouïsse, tu ouïsses, etc. Its principal use is in the *compound tenses*, as : *je l'ai* or *je l'avois ouï dire*, I have or I had heard it.

VETIR, to clothe.

Part. *pres.* *vêtant*—*Past.* *vêtu*.

IND. *pres.* *vêts*, * *vêts*, * *vêt*, * *vêtons*, *vêtez*, *vêtent*.

Imperf. *vétais*—*Pret.* *vêtis*—*Fut.* *vétirai*—COND. *vétirais*.

IMP. *vêts*, * *vête*, * *vêtons*, *vêtez*, *vêtent*.

SUB. *pres.* *vête*—*Imperf.* *vétisse*.

N.B.—*Vétir* is seldom used in the forms marked with an asterisk, and is most frequently used as reflected, *se vêtir*, to dress one's self.

Revêtir, to clothe, to invest, is used through all the tenses; *dévêtir*, to divest, is principally used as a reflected verb, and in some forms only.

EXERCISE.

Send for the physician and follow exactly his advice. Go and
médecin *suivez*
 fetch my cane. Every day he acquired celebrity by
canne f. *tout art.* *jour m. pl.* *ind-3 de art.* = f.
 works calculated to fix the attention of an enlightened
de art. ouvrage m. pl. *fait pour* 2
 public. Would you have me acquire riches at the expense
i *voudriez-vous que* *subj-2 de art.* *dépens m. pl.*
 of my honesty? He had acquired by his merit great influence
probité f. *m. une* — f.
 over the opinions of his contemporaries. I have enquired about
sing. *contemporain* *s'enquérir ind-4 de*
 that man (every where), and I have not (been able) to hear
homme-là *partout* *pu en avoir*
 any thing of him). Who has requested it of you?
de nouvelles *Qui est-ce qui* 3 4 *en 2* * 1
 Sesostriis, king of Egypt conquered a great part of Asia. The
ind-3 *art.*
 formidable empire which Alexander conquered did not last
 2 1 —dre *ind-6* *durer*

lon
 plus lon
 He d
 se v
 I wi
 voud
 care.

poor of

mantle.
 mantea
 (throw
 se

Part. p
 Imperf.
 COND.
 Imperf.

The
 tional,
 old in
 recuei

Sau
 lowing
 qu'il s
 larly c
 saillis

Part. p
 Imperf.
 COND
 Imperf

Tre
 fut. je

I wi
 fruits,
 pu
 these

where
 où

quest; are

the IND.
ue je con-

ouir Part.

J. imperf.

is in the

I have or

longer than his life. I have heard that he will not return.
plus long-temps f. ouïr dire ind-4 revenir
 He dressed himself in haste and (went out) immediately.
se vêtir ind-3 à art. hâte f. sortir ind-3 sur-le-champ.
 I wish she would dress the children with more
voudrais que vêtir subj-2 de
 care. If his fortune permitted him, he would clothe all the
permettait 2 le lui 1
 poor of his parish. Two servants clothed him in his ducal
paroisse f. domestiques revêtir de 2
 mantle. It begins to be very warm; one might
manteau m. 1 commencer à faire chaud; pourrait
 (throw off some clothing).
se dévêtir.

140. BRANCH III. OUVRIR.

CUEILLIR, to gather.

Part. pres. cueillant	Past. cueilli	IND. pres. cueille
Imperf. cueillais	Pret. cueillis	Fut. cueillerai*
COND. cueillerais*	IMPER. cueille	SUBJ. cueille
Imperf. cueillisse		

The irregularity of *cueillir*, in the future and the conditional, is remarkable; these two tenses are formed from the old infinitive *cueiller*. Thus *accueillir*, to welcome; *recueillir*, to collect.

Saillir, to project, has only *saillant*, *sailli*; allowing forms: *il saille, il saillait, il saillera, il qu'il saille, qu'il saillit*. But *saillir*, to gush out; largely conjugated like *finir*; *saillissant, je saillis, etc., saillissent*, etc. Its principal use is in the third persons.

ASSAILLIR, to assault.

Part. pres. assaillant	Past. assailli	IND. pres. assaille
Imperf. assaillais	Pret. assaillis	Fut. assaillirai
COND. assaillirais	IMPER. assaille	SUBJ. pres. assaille
Imperf. assaillisse		

Tressaillir, to start, conjugated like *assaillir*, makes in the fut. je *tressaillirai*, or *tressaillirai*, etc.

EXERCISE.

I will gather with pleasure some of these flowers and of these fruits, since you wish to have some. Do not gather
puisque être bien aise de en
 these peaches, before they are ripe. That is a country
f. pl. avant que ne subj-1 mûr Ce pays
 where they neither reap corn, nor (gather) grapes. We
*ont on ne recueillir ni blé ni * vin*

shall collect in ancient history important and valuable
recueillir 2 1 *de art.* —2 *précieux* 3
 facts. He received us in the most polite manner.
fait 1 *accueillir* 3 1 *de* 2 *manière* f. 1
 Poverty, misery, sickness, persecution, in a word, all
art. f. *art. f.* *art. maladie* f. *art.* *en*
 the misfortunes in the world (have fallen upon) him If you
malheur m. pl. *de* *accueillir* ind-4
 give six inches to that cornice, it will project too much.
donner *pouce* m. *corniche* f. *trop*
 That balcony projected too much; it darkened the dining-
balcon m. ind-2 *trop* *obscurcir* ind-2 *salle à*
 room. When Moses struck the rock, there gushed
manger f. *Quand Moïse frapper* ind-3 *rocher* m. *il* ind-3
 out (of it) a spring of (fresh running) water. The blood gushed
 2 *en* 1 *source* f. *vif* 2 f. 1 ind-2
 from his vein with impetuosity. We shall assail the enemy
veine f. *assaillir* pl.
 to-morrow in their entrenchments. Were we not overtaken by a
demain *retranchement* ind-3 *assailli*
 horrible storm? At every word which they said to him
tempête f. *à chaque* *que* *on disait* 2 *lui* 1
 concerning his son, the good (old man) leaped for joy.
de *vieillard* *ressaillir* ind-2 *de joie*

141. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Avoir, to have, is conjugated at length, No. 101.

Ravoir, to have again; and *se ravoir*, to recover, are only used in the present of the infinitive.

Choir, to fall, has only the participle past, *chu, chue, être chu.*

DÉCHOIR, to decay.

(No Part. pres.) Part. past. *déchu.*

IND. pres. *déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient.*

(No Imperf.) Pret. *déchus*—Fut. *décherrai*—COND. *décherrais.*

IMPER. *déchois, déchoie, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoint.*

SUB. pres. *déchoie, déchies, déchoie, déchoy-ions, —iez, déchoint.*

Imperf. *déchusse.*

Echoir, to fall to, to expire, has only now in use the IND. pres. *il échoit*, sometimes pronounced *il échet*, the pret. *il échut*, fut. *il écherra*, cond. *il écherrait*, the imperf. SUBJ. *que j'échusse*; INF. and PAST *échoir, échéant, échu.*

Choir, déchoir, échoir, take the auxiliary *être* and *avoir*.

Falloir, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given

EXERCISE.

I had apartments that I liked; I will endeavour to have them
 ind-2 *un logement* aimer ind-2 *veux essayer de* s.
 again. Beware of falling. How has he fallen into
 prenez garde inf-1 *comment*
 poverty? Since the publication of his last work, he has
pauvreté depuis *dernier*
 much fallen in the esteem of the public. If he do not
déchoir
 alter his conduct, he will gradually lose his reputation
changer de * *déchoir de jour en jour de* —f.
 and credit. He has put in the lottery, and he hopes
 pl. pron. —m. *mis à* *loterie f.*
 that a capital prize will fall (to his share). That bill
 * *lot. gros* *lot m.* *échoir* *lui* *lettre f.*
 of exchange has expired on the twenty-fifth. The first term
change *échoir* * *le vingt-cinq* *terme m.*
 expires at Midsummer. You have drawn on me a bill of
à la Saint-Jean *tirer* *sur moi*
 exchange; when is it payable? I did not believe that I must
échoir ind-1 *croire ind-2* *falloir sub-2*
 so soon (have taken) that journey. He must
faire *voyage m.* *ind-4* *que*
 have sunk under the efforts of (so many) enemies.
succomber sub-2 *tant de*

MOUVOIR to move.

Part. pres. mouvant—Part. past. mu.

IND. pres. meus, meus, meut, mouv-ons, —ez, meuvent.

Imperf. mouvais—Pret. mus—Fut. mouvrai—COND. mouvrais.

IMPER. meus, meuve, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

SUBJ. pres. meuv-e, —es, —e, mouv-ions, —iez, meuvent.

Imperf. musse.

Thus are conjugated *émouvoir*, to move, to excite, stir up;
se mouvoir, to move, stir; *s'émouvoir*, to be moved, affected.

Promouvoir, to promote in rank or office, has only the
 infinitive, and participle *promu*.

Démouvoir, to induce to desist, has the infinitive only.

PLEUVOIR, to rain (impersonal)

<i>Part. pres. pleuvant</i>	<i>Past plu</i>	<i>IND. pres. il pleut</i>
<i>Imperf. il pleuvait</i>	<i>Pret. il plut</i>	<i>Fut. il pleuvra</i>
<i>COND. il pleuvrait</i>	<i>SUB. pres. qu'il pleuve</i>	<i>Imperf. qu'il plût</i>

EXERCISE.

The spring which moves the whole machine is very ingenious, though very simple. It was passion which moved him to that action. Can you doubt that the soul, though it is spiritual, moves the body at pleasure? That is a man whom nothing moves. We had scarcely lost sight of land, when there arose a violent tempest. We were moved with fear and pity. When the famous d'Aguesseau was promoted to the dignity of chancellor, all France shewed the greatest joy. That bishop well deserved. by his talents and by his virtues, that the king should promote him to the dignity of primate. The people think that it rains frogs and insects at certain seasons. It will not rain to-day, but I (am fearful) of its raining to-morrow.

ressort m. 2 tout 1 — f.
= quoique — Ce ind-1 art. — f. ind-4
*— f. pouvez f. **
** — quel ne sub-1 à sa volonté ce*
émouvoir ind-3 à peine perdu vue f. 3 2
art. terre, f. 1 que il s'émouvoir ind-3 grand tempête f.
ind-3 émus de crainte f. pr. pitié f. quand célèbre
ind-3 = f. chancellor tout
art. f. en témoigner ind-3 f. évêque
mériter ind-2
sub-2 2 le 1 primal sing.
cro. de art. grenouille f. pl. pr. art. insecte m. pl.
en — temps pl. aujourd'hui
*craindre que * ne sub-1*

POUVOIR, to be able.

Part. pres. pouvant—Part. past. pu.

*IND. pres. puis, * peux, peut, pouv-ons, —ez, peuvent,*

Imperf. pouvais—Pret. pus—Fut. pourrai—COND. pourrais.

(No Imperative). SUBJ. pres. puisse—Imperf. pusse.

* Conversation and poetry admit also *je peux*, but not *peux-je*?

There is an imperative used, not to express command, but a wish that a thing be, as a sort of imprecation. *Puisse-je, puisses-tu, puisse-t-il, puissions-nous, puissiez-vous, puissent-ils.* Ex: *puissiez-vous arriver à temps*, may you arrive in time.

SAVOIR, to know.

Part. pres. sachant—*Part. past. su.*

IND. pres. sais, sais, sait, savons, savez. savent—*Imperf.* savais.

Pret. sus—*Fut.* saurai—*COND.* saurais.

IMPER. sache, sache, sachons, sachez, sachent.

SUBJ. pres. sache—*Imperf.* susse.

Seoir, to be becoming, to befit, has *only* the *part. pres.* *seyant*; and the third persons of the *simple* tenses, *il sied*, *il siéent*, *il séyait*, *il siéra*, *il siérait*, *qu'il siée*. But *seoir*, to sit, is used only in the two participles, *séant* and *sis*. This verb is also used impersonally.

ASSEOIR, to set.

Part. pres. asseyant—*Part. past.* assis.

IND. pres. assieds, assieds, assied, assey-*ons*, —*ez*, —*ent*.

Imperf. asseyais.—*Pret.* assis.—*Fut.* assierai, *or* assejerai.

COND. assierais, *or* assejerais.—*IMP.* assieds, assèye, assey-*ons*.

—*ez*, *ent*.—*SUBJ. pres.* assèye.—*Imperf.* assise.

N.B. This verb is more frequently reflected, as *s'asseoir*, to sit down. Its compound *rasseoir*, to set again, to calm, or to sit down again, is conjugated in the same manner.

EXERCISE.

When he arrived at home, he (was quite exhausted).
être ind-1 arrivé chez lui n'en pouvoir ind-2 plus
 The minister had (so many) people at his levee, that I
ministre ind-3 tant de monde à audience
 could not speak to him. Are you afraid that he cannot
ind-3 2 1 craindre, ind-1 pouvoir sub-1
 accomplish that affair? I know that he is not your friend,
venir à bout de de pl.
 but I know likewise that he is a man of probity. Let them know
*aussi * bien*
 that their pardon depends on their submission. I could wish
grâce dépendre de soumission désirer cond-1
 that he knew a little better his lessons. Let us see if this new-
sub-2 voyons d'un
 fashioned dress becomes you, or not. Be assured that
nouveau goût 2 robe f. 1 2 1 non
 colours too rich will not become you. The head-dress which that
art. f voyant coiffure f. que
 lady wore did not become her at all. These
porter ind-2 seoir ind-2 2 lui 1 du tout
 colours become you so well, you (would do wrong) to wear any
inf-3 avoir tort cond-1 de en porter en
 others. Sit that child in this arm-chair, and take care he
asseoir m. fauteuil m. prenez garde que

does not fall. I will sit down on the top of that hill
ne subj-1 s'asseoir sommet m. coteau m.
 whence I shall discover a prospect (no less) magnificent
découvrir scène f. aussi —que
 than diversified. We (were sitting) on the banks of the
varié s'asseoir ind-6 bord m.pl.
 Thames, whence we contemplated myriads of vessels,
Tamise f. contempler ind-2 de art. millier vaisseau
 which bring, every year, the riches of the two hemis-
apporter art. pl.
 pheres.

VOIR, to see.

Part. pres. voyant.—Part. past. vu.

IND. pres. vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.

Imperf. voyais.—Pret. vis.—Fut. verrai.—COND. verrais.

IMPER. vois, voie, voyons, voyez, voient.

SUBJ. pres. voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.—Imp. visse.

Revoir, to see again ; and *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of, are conjugated in the same manner ; but *prévoir*, to foresee ; makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai*, etc. *je prévoirais*, etc.

Pourvoir, to provide ; makes in the *pret. je pourvus*, *tu pourvus*, etc. *fut. je pourvoirai*, etc. *COND. je pourvoirais*, etc., and *imperf. SUBJ. que je pourvusse*, etc.

Surseoir, to supersede, though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except that it makes *fut. je surseoirai*, etc., *COND. je surseoirais*, etc. and *part. past. sursis*.

VALOIR, to be worth.

Part. pres. valant.—Part. past. valu.

IND. pres. vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.

Imperf. valais.—Pret. valus.—Fut. vaudrai.—COND. vaudrais.

IMPER. vaux, vaille, valons, valez, vaillent.

SUBJ. pres. vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

Imperf. valusse.

Revaloir, to pay off, and *équivaloir*, to be equivalent to, follow *valoir* ; but *prévaloir*, to prevail, makes in the *SUBJ. pres. que je prévale*, *que tu prévalues*, *qu'il prévale*, *que nous prévalions*, etc.

VOULOIR, to be willing.

Part. pres. voulant.—Part. past. voulu.

IND. pres. veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.

Imperf. voulais.—Pret. voulus.—Fut. voudrai.—COND. voudrais.

SUBJ. pres. veuille, —es, —e, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

Imperf. voulusse.

The imperative is *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, but the last person only is commonly used, in the sense of *be so kind or so good as, please to*

EXERCISE.

Behold the admirable order of the universe. Has he again seen
2 m 1

his country and his friends? (Had he had a glimpse of) the dawn
pays aurore

of this fine day? To terminate their affairs, it would be neces-
pour falloir

sary for them to (see one another). I clearly foresaw,
cond-1 que * ils * s'entrevoir subj-2 bien 2

(from that time), all the obstacles he would have to surmount.
dès lors — m. que à surmonter

Would you have had the judge (put off), the execution
vouloir ind-2 que juge surseoir subj-2

of the sentence that he had pronounced? I shall not put off the
arrêt ind-2 rendre

prosecution of that affair. If men do not provide (for it),
poursuite f. pl. art. 2 y 1

God will provide (for it) (But for the cooking), this fish (would be
2 y 1 sans la sauce ne valoir

good for nothing) You have not paid for this ground more than
*rien * terre f.*

it is worth; (are you afraid) that it is not worth six hundred
ne craindre que subj-1

pounds? One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen
livre f. pl. sterling? once f.

ounces of silver. Doubt not that reason and truth will
*douter art. art. **

prevail at last. I can and I will tell the truth. If you
ne subj-1 à la longue dire le

are willing, he will be willing too. Let us resolve to resist
*le aussi vouloir * combattre*

our passions, and we shall be sure to conquer them. (Be so good as)
de vaincre 2 1 vouloir

to lend me your grammar.
* prêter 1.

that hill
côteau m.
magnificent
— que

ks of the
in pl.
ls of vessels,
vaisseau
two hemis-

s.
visse.
glimpse of,
to foresee;
voirai, etc.

pourvus, tu
pourvoirais,

of seoir, is
surseoirai,
sis.

udrais.

ivalent to,
the SUBJ.
e, que nous

voudrais.

142. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BRANCH I. On RENDRE.

RESOUDRE, to resolve.

Part. pres. résolvant.—*Part. past.* résolu, or résous.

IND. pres. résous, résous, résout, résolv-ons, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. résolvais.—*Pret.* résolu.—*Fut.* résoudrai.

COND. résoudrais.—*IMPER.* résous, résolve, résolv-ons, ez, —ent.

SUBJ. pres. résolve.—*Imperf.* résolusae.

This verb has two participles past, *résolu*, in the sense of *to determine, to fix*; *résous*, without a feminine, in the sense of *to resolve into, to turn into*.

Absoudre, absolve, is conjugated like *résoudre*; but has neither *pret.* *IND.* nor *imperf.* *SUBJ.*; its participle past is *absous*, m. *absoute*, f.

Dissoudre, to dissolve; has the same irregularities, and wants the same tenses as *absoudre*.

COUDRE, to sew.

Part. pres. cousant.—*Part. past.* cousu.

IND. pres. couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.

Imperf. cousais.—*Pret.* cousis.—*Fut.* coudrai.—*COND.* coudrais.

IMPER. couds.—*SUBJ. pres.* couse.—*Imperf.* cousisse.

Découdre to unsew; and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

METTRE, to put.

Part. pres. mettant.—*Part. past.* mis.

IND. pres. mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent.

Imperf. mettais.—*Pret.* mis.—*Fut.* mettrai.—*COND.* mettrais.

IMPER. mets.—*SUBJ. pres.* mette.—*Imperf.* misse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives:

admettre	to admit	permettre	to permit
commettre	to commit	promettre	to promise
compromettre	to compromise	remettre	to replace
se démettre	{ to put out of joint	soumettre	to subject
	{ to resign	transmettre	to transmit
omettre	to omit	s'entremettre	to intermeddle

EXERCISE.

Wood when burning resolves itself into ashes and smoke.
art. bois m. que l'on brûle se résoudre en cendre f. .pr. fumée f

Have they resolved on peace or war? The fog has
 * art. f. art. f. *brouillard m. se*
 resolved itself into rain. Would that judge thus lightly
résoudre ind-4 2 pluie f. si légèrement
 absolve the guilty? Strong waters dissolve metals.
 cond-1 *coupable m. pl. art. fort 2 f. pl. 1 art. on 1*
 Those drugs were dissolved before they were but into
*drogues 3 ind-2 avant que de les * mettre*
 that medicine. My sister did sew all day yesterday. That piece
*remède m. * hier m.*
 is not well sewed, it must (be sewed over again) *Unpick*
falloir la inf-1 découdre
 that lace, and sew it again very carefully. Does he
dentelle f. 2 1 avec beaucoup de soin
 set a great value upon riches? I never admitted those
mettre prix m. à art. ind-4
 principles. Has he committed that fault? If he (would take my
faute f. me
 advice), he would resign his charge in favour of his
croyait se démettre cond-1 de f. en =
 son. He put his arm out of joint yesterday. I will omit nothing
se démettre le bras ind-4
 that depends on me to serve you. God frequently
de ce dépendre ind-7 de pour souvent 2
 permits the wicked to prosper. Put this book
*1 que méchant m. pl. * prospérer sub-1 remettre*
 in its place again. Under whatever form of government
*—f. * quelque gouvernement m. que*
 you (may live), remember that your first duty is to be
vivre subj-1 se souvenir devoir m. de
 obedient to the laws. It frequently happens that fathers transmit
soumis 2 arriver 1 art.
 to their children both their vices and their virtues.
et
 He has long meddled with public affairs; but his
s'entremettre ind-4 long-temps de art. 2 1
 endeavours have not been crowned with success.
effort couronner de art. m.

MOUDRE, *to grind* (corn, &c.)

Part. pres. moulant. — Part. past. moulu.

IND. pres. mouds, mouds, moud, moul-ons, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. moulais. — Pret. moulus. — Fut. moudrai. — COND. moudrais.

IMPER. mouds, moule, moulons, moulez, moulent.

SUBJ. pres. moule. — Imperf. moulusse.

URTH

ent.

ense of
e senseout has
past is

es, and

s.

re con-

s.

:

e

nit
eddlesmoke.
fuméc f

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives :

émoudre { to grind
(knives, etc.) } remoudre to grind again (corn, etc.)
rémoudre to grind again (knives, etc.)
PRENDRE, to take.

Part. pres. prenant.—*Part. past. pris.*

IND. pres. prends, prends, prend, pren-ons,—ez, prennent.

Imperf. prenais.—*Pret. pris.*—*Fut. prendrai.*—*COND. prendrais.*

IMPER. prends, prenne, prenons, prenez, prennent.

SUBJ. pres. prenn-e,—es,—e, pren-ions,—iez, prennent

Imperf. prisse.

In the same manner are conjugated :

apprendre	to learn	entreprendre	to undertake
désapprendre	to unlearn	se méprendre	to mistake
comprendre	to understand	reprendre	to retake, to reply
déprendre	to separate	surprendre	to surprise

ROMPRE, to break.

Part. pres. rompant.—*Part. past. rompu.*

IND. pres. romps, romps, rompt, romp-ons,—ez,—ent.

Imperf. rompais.—*Pret. rompis.*—*Fut. romprai.*—*COND. romprais.*

IMPER. romps, rompe, rompons, rompez, rompent.

SUBJ. pres. rompe.—*Imperf.* rompisse.

In the same manner are conjugated *corrompre*, to corrupt ; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

SOURDRE, to rush out of the ground, as water, has only infinitive, and *il* or *elle sourd*.

EXERCISE.

I took great pains. Grind those razors with care.
ind-3 beaucoup de sing. rasoir m.

Those knives (are just) ground. This corn is not sufficiently
couteau m. venir d'être grain m. assez

ground, it should be ground again. I wish that you would
falloir ind-1 le vouloir cond-1

take courage. What news have you learnt? Philosophy
subj-2 f. pl. art.

comprehends logic, ethics, physics, and
art. logique f. art. morale f. art. physique. f. art.

metaphysics. It is (with difficulty) that he divests himself of
métaphysique f. Ce difficilement que se déprendre

his opinions. He has forgotten all that he knew. I fear
désapprendre ce que savoir ind-2 craindre que

you will undertake a task - above your strength. Could
ne subj-1 tâche f. au-dessus de f. pl.

VES :

a, etc.)
res, etc.)

endrais.

ertake

ake
ke, to reply
rise

ND. rom-

, to cor-

has only

ith care.

ufficiently
assez

ou would

philosophy

and

art.

himself of
ndre

I fear

ind; e que

Could

he have been mistaken so grossly? I reproved him
se méprendre cond-2 grossièrement reprendre ind-2 2 1
 continually for his faults, but (to no purpose). We surprised
sans cesse de défaut inutilement ind-4
 the enemy, and cut them to pieces. In the middle of the
pl. tailler 2 1 en à
 road the axle-tree of our carriage broke. Bad
chemin essieu, m. carrosse se rompre ind-3 art. mauvais
 company corrupts the minds of young people. Why do
compagnie pl. sing. gens pourquoi
 you interrupt your brother, when you see him busy?
quand 2 1 occupé

SUIVRE, to follow.

Part. pres. suivant—Part. past. suivi.
IND. pres. suis, suis, suit, suivons suivez, suivent.
Imperf. suivais—Pret. suivis—Fut. suivrai—COND. suivrais.
IMPER. suis, suive, suivons, suivez, suivent.
SUBJ. pres. suive—Imperf. suivisse.

Poursuivre, is conjugated in the same way.

S'ensuire also, but it has the third persons singular and plural only.

VAINCRE, to conquer, to vanquish.

Part. pres. vainquant—Part. past. vaincu.
IND. pres. vaincs, vaincs,* vainc,* vainqu-ons,* —ez, —ent.*
Imperf. vainquais—Pret. vainquis—Fut. vaincrai—COND. vaincrais.
SUBJ. pres. vainque—Imperf. vainquisse.

*All the persons of this verb, marked with an asterisk, are very little used. But its derivative, *convaincre*, to convince, is generally used in all its tenses and persons.

EXERCISE.

(For a long while) we followed that method, which was only
long-temps 2 ind-3 1 f. ind-2 ne
 calculated to mislead us. What is the consequence? See the errors
propre que à égarer 2 1 que s'ensuire f.
 that have sprung from this proposition, which appeared so
s'ensuire ind-4 — f. ind-2
 true. We pursued our course when some cries, which
*suivre ind-2 chemin lorsque de art. cri, m. pl. **
 came from the midst of the forest, brought terror into our
sortis fond m. forêt f. porter ind-3 art. = f.
 souls. The Greeks vanquished the Persians at Marathon, Salamis,
Grec. Perse à pr. Salamine
 Platea, and Mycale. I have at last convinced him, by
pr. pr. convaincre enfin ind-4 2

such powerful reasons, of the greatness of his fault, that 1
des si 2 fort 3 f. pl. 1 *énormité* *faute f.*
 (have no doubt) but he will repair it. It is during
ne douter nullement que ne *réparer subj-1 2 1* *Ce pendant*
 winter that they thrash the corn in cold countries. The
art. 10 on battre *froid 2 art. pays m. pl. 1*
 enemy were so completely beaten in that engagement that they were
pl. ind-3 *—ment* *rencontre f.*
 forced to abandon thirty leagues of the country. The cannon beat
de lieue f. ** pays canon abat-*
 down the tower. They were fighting with unexampled
tre ind-3 tour f. *ind-2 un sans exemple 2*
 rage when a panic terror made them take flight,
acharnement m. 1 *panique 2 = f. 1 ind-3 2 leur 1 art. fuite f.*
 and dispersed them in an instant. Beat these mattresses
2 1 *—m. rebattre matelas m.*
 again. Happy those who live in solitude! Long
live that good king! He did not long survive a person who
subj-1 3 2 2 2 *art. retraite f. Que 1 long-temps 4*
 was so dear to him. Fathers live again in their children. He
2 1 art. *survivre ind-3 à f.*
 was in a great dejection of mind; the news which he has received
accablement f. pl. *f. pl.*
 has revived him.
ont fait inf-1 2 1

BATTRE, to beat.

Part. pres. battant—Part. past. battu.
IND. pres. bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent.
Imperf. battais—Pret. battis—Fut. battrai—COND. battrais.
IMPER. bats—SUBJ. pres. batte—Imperf. battisse.

Conjugate in the same manner:

abattre	to pull down	combattre	to fight
rabattre	to abate	débattre	to debate
rebattre	to beat again	s'ébattre	to be merry

VIVRE, to live.

Part. pres. vivant—Part. past. vécu.
IND. pres. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.—Imperf. vivais.
Pret. vécus—Fut. vivrai—COND. vivrais—IMP. vis.
SUBJ. pres. vive—Imperf. vécusse.

In the same manner are conjugated *revivre*, to revive;
 and *survivre*, to survive.

BRANCH II. *Plaire.*

Braire, to bray ; is used in the third persons only and in the following tenses : *il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient.*

FAIRE, to do.

Part. pres. faisant—Part. past. fait.

IND pres. fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.

Imperf. faisais—Pret. fis—Fut. ferai—COND. ferais.

IMPER. fais, fasse, faisons, faites, fassent.

SUBJ. pres. fasse, fassions—Imperf. fisse.

Some authors on account of the similarity of sound, write *nous fésens, fésant*, etc. but it is contrary to the opinion of the French Academy.

In the same manner are conjugated :

contrefaire	to counterfeit	refaire	to do again
défaire	to undo	satisfaire	to satisfy
redéfaire	to undo again	surfaire	to exact
forfaire*	to trespass	méfaire*	to misdo
malfaire	to do ill	parfaire	to perfect

TRAIRE, to milk (defective.)

Part. pres. trayant—Part. past. trait.

IND pres. trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient.

Imperf. trayais—(No pret.)—Fut. trairai—COND. trairais.

IMPER. trais, traye, trayons, trayez, traient.

SUBJ. pres. traye—(No imperf.)

Conjugate in the same manner :

attirer	to allure	retraire	to finedraw
abstraire	to abstract	retraire	to redeem
distraindre	to divert	soustraire	to subtract
extraire	to extract		

All these verbs are principally used in the compound tenses.

EXERCISE.

What will you have him do ? Do not make (so much) *Que vouloir * que il sub-1 tant*

noise. Do they never exact ? That women mimicked all the people *de bruit ind-2 f.*

sons whom she saw. It was with difficulty he (divested himself) *pl. voir ind-3 Ce ind-3 peine que se défaire*

* These four verbs are only used in this form, and the partic. past, *forfait, malfait, méfait and parfait.*

of the false opinions which had been given him in his infancy.
—f. on ind-2+2 données 3 lui 1 f.

Is there no chance of our making again another trip to
n'est-il donc pas probable que sub-1 le voyage

Paris, Rome, and Naples? He says that you have offended him,
pr. pr. dit 2 offensé 3 1

and that, if you do not satisfy him quickly, he will find means
promptement art. moyen

to satisfy himself. Every night, she milked her
sing. de se lui-même art. soir m. pl. ind-2

cows, which gave her a (great quantity) of wholesome milk.
ce qui ind-2 lui abondant 2 * et vain 3 lait m. 1

Have you milked your goats? Are the cows milked?
chèvre f. pl. vache f. pl. art.

Salt is good to entice pigeons. You will never know the
Sel m. pour attirer art. m. pl. connaître

nature of bodies, if you abstract not their accessory qualities
art. = 2 = 1 1

from those which are inherent (in them), The least thing (diverts
2 leur 1 moindre

his attention). Will you not extract that charming passage? Have
distraindre m.

you darned your gown? Should he not redeem that land?
rentraire devoir cond-1

What! would you have me screen those guilty
Quoi! ind-1 * que je soustraire sub-1 coupable m. pl.

persons from the rigour of the laws?
* à rigueur f.

BRANCH III. *Paraître*.

NAÎTRE, to be born.

Part. pres. naissant—*Part. past.* né.

IND. pres. nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent.

Imperf. naissais—*Pret.* naquis—*Fut.* naîtrai—*COND.* naîtrais.

IMPER. nais—*SUBJ. pres.* naisse—*Imperf.* naquisse.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être*; but its derivative, *re-naître*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, consequently, no compound tenses.

PAÎTRE, to graze (defective).

Part. pres. paissant—*Part. past.* pu.

IND. pres. pais, pais, pait, paissions, païssez, paissent.

Imperf. paissais—(No *pret.*)—*Fut.* paîtrai—*COND.* paîtrais.

IMPER. pais—*SUBJ. pres.* païsse—(No *imperf.*)

Repâître, to feed, to bait, is, like *paraître*, regular in all its tenses, making in the *pret.* *IND.* je repus, etc. and in the *imperf. subj.* je repusse, etc.

EXERCISE.

Was not Virgil born at Mantua ? It is from that poisoned
 ind-3 Mantoue Ce empoisonné 2
 source that have arisen all the cruel wars that have desolated
 f. 1 que naître f. pl. 2 f. pl. 1 désoler
 the universe. The fable says that, as soon as Hercules had
 f. dit aussitôt que Hercules h m. ind-2
 (cut off) one of the heads of the hydra, others sprang up
 couper tête f. pl. hydre f. d'autres 2 il en renaître
 While heir united flocks fed on the
 ind-2 1 tandis que réuni 2 troupeau m. pl. 1 paître ind-2 *
 tender and flowery grass, they sung under the shade of a
 2 fleuri 3 herbe f. 1 chanter ind-2 à ombre
 tree the sweets of rural life. Your horses have
 douceur f. pl. art. champêtre 2 f. 1
 not fed to-day ; you must have them fed. That is a
 repaître d'aujourd'hui ; il faut leur faire donner à manger. Ce
 man who thirsts after nothing but blood and slaughter.
 ne se repaître de 2 * que 1 pr. carnage m.

145. BRANCH IV. Réduire.

Bruire, to roar, is defective ; it has only the *part. pres.* *bruyant*, oftener used as an adjective, as : *des flots bruyans* ; and the two third persons of the *imperf. IND.* *il bruysait, ils bruysaient*.

Luire, to shine ; and *reluire*, to glitter ; make the *part. past. lui, relui*, neither the *pret. IND.* nor *imperf. SUBJ.* are in use.

Nuire, to hurt ; making *part. pres. nuisant, past. nuir*, is regular in all its tenses.

CONFIRE, to pickle or preserve.

Part. pres. confisant—Part. past. confit.

IND. pres. conf-is,—is, it,—isons,—isez,—isent.

Imperf. confisais—Pret. confis—Fut. confirai.

COND. confirais—IMP. confis—SUBJ. pres. confisse.

Imperf. confisse.

Its derivative *déconfire*, to disconfit, is rather obsolete.

Circoncire, to circumcise, and *suffire*, to suffice, make in the *part. past. circoncis* and *suffi*, the rest is as *confire*.

EXERCISE.

The thunder which roared from so far as announced
 tonnerre m. bruire ind-2 dans art. lointain m. ind-2
 a dreadful storm. They heard the roaring of the waves of
 terrible 2 orage m. 1 On ind-2 * inf-1 * flot m. pl.

an agitated sea. That street is too noisy for those who love
agité 2 mer f. 1 *rue f. bruyant*
 retirement and study. I (have a glimpse of) some thing
art. retraite f. art. entrevoir quelque chose
 that shines through those trees. A ray of hope shone upon
*au travers de rayon m. ind-4 2 **
 us in the midst of the misfortunes which overwhelmed us. Every
1 à milieu malheur m. pl. accabler ind-2
 thing is well rubbed in that house : every thing shines, even to the
frotté y reluire jusque à
 floor. Would he not have hurt you in that affair ? Jesus
plancher m. cond-2 1
 Christ was circumcised a week after his birth. Shall you
huit jours naissance f.
 preserve these peaches with sugar, with honey, or with
confire à art. sucre m. art. miel m.
 brandy ? Have you pickled cucumbers,
art. cau-de-vie f. de art. concombre m. pr-art.
 purslane, and sea-fennel ? If he loses his law-suit, all his
pourpier m. pr. art. perce-pierre f. procès m.
 property will not suffice.
bien

DIRE, to say.

Part. pres. disant—Part. past. dit.
IND. pres. dis, dis, dit, disons, DITES, disent.*
Imperf. disais—Pret. dis—Fut. dirai—COND. dirais.
IMPER. dis, dise, disons, DITES, disent.*
SUBJ. pres. dise—Imperf. disse.

ÉCRIRE, to write.

Part. pres. écrivant—Part. past. écrit.
IND. pres. écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. écrivais—Pret. écrivis—Fut. écrirai—COND. écrirais.
IMP. écris—SUBJ. pres. écrive—Imperf. écrivisse.

**Redire*, to say again, occasionally to its primitive, makes *redites*, but

contredire	to contradict	} make	{	vous contredisez
dédire	to unsay			vous dédisez
interdire	to forbid			vous interdisez
médire	to slander			vous médisez
prédire	to foretell			vous prédisez

Maudire is conjugated like *punir* with the exception of the participle past, which is *maudit*, *a. maudissant*; *je maudis, nous maudissons*; *je maudissais*; *je maudis*; *je maudirai*; *je maudirais*; *que je maudisse*; *que je maudisse*; *maudis*.

Conjugate in the same manner.

circconserire	to circumscribe	proscrire	to proscribe
décrire	to describe	récrire	to write again
inscrive	to inscribe	souscrire	to subscribe
prescrire	to prescribe	transcrire	to transcribe

LIRE, to read.

*Part. pres. lisant—Part. past. lu.**IND. pres. lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent.—Imperf. lisais.**Pret. lus—Fut. lirai—COND. lirais—IMPER. lis.**SUBJ. pres. lise—Imperf. lusse.*

In the same manner are conjugated:

élire | to elect | relire | to read over again

RIRE, to laugh.

*Part. pres. riant—Past. ri—IND. pres. ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient.**Imperf. riais—Pret. ris—Fut. rirai—COND. rirais.**IMPER. ris—SUBJ. pres. ris—Imperf. risse.**Sourire, to smile ; is conjugated as rire.*

Frيره, to fry ; besides the present of the infinitive, has only the part. past. frit ; INDIC. pres. je fris, tu fris, il frit ; fut. je frirai, tu, etc. ; COND. je frirais, tu, etc. ; IMPER. sing. fris. But it has all the compound tenses. The forms that are deficient are fully supplied by faire, prefixed to frيره, as : faisant frيره, je faisais frيره, etc.

EXERCISE.

Always speak the truth, but with discretion. Never contradict
dire f.

(any one) in public. You thought you were serving me in
personne en penser ind-4 * * inf-1 2 1 en

speaking thus: well, (let it be so) ; you shall not be contradicted
parler ainsi eh bien soit en dédire

What! would you forbid him all communication with his friends?
Quoi! * interdire 2 1 — f.

That woman slandered every one. You had foretold that event.
ind-2 de ind-6

Let us curse no one ; let us remember that our laws forbids us
ne personne se rappeler défendre

to curse even those who persecute us. Write down every
de persécuter art. pl.

day the reflections which you make on the books which you read.
Did he not read that interesting history with (a great deal) of
ind-2 2 1

pleasure? God is an infinite being who is circumscribed neither
2 être m. 1 2 ni

by time nor place. Shall you not describe that
 art. *ni* pr. art. *lieu* m. pl.
 dreadful : tempest ? Have those soles and whittings fried.
 horrible 2 f. 1 faire 1 pron. *merlan* 3 inf-1 2
 If you wish to form your taste, read the classics over and over
vouloir * lire et relire les anciens
 He was elected by a great majority of voices. We have laughed
 ind-4 à f.
 heartily and have resolved to (go on). He did not answer
de bon cœur nous résolu de continuer répondre
 him (any thing) : but he smiled at him, as a sign of appro-
 ind-3 lui rien ind-3 2* lui 1 en *
 bation, in the kindest manner.
 — de gracieux 2 air m. 1.

POIRE, to drink.

Part. pres. buvant—*Past. bu.*

IND. pres. bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.

Imperf. buvais—*Pret. bus*—*Fut.* boirai—*COND.* boirais.

IMPER. bois, boive, buvons, buvez, boivent.

SUBJ. pres. boiv-e, —es, —e, buvions, buviez, boivent.

Imperf. busse.

In the same manner are conjugated.

reboire to drink again

| s'emboire to imbibe, a technical term used in painting

Clore, to close ; has only the *part. past.* clos ; *ind. pres.* je clos, tu clos, il clôt ; *fut.* je clorai, tu cloras, etc. ; *cond.* je clorais, tu clorais, etc. ; and the *IMP. sing.* clos.

Déclore, to disclose, *enclore*, to enclose, are defective in the same tenses as *clore* ; but *forclore*, to debar, a law term, is only used in the *inf.* and *part. past.* forclos.

Eclore, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, has only these forms ; *inf.* éclore ; *part. past.* éclos ; *ind. pres.* il éclôt, ils éclosent ; *fut.* il écloira, ils écloront ; *cond.* il éclorait, ils écloraient ; and the *subj. pres.* qu'il éclosse, qu'ils éclosent. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much used.

CONCLURE, to conclude.

Part. pres. concluant—*Past. conclu.*

IND. pres. conclus, conclus, conclut, conclu-ons, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. concluais—*Pret. conclus*—*Fut.* conclurai.

COND. conclurais—*IMPER.* conclus—*SUBJ. pres.* conclue.

Imperf. conclusse,

Exclure, to exclude ; is conjugated like *conclure*, except that it has two participles past, *exclu*, *e*, *exclus*, *e*.

CROIRE, to believe.

Part. pres. croyant—Past. cru.

IND. pres. crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. croyais—Pret. crus—Fut. croirai—COND. croirais.

IMPER. crois, croie, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. crusse

It has no derivative but *accroire*, which is only used with *faire*, as : *faire accroire* or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon credulity ; and *s'en faire accroire* to be self-conceited.

EXERCISE.

Seated under the shade of palm-trees, they milked their
Assis à art. palmier pl. traire ind-2
 goats and ewes, and merrily drank that nectar,
chèvre f. pl. pron. brebis f. pl. avec joie 2 ind-2 1 m.
 which (was renewed) every day. Would they drink
se renouveler ind-2 art. pl. boire cond-1
 their wine iced ? This window does not close well ; when you
à la glace f.
 have made some alterations (in it), it will close better. He
ind-8 2 3 réparation f. 4 y 1 mieux
 had scarcely closed his eyes, when the noise which they made
*à peine ind-6 * art. que que on ind-3*
 at his door, awoke him. Have they not enclosed the suburbs
à réveiller ind-3 on faubourg
 within, the city ? Will you enclose your park with a wall,
m. pl. ville f. parc de mur m.
 or a hedge ? Put the eggs of those silk-worms in the
pr. haie f. mettez œuf m. pl. ver-à-soie m. pl. à
 sun, that they may hatch. Those flowers just blown
soleil m. sub-1 nouvellement
 exhale the sweetest fragrance. When did they conclude this
répandre doux parfum m. ind-4
 treaty ? His enemies managed so well, that he was unanimously
traité m. faire ind-3 ind-3 unanimement
 excluded from the company. Did you think me capable of so
compagnie f. croire ind-1
 black an act ? He possesses some kind of knowledge ; but
noir 2 trait m. 1 avoir espèce savoir
 (not so much as he thinks).
il s'en fait trop accroire.

146. BRANCH V. Joindre.

Poindre, to pierce, to peep, to dawn, has only besides the infinitive *il point, il poindra*.

147. GENERAL GUIDE TO THE CONJUGATION.

The following Tables, which exhibit at one view all the primitive tenses, both of the regular and irregular verbs, and most of the defective, with references to the pages where the other tenses are to be found, will, it is presumed, prove useful to those who will consult them.

TABLE OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parler	Parlant	Parlé	Je parle	Je parlai	137
--------	---------	-------	----------	-----------	-----

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Punir.*

Punir	Punissant	Puni	Je punis	Je punis	147
-------	-----------	------	----------	----------	-----

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Sentir	Sentant	Senti	Je sens	Je sentis	147
Mentir	Mentant	Menti	Je mens	Je mentis	
Se repentir	Se repentant	Repenti	Je me repens	Je me repens	
Partir	Partant	Parti	Je pars	Je partis	
Sortir	Sortant	Sorti	Je sors	Je sortis	
Dormir	Dormant	Dormi	Je dors	Je dormis	
Servir	Servant	Servi	Je sers	Je servis	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Ouvrir	Ouvrant	Ouvert	J'ouvre	J'ouvris	147
Offrir	Offrant	Offert	J'offre	J'offris	
Souffrir	Souffrant	Souffert	Je souffre	Je souffris	

FOURTH BRANCH. *Tenir.*

Tenir	Tenant	Tenu	Je tiens	Je tins	147
Venir	Venant	Venu	Je viens	Je vins	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Courir.*

Courir	Courant	Couru	Je cours	Je courus	147
--------	---------	-------	----------	-----------	-----

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir	Recevant	Recu	Je reçois	Je reçus	152
Devoir	Devant	Dû	Je dois	Je dus	

IN

PRES

Répa
Rer d
Fond
Pond
Répon
Tond
Perdr
Mord
Tord

Plaire
Taïre

Parait
Croître
Conna
Repa

Réduir
Instru

Craind
Peindr
Joindre

148.

Aller

Fleurir
Hâir
Gésir

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

Répandre	Répandant	Répandu	Je répands	Je répandis	} 156
Rendre	Rendant	Rendu	Je rends	Je rendis	
Fondre	Fondant	Fondu	Je fonds	Je fondis	
Pondre	Pondant	Pondu	Je ponds	Je pondis	
Répondre	Répondant	Répondu	Je réponds	Je répondis	
Tondre	Tondant	Tondu	Je tonds	Je tondis	
Perdre	Perdant	Perdu	Je perds	Je perdis	
Mordre	Mordant	Mordu	Je mords	Je mordis	
Tordre	Tordant	Tordu	Je tords	Je tordis	

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

Plaire	Plaisant	Plu	Je plais	Je plus	} 156
Taire	Taisant	Tu	Je tais	Je tus	

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

Paraître	Paraissant	Paru	Je paraïs	Je parus	} 156
Croître	Croissant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus	
Connaître	Connaissant	Connu	Je connais	Je connus	
Reparaître	Reparaissant	Repu	Je repaïs	Je repus	

FOURTH BRANCH. *Réduire.*

Réduire	Réduisant	Réduit	Je réduis	Je réduisis	} 156
Instruire	Instruisant	Instruit	J'instruis	J'intruisis	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Craindre.*

Craindre	Craignant	Craint	Je crains	Je craignis	} 156
Peindre	Peignant	Peint	Je peins	Je peignis	
Joindre	Joignant	Joint	Je joins	Je joignis	

148. PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Aller	Allant	Allé	Je vais	J'allai	176
-------	--------	------	---------	---------	-----

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Punir.*

Fleurir	Fleurissant	Fleuri	Je fleuris	Je fleuris	} 179
Hair	Haisant	Hai	Je hais	Je hais	
Gésir*	Gisant		Il gît		

If you love me at all love you will

INFIN.		PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRÉTERIT.	

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Bouillir	Bouillant	Bouilli	Je bous	Je bouillis	
Ebouillir		Ebouilli			
Faillir	Faillant*	Failli	Je faux*	Je faillis	
Défaillir		Défailli	Nous défail- lons	Je défaillis	
Fuir	Fuyant	Fui	Je fuis	Je fuis	180
Mourir	Mourant	Mort	Je meurs	Je mourus	
Acquérir	Acquérant	Acquis	J'acquires	J'acquis	
Conquérir	Conquérant	Conquis	Je conquiers	Je conquis	
Oùir	Oyant*	Oui		J'ouïs	
Vêtir	Vêtant	Vêtu	Je vêts	Je vêtis	
Revêtir	Revêtant	Revêtu	Je revêts	Je revêtis	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Cueillir	Cueillant	Cueilli	Je cueille	Je cueillis	183
Saillir	Saillant	Sailli	Il saille	Il saillit	
Tressaillir	Tressaillant	Tressailli	Je tressaille	Je tressaillis	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir.

Avoir	Ayant	Eu	J'ai	J'eus	184
Ravoir		Chu			
Choir		Déchu	Je déchois	Je déchus	
Déchoir		Echu	Il échoit	J'échus	
Echoir	Echéant				173
Falloir		Fallu	Il faut	Il fallut	
Mouvoir	Mouvant	Mu	Je meus	Je mus	
Promouvoir		Promu		Je promus*	
Pleuvoir	Pleuvant	Plu	Il pleut	Il plut	187 à 189
Pouvoir	Pouvant	Pu	Je puis	Je pus	
Savoir	Sachant	Su	Je sais	Je sus	
Seoir*	Seyant		Il sied		
Seoir*	Séant	Sis			
Asseoir	Asseyant	Assis	J'assieds	J'assis	
Surseoir		Sursis	Je sursois	Je sursis	
Voir	Voyant	Vu	Je vois	Je vis	
Prévoir	Prévoyant	Prévu	Je prévois	Je prévis	
Pourvoir	Pourvoyant	Pourvu	Je pourvois	Je pourvus	
Valoir	Valant	Valu	Je vau	Je valus	
Vouloir	Voulant	Voulu	Je veux	Je voulus	

N.B.—The forms marked with an asterisk are rather obsolete.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

Résoudre	Résolvant	Résous, -lu	Je résous	Je résolu	
Soudre	Solvant				
Absoudre	Absolvant	Absous	J'absous		
Dissoudre	Dissolvant	Dissous	Je dissous		
Coudre	Cousant	Cousu	Je couds	Je cousis	
Soudre			Il sourt		190
Mettre	Mettant	Mis	Je mets	Je mis	à 194
Moudre	Moulant	Moulu	Je mouds	Je moulus	
Prendre	Prenant	Pris	Je prends	Je pris	
Rompre	Rompant	Rompu	Je romps	Je rompis	
Suivre	Suivant	Suivi	Je suis	Je suivis	
S'ensuivre	S'ensuivant	Ensuiwi	Il s'ensuit	Il s'ensuivit	
Vaincre	Vainquant	Vaincu	Je vains	Je vainquis	
Battre	Battant	Battu	Je bats	Je battis	
Etre	Etant	Été	Je suis	Je fus	130
Vivre	Vivant	Vécu	Je vis	Je vécus	194

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

Braire			Il braie		
Faire	Faisant	Fait	Je fais	Je fis	195
Traire	Trayant	Trait	Je traie		

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

Naître	Naissant	Né	Je nais	Je naquis	
Renaitre	Renaissant		Je renais	Je renaquis*	196
Paître	Paissant	Pu	Je pais		

FOURTH BRANCH, *Réduire.*

Bruire	Bruyant				
Luire	Luisant	Lui	Je luis		
Nuire	Nuisant	Nui	Je nuis	Je nuisis	
Confire	Confisant	Confit	Je confis	Je confis	
Suffire	Suffisant	Suffi	Je suffis	Je suffis	
Circoncire	Circoncisant	Circoncis	Je circoncois	Je circoncois	
Dire	Disant	Dit	Je dis	Je dis	
Médire	Médissant	Médis	Je médis	Je médis	
Maudire	Maudissant	Maudit	Je maudis	Je maudis	197
Ecrire	Ecrivant	Ecrit	J'écris	J'écrivis	à 201
Lire	Lisant	Lu	Je lis	Je lus	
Rire	Riant	Ri	Je ris	Je ris	
Frir		Frit	Je fris		
Boire	Buvant	Bu	Je bois	Je bus	
Clore, clorre		Clos	Je clos		
Conclure	Concluant	Conclus	Je conclus	Je conclus	
Exclure	Excluant	Exclu or exclus	J'exclus	J'exclus	
Croire	Croyant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus	

INFIN.		PARTICIPLES.			INDICATIVE.	
PRES.	PART.	PRES.	PART.	PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

FIFTH BRANCH, *Craindre*.

Peindre | | | Il point | | 201

N. B. The derivatives, which are not in this Table, will be found with the primitives, to which we have given references.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

149. *Prepositions*, so called, from their being *prefixed* to the nouns, which they govern, serve to show the relation which exists between two words. Thus, in this phrase, *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree, *de* expresses the relation between *fruit* and *arbre*. Likewise in this, *utile à l'homme*, useful to man; *à* shows the relation between the noun *homme* and the adjective *utile*. *De* and *à* are *prepositions*, and the word to which they are *prefixed*, is called their *regimen*.

Prepositions being invariable parts of speech, they remain the same whatever be the gender and number of the noun which they precede.

They are generally divided into classes, according to the nature of the relation they serve to express.

Some also require another preposition after them, *de* or *à*, whilst their equivalents in English do not, and *vice versa*.

These peculiarities deserve much attention and will, therefore, be noticed in order.

150. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PLACE.

CHEZ. *Il est chez son père*, he is *at the house* of his father, or at his *father's*. *Nous sommes chez lui*, we are in his house. *Il est chez lui*, he is at home.

DANS. *Il se promène dans le jardin*; he is walking in the garden.

DEVANT. *Il est toujours devant mes yeux*; he is always *before* my eyes.

DERRIÈRE. *Il ne regarde jamais derrière lui*; he never looks *behind* him.

PARMI. *Que de fous parini les hommes!* how many fools *among* men!

SOUS. *La taupe vit sous terre;* the mole lives *under* ground.

SUR. *Il a le chapeau sur la tête;* he has his hat *on* (his head.)

VERS. *L'aimant se tourne vers le nord;* the loadstone point *towards* the north.

OUTRE. *Percé d'outre en outre;* *through* and *through*.

EXERCISE.

We find less real happiness in an elevated condition than in
On de 2 bonheur 1 2 f. 1.
 a middling state. One is never truly at peace but at home.
moyen 2 1 véritablement tranquille que soi
 He walked before me. There was a delightful grove behind
marcher ind-4 avoir ind-2 2 bosquet m. 1
 his house. Among (so many) different nations, there is not one
tant de 2 1 y en avoir
 that has not a religious worship. Nature displays her riches
qui sub-1. culte m. 1 art. déployer
 with magnificence under the torrid zone. Eternal snows
torride 3 f. 1 de art. 3 5 f. pl. 4
 (are to be seen) on the summit of the Alps. Towards the
on 1 voir ind-1 2 sommet
 north, nature presents a gloomy and wild aspect.
art. triste 2 sauvage 3 aspect m. 1.

PREPOSITIONS DENOTING ORDER.

AVANT. *La nouvelle est arrivée avant le courrier;* news is come *before* the courier.

APRÈS. *Il est trop vain pour marcher après les autres;* he is too proud to walk *after* other people.

ENTRE. *Elle a son enfant entre les bras;* she holds her child *in* (for *between*) her arms.

DEPUIS. *Depuis la création jusqu'à nous,* from the creation to the present time.

DES. *Dès son enfance;* from his infancy; *dès sa source;* from its source.

EXERCISE.

We (were up) before day-light, (in order to) enjoy the
*se lever ind-6 art. * pour jouir de*
 magnificent spectacle of the rising sun. After such great
magnifique 2 —m. 1. levant 2 1 de si
 faults, it only remained for us to repair them (as well as
faute f. pl. ne rester ind-2 2 1 que réparer 2 1 de notre*

we could). *Between* those two mountains is a deep hollow
mieux *profond* 3 et *creux* 2
road. Many very astonishing events (have taken place)
chemin m 1 * *de* art. 2 4 3 *il s'est passé* 1
within these ten years. *From* my earliest infancy I have had an
depuis * *art. tendre* *
abhorrence for falsehood.
horreur *de* art. *mensonge* m.

PREPOSITIONS DENOTING UNION.

AVEC. *Il faut savoir avec qui on se lie*, we ought to know *with* whom we associate.

DURANT. *Durant la guerre*, during the war; *durant l'été*, during the summer.

PENDANT. *Pendant l'hiver*, in winter; *pendant la paix*, in time of Peace. This preposition denotes a duration more limited than *durant*.

SUIVANT. *Je me déciderai suivant les circonstances*, I shall determine *according to* circumstances,

SELON. *Le sage se conduit selon les maximes de la raison*, a wise man acts *according to* the dictates of reason.

EXERCISE.

With wit, politeness, and a little (readiness to
de art. *pr.* art. *peu de prévenance*
oblige) one generally succeeds in the world. We are fit for
réussir *on propre à* art.
meditation *during* winter. (*In the course of*) that siege the com-
f *pendant* *siège* m.
mandant of the city made some very successful sallies.
ind.-3 *de* art. *heureux* 2 *sortie* f. pl. 1.
Besides the exterior advantages of figure and the graces of
2 1 art. art.
deportment, she possesses an excellent heart, a correct judgment,
maintien m. *avoir* 2 1 *sain* 2 *jugement* 1
and a kind heart. Always act *according to* the maxims
sensible 2 1 *se conduire* * f. pl.
which I have given you.
inculquer f. pl.

152. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING OPPOSITION.

CONTRE. *Je plaide contre lui*, I plead *against* him.

MALGRÉ. *Il l'a fait malgré moi*, he has done it *in spite of* me.

NONOBTANT. *Nonobstant ce qu'on lui a dit*, *notwithstanding* what has been said to him.

EXERCISE.

We cannot long act (*contrary to*) our own disposition
*savoir cond-1 agir contre * caractère m.*
notwithstanding all the pains we take to disguise it, it shews
que pour 2 1 se mon-
 itself, and betrays us on many occasions. In vain we
trahir 2 1 en bien de art.
 trer

dissemble; *in spite of* ourselves, we are known at last.
voir beau faire en nous connaît à la longue.

153. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PRIVATION, SEPARATION.

SANS. *Des troupes sans chefs*; troops without commanders.

EXCEPTÉ. *Excepté quelques malheureux*, except some wretches.

HORS. *Tout est perdu hors l'honneur*, all is lost save honour.

HORMIS. *Tous sont entrés hormis mon frère*, they are all come in except my brother.

EXERCISE.

(*Had it not been for*) your care, I should have been ignorant all
sans pl. un
 my life. All the philosophers of antiquity, *except* a few
art. très-petit nom-
 have held the world to be eternal. All laid down their
*bre croire * * mettre bas **
 arms, *except* two regiments, who preferred (making their way)
art. se faire jour
 through the enemy. Every thing is absurd and ridiculous in
au travers de pl.
 that work, *except* a chapter or two.

154. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING THE END.

ENVERS. *Il est charitable envers les pauvres*, he is charitable to the poor.

TOUCHANT. *Il a écrit touchant cette affaire*, he has written respecting that business.

POUR. *Il travaille pour le bien public*, he works for the public good.

EXERCISE.

I have written to you concerning that business, in which I take
à laquelle

the most lively interest; and as I know your benevolence to-
 vif² 1 connaître bienveillance f.
 wards the unfortunate, I (make not the least doubt) that you
 ne douter nullement
 will carefully attend) (to it) (not so much) for the satisfac-
 ne donner tout vos soins sub-1 2 y 1 moins
 tion of obliging me, as for the pleasure of justifying innocence,
 inf-1 2 1 justifier inf-1 art.
 and confounding calumny.
 pr. confondre art. f.

155. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING CAUSE, MEANS.

PAR. *Il l'a fléchi par ses prières*, he has softened him
 by his prayers.

MOYENNANT. *Il réussira moyennant vos avis*, he will
 succeed by means of your counsels.

ATTENDU. *Il ne peut partir, attendu les vents con-
 traires*, he cannot sail on account of contrary winds.

EXERCISE.

Is there any man that has never been softened by tears
 y avoir aucun sub-1 fléchir art.
 or disarmed by submission? Through the precautions which
 ni désarmer art. que
 we took we avoided the rocks of that dangerous coast. Owing
 ind-3 ind-3 écueil m. pl. 2 côte f. 1
 to the bad state of my father's health, I shall not travel this
 2 1 voyager
 year.
 année f.

156. The prepositions *à, de, en* are so commonly used
 in French, that they deserve particular attention.

À is generally used to express several relations, *destina-
 tion, tendency, place, time, situation*, etc. being often a sub-
 stitute for various other prepositions, *Ex.*—destination —*to*:
aller à Londres, to go to London.—Tendency —*to, toward*:
courir à sa perte, to hasten to one's ruin.—Aim —*to, for*:
aspirer à la gloire, to aspire to glory.—Residence —*at, in*:
être à Rome, to be at Rome.—Time —*at*: *à midi*, at twelve
 o'clock.—Concern —*on*: *à ce sujet*, on this subject.—Man-
 ner —*with*: *supplier à mains jointes*, to intreat earnestly.—
 Means —*with*: *peindre à l'huile*, to paint in, or with oil; *bas*
à trois fils, three thread-stockings, that is, with three threads.
 —Situation —*at, with*: *être à son aise*, to be at ease.—Pur-
 pose —*for*: *une table à manger*, a dining table.—Suitable-

ness—*for, to*: *homme à réussir*, a man likely to succeed:—*desert, crime à ne pas pardonner*, a crime not to be forgiven, etc.

EXERCISE.

Fathers! give good counsels, and still better examples
de encore 3 pr. meilleur 1 2
 to your children. A good minister only aims at the glory of
ne aspirer que à

serving his country well. When we were in the country we de-
inf-1 2 pays 3 1 ind-2 à campagne f. con-
 vated the morning study, we walked at noon
sacrer ind-2 matinée f. art. se promener ind-2 midi
 and, at three or four o'clock, we went a hunting, or fishing.
heure ind-2 art. chasse f. pr art. pêche f.

Michel Angelo has painted (a great deal) in fresco. It is a
Michel Ange beaucoup art. fresque f. ce

bed with ivory posts, and mahogany feet. That man with his
lit m. colonne d'ivoire pr. pied d'acajou

gloomy looks and surly behaviour, seems
sombre 2 regard m. 1 art brusque . 2 maintien m. 1 pr. art. ne semble

fit only to serve as a scarecrow.
*propre que de * épouvantail.*

DE is generally used to express *separation, extraction, possession, appurtenance, cause, shift, result*, etc. and supplies the place of several prepositions, as—*from*: *je viens de France*, I come from France; *d'un bout à l'autre*, from one end to the other.—*Of*: *le palais du roi*, the palace of the king; *les facultés de l'ame*, the faculties of the soul; *un homme d'esprit*, a man of talent. In a partitive sense—*of*: *moitié de, quart de*, etc. the half of, the fourth of, etc.: it is used for PAR—*by*: *il est aimé de tout le monde*, he is beloved by every body; *for—through, or by*, etc.: *mourir de faim, de soif*, to die of hunger, of thirst: *on, upon, with*: *vivre de fruits*, to live upon fruit.—*On account of, or for*: *sauter de joie*, to leap for joy.

EXERCISE.

I come from London, where I have spent a week very agreeably.
où passé huit jours

From one end of the horizon to the other, the sky was covered
bout m. m. ciel m. ind-2

with thick black clouds. The marble of Paros is not
épais 2 et noir 3 nuage m. pl. 1.

finer than that which we get from Carrara. Montaigne, *Mad. de*
 72 *qui nous vient Carrara.*
 Sévigné, and la Fontaine, were writers of truly original go-
 ind-2 *de art. écrivain un 2 3 1*
 nius. One half of the terrestrial globe is covered with water
moitié f. terrestre 2 globe m. 1
 and above a (third part) of the rest is uninhabited, either through
plus de tiers m. inhabité ou par
 extreme heat, or through excessive cold. In that happy
un 2 chaleur f. 1 un = 2 froid m. 1.
 retreat, we lived on the milk of our flocks, and the delicious
asile m. ind-2 brebis pr. 2
 fruits of our orchards.
 1 *verger m pl.*

EN serves to mark the relations of time, place, situation,
 etc. and is variously expressed, as *c'était en hiver*, it was
 during winter; *être en Angleterre*, to be in England; *aller*
en Italie, to go into Italy; *elle est en bonne santé*, she is in
 good health; *il vaut mieux être en paix, qu'en guerre*, it is
 better to be at peace than at war; *il l'a fait en haine de*
lui, he did it out of hatred to him, etc.

EXERCISE.

He had for a (long while) lived in France; the troubles
 3 * *depuis 1 * long-temps 2 vivre ind-2*
 which agitated that fine kingdom obliged him to retire to Swit-
 ind-4 *royaume m. ind-4 de se retirer Suisse*
 zerland, whence he soon after went to Italy. We were
d'où 3 1 2 se rendre ind-4 ind-2
 at peace, and enjoyed all its blessings, when ambi-
 pron. *goûter ind-2 en art. charme m. art.*
 tion kindled again the flames of war, and forced us to put
rallumer ind-3 feu s. art. ind-3 de mettre
 our frontiers in a state of defence. The savage is almost con-
*frontière f. pl. * presque tou-*
 tially at war; he cannot remain at rest. He has acted, on
jours pouvoir en repos dans
 this occasion, like a great man.
en

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE ADVERB.

157. The *adverbe* is a word which is generally placed
 after the verb to express *where*, *when*, and *how* the action

is or was done. *Vous chantez bien*, you sing well ; *il partira demain*, he will set out to-morrow, etc. It is often also joined to an adjective, coupled with *être* ; *il est vraiment digne d'amitié*, he is truly deserving of friendship.

REMARK. There are adjectives which are sometimes used as adverbs, as, *il chante juste*, he sings right ; *elle chante faux*, she sings out of tune ; *ils ne voient pas clair*, they do not see clear ; *cette fleur sent bon*, this flower has a pleasant smell, etc. The adjectives, *juste*, *faux*, *clair* and *bon*, here supply the place of adverbs.

Adverbs are of different kinds.

The most numerous are those which express manner, and are formed from adjectives, in the following manner.

158. When the adjective ends, in the masculine, with a vowel, the adverb is formed by adding *ment* : as, *modestement*, modestly ; *poliment*, politely ; *ingénuement*, ingenuously, etc.

EXCEPTIONS. *Impuni* makes *impunément*, and *traître*, *traîtreusement*.

The following six take *é* close before *-ment*, instead of the *e* mute which is in the adjective.

aveuglement	blindly	conformément	conformably
commodément	commodiously	énormément	enormously
incommodément	incommodiously	opiniâtrément	obstinately

159. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment* ; as, *grand*, *grandement*, greatly ; *franc*, *franchement*, frankly ; *naïf*, *naïvement*, artlessly, etc.

Observe that the adverbs,

follement	foolishly	bellement	soberly
mollement	effeminately	nouvellement	newly

Are to be considered as coming from the adjectives *fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*, and accordingly belong to the foregoing rule.

EXCEPTIONS. *Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily.

The following eighth adverbs,

communément	commonly	importunément	importunately
confusément	confusedly	obscurément	obscurely
diffusément	diffusedly	précisément	precisely
expressément	expressly	profondément	deeply

take before *ment* the *é* close instead of the *e* mute, which is in the feminine of the adjectives, from which they are derived.

REM. The six following adverbs are not derived from adjectives.

comment	how	profusément	lavishly
incessamment	presently	nuitamment	by night
notamment	especially	sciemment	knowingly

Adjectives ending in *ant*, *ent*, form their adverbs by changing them into *-ment*, as *consta-nt*, *consta-ment*, constantly; *éloque-nt*, *éloque-ment*. Except *lent* and *présent*, the only two of this class, that follow the 159th rule, and make *lentement*, *présentement*.

160. Most adverbs denoting manner, and a few others, have the three degrees of comparison, as *profondément*, *aussi*, *plus*, or *moins profondément*, *for bien*, or *très-profondément*, and *le plus profondément*.

The following degrees of comparison are irregular.

Positive.	Comparative	Superlative.
bien <i>well</i>	mieux <i>better</i>	le mieux <i>the best</i>
mal <i>bad</i>	pis <i>worse</i>	le pis <i>the worst</i>
peu <i>little</i>	moins <i>less</i>	le moins <i>the least</i>

EXERCISE.

Bourdaloue and Masillon have both spoken very eloquently
l'un et l'autre
 on evangelical truths; but the former has principally (pro-
évangelique 2 art. 1 *se pro-*
 posed to himself) to convince the mind; the latter has generally
poser ind-4 *de convaincre*
 had in view to touch the heart. Several of la Bruyère's cha-
en vue de art. 2 1
 racters are as finely drawn as they are delicately expressed. Buf-
finement tracé * *
 fon is one of the best writers of the last century; he thinks deeply,
 2 *siècle m. 1.*
 describes forcibly, and expresses himself (with dignity). Cor-
fortement, *noblement*
 neille and Racine are the two best French tragic poets; the pieces
tragique 2 1
 of the former are strongly but incorrectly written; those of the lat-
 2 3 1
 ter are more regularly beautiful, more purely expressed, and more
beau
 delicately conceived.
pensé

161. There are likewise various other sorts of adverbs :

Of	Affirmation, as	<i>certainly</i> ; <i>oui</i> , yes.
	Consent,	.. <i>soit</i> . be it so ; <i>volontiers</i> , willingly.
	Doubt,	.. <i>peut-être que</i> , perhaps.
	Denial,	.. <i>non ne, ne-pas, ne-point</i> , no, not.
	Order, or Rank.	.. <i>premièrement</i> , first : <i>secondement</i> , 2dly, etc. .. <i>D'abord</i> , at first ; <i>ensuite, après</i> , afterwards, .. <i>Avant, auparavant</i> , before.

EXERCISE.

Certainly, either I am mistaken, or the business passed (in
ou se tromper se passer ind-4

that manner). Do you think that he listens willingly to this pro-
ainsi penser écouter *

posal ? Have you ever read in Racine the famous scene of *Phœdra's*
f. *Phèdre* 2

delirium ? Yes, I have read it, and I own it is one of the
art. *délire* m. 1 *lue la* *avouer que ce*

finest of the French theatre. Perhaps you will discover, on a se-
2 m. 1 dans

perusal of la Fontaine's fables, beauties which you
lecture f. 2 art. 1 de art. f. pl. que

have not perceived at first Will you have some ? No. Will
aperçues d'abord 2 1 * en 1 3

you not have some ? The man who (is willing) to do good is
4 15 * en 2 vouloir ** art. bien m.

not stopped by any obstacle. I will pay him what I owe,
arrêté aucun lui ce que lui

but not all at once.
non pas à art. fois f.

162. Of—place, or distance,

Où, where ; *ici*, here ; *là*, there.

Deçà, on this side ; *de là*, on that side ; *partout*, every
where.

Près, proche, near ; *nigh* ; *loin*, far, etc.

EXERCISE.

We ought first to avoid doing evil ; afterwards we ought
falloir ind-1 * de inf-1 art. *

to do good. Read books of instruction first, and afterwards
* art. 1 art. 3 4 2

you may proceed to those of entertainment. If you will (go
* passer ind-7 72 agrément vouloir s'en

away), settle first what is to be done. The painter had
aller régler auparavant ce que falloir ** inf-1

(brought together) in the same picture, several different objects :
rassembler un tableau 2 1

here, a troop of Bacchantes; there, a troop of young people; here,
Bacchante gens

a sacrifice; there, a disputation of philosophers. Sesostris carried
dispute pousser

his conquests farther than Alexander did afterwards. Call
ind-4 conquête ne ind-4 depuis passer

upon your cousin; he lives near here. I cannot see that, if I
chez loger 2 ici 1 savoir cond-1

am not near it. When he knew where he was, he be-
*ind-1 auprès * quand savoir ind-3 ind-2 com-*

gan to fear the consequence of his imprudence. Contem-
mencer ind-3 à suite

plate (at a distance) lofty mountains, if you wish to behold
*de loin art. haut f. vouloir * découvrir*

prospects ever varied and ever new.
de art. st. m.

263. Some express the present, as, *maintenant*, now; *à présent*, at present; *actuellement*, this moment, etc.

—the past, as, *hier*, yesterday; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly, etc.

—the future, as, *demain*, to-morrow, *après-demain*, the day after to-morrow, etc.

—indeterminate time, as, *souvent*, often; *d'ordinaire*, generally; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *malin*, early; *tôt*; soon; *tard*, late, etc.

EXERCISE.

I have finished the work you prescribed me; what do you
achever que ordonner ind-6 que

wish me to do now? Formerly, education was neglected,
*vouloir que je * subj-1*

it is now (very much) attended to; it is (to be hoped) that
*on * 4 beaucoup 3 s'occuper 2 en 1 falloir espérer*

new views will be adopted soon. They grieved
on de 3 4 adopter ind-7 1 2 on s'affliger ind-8

(at it) yesterday; now, they laugh (at it); to-morrow, it will
*en 1 aujourd'hui rire 2 en 1 on 2 **

no longer (be thought) of. It is one of those accidents which
ne plus 3 penser ind-7 2 y 1 c'est

it is sometimes impossible to avoid. The evening air incommodes
de sercin m. ind-4

me (very much); I shall not (in future) walk so late. Rude
désormais se promener mal-

ent objects :

1
ung people ; here,
gens

Sesostris carried
pousser

afterwards. Call
depuis passer

ot see that, if I
nd-1

he was, he be-
ind-2 com-

dence. Contem-

wish to behold
ouloir * découvrir

enant, now ; à
nt, etc.

r, the day be-

ès-demain, the

; d'ordinaire,
e, early ; tôt ;

; what do you
que

n was neglected,

be hoped) that
espérer

grieved
s'affliger ind-8

o-morrow, it will
on 2 *

accidents which

air incommoded
ind-4

so late. Rude
mal-

and coarse criticism generally (does greater injury)
honnête 2 grossier 3 un f. 1. nuire plus

to the person who indulges himself in it, than to him who is
se permettre 2 * la 1 celle 2

the object (of it.)

3 en 1

164. Some express quantity ; as, *peu*, little, *assez*,
enough ; *trop*, too much ; *beaucoup*, much ; very much ;
tant, so much, etc. See rule 105.

165. Others express comparison ; as, *plus*, more ; *moins*,
less ; *aussi*, also ; *autant*, as much, etc.

EXERCISE.

There are many people who have pretensions ; but very few
y avoir beaucoup de * * à

who have such as are well founded. To embellish a subject
en sub-1 * * * * *de fondé f. pl.* * 2 3

too much, frequently betrays a want of judgment and taste. One
1 souvent être faute

very often experiences disgust in the midst of the most riotous
trouver art. ennui à bruyant 2

pleasures. She is a giddy and thoughtless woman, who speaks
1 ce léger 2 inconséquent 2 1

much and reflects little. She has so much kindness in her, that it
réfléchir de bonté * *

is impossible not to love her. These stuffs are beautiful ; conse-
de ne pas étoffe f. aussi

quently are dear. This book has merit ; but there are
elles coûter cher. du *y en avoir*

others as good. If he has done that, I can do (as much). She
* de en autant

is six years younger than her brother. Nobody is more inte-
avoir de moins ne

rested than you are (in the success) of the affair. You do
* à ce que 1 réussir subj-13 * 2

not offer enough for this garden ; give something more. The more
offrir de 1

ignorant we are, the less we (believe ourselves, so.
4 on 23 * croire l'être

CHAPTER VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

166. The conjunction is a word which serves to connect words or sentences, as, *Il pleure et rit en même temps*, he cries and laughs at the same time; the word *et* unites the first sentence, *il pleure*, with the second, *il rit*. Likewise in *Pierre et Paul rient*, Peter and Paul laugh; the word *et* unites these two sentences into one, *Pierre rit* and *Paul rit*.

167. There are different kinds of conjunctions.

Conjunctions are of different kinds, and serve to different purposes.

1st. To unite two sentences or two words, the same affirmation, or under the same negation, *et* is used for the affirmation, and *ni*, neither, nor, for the negation.

2ndly. To denote an alternative, or distinction, *ou* either, or; *soit que*, whether, or; *tantôt*, sometimes, etc.

3rdly. To restrict an idea; *sinon*, but, except; *quoique*, *encore que*, though, although; *à moins que*, unless, till.

EXERCISE.

Gold *and* silver are metals less useful than iron. To
 art. art. de art. art.
 listen with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish
 * *médisant* * *lui c'est * réchauffer*
 the serpent who stings, that he may sting more effectually. I
piquer afin que *plus sûrement.*
 like neither flatterers nor the wicked, Those who have never
ne flateur pl.
 suffered, know nothing; they know neither good nor
savoir ne connaître art. bien pl.
 evil. You may choose either a happy mediocrity, or a
 art. mal pl. *avoir à choisir de f. de*
 sphere more elevated, but exposed to many dangers. He is an
f. bien de art. ce
 inconsistent man; he is sometimes of one opinion, and sometimes
inconséquent 2 1 tantôt avis
 of another. I have (nothing more) to say to you, only that I
ne autre choose sinon que
 will have it so. I shall not yet pass to the perusal of the
*vouloir 2 * le 1 * encore lecture f.*
 authors of the second class, unless you advise me to it.
*ordre m. ne conseiller sub-1 **

4thly. To express conviction, *mais*, but; *cependant*, yet nevertheless; *néanmoins*, for all that, however; *pourtant*, however, though; *toutefois*, *bien que*, although.

5thly. To express a condition; *si*, if; *sinon que*, except that: *pourvu que*, save that, *à condition que*, on condition that.

To express consent; *à la vérité*, indeed; *à la bonne heure*, very well.

7thly. To explain: *savoir*, *c'est-à-dire*, viz. that is to say; *comme*, as.

EXERCISE.

The serpent bites; it is only a bite; but from this bite
 venom communicates itself to the whole body; the slanderer
 speaks; it is but a word; but this word resounds every
 where. (That is) certainly a superb picture; nevertheless, there
 is some incorrectness in the design. Although Homer, according
 to Horace, slumbers (at times), he is nevertheless the
 first of all poets. You will succeed, provided you act with
 vigour. We have within us two faculties seldom united, viz:
 imagination and judgment.

8thly. To express relation, or parity; *comme*, as; *ainsi*, thus, so: *de même*, as, just as; *ainsi que*, as; *autant que*, as much as; *si que*, as, etc.

9thly. To express augmentation, *d'ailleurs*, besides, furthermore.

For diminution, *au moins*, *du moins*, *pour le moins*, at least.

10thly. To express the cause, or the reason of a thing; *car*, for; *comme*, as; *parce que*, because; *puisque*, since; *pour que*, that, in order that, etc.

EXERCISE.

The most beautiful flowers last but a moment: thus, human
 ne durer que

life passes away. The (greatest part) of mankind have, like
 art. 3 1 * *plupart f.* art. *homme pl.*
 plants, hidden qualities, which chance discovers.
 art. *caché 2 de art. propriété f. 1* art. *hasard faire découvrir.*
 Mad. de Sévigné's letters are models of elegance, simpli-
 2 art. f. 1 *de art.* pr.
 city, and taste; besides, they are replete with interesting anecdotes.
 pr. *plein de 2.* f. 1.
 Nothing is more entertaining than history; besides, nothing is
 * *de amusant art.* *
 more instructive. Circumstances make us known to others,
 art. *occasion pl. faire connaître*
 and still more to ourselves. I shall always advise you to take
encore *conseiller de*
 the ancients as your guide, at least, leave but
*pour ** *ne s'écarter que rarement de.*
 seldom the way which they have traced for you. We must, at
*route f. que tracée ** ** falloir,*
 least, know the general principles of a language, before (we take
 2 1 *langue f. de se*
 upon ourselves) to teach it. Certain people hate grandeur,
*mêler de * enseigner f. gens art.*
 because it lowers and humiliates them, and makes
les rabaisser pron. que elle 2
 them feel the privation of the advantages which they love.
leur 1 bien pl.

11thly. To draw a conclusion or inference; *or*, now; *donc*, then; *par conséquent*, consequently; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore.

12thly. To express a circumstance; *quand*, *lorsque*, when; *pendant que*, *tandis que*, etc. whilst, while; *tant que*, as long as; *depuis que*, ever since; *avant que*, before; *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *d'abord que*, as soon as; *enfin*, in fine, finally, to conclude, etc.

13thly. To express a transition; *car*, for; *en effet*, indeed, in effect; *au reste*, besides, otherwise; *à propos*, now I think of it; *après tout*, after all.

EXERCISE.

We ought to love what is amiable; now, virtue is ami-
 * *falloir ind-1 ** *ce qui art.*
 able; therefore we ought to love virtue. We ought to practise
 * * art. * *falloir **
 what the gospel commands us; now it commands us, not only
que évangile m. 2 1 non

to forgive our enemies, but also to love them. Despréaux was
de pardonner à encore de

extremely particular in not coming late, when he was
de la plus grande exactitude inf-1 trop ind-2
invited to dinner; he said that all the faults of those who (keep
ind-2 défaut se

others waiting) present themselves to those who wait for them.
faire attendre attendre *

The pride which possesses us, visible as it is, escapes our eyes.
posséder tout que à

while it manifests itself to the eyes of the public, and displeases
choquer

every one. After we had examined that singular effect, we
art. esprit pl. ind-5 2 1

(inquired into) its causes. We had hardly done, when he came
rechercher ind-3 en art. ind-2 finir que entrer

in. None but an Englishman can (be a judge of) Shak-
* il n'y a que qui subj-1 juger de

peare: for, what foreigner is sufficiently versed in the English

language to discover the sublime beauties of that author?
langue f. pour

168. The conjunction *que* is always placed between two ideas, and serves to connect them, so as to form of the two one preposition, as *je crois que vous vous trompez*, I think you are deceived. The conjugation *that* is almost always understood in English, whereas *que* is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the preposition. *Je crois que vous vous trompez et que vous ne réussirez pas*, I think you are mistaken, and that you will not succeed.

The frequent use of *que*, under several nouns, and the government of conjunctions in general, form an important chapter of the Syntax, No. 388, which must be read attentively.

EXERCISE.

(As long as I live), this image will be before my eyes
tout ma vie —f. peint

and if ever the gods permit me to reign, I shall not forget
faire *

after so terrible an example, *that* a king (is not worthy) to go-
n'est digne de com-

vern (nor) happy in his power (but in proportion as) he
mander et n'est puissance f. qu'autant que

subjects it to reason. I am very glad to see that you do not
soumettre art. *de* *
 love flattery, and that one (runs no risk) in speaking to you with
 art. *ne hasarder rien à* inf-l *
 sincerity.

CHAPTER IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

169. Interjections are words which serve to express the sudden emotion of the soul. The only point to be attended to is not to place them between words which custom has made inseparable. There are interjections for every feeling, or passion, viz :—

Of {	<i>pain</i>	ahi ! aie ! ouf ! ah !
	<i>grief</i>	hélas ! mon Dieu, etc.
	<i>fear</i>	ha ! hé !
	<i>joy</i>	ah ! bon, bon ! o !
	<i>aversion</i>	f ! fi donc ! oh, oh !
	<i>disgust</i>	pouah, pouah !
	<i>indignation</i>	foin de
	<i>imprecation</i>	peste de, la peste de
	<i>disbelief</i>	chansons, tarare
	<i>surprise</i>	ouais
	<i>astonishment</i>	oh ! bon Dieu ! miséricorde ! peste !
	<i>warning</i>	gare ! hem ! holà, ho !
	<i>checking</i>	tout beau ! holà.
	<i>encouraging</i>	alerte ! allons ! ça, courage !
	<i>applauding</i>	bravo, vivat !
	<i>encoring</i>	bis, bis
	<i>calling</i>	hola ! ho ! hem !
	<i>derision</i>	oh ! eh ! zest ! oh ! oh ! oh !
	<i>silence</i>	chut ! paix ! st.

hr you do not
ing to you with
l

to express the
to be attended
h custom has
every feeling,

pesto !

PART II.

SYNTAX,

OR

GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION

OF

WORDS IN FRENCH.

CHAPTER I.

§ I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

The substantive has already been considered as to its individual nature, that is to say, its gender and number ; its functions in a sentence are now to be considered.

The noun is either the subject of the verb, or the governing word ; or it is governed by the verb, or what is called the regimen.

170. EXPLANATION OF THE TERMS REGIMEN DIRECT, REGIMEN INDIRECT, OR CASES.

In *le père aime ses enfants*, the father loves his children ; *le père* is the subject, or governing word, or nominative case : and *enfants* is the governed word, or regimen, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called a direct case, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent au père*, the children obey to the father ; *les enfants* is the subject, and *au père*, is the governed noun or regimen ; and the regimen is called indirect because it has a preposition (*à*) before it. It is also called the dative case.

In *le père envoie un présent à ses enfants*, the father sends presents to his children; *les enfants reçoivent une lettre de leur père*, the children receive a letter from their father, *le père*, *les enfants*, are subjects, *un présent*, *une lettre* are objects, or accusative or direct cases, *à ses enfants*, *de leur père* are indirect cases because governed by a preposition, the former being what is called the dative, and the latter, the ablative case.

In the construction of a sentence two things are to be considered: 1st. ORDER, or arrangement. 2nd. GOVERNMENT, or cases.

OF ORDER.

171. Order is invariable, 1st. the subject, whether the verb be affirmative or interrogative.

le père aime

le père aime-t-il ?

le père n'aime pas

le père n'aime-t-il pas

2ndly. The verb; 3rdly, the direct case or object; 4thly, the indirect case, or dative, or genitive or ablative.

It need hardly be told that if there is not a direct case, the indirect comes next to the verb, *les enfants obéissent au père*.

A deviation from this order or arrangement is called an INVERSION. See *Inversion*.

EXERCISE.

My mother received two letters this morning, which (have
recevoir ind-4 *faire*

given) her * much pain.
ind-4 2 lui 1 bien de la peine

Did not the soldiers resist the
résister à ind 4

commands of their officers?

Send this game to Mr. L. Have
Envoyer

you not thought of your sisters? My uncle (has just) bought a
penser à venir de †

beautiful house in Paris. Has the nurse maid given (any thing to
à bonne à mang, r

* Personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *leur*, in the dative case, are placed before the verb, as is explained in the article *Pronoun Personal* 61. What is said here, must, in fact, be understood solely of nouns substantives.

† See examples on Difficulties, Chapter XIX, to which this figure refers. The learner must bear in mind that the figures which he will occasionally meet with in the Exercises refer to the general series of rules.

eat) to these poor children? Will not James send these
 *
 books to his cousin when he has read them?
 answer ind-7

GOVERNMENT OR CASES.

172. By government, is meant the case in which a noun is to be put after the verb, that is, whether it will be direct or accusative, indirect or dative, genitive or ablative, or, to speak more plainly, whether that noun will be preceded by *à* or *de*.

173. DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE TWO LANGUAGES AS TO THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To those who are acquainted with the Latin language, this will present little or no difficulty, accustomed as they are to the proper distinction of cases; but to those who are not, and to female learners principally, the distinction is not obviously clear. As in learning the French language, much of the task consists in turning English into French; and also, as, when endeavouring to speak, people first think in English, and then translate, a very natural propensity leads them to translate literally, thereby expressing themselves in a way little in accordance with the peculiar construction of the French language. We cannot devise a more efficacious method to guard them from such erroneous proceeding, than by showing the different cases used in the one or the other language, after the corresponding verb.

EXAMPLES.

penser à une chose	to think of a thing
obéir à la loi	to obey the law
dépendre de son père	to be dependant on one's father
mourir de peur	to die with fear
répondre à une question	to answer a question
jouir de sa fortune	to enjoy one's fortune.
se réjouir d'une chose	to rejoice at a thing
plaire à ses amis	to please one's friends.
se ressouvenir d'un accident	to remember an accident
jouer du violon	to play on the violin
écouter un avis	to listen to an advice

The list of the instances in which the two languages differ, in respect to the case of the governed words, might easily be extended to several pages, but the few examples here given, must be sufficient to awake the attention and carefulness of

the learner, and to make him sensible of the necessity of mastering this point.

A few more remarks may tend to impress still deeper in his mind the necessity of attending to it.

174. NECESSITY OF ATTENDING TO THE GOVERNMENT,
WITH REGARD TO THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Sometimes, and even frequently, verbs govern a relative pronoun representing some noun antecedently expressed, and such pronoun must be put in the proper case, according to the preposition which would be placed before the noun. For instance, to translate "such is the law *which* you have not obeyed," *telle est la loi QUE vous n'avez pas obéi*, would be wrong, it must be *à LAQUELLE*, because we have seen that *obéir* requires the dative, or the preposition *à*. Again, to say *je vous donne de bons avis AUXQUELS vous n'écoutez pas*, would be literal and wrong, because, as we have seen also, *écouter* is active in French, that is, requires no preposition.

EXERCISE.

I repent my idleness. Do you want this pen? I was
se repentir de Avoir besoin de penser
thinking of my poor brother. He did not discharge his duty
à ind-2 *s'acquitter de, ind-4* *devoir m.*
to my satisfaction. I advise you to go and change your shoes.
conseiller 2^e *d'aller* * *changer de* *
Have we not mistaken the road? We are very grateful for your
se tromper de ind-4 * *être reconnaissant de*
kindness. You have gone too near the river. Are you not afraid
s'approcher de ind-4 *craindre*
of that cruel man? We did not expect such an answer. If you
* *2* *1* *s'attendre à ind-2* *2* *1* *3*
come to-night we will agree about terms. I am not fond of
ce soir *convenir de nos condition* *aimer* *
music. I do not know why, but your brother left the
art. *savoir* *sortir de ind-3*
room very abruptly. Do not mind his threats.*
faire attention à

* The same difficulty occurs with regard to the preposition used before the infinitive in French. See infinitive, 394, 397.

175. KING'S PALACE, ETC. ETC.

This form of the genitive case, or of the casemarking possession, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, as if it were *the palace of the king, le palais du roi.*

176. OF COMPOUND WORDS.

SILK-STOCKINGS, DINING-ROOM, ETC. ETC.

These are a sort of compound word of which the order is likewise inverted in French. *Bas de soie, salle à manger.*

Here again also, two different prepositions are used (*à, de*) the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

De is used when meaning, composed of coming from, of the, belonging to, can be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Silk stockings, i.e. stocking made of silk.</i>	<i>Bas de soie.</i>
<i>Burgundy wine, i.e. wine coming from Burgundy.</i>	<i>Vin de Bourgogne.</i>
<i>Chambermaid, i.e. maid of the chamber.</i>	<i>Femme de chambre</i>
<i>Back door, i.e. the door of the back of the house.</i>	<i>Porte de derrière</i>
<i>Garden seat, i.e. seat belonging to the garden.</i>	<i>Banc du jardin.</i>

À is used when for the purpose of, by means of, with, may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>moulin à vent</i>	<i>wind-mill i.e. mill going by wind</i>
<i>moulin à papier</i>	<i>paper-mill i.e. mill for the purpose of making paper</i>
<i>filles aux yeux bleus</i>	<i>blue eyed girl i.e. girl with blue eyes.</i>

EXERCISE.

<i>My father's house.</i>	<i>The mayor's authority.</i>	<i>Shall you go to</i>
<i>père maison</i>	<i>maire</i>	<i>= aller</i>
<i>Mrs. B's party?</i>	<i>He has bought a gold box.</i>	<i>Go out at the</i>
<i>soirée f.</i>	<i>acheté or boîte f.</i>	<i>sortir par</i>
<i>front door.</i>	<i>What is that long eared animal?</i>	<i>Send</i>
<i>devant porte</i>	<i>Qu'est-ce que c'est que</i>	<i>longues oreilles—</i>
<i>me the letter box.</i>	<i>Where is the oil bottle?</i>	<i>Give me a wine glass,</i>
	<i>huile</i>	<i>verre</i>
<i>and a tea spoon.</i>	<i>Did you observe</i>	<i>that man with the</i>
<i>thé cuiller f.</i>	<i>remarquer</i>	<i>le</i>

long cloak ? My sister has given me a penknife with an ivory
 2 1 canif * ivoire
 handle. They have lately discovered a copper mine on his es-
 manche m. or venir de découvrir cuivre —
 tate. Where is the milk jug ? Is this the hay market ?
 terre f. lait pot foin marché

CHAPTER II.

OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, A, AN.

1. The article *a, an*, used in English before national and professional names, in explanatory sentences, is not rendered in French.*

EXAMPLES.

I am a Frenchman	<i>je suis Français</i>
he is a grocer	<i>il est épicier</i>
his father was a barrister	<i>son père était avocat</i>
the Duke of York, a prince of the royal blood	<i>le Duc d'York, prince du sang royal</i>
we went to Caen, a large town of Normandy	<i>nous allâmes à Caen ville considé- rable de Normandie</i>

2 But it is expressed after *c'est*, and also when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is followed by a relative pronoun or some other restrictive circumstance.

EXAMPLES.

he is an officer	<i>c'est un officier</i>
I am a Frenchman of an illus- trious family	<i>je suis un Français d'une illustre famille</i>
I am an unfortunate prince	<i>je suis un prince infortuné</i>

3. The article indefinite is also omitted in French after *quel, quelle*, in admirative sentences, and before titles of books.

EXAMPLES.

quelle beauté !	<i>what a beauty !</i>
histoire de France	<i>history of France</i>
il dépense beaucoup d'argent,	<i>he spends much money, a thing</i>
chose qui déplaît à son père	<i>which displeased his father</i>
l'excellent homme que votre frère	<i>what an excellent man your bro- ther is.</i>
la belle ville que Londres	<i>what a fine city London is.</i>

* See personal pronouns, No. 237.

EXERCISE.

I am a Frenchman and a merchant; after having (been at) the
négociant inf-1 *parcours*
 most famous (trading towns) in the Levant, my commercial con-
 = *échelle* f. pl. *de* — m. *les affaires de mon*
 cerns have brought me here. I am an unhappy Frenchman
commerce *conduire*
 who, a striking example of the vicissitudes of fortune,
 * *mémorable* 2 1 art.
 seek an asylum where I may end my days in peace. He was a
chercher asile m. *puisse finir* Ce
 man of uncommon probity and of tried virtue; (as a)
un rare 2 f. 1 *un éprouvé* 2 1 *pour*
 reward for the services he had rendered to the church
le récompenser de *que* ind-2 m. pl. *église*
 and state, the king has made him a bishop. Neoptolemus
pr. art. *évêque* *Néoptolème*
 had hardly told me that he was a Greek, when I (cried out)
eut à peine dit *que* *s'écrier* ind-3
 O! enchanting words, after so many years of silence and
doux parole f. pl. *de*
 unceasing pain, O my son, what misfortune, what storm,
sans consolation 2 pr. 1 *malheur* m. *tempête*
 or rather, what propitious wind has brought you hither to end
 f. *plutôt* *favorable* 2 1 *conduire* ind-4 *pour*
 my woes? He replied, I am of the Island of Scyros, I
mal m. pl. *répondre* ind-3 *île*
 am returning thither; (I am said) (to be) the son of Achilles.
retourner ind-1 *y* *on dit* *que* ind-1
 What a noise you make! What a mistake! A letter to Lord L.
récit
 We read the account of his death, an event full of interest. He
 has not yet returned, a most unaccountable thing. He is modest
être *revenir* *fort extraordinaire* 2 chose 1
 a rare quality among poets. He is a very rich man.
 2 1 *chez les* *

178. The English make use of *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and purchase, as: *wheat is sold for a crown a bushel; butter sells for sixpence a pound; wine sold yesterday for forty crowns a hogshead, it is more than a groat a bottle.* The French make use of the article *le, la*, as: *le blé se vend un écu le boisseau; le beurre se vend six sous la livre; le vin se vendit hier quarante écus le muid, c'est plus de quatre sous la bouteille.*

179. When speaking of *time*, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the preposition *par*, as *so much a week*, *tant par semaine*. A head is also rendered *par tête*, but *a piece* is rendered by *la piece*; a man, *par homme* or *chacun*.

EXERCISE.

Corn sells for eight shillings a bushel, veal and
 art. blé m. se vendre * boisseau art. veau art.
 mutton cost ten pence a pound. This lace is sold at half a guinea
 mouton coûter livre f. se vendre* 2 1 3
 an ell. The best French wines are sold at ten shillings per
 de France 2 1 se vendre *
 bottle. I see him twice a year. How much do you give
 voir 2 1 deux fois combien donner 2
 him a day. She comes twice a week. We had an excellent
 lui 1 faire ind-4
 dinner at five shillings a head. What beautiful peaches, how much
 do they cost a piece ? pêche f.

OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

180. The definite article is used in French, (*but omitted in English*) before substantives spoken of in a general sense ; that is before *names of species, virtues, passions, sciences, metals, etc., etc.*, taken in the abstract.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme se repaît trop souvent man too often feeds on vain fancies.
 de chimères
 l'or est un métal précieux gold is a precious metal
 évitons la paresse let us avoid idleness

Before nouns specified by an adjective or some particular and individual circumstance.

EXAMPLES.

les hommes à imagination sont men of imagination are ever un-
 toujours malheureux happy
 l'homme dont vous parlez est the man of whom you speak is well
 instruit informed
 voici la maison de mon père this is my father's house

181. It is also used before adjectives used substantively.

EXAMPLES.

le riche ne donne pas toujours rich men do not always give
 j'aime le vert I am fond of green

After *tout* meaning *every*.

EXAMPLES.

tout le monde le voit every body sees it
 toute la ville était en l'air the whole town was in a bustle

EXERCISE.

1. The moment *elegance*, the most visible image of fine *taste*, appears, it is universally admired: *men* differ respecting the other constituent parts of * *beauty*, but they all unite without hesitation in acknowledging the power of *elegance*.

2. *Men of superior genius* 2, while 1 they * see 3 the rest of mankind painfully * struggling to comprehend obvious 2 truths 1, penetrate themselves * through * the most remote 2 consequences 1, like lightning through a track that cannot be measured.

3. *The man who lives* under an habitual 2 sense 1 of the divine 2 presence 1, preserves a perpetual cheerfulness of temper, and enjoys every moment, the satisfaction of thinking himself * in company with the dearest and best of friends.

4. Come and show me your sister's room for I cannot find it.

5. Yellow does not suit you at all.

6. When he returned, he found the whole school in an uproar.

(1.) The moment, *du moment que*; fine, *délicat*; appears, *se montrer*; is, *elle est*; respecting, *sur*; constituent, (*which constitute*); hesitation, *hésiter*; in, *pour*.

(2.) While, *tandis que*; struggling, *se tourmenter*; obvious, *qui s'offrent*; *d'elle-mêmes*; penetrate, *ils pénètrent en un instant*; lightning, *foudre, f.*; through, *traverse*; track, *espace*; that, *qu'on*; be measured, *mesurer*.

(3.) Under, *dans*; sense, *conviction*; preserves, *conserver*; perpetual, *constant*; cheerfulness, *gaieté*; temper, *caractère*; enjoys, *jouir de*; of thinking, *se croire*; in, *dans*; art.; with, *de*.

(4.) Come and show, *venir montrer*; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

(5.) Yellow, *jaune*; to suit, *convenir*; at all, *du tout*.

(6.) To return, *revenir*, ind-3; to find, *trouver*, ind-3; in an uproar, *dans la confusion*.

182. The article is put before proper names of countries, provinces, islands, regions, rivers, winds, and mountains.*

* In speaking of *monts*, we say: *le Parnasse*, or *le Mont Parnasse*; *le Vésuve*, or *le Mont Vésuve*; *l'Etna*, or *le Mont Etna*; *les Pyrénées*, or *les Monts Pyrénées*. But in speaking of *Montagnes*, we say: *les Alpes*, or *les Montagnes des Alpes*, *la Castellane*, or *la Montagne de la Castellane*.

In speaking of some *rivières*, we say: *la rivière de Seine*, *la rivière de Saône*, *la rivière de Lille*, of others we say simply *la Loire*, *la Tamise*, *la Durance*, etc.

In speaking of *fleuves*, we say: *le fleuve du Rhône*, *le fleuve du Tage*, but of others simply *le Volga*, *le Danube*, etc.

Of *Mers*, we say also: *la Mer Méditerranée*, *la Mer Noire*, *la Mer Blanche*, *la Mer Rouge*, etc.

These are peculiarities which have nothing to do with grammar, but which chiefly depend upon use and custom.

EXAMPLES.

la France a les Pyrénées et la Méditerranée au sud, la Suisse et la Savoie à l'est, les Pays-Bas au nord, et l'océan à l'ouest

France is bounded on the south by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east by Switzerland and Savoy, on the north by the Netherlands; and on the west by the ocean

le Japon, la Chine, le Mexique, la Martinique, le Mogol, l'Inde la Tamise, le Rhône, l'aquilon, les Alpes, le Cantal

Japan, China, Mexico, Martinique, Mogul, India the Thames, the Rhône, the north wind, the Alps, the Cantal

EXERCISE.

1. Europe is bounded on the north by the Frozen Ocean; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, which separates it from Africa; on the east by the continent of Asia; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. It contains the following 2 states 1: on the north, Norway, Sweden, Denmark and Russia; in the middle, Poland, Prussia, Germany, the United Provinces, the Netherlands, France, Switzerland, Bohemia, Hungary, the British Isles; on the south, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Turkey in Europe.

2. The principal rivers in Europe are: the Wolgo, the Don or Tanais and the Boristhenes or Nieper, in Muscovy; the Danube, the Rhine, and the Elbe, in Germany; the Vistula or Wezel, in Poland; the Loire, the Seine, the Rhone, and the Garonne, in France; the Ebro, the Tagus, and the Douro, in Spain; the Po, in Italy; the Thames, and the Severn, in England; and the Shannon, in Ireland.

3. The principal mountains in Europe are the Daarne Fields, between Norway and Sweden; Mount Krapel, between Poland and Hungary; the Pyrenean Mountains, between France and Spain; the Alps, which divide France and Germany from Italy.

4. The bleak north wind never blows here, and the heat of summer is tempered by the cooling 2 zephyrs 1, which come to refresh the air towards the middle of the day.

(1) Bounded, borné; on, à; frozen, mer glaciale, f.; south, sud, or midi; Mediterranean sea, Méditerranée, f.; east, est or orient; west, ouest or occident; Norway, etc. See p. 59; British Isles, îles Britanniques; Turkey in, Turquie de.

(2.) Muscovy, Moscovie; Vistula, Vistule, f.; Loire, f., Seine, f.; Rhone, m.; Garonne, f.; Ebro, Ebre; Tagus, Tage, m.; Thames, Tamise, f.; Severn, Saverne, f.

(3.) Pyrenean Mountains, Pyrénées.

(4.) Bleak, rigoureux; north wind, aquilon; heat, ardeur; cooling, rafraichissant; come, venir; to refresh, adoucir.

183. EXCEPTIONS. The article is omitted before the names of countries.

1. When these are governed by the preposition *en*, as: *il est en France*, he is in France; *il est en Espagne*, he is in Spain.

2. When those names are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, as: *roi de France*, king of France; *vins de France*, French wines; *noblesse d'Angleterre*, the English nobility.

3. When speaking of those countries as of places we come from, as: *je viens de France*, I come from France; *j'arrive d'Italie*, I am just arrived from Italy. However, when speaking of the four parts of the world, custom requires the use of the article, as: *je viens de l'Amérique*, *j'arrive de l'Asie*.

4. The article is also omitted, before proper names of places, and of persons; *Naples, Venise, César*, etc.*

EXERCISE.

1. *Naples* may be called a paradise, from its beauty and fertility. From this country 2 some suppose 1 Virgil took the model of the Elysian Fields 1.

2. I have been a * prisoner in *Egypt*, as a * Phœnician; under that name I have long suffered, and under that name I have been set at liberty.

3. He has received French and Spanish wines, Italian silks, Provence oil, and English wool.

4. We set sail from *Holland*, to go to the Cape of Good Hope.

5. I was but just arrived from *Russia*, when I had the misfortune to lose my father.

6. I had set off from *America*, when my brother arrived there.

(1.) From, à cause de; from this country, que c'est là, où; some suppose. quelques personnes penser que.

(2.) Prisoner, captif, under that name, c'est sous ce nom que, (both alike).

(4.) Set sail, partir; to go, se rendre.

(5.) I was but just, ne faire que de.

(6.) Set off, partir; there, y.

184. The definite article is not rendered in translating the following English sentences or others like them.

EXAMPLES.

book the tenth, chapter the fifth	livre dix, chapitre cinq
Louis the XIVth.	Louis Quatorze
George the Fourth.	Georges Quatre
he married Mary, the daughter of	il épousa Marie, fille de Louis
Louis Philippe	Philippe

* There are some proper names of authors, painters, and actors before which the article is used; *Le Tasse, le Dante, le Corrège, la Catalani, le Titien, la Champmeslé, l'Arioste, le Poussin, le Dominiquin, le Carache, l'Albane*. There are also some names of French towns which take the definite article. *La Flèche, la Rochelle, la Ferté, le Havre, le Perche* etc.

the more you have, the less you give plus vous avez, moins vous donnez
the richer you are, the less generous you are also, plus vous êtes riche, moins vous êtes généreux
the more knowledge a man has, the more modest he is plus un homme a de connaissance, plus il est modeste.
 The definite article is never used after *en*, but always after *dans*.

EXAMPLES.

il n'est pas en France *he is not in France*
 ce n'est pas dans la France, que *it is not in France, that you will*
 vous le trouverez *find him*

185. The definite article is not used before the word which qualifies the substantives *espèce, genre, sorte, multitude, genre, amas, quantité, etc.*

EXAMPLES.

sorte de fruit	<i>a sort of fruit</i>
genre d'ouvrage	<i>a kind of work</i>
monceau d'argent	<i>a heap of money</i>
bande de voleurs	<i>a troop of robbers</i>
pile de livres	<i>a pile of books</i>
meute de chiens, etc.	<i>a pack of dogs</i>

186. The article is not used before substantives preceded by the pronominal adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel, or cent, mille.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>nos mœurs</i> mettent le prix à nos richesses	<i>our manners fix the value of our riches</i>
<i>toute nation</i> a ses lois	<i>each nation has its laws</i>
<i>cent ignorans</i> , doivent-ils l'emporter sur un homme instruit ?	<i>are a hundred blockheads to be preferred to one learned man ?</i>

EXERCISE.

1. The roads are bordered with *laurels, pomegranates, jessamines, and other trees*, which * are * ever green, and ever in bloom. The mountains are covered with *flocks*, which yield a fine wool, in great request among all the known 2 nations 1 (of the world.*)

2. The fleets of Solomon, under the guidance of the Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and Tharsis, (of the kingdom of Sophala, in Ethiopia), whence they returned at the end of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious 2 stones 1*, and other kinds of merchandize.

3. *Costly furniture 2* is not allowed there 1, nor *magnificent attire, nor sumptuous feasts, nor golden palaces.*

4. We contemplated with pleasure the extensive fields covered with yellow ears of corn, the * *rich gifts* of bounteous Ceres.

5. He was in a kind of ecstasy, when he perceived us.
 6. In the most corrupt age, he lived and died a wise man*.
 7. Are you surprised that the worthiest 2 men, 1 are but men, and betray remains of the weakness of humanity, amid the innumerable 2 snares 1 and difficulties which * are * inseparable from royalty?
 8. He excited our pity, when we saw him after his disgrace.
 9. Hear, then, O nations full of valour! and you, O chiefs, so wise and so united! hear what I have * to * offer to you.
 10. Out of this cavern issued, from time to time, a black 2 thick 3 smoke 1, which made a sort of night at mid-day.
 11. Those imitative 2 sounds 1 are infused in all languages, and form, as it were, their * real basis.
 12. Every man has his foibles, his moments of ill * humour, even his irregularities.
 13. Each plant has virtues peculiar to itself, the knowledge 2 of which 1 could not but be infinitely useful.
 14. In all his instructions, he is careful to bear in mind that grammar, logic, and rhetoric, are three sisters, that ought never to be disjoined.

(1.) Roads, *chemin*; with *de*; pomegranates, *grenadier*; in bloom, *fleuri*; yield, *fournir*; wool, *laine*, pl.; in great request, *recherché*; among, *de*.

(2.) Made, *faire*, ind-2; end, *bout*; laden charged.

(3.) Is not allowed there, *on n'y souffre ni*; furniture, *meuble*; costly, *précieux*; attire, *ornement*; feasts, *repas*.

(4.) Extensive, *vaste*; fields, *campagne*; cars, *épi*; bounteous, *fécond*.

(5.) In a kind of, *comme en*.

(6.) Age, *siècle*.

(7.) That, *de ce que*; worthy, *estimable*; but, *encore*; betray, *montrer*; remains, *reste*; snares, *piège*; difficulties, *embarras*.

(8.) He excited our pity, *il nous fit pitié*.

(9.) Hear, *écouter*.

(10.) Out of, *de*; issued, *sortir*, ind-2; thick, *et épais*; smoke, *fumée*; f. mid-day, *milieu du jour*.

(11.) Infused, *fondue*; to, *dans*; and form as it were, *et ils en sont comme*; real, *fondamentale*.

(13.) Peculiar, *qui sont propres*; to it, *lui*; could, *cond-1*; not but, *ne que*.

(14.) He is careful to bear in mind, *ne point perdre de vue*; ought, *on devoir*, ind-1; to be disjoined, *séparer*.

187. Proper names of deities, men, animals, towns, and particular places, do not take the article.

EXAMPLES.

Dieu a créé le ciel et la terre, God has made heaven and earth.
Jupiter était le premier des dieux, Jupiter was the first of the gods.
Bucéphale était le cheval d'Alexandre, Bucephalus was Alexander's horse.

Rome est une ville d'une grande beauté, Rome is a city of great beauty.

EXCEPTIONS. Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a restrictive sense.

EXAMPLES.

<i>le Dieu des Chrétiens</i>	<i>the God of Christians</i>
<i>le Dieu de paix</i>	<i>the God of peace</i>
<i>le Jupiter d'Homère</i>	<i>Homer's Jupiter</i>
<i>le Bucéphale d'Alexandre</i>	<i>Alexander's Bucephalus</i>
<i>l'ancienne Rome</i>	<i>ancient Rome</i>
<i>la Rome moderne</i>	<i>modern Rome</i>

EXERCISE.

1. *Jupiter* son of *Saturn* and *Cibele* or *Ops*, after having expelled his father from the throne, divided the paternal * inheritance with his two brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto*.
2. On a dispute, at a feast of the gods, between *Juno*, *Pallas* and *Venus*, for the pre-eminence of beauty, *Jupiter* not being able to bring them to an agreement, referred the decision to *Paris*, a shepherd of mount *Ida*, with directions that a golden apple should be given to the fairest. *Paris* assigned to *Venus* 2 the golden * prize 1.
3. *God* said: let there* be 2 light 1, and there * was 2 light 1.
4. *The Apollo del Belvidere* and *the Venus di Medicis*, are valuable 2 remains 1 of antiquity.
5. *May* and *September* are the two finest months of the year in the south of France.
6. *The God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*, was the only true God.

- (1.) Expelled, *chasser*; divided, *en partager*; inheritance, *héritage*.
- (2.) On, *dans*; at a feast, *qu'il y eut à un festin*; being able, *pouvoir*; to bring to an agreement, *accorder*; referred, *renvoyer*; directions, *ordre*; that a golden, etc. to give a golden apple to; assigned, *adjuger*.
- (4.) *Del Belvidere, du Belvédér*; valuable, *précieux*.
- (6.) Only, *seul*.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE *du*.

188. In the exercises on the verb *avoir*, No. 102, 103, 104, 105, we have already had occasion to notice that *du*, *de la*, *des* are used before a noun, not mentioned, as if speaking of the totality of the species, but only as a part of it, and when, in English, the word *some* may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>du pain et de l'eau me feraient</i>	<i>some bread and water would please</i>
<i>plaisir</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>je vis hier des savans qui ne pen-</i>	<i>I yesterday saw some learned men,</i>
<i>sent pas comme vous.</i>	<i>who do not think as you do</i>

And also that *de* alone, without the article, is used when an adjective, an adverb of quantity or a negation precedes

the noun thus spoken of in a partial sense ; no regard being paid then to its gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

<i>voilà de beaux tableaux</i>	<i>there are beautiful pictures</i>
<i>j'achetai hier beaucoup de livres</i>	<i>I bought yesterday many books</i>
<i>que de livres, j'achetai hier !</i>	<i>how many books I bought yesterday</i>
<i>il n'y eut jamais plus de lumières</i>	<i>there never was more learning</i>
<i>il y a moins d'habitans à Paris</i>	<i>there are fewer inhabitants in Paris</i>
<i>qu'à Londres</i>	<i>than in London</i>
<i>je ne manque pas d'amis*</i>	<i>I do not want for friends</i>

EXCEPTION. *Bien* is the only adverb of quantity which is followed by the article.

EXAMPLES.

<i>il a bien de l'esprit</i>	<i>he has a great deal of wit</i>
<i>elle a bien de la grâce</i>	<i>she is very graceful</i>

190. OBSERVE. These expressions : *des petits-maitres, des sages-femmes, des petits-pâtés*, etc. are not exceptions to the rule which requires *de* before an adjective, because, in cases of this kind, the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word. We must likewise say : *le propre des belles actions, les sentimens des anciens philosophes*. etc. ; because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives, are taken in a general sense.

191. It as been seen that, generally speaking, an article or some other sign precedes the noun in French, so as to point out whether we speak of a thing as to its general kind or merely as to a portion of it. There are however, many phrases in which no article or sign is required before the noun ; we subjoin those which are most commonly used.

avoir faim	faire profession
— soif	— tort
— dessein	— plaisir
— honte	— peur
— coutume	— provision
— pitié	— défense
— compassion	gagner pays
— froid	— chemin
— chaud	mettre fin
— patience	— ordre
— envie	parler français
— besoin	— anglais

* See rule 109, *bis*.

donner envie	parler allemand
— occasion	porter envie
— leçon	— bonheur
— permission	— malheur
— parole	prendre parti
entendre raison	— plaisir
— raillerie	— leçon
— malice	— patience
	— jour

EXERCISE.

1. We could not cast our eyes on either shore, Without seeing opulent cities, country houses agreeably situated, lands every year 2 covered 1 with a golden 2 harvest 1, meadows, abounding in flocks and herds, husbandmen bending under the weight of the fruits, and shepherds who made 1 the echoes 5 around them 6 repeat 2 the sweet sounds 3 of their pipes and flutes 4.

2. Provence and Languedoc produce oranges, lemons, figs, olives, almonds, chesnuts, peaches, apricots, and grapes of an uncommon sweetness.

3. The man who has never seen this pure light, is as * blind as one who was born blind: he dies without having seen any thing; at most, he perceives but glimmering and false lights, vain shadows and phantoms that have nothing real.

4. Among the Romans, those who were convicted of having used illicit or unworthy means to obtain an office, were excluded from it for ever.

5. Those who govern are like the celestial 2 bodies 1, which have great splendour and no rest.

6. What beauty, sweetness, modesty, and at the same time what nobleness and greatness of mind!

7. Themistocles, in order to ruin Aristides, made use of many artifices, which would have covered him with infamy in the eyes of posterity, had 1 not 4 the eminent services 2 which he rendered his country 3 blotted out 5 that stain.

(1.) Could, *pouvoir*, ind-2; our, *les*; either, *les deux*; seeing, *apercevoir*; every year, *tous les ans*; covered with, *qui se couvrir de*, ind-2; abounding in, *remplis de*; flocks and herds, *troupeau*; bending, *qui étaient accablés*; weight, *poids*; shepherds, *bergers*; pipes, *chalumau*; the echoes, *aux échos*; around them, *d'alentour*.

(3.) Who is born blind, *aveugle-né*; without having, *n'avoir jamais*, inf-3; any thing, *rien*; at most, *tout au plus*; perceives, *apercevoir*; glimmering, *sombre*; lights, *lueur*; real, *de réel*.

(4.) Used, *employer*; illicit, or unworthy means, *moyen illicite, ou voie indigne*, pl.; were, ind-2; from it, *en*.

(5.) Great, *beaucoup de*; splendour, *éclat*; no rest, (that have no rest) *repos*.

(6.) What, *que de*.

(7.) Ruin, *perdre*; made use of many, *employer bien*; artifices, *manœuvres*; covered, *cond-3*; with, *de*; infamy, *opprobre*; in, *à*; had; *si*; rendered, ind-3 *à*; blotted out, *effacer*, *cond-3*; stain, *tache*.

8. The consequences of great passions are blindness of mind and depravity of heart.

9. Noblemen should never forget that their high birth imposes great duties on * them.

(8.) Of mind, art. *esprit*; of heart, *de*, art. *cœur*.

(9.) Noblemen, *gentilhomme*; should, *devoir*, ind-1.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

192. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

It has already been said that the nature of the adjective in French is to agree in gender and number with the noun to which it is joined, thus; *un grand jardin, une grande maison, de bons livres, de bonnes plumes*, and the manner of forming the plural and the feminine of adjectives has also been explained. (No 42.)

An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular of the same gender, *all subject of the same verb*, must be in the plural and assume their gender.

EXAMPLES.

la clémence et la majesté peintes	<i>the clemency and majesty imprinted</i>
sur son front, sont, etc.	<i>on his countenance, are, etc.</i>
le travail et le courage joints	<i>labour and courage together united</i>
ensemble font surmonter des	<i>make us surmount obstacles.</i>
obstacles.	

If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective must be in the masculine.

EXAMPLES.

votre frère et votre sœur sont	<i>your brother and sister are not well</i>
peu instruits	<i>informed</i>
la beauté et le vice réunis dans	<i>beauty and vice united in the same</i>
un même individu ne sauront	<i>individual cannot attach, etc.</i>
attacher, etc.	

When in speaking of *things*, (not of persons), an adjective belongs to two or more nouns which are the object of or governed by a verb, it is customary to make that adjective agree with the last noun, next to which it is placed.

* See the peculiarities of *feu, nu, demi, bon, court, fort, bas*.

EXAMPLES.

il avait la bouche et les yeux *his mouth and eyes were open*
ouverts
il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open.*
ouverte

We say *customary*, because it is more *grammatical* to attach an idea of numbers to the adjective, when it expresses a quality or state common to several objects and to say,

EXAMPLES.

il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open.*
ouverts
c'est un homme d'une valeur, *he is a man of tried valour, virtue*
d'une vertu et d'une fidélité *and fidelity*
éprouvées*

EXERCISE.

His impetuosity and courage, long restrained, soon surmounted
= *enchaîné 2 vaincre ind-3 1*
all obstacles. The king and the shepherd are equal after death.
This comedian acts with delightful taste and grace. He found
acteur jouer charmant 3 1 — 2 ind-3
the rivers and ponds frozen over. His whole life (was nothing
2 étang m. 1 glacé 3 n'être que
but) constant labour and occupation. It was lost time and trouble
ind-3 3 1 2 c'était 3 1 peine 2
Honours and riches are ever envied. Music and drawing are very
entertaining. I teach the French and English tongues. Have you
amusant enseigner langue f.
read the Greek and Roman histories ?
= f.

ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSIONS.

193. In speaking of the dimensions of an object, the French make use of a very different form from the English, thus ;

* There are certain locutions on the correctness of which grammarians are not agreed : this is not the place for discussing such questions but we will give both modes of expression, placing in the second column those which are preferable,

<i>Les cotes personnelle, mobiliare, et foncière.</i>	<i>La cote personnelle, la mobiliare et la somptuaire.</i>
<i>Un cours de langue Française, Italienne, et Espagnole.</i>	<i>Un cours de langue française, italienne, et Espagnole.</i>
<i>Les langues Française et Espagnole</i>	<i>La langue Française et l'Espagnole.</i>

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. A tower two hundred feet high | <i>une tour de deux cents pieds de hauteur</i> or <i>de haut</i> |
| 2. This tower is two hundred feet high | <i>cette tour a deux cents pieds de hauteur</i> |

In the first example, *de* is used before the noun of numbers and before the adjective, to which the substantive of dimension may elegantly be substituted.

In the second, *to be* is rendered by *avoir*, and consequently, the substantive of dimension *hauteur*, can alone be used, since an adjective cannot be coupled with *avoir*.

EXERCISE.

This box, which is six feet long, is very convenient. You
coffre, m. *commode*
 will be stopped in your march by a river three hundred feet broad
arrêté *f.*

This observatory (is twelve hundred) feet high. It is a terrace
 = *deux cents toises* *ce* *terrace f.*
 (a hundred and eighty) feet broad, and (twelve hundred) feet
trente *toise f. pl. large* *deux cents **
 long. The walls of our garden are twenty feet high and three
mur m. pl.

broad. It is one of the finest stones that was ever seen: it is
 75 on *est jamais vues*
 twenty feet long and six thick. This ditch is nine feet six
longueur épaisseur fossé m.
 inches deep and six feet broad.
pouce m. pl. profondeur f.

194. Adjectives, used substantively, require the definite article.

EXAMPLE.

*les fous inventent les modes, et
les sages s'y conforment*

EXERCISE.

1. Were the *learned* of antiquity to come to life again, they would be much astonished at the extent of our knowledge.

2. The *ignorant* have, in a large stock of presumption, what they want in real knowledge, and that is the reason they are admired by *fools*.

(1.) Were the, *si les*; to come again, *revenir*, ind-2; life, *monde*; at, *de*; knowledge, *connaissance*, pl.

(2.) Large stock, *forte dose*; they want, *il leur manque*; knowledge, science; the reason, *ce qui fait que*; they are, etc. the fools admire them.

When a noun is accompanied by two adjectives, expressing different qualities incompatible in the same object, the article must be repeated before each adjective.

EXAMPLES.

<i>les vieux et les nouveaux soldats</i>	<i>the old and the newly raised sol-</i>
<i>sont remplis d'ardeur</i>	<i>diers are full of ardour</i>
<i>il faut fréquenter la bonne com-</i>	<i>we ought to frequent good and</i>
<i>pagnie et fuir la mauvaise</i>	<i>shun bad company</i>

REMARK. But if those qualities be not incompatible, the article is not repeated, as: *le sage et pieux Fénelon*; if merely expressing different ideas, it is perhaps better to repeat it, as: *le sensible et l'ingénieux Fénelon*.

EXERCISE.

1. The *antient* 1 and *modern* 3 writers 2 are not agreed upon that point.
2. The wise man preserves the same tranquility of mind in *good* or *bad* fortune.
3. The man who is jealous of his reputation frequents *good* and shuns *bad* company.
4. *Grand* and *vigorous* thoughts were always the offspring of genius.

(1.) Writers, *auteur*; are agreed, *s'accorder*.

(3.) Vigorous, *fort*; offspring, *fruit*.

195. The article is used before the adjective which is joined to a proper name, either to express its quality, or to distinguished the person spoken of from those who might bear the same name.

EXAMPLES.

<i>le sublime Bossuet</i>	<i>the sublime Bossuet</i>
<i>Louis le gros</i>	<i>Louis the fat</i>
<i>le vertueux Fénelon</i>	<i>the virtuous Fenelon</i>
<i>Louis le Juste</i>	<i>Louis the Just</i>
<i>le tendre Racine</i>	<i>the tender Racine</i>
<i>Louis le Grand</i>	<i>Louis the Great</i>

REMARK. If the adjective, which is joined to a proper name, precede that name, it expresses a quality which may be common to many; but if it follow, it expresses a distinguishing quality. Thus: *le savant Varron*, and *Varron le savant*, do not convey the same meaning: in the first example, *Varron* merely obtains the quality of *savant*; in the second, *Varron* is distinguished for his learning from all of the same name.

EXERCISE.

1. The *great Corneille* astonishes by beauties of the first order, and by faults of the worst taste. If the *tender Racine* does not often rise so high, at least, he is always equal, and possesses the art of always interesting the heart.

2. The more we read the fables of the *good and artless La Fontaine*, the more we are convinced they are a book for all ages, and the manual of the man of taste.

3. It was only under the reign of *Louis the Just (XIII.)* that good taste began to show itself in France; but it was under that of *Louis the Great* that it was carried to perfection.

(1.) By, *par des*; order, *ordre*; is always equal, *se soutenir*; possesses, *avoir*.

(2.) The more we, *plus on*; artless, *simple*; are convinced, *on se convaincre*; they are, *que c'est*; a, *le*; for, *de*; manual, *manuel*.

(3.) Only, *ne que*; carried, *porter à*.

196. When a superlative relative precedes a substantive, the article is used once only; if it follow, it must be repeated before the noun and the adjective.

EXAMPLES.

les plus habiles gens font quelquefois *les plus grandes fautes* or *les gens les plus habiles* font quelquefois *les fautes les plus grandes*
the ablest men sometimes commit the grossest blunders*.

EXERCISE.

1. It has been said of the *Telemachus* of the virtuous *Fenelon*, that it is the most useful 2 present 1 the muses have made to mankind; for, could the happiness of man be produced by a poem, it would be by that.

2. The smoothest 2 waters 1 often conceal the most dangerous 2 gulfs 1.

(1.) It has been said, *on a dit*; present *que*; have made, subj-3; could, (if the, etc. could, ind-2); be produced by, *naître de*; would be, *naître*, cond-1.

(2.) Smoothest, *tranquille*.

* OBSERVE. Cette planète est la plus éloignée du soleil. Lorsque cette planète est le plus éloignée du soleil.

There is a difference here with regard to the declinability of the article which must be understood.

If there is a comparison implied the article is declined. Thus, in the first sentence, we speak of the planets which are distant from the sun, and allude to that which is most so; but in the second, our thought bears on one planet alone, independant of all others; *le plus* is merely an adverb to the verb *être éloignée*, and consequently is undeclined as all adverbs are.

These remarks apply also to *le moins, la moins, les moins*.

REMARKS ON SOME PARTICULAR MODES OF EXPRESSING COMPARISONS.

197. The manner of expressing comparisons of equality and of superiority and inferiority will be explained, (No. 211). But there are some phrases which it is the place to notice here.

Equally with is used for *as well as* and is thus rendered.

EXAMPLES.

He blamed it equally with me	<i>il le blâma aussi bien que moi</i>
He was blamed equally with me	<i>il fut blâmé aussi bien que moi</i>

NOTHING *so pleasant, good, difficult, etc.*, is thus rendered.

EXAMPLES.

Nothing so easy as to do it	<i>rien de si facile que de le faire</i>
Nothing so pleasant as to meet with friends	<i>rien de si agréable que de rencontrer des amis</i>

Quoi, *what* ; *quelque chose*, something ; *rien*, nothing ; before adjectives require *de*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quoi de plus agréable que d'être au coin d'un bon feu ?</i>	what is there more pleasant then to sit by a good fire ?
<i>Il n'y a rien de doux dans sa physionomie.</i>	there is nothing sweet in her countenance
<i>J'ai remarqué quelque chose d'extraordinaire</i>	I noticed something extraordinary.

THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

198. Pronominal and numerical adjectives precede their substantive, as do generally the following sixteen ; *beau, bon, brave, cher, chétif, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux, an^r vrai*, when taken in their literal sense.

EXAMPLES.

<i>mon père</i>	my father
<i>quel homme</i>	what man
<i>vieille femme</i>	old woman
<i>dix guinées</i>	ten guineas
<i>plusieurs officiers</i>	several officers
<i>grand homme</i>	great man
<i>six arbres</i>	six trees
<i>chétive mine</i>	mean look

EXPRESSING

of equality
ained, (No.
s the place
as rendered.

que moi
n que moi
is thus ren-

de le faire
que de rencon-
en, nothing ;

pleasant then
fire ?
sweet in her
ing extraordi-

precede their
teen ; beau,
mauvais, mé-
e, and vrai,

EXCEPTIONS. The pronoun *quelconque*.

EXAMPLE.

d'une manière quelconque in whatever manner.

EXERCISE.

1. There have been ages, when a *great man* was a sort of prodigy produced by a mistake of nature.

2. In almost all nations, the *great geniuses* that have adorned them were contemporaries.

3. *Young people*, says Horace, are open to the enticements of vice, lavish, presumptuous, and equally impetuous and light in their passions ; *old people*, on the contrary, are covetous, dilatory, timid, ever alarmed about the future, always complaining, hard to please, panegyrists of times past, censors of the present, and great givers of advice.

4. *What man* was ever satisfied with his condition, and dissatisfied with his abilities.

5. *Thirty chambers*, which have a communication one with another, and each of them an iron door, with six huge bolts, are the places where he shuts himself up.

(1.) Ages, *des siècles* ; when, *où* ; produced, *enfanter*.

(2.) In, *chez* ; nations, *peuple* ; adorned, *illustrer*, ind-4.

(3.) Old people, *vieilles gens* ; open, *souple* ; lavish, *prodigue* ; impetuous, *vif* ; (all those adjectives are m. pl.) ; covetous, *avare* ; dilatory, *temporisateur* ; about, *sur* ; complaining, *plaintif* ; hard, *difficile* ; please, *contenter* ; times, *sing.*

(4.) Dissatisfied, *mécontent* ; abilities, *esprits*.

(5.) Have a communication, *communiquer* ; each of them, *dont chacun avoir* ; huge, *gros* ; bolts, *verrou* ; places, *lieu*, *sing.* ; shuts himself, *renfermer*.

199. Adjectives of number, joined to proper names, pronouns, and substantives, are placed after the noun.

EXAMPLES.

George Trois
chapitre dix
page trente

George III.
chapter 10
page the 30th

200. The adjectives mentioned 198, when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be placed after the substantive, are themselves placed after the noun.

EXAMPLE.

c'est une femme grande et bien faite she is tall well-made woman

201. In English, two, or even several adjectives may qualify a substantive, without a conjunction : but in French *et* is always placed before the last adjective *c'est un homme aimable et poli*, he is an amiable, well-behaved man.

OBSERVE that all the adjectives are put after the noun, *un homme riche, jeune et aimable*, except one of them, is one

of those which precede it, *c'est un grand homme sec*, he is a tall thin man.

202. Are placed after the noun, adjectives formed—
from the participle present of verbs—*ouvrage divertissant*,
entertaining work ;—from the participle past ; all those
expressing form, physical qualities, etc. *figure arrondie*,
round figure ; *table ovale*, oval table ;—colour, *maison
blanche*, white house ;—taste, *herbe amère*, bitter herb ;—
sound, *orgue harmonieux*, harmonious organ ;—action,
procureur actif, active attorney ;—effect, *coutume abusive*,
custom founded in abuse ;—arrangement, *ordre grammati-
cal*, grammatical order ; species, *qualité occulte*, occult
quality ;—nation, *générosité Anglaise*, English generosity ;
—those ending in *-esque*, *-il*, *-ule*, *ic*, *ique*, *-in* :

style burlesque
jargon puéril
femme crédule
bien public
ris sardonique
voix enfantine

burlesque style
childish jargon
credulous woman
public welfare
sardonic grin
childish voice

but in this, custom is the best guide.

EXERCISE.

1. An affected simplicity is a refined imposture.
2. The smiling images of Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle feeling.
3. In that antique palace are to be seen neither wreathed columns, nor gilded wainscots, nor valuable basso-relieues, nor ceilings curiously painted, nor grotesque figures of animals which never had existence but in the imagination of a child or a madman.
4. If human life is exposed to many troubles, it is also susceptible of many pleasures.
5. A ridiculous man is seldom so by halves.
6. Spanish manners have, at first sight, something harsh and uncivilized.
7. French urbanity has become a proverb among foreign nations

- (1.) Refined, *délicat*.
- (2.) Smiling, *riant* ; excite, *porter* ; soft, *doux* ; feeling, *sensibilité*, f. *sensibilité*.
- (3.) Are to be seen, *on ne voit* ; wreathed, *torse* ; wainscot, *lambris* ; basso-relieues, *bas-relief* ; ceilings, *plafond* ; curiously, *artistement* ; had existence, *exister*.
- (4.) Many, *bien de* ; troubles, *peine*.
- (5.) So, *le* ; by halves, *à demi*.
- (6.) Spanish, *Espagnol* ; manners, *mœurs* ; at first sight, *au premier abord* ; uncivilized, *sauvage*.
- (7.) Become, *passer en* ; among, *chez*.

203. Although it may seem that adjectives expressing moral qualities are placed indifferently before, or after the substantive, yet taste and a correct ear will assign them their proper situation.

In conversation, or in a broken, loose style, it may be indifferent to say *femme aimable* or *aimable femme*; *talents sublimes*, or *sublimes talents*, etc.; but in the dignified style, the place of the adjective may, in a variety of instances, affect the beauty of a sentence.*

EXERCISE.

1. An *amiable* woman gives to every thing she says an *inexpressible* grace; the more we hear, the more we wish to hear her.

2. The *majestic* eloquence of Bossuet is like a river, which carries away every thing in its rapid course.

3. The *sublime* compositions of Rubens have made 1 an English traveller 3 say 2, that this *famous* painter was born in Flanders, through a mistake of nature.

(1.) Give to, *répandre* sur; we, *on*.

(2.) River, *fleuve*; carries away, *entraîner*; its rapid course, *la rapidité de son cours*.

(3.) Say, *dire à*; famous, *célèbre*; through, *par*; mistake *méprise*.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

204. Adjectives are frequently followed by another substantive than that which they qualify, thus: *un homme digne de récompense*, *un homme enclin au bien*, they are also sometimes followed by an infinitive, *capable d'aimer*, *prompt à bien faire*, etc. In such cases a preposition is used according to the case or regimen which the adjective requires. That is called the government of adjectives.

205. Adjectives which govern the preposition *DE*.

digne	comblé	fou
indigne	taxé	avide
capable	chargé	ennuyé
incapable	plein	libre
aisé	accusé	qualifié
ravi	fatigué	vide
joyeux	las	dépendant
content	contrit	chéri
mécontent	enragé	

* Such adjectives are more expressive when placed before the noun; but taste and harmony must be consulted. None but those well versed in the French Language can feel the proper place of the adjective; we recommend to the learner always to place it after the noun; which is quite correct, if not elegant.

206. Adjectives which govern the preposition *à*.

adroit	porté	âpre
bon	enclin	lent
beau	adonné	nuisible
laid	sujet	prompt
agréable	propre	prêt
ingénieur.	inexorable	utile
contraire	désagréable	inutile
opposé	agile	sensible
conforme	alerte	aisé
semblable	habile	facile
pareil	ardent	cher

207. Adjectives which require *ENVERS*, *complaisant*, *généreux*, *affable*, *indulgent*, *prévenant*, *cruel*, *bon*, or any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals.

Are you pleased with your horse? Do not be so greedy
content *avide*
 after riches. I am not unworthy of his friendship. They say
indigne *on dit que*
 he is very dissatisfied with his son. We were tired with
mécontent *ind-2 fatigué*
 running after him. Are we (not at liberty) to go? My
courir *libre* *partir*
 brother is not fit for the place. Send me some gloves
propre *gant, m.*
 like those which my sister has. If you are ready to go,
pareil
 I will order the carriage. Too much exercise may be
commander ind-7 *pouvoir être*
 injurious to the health. You will not find that easy to do
nuisible *cela facile*
 Let us be kind (to one another). He was so kind to
les uns envers les autres *bon*
 his sisters.

208. OBSERVE. A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided they do not require two different prepositions. Thus you may say : *cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille*, that man is useful and dear to his family ; but you may not say, *il est utile et chéri à sa famille*, because *chéri*, beloved, requires the genitive, or preposition *de* before a noun. Such sentences must be turned thus, *il est utile à sa famille et en est chéri*, he is useful to his family and beloved of them.

ÊTRE WITH ADJECTIVES.

209. *Je suis bien aise, fâché, contrarié*, etc., or any other phrase expressing gladness or regret at a thing, requires the subjunctive mood, or the infinitive with *DE*, as:

je suis enchanté que vous soyez 1 *am delighted that you have re-*
de retour *turned*
je suis enchanté d'être de retour 1 *am delighted that I have returned*
à temps. *in time*

In the first example, there are two different subjects *je vous*; the verb is on that account put in the subjunctive mood.

In the second example, there is but one and the same subject, the second verb is in the infinitive.

EXERCISE.

She will be delighted to see you. How sorry I am you
enchanté 2 1 *que* 2 1
 were not at home last night. Call upon him, he will be
 subj-2 *chez vous hier au soir* *aller* 1 *voir* 3 2
 glad to see you. I cannot tell you how vexed I am
bien aise *je ne saurais* *contrarié* 2
 at my servant being so slow, and at your not receiving
être subj-3 *ne recevoir pas* subj-3
 my note. We are all very sorry you cannot come, for
billet m. *bien fâché* *pouvoir* subj-1
 we shall have a delightful evening.
passer 2 *soirée* f. 1

210. *IL EST*, impersonal, joined to an adjective requires *de* before the infinitive. *C'est* requires *a*.

EXAMPLES.

il est beau de mourir pour sa pa- it is noble to die for one's
trie country
c'est horrible à voir it is horrid to be seen

EXERCISE.

It was amusing to see them. How pleasant it is to
il ind-2 *que agréable* 2 *il* 1
 enjoy good health! This is most painful to hear.
jouir de *ce* *on ne peut plus pénible*
 It was very disagreeable (for me) to witness all their
il 2 ind-2 3 *me* 1 *être présent à*
 quarrels. It may be pleasant to look at, but is it very
cela *voir* *
 useful?

ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

211. The verb which follows an adjective in the comparative requires *ne* before it.

EXAMPLE.

vous êtes plus heureux que vous n'étiez you are happier than you were.

But if the first member of the sentence is negative or interrogative the *ne* is suppressed.

EXAMPLES.

vous n'êtes pas plus heureux que vous l'étiez you are not happier than you were
peut-on être plus heureux que vous l'êtes? can any one be happier than you are?

The *ne* is also suppressed after *quand*, *dans le temps*, or any adverb.

EXAMPLE.

vous êtes plus heureux que quand vous étiez en France you are happier than when you were in France.

Tout autre, autrement, mieux, moins bien, plus mal, also require the *ne*, before the verb.

EXAMPLE.

il est tout autre qu'il n'était he is quite different from what he was

EXERCISE.

He is much richer than you think. You sing better than you did. He has been better received than he thought. Sciences are now more cultivated than they were. Since the invention of gun powder battles are less bloody than they were. That war was not less successful than it was just. (Can any one) be more amiable than she is? Is he not much richer than he was? The poor are not so sick, (for want of) food, as the rich are for taking too much.

faute de *que* *pl.* *en prendre*

ind-2 *croire ind-2* *être ind-2* *être ind-3* *heureuse* *être ind-2*

pl. *moins malade*

ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

212. An adjective in the superlative degree requires that the verb which follows it should be in the subjunctive mood, or that the noun should be in the genitive case, that is, have the preposition *de* before it.

EXAMPLES.

donnez-moi la meilleure plume que vous ayez give me the best pen you have
la plus belle fleur du jardin. the prettiest flower in the garden

The absolute, *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier, aucun*, must be considered as superlatives, and included in this rule.

EXERCISE.

You see the largest tree there is in the park. Is he
grand arbre y avoir
 not the richest man in the town? I give you the only one
*riche * donner ind-4*
 I had. They say he is the cleverest boy in the school.
avoir subj-2 on dit que c'est habile
 She is certainly the prettiest girl I ever saw. I am not the
c'est personne voir subj-3
 only one, I believe, who accepted his invitation. There
à ce que je crois accepter subj-3 il y
 were present some of the most celebrated men in Europe,
avait là quelques-uns
 but (no one could get a peep at them), so great was the
il était impossible d'en approcher tant 1 4 3
 crowd.
 2

213. By, after a comparative, is rendered by *DE*.

EXAMPLE.

il est plus grand d'un pouce he is taller by one inch

ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

214. *Unième*, is used only after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent* and *mille*. *C'est la vingt-et-unième fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

Cent, in the plural takes an *s*, except when followed by another noun of number, as:

ils étaient deux cents
trois cents hommes
ils étaient deux cent dix

there were two hundred
 three hundred men
 there were two hundred and ten

Vingt in *quatre-vingt*, and *six-vingt*, also take an *s*, when followed by a substantive, as :

quatre-vingts hommes
six vingts abricots

eighty men
six score apricots

But it takes no *s*, when followed by another term expressing number, *quatre-vingt-un arbres*, *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*.

The ordinary numbers, collective and distributive, always take the sign of the plural : *les premières douzaines*, the first dozens ; *les quatre cinquièmes*, the four fifths.

For dates the French write *mil*, as : *mil sept cent-quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-nine, etc.

REMARK. *Cent* and *mille* are used indefinitely, as,

il lui fit cent caresses

he shewed him a hundred marks
of kindness

faites-lui mille amitiés

present him a thousand compliments

EXERCISE.

1. It was the *thirty-first* year after so glorious a peace, when the war broke out again with a fury of which history offers few examples.

2. There were only *three hundred*, and in spite of their inferiority in numbers*, they attacked the enemy, beat and dispersed them.

3. He has sold his country house for* *two thousand five hundred and fifty* pounds.

4. Choose out of your nursery ground *eighty* fruit trees and *ninety* dwarf-trees, divide them into dozens, and put in the two first dozens of each sort, those whose fruits are most esteemed.

5. When Louis the Fourteenth made his entry into Strasbourg, the Swiss deputies having come to pay their respects to him, Le Tellier, archbishop of Rheims, who saw among them the bishop of Basle, said to one near him : that bishop is apparently some poor beggar.—How, replied the other, he has a *hundred thousand* livres a year—Oh ! oh ! said the archbishop, he is then a respectable man, and shewed him a thousand civilities.

(1.) Year, *année* ; when, *que* ; broke out again, *se rallumer* ; ind-3.

(2.) Only, *ne que* ; in spite of, *malgré*.

(3.) Pounds, *livre sterling*.

(4.) Out of, *dans* ; nursery-ground, *pépinière* ; fruit-trees, *piéd d'arbre fruitier* ; dwarf-trees, *arbre nain*.

(5.) Swiss, (of the Swiss) ; pay, *présenter* ; respect, *hommage*, pl. ; one near him, *son voisin* ; that bishop, etc. *c'est un misérable apparemment que cet évêque* ; a year, *de rente* ; shewed, *faire*, ind-3 ; civilities, *caresses*.

The French say, *le onze, du onze, au onze, sur les onze heures, sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze* and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

215. The cardinal numbers are used for the ordinal.

1. In reckoning time, that is, the *hour* of the day, the *day* of the month, the *year* of an era, as : *il est trois heures*, it is three o'clock ; *le vingt de Mars*, the twentieth of March ; *l'an mil sept cent dix*, etc.,

216. 2. In speaking of the order of succession of sovereigns, as : *Louis seize, George trois*, except the first two of the series, as : *Henri premier, George second*. *Quint* for *cinq* is only said of the *Empereur Charles-quint*, and the *Pape Sixte-quint*.

EXERCISE.

1. They made in the parish and in the neighbouring places a collection which produces a *hundred and twenty-one guineas*.

2. William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the *eleventh* century : he was born at Falaise, and was the natural son of Robert, duke of Normandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter.

3. Make haste ; it will soon be *ten* o'clock. We shall have a great difficulty to arrive in time.

4. The winter was so severe in *one thousand seven hundred and nine*, that there was but one olive tree that resisted it*, in a plain where there had been more than ten thousand.

5. It was the *twenty-first* of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three, that the unhappy Louis the *sixteenth* was led to the scaffold.

(1.) They, *on* ; neighbouring places, *voisinage*, sing. ; collection, *quête*.

(2.) William, *Guillaume* ; furrier, *fourreur*.

(3.) Make haste, *se dépêcher* ; will be, ind-1 ; great difficulty, *bien de la peine* ; in *à*.

(4.) Severe, *rude* ; but, *ne que*, had been, *y en avoir*, ind-2.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

§ I.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS,

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE OBJECT.

217. Personal pronouns, like the substantives which they represent, whether persons or things, are either the *subject* or *object* of a verb.

As object or regimen, they are also *direct* or *indirect*.
See 170, 173.

SUBJECT.

Common to persons and things *tu, je, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*.

Also *moi, toi, lui, eux*.

OBJECT DIRECT.

Common to persons and things, *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, m. f.

Also *moi, toi*.

OBJECT INDIRECT. (DATIVE.)

Of persons, *me te, lui*, m. f. *nous, vous, leur*, m. f.

Also, *moi, toi*.

Also *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*.

Of things, *y* of both genders and numbers.

OBJECT INDIRECT, (*genitive or ablative*.)

Of persons *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*; sometimes *en*.

Of things, *en* of both gender and number.

PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

Moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.

PRONOUN SUBJECT.

218. The place of the subject is before the verb, if affirmative, after it, if interrogative.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je parle</i>	<i>I speak</i>
<i>il raconta son histoire</i>	<i>he related his history</i>
<i>est-il heureux ?</i>	<i>is he happy ?</i>

219. Sometimes there are two or more subjects to the verb, such as *you, he, and I are agreed to go*; in such cases, *moi, toi, lui, eux*, are used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*, and it is polite to place the first person last.

EXAMPLE.

vous et moi, nous irons *you and I we shall go.*

EXERCISE.

My sister and I we were walking by the last rays of the
se promener ind-2 à rayons m. pl.

setting sun, and we were saying, what a soft splendour does it
couchant 2 1 *dire* ind-2 *doux éclat* m. * 2
 still spread over all nature! In the long winter even-
was 3 4 *ne répand* 1 art. *de* 2 *soi-*
 ings, my father, my brothers, and I used (to spend) two
me f. pl. 1 *nous passer* ind-2
 hours in the library, and to read there, (in order to)
bibliothèque f. *nous lire*, ind-2 *y* *pour*
 (unbend our minds) from the serious studies of the day, those
se délasser = 2 1
 amiable poets who interest most the heart, by the charms of a lively
 2 1 *le plus* *riant* 2
 imagination, and make us love truth, by disguising it under the
 2 1 art. *en déguiser*
 mask of an ingenious fiction. You and your friend shall
trait m. pl. = 2 f. 1
 accompany me to the museum, where we shall study nature in her
—pagner 2 1 *musée* m. *où*
 kingdoms.
règne m. pl.

220. *Moi, toi, lui, eux* are also used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*.

1st. After *que* in comparisons.

EXAMPLE:

vous êtes plus grand que moi *you are taller than I.*

2nd. After *c'est*, and in answer to a question.

EXAMPLES.

ce n'est pas moi qui l'ai fait *it is not I who did it*
que vous reste-t-il? Moi *whom have you left? I*

3rd. Before a relative pronoun or an infinitive, speaking emphatically and by apposition.

EXAMPLES.

moi, dont il déchire la réputation *I whose reputation he destroys*
toi, qui fais le brave *thou who lookest so valiant*
moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis! *I, betray my best friend?*
voudrez-vous me perdre, moi *would you ruin me, who am your*
votre allié? *ally?*
eux m'ont relevé, et lui m'a pansé *they picked me up, and he dressed my wounds.*

OBSERVE. In English, it is allowed to place the adverb between the subject and the verb, *I certainly do not think he would come*. The adverb must always come last in French, *Je ne pensais certainement pas qu'il viendrait*.

EXERCISE.

You write (a great deal better) than I do. If you are not so rich
beaucoup mieux
 as he is, I think you are as happy Who calls? I do
*que * tout aussi heureux*
 Is it you or he who said so? It is not I. I! stoop to the
l'avez dit m'abaisser devant
 man who dipped his hands in the blood of his king! Your
tremper ind-4
 brothers and mine undertake it. They find the money and he
s'en charger fournir
 will manage the work. It is I who have prevailed upon him to un-
*conduire 2 engagé 3 * le 1 à*
 dertake that journey. Can you act so towards him, he who ever
2
 was your best friend?
ind-3 1

THINGS MASCULINE OR FEMININE.

221. It is almost useless to repeat that inanimate things in French are either masculine or feminine, and consequently that the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, are used accordingly in speaking of such.

Thus speaking of a rose, *rose f.* we say

EXAMPLES.

elle est belle *it is beautiful*
 ne sent-elle pas bon? *does it not smell nice?*

Of a book, *livre, m.*

EXAMPLES.

il est bien écrit *it is well written*
 vous a-t-il amusé? *has it amused you?*

EXERCISE.

(Look at) that magnificent building; *it unites grace to*
Regarder —lique bâtiment m. réunir art. grâce f. art.
 beauty, and elegance to simplicity. Ignorance is jealous,
 = f. art — f. art. = f. — f.
 presumptuous, and vain: *it sees difficulties in nothing, (is*
présomptueux — ne de = f. pl. à rien ne
 surprised) at nothing, and stops at nothing. Let us gather
s'étonner de ne s'arrêter à cueillir
 these roses; what a sweet fragrance they exhale! Never judge
*quel * parfum —ler*

from appearances; they are often deceitful: the wise man examines them, and does not decide upon them, till he has had time to fix his judgment.

sur art. f. se décider d'après f. que lorsque art. m. de fixer

AUSSI, ENCORE, PEUT-ETRE, ETC. FOLLOWED BY THE INTERROGATIVE FORM:

222. Although placing the personal pronoun *subject*, after the verb, is the sign of a question, there are some cases in which custom requires or admits, that the pronoun should be so placed, though no interrogation is meant.

1st. After *aussi*, and on that account, and for this reason, *peut-être*, may be, perchance; *encore*, and yet, besides, with all that; *toujours*, still; *en vain*, in vain, *du moins*, at least.

2nd. In narrations, as in English, said I, *dis-je*; replied I, *répondis-je*.

3rd. In the imperative mood of *pouvoir*, *devoir*.

EXAMPLES.

puissé-je le voir !	oh that I may see him
dussé-je mourir	were I to die

OF PRONOUNS BEING DIRECT AND INDIRECT REGIMEN.

223. It has been shown (No. 170), in speaking of the government of the substantive, that the use of the proper preposition before the noun, or the using no preposition at all, entirely depends upon the knowledge of the regimen of the verb; and it has also been shown, by comparison, that the two languages are far from agreeing in that respect, because the French equivalent of an active English verb, may be neuter, and vice versa; *obéir*, for instance, requires *à*, *obéir à la loi*, whereas in English *to obey*, is active, *to obey the law*. Now, if instead of a noun, a pronoun is used, as the object of a verb, it must necessarily be put in the same case as the noun itself would; pains must therefore be taken to ascertain whether the governing verb requires a direct or an indirect case. *I resist him*, for example, must not be rendered by *je le résiste*, but by *je lui résiste*, because *to resist a man*, is, in French, *résister à un homme*. *I want them*, cannot be *je les ai besoin*, but *j'ai besoin d'eux*, because *to want a person*,

is *avoir besoin d'une personne*. Again, the English make no difference between the *direct* and *indirect* case; *him*, *her*, *them*, serve for both; not so in French, *him* is rendered by *te* or *lui*, not indifferently, but according to circumstance. Thus we say, *I see him*, *je le vois*, and *I send him a book*, *je lui envoie un livre*, because *him* being the case direct or accusative of *I see*; so is *le* of *je vois*; but *him* is the indirect case or dative of *I send*, and book the direct case, consequently *lui* must be used in French, to show that difference.

Having endeavoured to point out the different manner of using personal pronouns in French and in English, we will now give rules as to the place they are to occupy in French, as direct and indirect cases of the verb.

In order to give every assistance to the learner, the proper preposition will be placed after the infinitive, in the exercises.

224. The pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *lui*, *leur*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *nous*, *vous*, *y* and *en*, are generally placed before verbs.

EXAMPLES.

Il me dit	He tells me	Je lui parle	I speak to him
Je le vois	I see him	J'y songerai	I will think of it
Je les écoute	I listen to them	J'en suis ravi	I am delighted at it

EXERCISE.

(As soon as) he had explained to us the maxims of Socrates,
Dès que *expliquer ind-5* * *Socrate*
 he said: you see that it is not without reason he (is looked
ind-3 *ce* *que on* *regarde*
 upon) as truly wise. He was continually saying to me, yet a little
un vrai *ind-2* *
 patience, and you will disarm even envy itself. You have
de *désarmer* * art. *être*,
 no doubt (some ground) for reproaching him with faults; but is
sans doute *fonde* *à reprocher inf-1* *des m pl.*
 there (any man) on earth that is exempt (from them)? To
quelqu'un art. *qui subj-1* *en* *pour*
 please her, you must never flatter her. To abandon ones self to
lui *falloir* *flatter*
 metaphysical abstractions, is to plunge into an unfathomable
des métaphysique 2 — 1 *ce* * *se jeter* *sans fond* 2
 abyss.
abîme m. !

225. The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, lui, eux, elle, and elles*, are placed after verbs, when they are preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

cela dépend de moi	that depends on me
je pense à toi	I think of thee
on s'occupe trop de soi	we think too much about ourselves
que dites-vous d'eux ?	what do you say of them.

EXERCISE.

My father loved me so tenderly, that he thought of none but
*ind-2 ne penser ind-2 à * que*
me, (was wholly taken up) with me, and saw none but me, in the
*ne s'occuper ind-2 que de voir ind-2 * que à*
 universe. If you wish to obtain that favour, you must speak to him
*de * falloir*
himself. It depended on you to excel your rivals, but you
ind-2 de de l'emporter sur
would not. Philip, father of Alexander being advised
vouloir ind-4 Philippe 2 comme on conseil-
to expel from his dominions a man, who (had been speaking)
lait à de chasser état m. pl. parler ind-6
 ill of him ; I shall take care not to do that, said he, he would go and
*se garder bien * * * en ind-3 aller **
 slander me every where.
médire de

225* In imperative phrases, when affirmative, *moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, eux, elle, elles, le, la, les, y* and *en*, are placed after the verb ; but, when negative, *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur, ie, la, les, y, and en*, are placed before it.

EXAMPLES.

dites-moi	tell me	ne me dites pas	do not tell me
donnez-m'en	give me half	ne m'en donnez	do not give me
la moitié	of it	point	any
songez-y sérieusement	think of it seriously	n'y songez pas	do not think of it

REMARK. If the pronouns *me, te, moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, eux, elle, elles, le, la, les, y* and *en*, intervene betwixt an imperative and an infinitive, *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur, ie, la, les, y, and en*, are used when the imperative is without a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

venez me parler,	come and speak to me
va te faire coiffer	go and get thy hair dressed.

But *moi, toi*, are used if the imperative have a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

laissez-moi faire
fais-toi coiffer

let me do it
get thy hair dressed

226. If *moi, toi*, when placed after the imperative, be followed by the pronoun, *en*, they are changed into *me, te*.

EXAMPLES.

donnez-m'en | retourne-t'en | go back

227. When there are two imperatives joined together by the conjunctions *et, ou*, it is more elegant to repeat the pronoun before the second verb.

EXAMPLES.

polissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez | polish and re-polish it continually
gardez-les, ou les renvoyez | keep them or send them back

EXERCISE.

Listen to me, do not condemn me, without a hearing. Com-
éouter * * m'entendre se
plain thou hast just cause of complaint; however, do not com-
plaindre un sujet plainte
plain too bitterly injustice of mankind. Give some. Do
amèrement art. homme pl.
not give any. Think of it. Do not think of it. Repeat to them
y
continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in the
World. Do not repeat to them continually the same things. Ac-

knowledge him as your master; and obey him. Tread upon
reconnaître pour lui marcher
that spider and kill it.
araignée f. écraser

228. When several pronouns accompany a verb, *me, te, se, nous, vous*, must precede the others: *le, la, les*, come before *lui, leur*; *y* comes before *en*, and *en* is always the last.

EXAMPLES.

Prêtez-moi ce livre; je vous le
rendrai demain; si vous me
le refusez, je saurai m'en pas-
ser | lend me that book; I will return
it to you to-morrow; if you refuse
me, I can make shift without it.

aurez-vous la force de le leur dire ? will you have resolution enough to tell it them ?
 il n'a pas voulu vous y mener he would not take you there
 je vous y en porterai I will bring you some there

EXCEPTION. In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les,* are always placed first, as, *donnez-le-moi,* give it me, *offrez-la-lui,* offer it to him ; *conduisez-les-y,* conduct them thither ; and *moi* is placed after *y,* as *menez-y-moi,* carry me thither : but *nous* must precede *y,* as, *menez-nous-y* carry us thither.

EXERCISE.

You wish to make a present to your sister. (There is) a beautiful fan you should present her with it. (How many) *événement* m. *devoir* cond-1 *offrir* lui * *que de* people are there without merit and without occupation, who (would) *gens* * * *ne tenir* be mere nothings) in society, did not gaming introduce *à rien* cond-1 art. *si* art. *jeu* m. *introduire* ind-2 them (into it). I shall speak to them (about it) and give you a faithful account of it. It is certain that old Geronde has re- *y* *en* *je rendre* ind-7 exact 2 *compte* m. 1 art. fused his daughter to Valere ; but because he does not give her to him, it does not follow. That he will give her to you. *s'en suivre*

229. **REMARK.** The word *même* is sometimes added to the pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, eux, lui, elle, elles,* to assist in specifying more particularly the person or thing spoken of.

EXAMPLES.

ils se sont perdus eux mêmes they have ruined themselves
 le monde estime bien des choses the world prizes many things
 qui, en elles-mêmes, sont fort which, in themselves, are worth-
 méprisables less

DIRECTIONS ON THE USE OF THE PROPER PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

230. The direct regimen *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les,* m. f. are used when the verb is active, i.e. when it requires no preposition before the noun which it governs, such as *donner un livre.*

EXAMPLES.

je le donne I give it
 vous le donnerez you will give it
 ne le donnez pas do not give it

Aimer une personne.

EXAMPLES.

je le donne	<i>we love him</i>
aimez-la	<i>love her</i>
il ne les aime pas	<i>he does not like them</i>
aimez-moi	<i>love me</i>

INDIRECT, (*dative.*)

231. The indirect *me, te, lui, m. f. nous, vous, leur, m. f.* are used when the preposition *à* must be placed before the noun they represent.

Thus, *donner une chose à une personne.*

EXAMPLES.

nous lui donnerons un gâteau	<i>we will give her a cake</i>
lui avez-vous envoyé la lettre ?	<i>have you sent him the letter ?</i>
ne me donnez pas de vin	<i>do not give me any wine</i>

À moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, serve also to express the dative ; but in four cases only.

1st. After *penser, aller, courir, venir, boire, en avoir.*

EXAMPLES.

nous penserons à lui	<i>we will think of him</i>
ils coururent à elle	<i>they ran to her</i>
en avez-vous à moi ?	<i>are you speaking to me ?</i>

2nd. After reflected verbs,

adressez-vous à lui	<i>apply to him</i>
---------------------	---------------------

3rd. After *c'est.*

EXAMPLES.

c'est à moi à y aller	<i>it is my turn to go</i>
est-ce à vous à parler ainsi ?	<i>is it for you to speak to me in this manner ?</i>

4. When there are two datives

EXAMPLES.

je l'enverrai à vous et à elle	<i>I will send it to you and her</i>
il parlait à mon frère et à moi	<i>he was speaking to my brother and me</i>

232. *Y* is used in speaking of things in all cases, and is of both genders and numbers.* Thus, of a *lettre f.* we say.

mettez-y l'adresse	<i>put the direction to it</i>
j'y ajouterai un mot	<i>I will add a word to it</i>

* There are one or two exceptions mentioned in the following pages.

Of a project, *projet* m.

EXAMPLES.

vous n'y réfléchissez pas assez
pensez-y un peu plus

you do not sufficiently think upon it ?
consider it a little more

Of threats, menaces, f. pl.

EXAMPLE.

je n'y fais aucune attention

I do not mind them

EXERCISE.

1. He has been speaking *to them* with such energy, as has astonished *them*.

2. Women ought to be very circumspect ; for a mere appearance is sometimes more prejudicial *to them* than a real fault.

3. He comes up to me with a smiling air, and pressing my hand, says : My friend, I expect you to-morrow at my house.

4. He said *to me* : Wilt thou ever torment thyself for advantages, the enjoyment 2 of which I could not render *thee* more happy ? Cast thy eyes round thee : see how every thing smiles on *thee*, and seems to invite *thee* to prefer a retired and tranquil life to the tumultuous pleasures of a vain 2 world 1.

5. The ambitious man * agitates, torments, and wastes *himself* to obtain the places or the honours to which he aspires ; and when he has obtained *them*, he is still dissatisfied.

6. I have known *him* since his childhood, and I always loved *him* on account of the goodness of his temper.

7. That woman is always engaged in doing good works : you see *her* constantly consoling the unhappy, relieving the poor, reconciling enemies, and promoting the happiness of every one around *her*.

8. The more you live with men, the more you will be convinced that it is necessary to know *them* well before you * form a connection with them.

9. Enjoy the pleasures of the world, I consent *to it* ; but never give yourself up *to them*.

(1.) Such energy as, *une force qui*.

(2.) Mere, *simple* ; to be more prejudicial, *faire plus de tort*.

(3.) Comes up with, *aborder de* ; pressing, *server* ; my hand, *la main* ; says, *il me dit* ; at my house, *chez moi*.

(4.) Incessantly, *sans cesse* ; advantages, *des biens* ; could, *savoir*, cond-1 ; cast, *porter* ; thy, *art* ; smiles, *sourire à*.

(5.) Destroys, *consumer* ; to, *pour*.

(6.) Have known, *connaître*, ind-1 ; loved, ind-4 ; on account, *cause* ; the goodness of his, (*his good*) ; temper, *caractère*, m.

(7.) In, *à* ; works, *œuvres*, f. pl. ; constantly, *sans cesse* ; consoling, etc. inf-1 relieving, *assister* ; promoting, *faire* ; every one around her, *tout ce qui l'environne*.

(8.) Live, ind-7 ; be convinced, *se convaincre*, ind-7 ; before, *avant de* ; form a connection, *vous lier*.

(9.) Enjoy, *jouir de* ; give yourself up, *se livrer*.

233. The regimen indirect *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*, (the genitive and ablative cases) are used when the proposition *de* comes before the noun they represent. Thus,

Parler d'une personne, d'un homme.

EXAMPLES.

nous ne parlons pas de lui *we do not speak of him*

Dépendre de son père.

EXAMPLES.

je dépends de lui *I am dependant on him*
ils n'ont pas le droit de me parler *they have no right to speak to me*
ainsi, puisque je ne dépends pas *in this manner, I am not their*
d'eux. *dependant.*

234. *En* is used in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers; as *s'abstenir de vin*.

EXAMPLES.

le vin m'est contraire, je m'en *wine is bad for me I will abstain*
abstiendrai *from it*
vous devriez vous en abstenir *you should abstain from it*

EXERCISE.

1. He was suddenly taken ill of the cholera and died of it.
2. He is so absurd that every one laughs at him.
3. What reason has he to complain of me, what harm have I done him?
4. His fortune is very large, it is true, but he does not know how * to enjoy it.
5. Those are things which make a deep impression on the mind, I will remember them as long as I live.
6. Your things are exactly as they were when you left, no one has used them.
7. If you meet my brother, have the goodness to tell him that I shall want him at 5 o'clock precisely.
8. She must not be uneasy; we will think about her, but she must have patience.

- (1.) *Avoir une attaque soudaine de*, ind-4; *mourir de*, ind-4.
- (2.) *Ridicule, se moquer de*.
- (3.) *Se plaindre de*; harm, mal.
- (4.) It is true, *j'en conviens*; to enjoy, *jouir de*.
- (5.) Those are things, *ce sont de ces choses*; to remember, *se souvenir de*; to live, *vivre*, ind-7.
- (6.) Things, *affaires*; as they were, *dans l'état où elles étaient*; to leave, *partir*, ind-4; to use, *se servir de*, ind-4.
- (7.) To tell, *de dire*; to want, *avoir besoin de*.
- (8.) To be uneasy, *s'inquiéter*; to think about, *s'occuper de*; to have patience, *patienter*.

PARTICULAR USE OF *y* AND *en*.

235. These two pronouns are very frequently used in French, in cases when they have no equivalent in English, or at least when it is almost ever understood; they may be then considered as relative personal pronouns.

EN.

En stands for *some of them, some of it, any of them, one, any*, and refers to a noun antecedently named.

EXAMPLES.

si vous n'avez pas de manteau, if you have no cloak, I will lend
je vous *en* prêterai un you one
avez-vous un canif? oui, j'en ai have you got a pen-knife? yes, I
un have
ces oranges sont fort bonnes, these oranges are very good, send
envoyez-m'en deux douzaines me two dozen
à propos de fleurs, j'en ai de talking of flowers, I have beautiful
bien belles à vous montrer ones to show you

Y.

236. *Y* has generally been called an adverb because it may commonly be rendered by *these, here*, always understood; but it is frequently used for *in it, into it*, when it relates to *things* as well as to *places*.

EXAMPLES.

cette affaire est fort obscure, je this is a very obscure affair, I can
n'y conçois rien make nothing of it
cela ne m'intéresse nullement, this does not at all concern me, I
je n'y suis pour rien have nothing to do with it
si vous allez au spectacle, je serai if you go to the play, I shall be
bien aise d'y aller avec vous glad to go with you

Y is used in speaking of persons with the verb *se fier*, and with *penser* in reference to a dead person.

EXAMPLES.

c'est un honnête homme, vous he is honest man, you may trust
pouvez vous y fier to him
il est mort, on n'y pense plus he is dead, no one thinks of him any
more

EXERCISE.

1. Do you want a pen? here is a very good one.
2. He was in the garden then, but I do not think he is now.
3. Since you like game, I will send you a basket.
4. As to their father, although he has not been dead six months, they think no more of him.

Y

5. I never could play chess ; I cannot imagine, what pleasure you find in it.

(1.) To want, *falloir à* ; here is, *voici*.

(2.) *Être*, ind-2 ; he is, *être*, subj-1.

(3.) Game, *gibier*, m.

(4.) Although, etc., *quoiqu'il y ait six mois qu'il est mort*.

(5.) Could, *pouvoir*, ind-4 ; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

USE OF *ce* INSTEAD OF *il, elle, ils, elles*, IN DESCRIPTIVE AND EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

237. When we speak in reference to an object already named, *il, elle, ils, elles*, are used according to its gender and number ; but when we define objects, when we express what they are, *ce* must be used, as well of persons as of things, thus :

qu'est-ce que c'est que ce grand
bâtiment, est-ce une église ?
non, c'est la maison commune
savez-vous qui est ce monsieur ?

what is that large building, is it a
church ?

no, it is the town-hall

do you know who that gentleman
is ?

oui, c'est un Allemand
chacun admire Cicéron et Dé-
mosthènes ; ce sont les plus
grands orateurs de l'antiquité

yes, he is a German

every one admires Cicero and De-
mosthenes, they are the greatest
orators of antiquity

EXERCISE.

1. White negroes are degenerated blacks, but they are not a distinct species of men.

2. I will not trouble myself about them, they are ungrateful children.

3. What flowers are those ? they are tulips just come from Holland ; they cost me ten guineas each.

4. I do not know him, but they tell me he is a clever architect.

5. Have you noticed this box ? it is a snuff-box which belonged to my grand-father.

6. She is certainly the prettiest girl in the room.

(1.) Distinct *particulière*.

(2.) To trouble one's self about, *s'occuper de*.

(3.) What, etc., *comment nommez-vous ces fleurs-là ?* just, *fraîchement*.

(4.) They tell me, *on me dit que*.

(5.) Noticed, *remarqué* ; to belong, *appartenir*, ind-2.

(6.) Certainly, *bien certainement*.

CASES WHERE THE PRONOUNS *lui, eux, elle, elles*,

MAY APPLY TO THINGS.

238. The personal pronouns *lui, elle, eux, elles*, after some prepositions, apply to persons only. Thus in speaking of a woman, we must say : *je m'approchai d'elle, je m'assis*

près d'elle ; but in speaking of a table : *je m'en approchai, je m'assis auprès.*

However with the prepositions *avec, après, à de, pour, en*, etc. *lui, elle, eux, elles*, may be applied to things. Thus it is correct to say of a river.

EXAMPLE.

cette rivière est si rapide quand elle déborde, qu'elle entraîne avec elle tout ce qu'elle rencontre ; elle ne laisse après elle que du sable et des cailloux.

that river is so rapid when it overflows, that it carries away every thing it meets with in its course it leaves nothing behind but sand and pebbles.

Of an enemy's army.

EXAMPLE.

nous marchâmes à elle

we marched up to them

Of things, reasons, truth, virtues and vices personified, etc. as :

ces choses sont bonnes d'elles-mêmes

these things are good in themselves

j'aime le vérité au point que je sacrifierais tout pour elle

I love truth to that degree, that I would sacrifice every thing for it

ces raisons sont solides en elles-mêmes

those reasons are solid in themselves

239. After the verb, *être*, they are applied only to persons, and likewise when they are followed by the relatives *qui* and *que*, as : *c'est à elle, c'est d'elles que je parle, c'est elle-même qui vient.*

The same may be said of the pronoun *eux*, which is also generally applied to persons only, yet custom allows us to say,

ce chien et ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir, je n'aime qu'eux ; eux seuls sont mon amusement, je ne songe qu'à eux

this dog and these birds are all my pleasure, I love nothing but them ; they alone are my diversion, I think of nothing else

240. *Lui* and *leur* are generally applied to persons, but are sometimes used in speaking of animals, plants, and even inanimate objects with *donner, rendre, être redevable, devoir*, etc. as :

ces chevaux sont rendus, faites leur donner un peu de vin

those horses are exhausted, give them a little wine

ces orangers vont périr, si on ne leur donne de l'eau

these orange-trees will die unless they have a little water

ces murs sont mal faits, on ne leur a pas donné assez de talus

those walls are badly built, they have not sufficient inclination



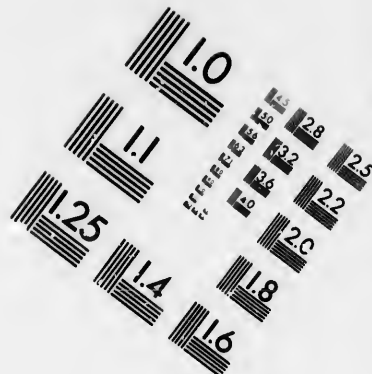
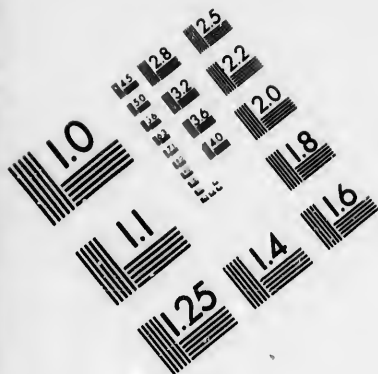
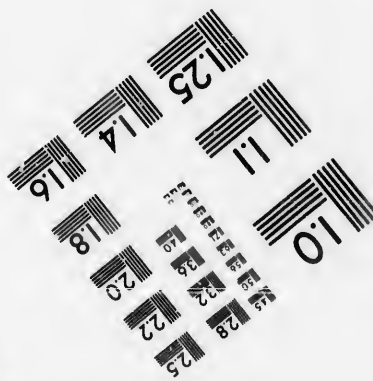
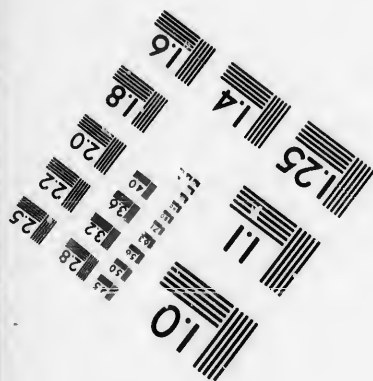
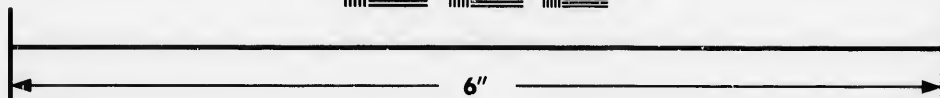
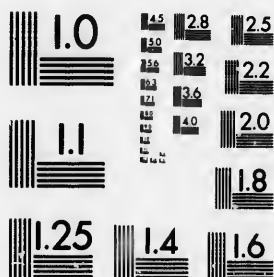


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.5
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0
11.2
12.5
14.0
16.0
18.0
20.0
22.4
25.0
28.0
31.5
36.0
40.0
45.0
50.0
56.0
63.0
71.0
80.0
90.0
100.0

1.0
0.5
0.25
0.125
0.063
0.031
0.016
0.008
0.004
0.002
0.001

EXERCISE.

1. Virtue is the first of blessings ; it is *from it* alone we are to expect happiness.
2. The labyrinth had been built upon the lake Meris, and they had given *it* a prospect proportioned to its grandeur.
3. Mountains are frequented on account of the air one breathes on them : how many people are indebted *to them* for the recovery of their health ?
4. War brings in its train numberless evils.
5. It is a delicate affair *1* which must not be too deeply investigated, it must be lightly passed over.
6. I have had my house repaired, and have given *it* an appearance quite * new.
7. Those trees are too much loaded : strip *them* of part of their fruit.
8. This book cost me a great deal, but I am indebted *to it* for my knowledge.
9. Self-love is captious ; we, however, take *it* for our * guide ; *to it* are all our actions directed, and *from it* we take counsel.
10. These arguments, although very solid in themselves, yet made no impression upon him, so strong a *'ie* is habit.
11. These reasons convinced me, and *by them* I formed my decision.
12. I leave you the care of that bird, do not forget to give *it* water.

- (1.) Blessings, *bien* ; are, *avoir*.
- (2.) Had been built, *on bâtit*, ind-6 ; prospect, *vue*.
- (3.) On account, *à cause* ; breathes, *respirer* ; on them, *y* ; are indebted for, *devoir* ; recovery, *rétablissement*.
- (4.) Brings, *entraîner* ; in its train, *avec elle* ; numberless, *bien de*.
- (5.) Affair, *matière* ; must, ind-1 ; be deeply investigated, *approfondir*, inf-1 ; be passed, *glisser* ; over, *dessus*.
- (6.) Have had, *faire*, ind-4 ; appearance, *air*.
- (7.) Strip, *ôter à* ; of part, *une partie*.
- (8.) A great deal, *cher* ; knowledge, *instruction*.
- (9.) We (*it is it that we*) ; to it, (*it is to it that we direct all, etc.*) ; direct, *rapporter* ; from it, (*and it is from it that etc.*)
- (10.) No, *ne aucun* ; so strong, etc. (*so much habit is a, etc.*) habit, *habitude*.
- (11.) And from, (*and it is from them that*) ; by, *d'après* ; formed my decision, *se décider*.

DIFFICULTY RESPECTING THE SUPPLYING PRONOUN *le* EXPLAINED.

241. *LE* is used in French to supply the place of an antecedent phrase, of a substantive or an adjective. In such case, its equivalent in English is *so* or *it*, which is almost ever understood.

EXAMPLES.

je suis père, et vous *le* serez
aussi un jour

I am a father and some day, or
other, you will be (one) also

ils ne sont pas aussi riches que
nous le sommes
je le ferai, si je le puis

they are not so rich as we are (it,
i. e. rich)
I will do it, if I can (do it)

LE, thus used, is declined in some cases, and not in others.

When *le* supplies the place of a substantive, it then assumes the gender and number of that substantive, as :
Madame, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant ?—Oui, je la suis ; Madam, are you the mother of that child ?—Yes, I am.
Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes dont Monsieur m'a parlé ?—Oui, nous les sommes.

EXERCISE.

1. The laws of nature and decency oblige us equally to defend the honor and interest of our parents, when we can do *it* without injustice.
2. We ought not to condemn, after their death, those that have not been condemned during their life.
3. Is that your idea ?—Can you doubt that it is ?
4. Are you Mrs. Such-a-one ?—Yes, I am.
5. Are those your servants ?—Yes, they are.
6. Ladies, are you glad to have seen the new piece ?—Yes, we are.
7. I, a * slave ! I, born to command ! alas ! it is but too true that I am so.
8. She was jealous of her authority, and she must be so.
9. Was there ever a girl more unhappy, and treated with more ridicule than I am ?
10. You have found me amiable : why have I ceased to appear so to you ?
11. Have we ever been so quiet as we are ?
12. Madam, are you married ?—Yes, I am.
13. Madam, are you the bride ?—Yes, I am.

- (1.) Decency, *bienséance*.
- (2.) We ought, *falloir* ; condemned, *le*.
- (3.) Idea, *pensée* ; that it is, *ce être*, subj-1.
- (4.) Mrs. *madame* ; such-a-one, *un tel*.
- (5.) Those, *ce là* ; they, *ce*.
- (6.) Ladies, *mesdames*.
- (7.) Slave, *esclave* ; but, *ne que*.
- (8.) Must, *devoir*, ind-2.
- (9.) With more ridicule, *plus ridiculement*.

242. When *le* supplies an antecedent, adjective or a verb, it is undeclined.

EXAMPLES.

je le ferai si je le puis (le faire) *I will do it if I can.*

Madame, êtes-vous enrhumée ?—Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous contentes de ce discours ?—Oui, nous le sommes.

Fut-il jamais une femme plus malheureuse que je le suis ?

REMARK. The *le* is also undeclined, when substantives are used adjectively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous mère ? —Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes ? —Oui, nous le sommes.

Elle est fille, et le sera toute la vie.

But it is declined if the adjectives be used substantively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous la malade ? —Oui, je la suis.

Therefore this question : *êtes-vous fille de M. le duc !* is to be answered, *oui, je le suis* ; but this, *êtes-vous la fille de M. le duc ?* it is to be by *Oui, je la suis*.

REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns in the first and second persons, when the subject, must be repeated before every verb, if each of them is in different tenses. It is always even preferable to repeat them, when the verbs are in the same tense.

EXAMPLES

je soutiens et je soutiendrai toujours	<i>I maintain, and (I) will always maintain</i>
vous dites, et vous avez toujours dit	<i>you say, and (you) have always said</i>
accablé de douleur, je m'écriai, et je dis	<i>overwhelmed with sorrow, I exclaimed and (I) said</i>
nous nous promenions sur le haut du rocher, et nous voyions sous nos pieds, etc.	<i>we were walking upon the summit of the rock, and we saw under our feet, etc.</i>

In all cases, these pronouns must be repeated, though the tenses of the verbs be the same, if the first is followed by a regimen, or accusative.

EXAMPLE.

vous aimerez le seigneur votre Dieu, et vous observerez sa loi	<i>you shall love the Lord your God, and (you shall) observe his law.</i>
--	---

244. The pronouns of the third person, when the subject, are hardly ever repeated before verbs, except those verbs be in different tenses.

EXAMPLES.

la bonne grâce ne gâte rien ; elle ajoute à la beauté, relève la modestie, et y donne du lustre	<i>a graceful manner spoils nothing ; it adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it lustre</i>
il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien	<i>he never was good for any thing, and never will be</i>
il est arrivé ce matin, et il repartira ce soir	<i>he is arrived this morning, and (he) will set off again this evening</i>

EXERCISE.

1. My dear child, *I* love you, and *I* shall never cease to love you : but it is that very love that *I* have for you which obliges me to correct you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve it.

2. *I* heard and admired these words, which comforted me a little, but my mind was not sufficiently free to make him a reply.

3. *Thou* art young, and *thou* aimest, no doubt, at the glory of surpassing thy comrades.

4. God has said : *you* shall love your enemies, bless those that curse you, do good to those that persecute you, and pray for those who slander you. What a difference between these morals and those of philosophers !

(1.) Correct for, *réprendre de*.

(2.) Heard, *écouter* ind-2; words, *discours*, sing.; my mind., etc. (*I had not the mind*, etc.); sufficiently free, *assez libre*; to make a reply, *répondre à*.

(3.) Aimest at, *aspirer à*; surpassing, *l'emporter*, etc.

(4.) Slander, *calomnier*; between, *de*; morals, *morale*, f.; and that, *à celle*.

However, perspicuity requires the repetition of the pronoun, when the second verb is preceded by a long incidental phrase, as : *il fond sur son ennemi, et, après l'avoir saisi d'une main victorieuse, il le renverse, comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moissons qui dorent la campagne.*

EXERCISE.

1. *He* took the strongest cities, conquered the most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful empires.

2. *He* takes a hatchet, completely cuts down the mast which was already broken, throws it into the sea, jumps upon it amidst the furious billows, calls me by my name, and encourages me to follow him.

4. *He* marshals the soldiers, marches at their head, advances in good order towards the enemy, attacks and routs them, and after having entirely routed them, (he) cuts them to pieces.

(1.) Overturned, *renverser*.

(2.) Completely cuts down, *achever de couper*; jumps upon it *s'élan- cer dessus*; billows, *onde*.

(3.) Marshals, *ranger en bataille*; routs, *renverser*; entirely routed *achever de mettre en désordre*; cuts, *tailler*

245. A personal pronoun, when the *subject*, must be repeated before verbs, when passing from an affirmation to a negation, and *vice versa*, or when the verbs are joined by a conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

EXAMPLES.

il veut, et il ne veut pas
il donne d'excellents principes,
parce qu'il sait que les progrès
ultérieurs en dépendent

he will and he will not
he lays down excellent principles,
because he knows that upon them
depends all further progress

il donne et reçoit
il ne donne ni ne reçoit

he gives and receives
he neither gives nor receives.

Pronouns, when the regimen, or the object are repeated before any verb.

l'idée de ses malheurs le poursuit, le tourmente et l'accable

the idea of his misfortunes pursues (him), torments (him), and overwhelms him

il nous ennuie et nous obsède sans cesse.

he wearies (us) and besets us unceasingly.

EXCEPTION. They are not repeated before such compound verbs as express the repetition of the same action, and when the verbs are in the same tense, as :

Je vous le dis et redis, il le fait et refait sans cesse.

EXERCISE.

1. It is inconceivable how whimsical she is; from one moment to another *she* will and *she* will not.

2. The Jews are forbidden to work on the sabbath; *they* are as it * were * locked in slumber; *they* light no fire, and carry no water.

3. For nearly a week *she* has neither eaten nor drunk.

4. The soldier was not repressed by authority, but stopped from satiety and shame.

(1.) (*She is of a whimsical cast inconceivable*) whimsical cast, *bizarrière* f.

(2.) (*It is forbidden to*), forbidden, *défendre*; sabbath, *jour du sabbat*; locked, *enchaîné*; slumber, *repos*; light, *allumer*.

(3.) For, *depuis*; nearly, *près de*, a week, *huit jours*; has eaten . . . drunk, *ind-1*.

(4.) Repressed, *réprimer*; stopped, *s'arrêter*, *ind-3*; from, *par*.

RELATION OF THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON TO A NOUN EXPRESSED BEFORE.

246. The pronouns of the third person, *il ils, elle, elles, le, la, les*, must always relate to a noun, whether subject or regimen, taken only in a definite sense, antecedently expressed; but they must not be applied to a subject and regimen, at the same time.

EXAMPLES.

la rose est la reine des fleurs,
aussi est-elle l'emblème de la
beauté

the rose is the queen of flowers;
therefore it is the emblem of beauty

j'aime l'ananas; il est exquis

I like the pine-apple; it is delicious

EXERCISE.

1. It is taste that selects the expressions, that combines, arranges, and varies *them*, so as to produce the greatest effect.

2. Horace answered his stupid critics not so much to instruct *them*, as to shew their ignorance, and let *them* see that they did not even know what poetry was.

3. Man embellishes nature itself: he cultivates, extends, and polishes it.

4. The Messiah is expected by the Hebrews; *he* comes and calls the Gentiles, as had been announced by the prophecies; the people that acknowledges *him* as come, is incorporated with the people that expected *him*, without a single moment of interruption.

(1.) So as to, *de manière à ce qu'elles*, subj. 1.

(2.) Stupid, *sot*; not so much, *moins*; as to, *pour*; show, (*to them*); their, etc.; let see, *faire entendre*; was *c'était que*.

(4.) Gentiles, *Gentil*; (the prophecies had announced it); acknowledges, *reconnaître*; with, *à*; without, *sans qu'il y ait*; single, *seul*.

But the two following sentences would be equivocal:

Racine a imité *Euripide*, en tout ce qu'il a de plus beau dans sa *Phèdre*

le légat publia une sentence d'interdit; il dura trois mois

Racine has imitated *Euripides* in all that he has most beautiful in his *Phædra*

the legate published a sentence of interdiction; it lasted three months

because, in the first of these two sentences, *il* may relate, either to *Racine*, or to *Euripides*; and, from the construction of the second sentence, *il*, relating to *interdit*, appears also to relate to *légat*. Again, it is not altogether correct to say:

nulle paix pour l'impie; il la cherche, elle fuit

no peace for the wicked: he seeks it, it flies

Because, from the construction, the pronouns *la* and *elle* seem to relate to *nulle paix*, whereas their royal antecedent is the substantive *paix*, but without the negative *nulle*.

EXERCISE.

1. Poetry embraces all sorts of subjects; *it* takes in every thing that is most brilliant in history; *it* enters the fields of philosophy; *it* soars to the skies; *it* plunges into the abyss; *it* penetrates to the dead; *it* makes the universe its domain; and if this world be not sufficient, *it* creates new ones, which *it* embellishes with enchanting abodes, which *it* peoples with a thousand various inhabitants.

2. Egypt aimed at greatness; and wished to * strike the eye at a distance, always pleasing *it* by the justness of proportion.

3. Egypt, satisfied with its own territory, where every thing was in abundance, thought not of conquests; *it* extended itself in another manner, by sending colonies to every part of the globe, and with them politeness and laws.

(1.) Subjects, *matière*; takes in *se charger de*; that is, *y avoir de*; (in) the fields, soars to, *s'élancer dans*; plunges, *s'enfoncer*; to chez;

(its domain of the universe); be sufficient, *suffire*; ones, *monde*; enchanting, *enchanté*; abodes, *demeure*; various, *divers*.

(2.) Greatness, *grand*; wished, *vouloir*; eye, pl.; at a distance, *dans l'éloignement*; (in) pleasing, *contenter*.

(3.) Was in abundance, *abonder*; thought of, *songer à*; in, *de*; by, *en*; to, *par*; part of the globe, *terre*.

ON THE PRONOUN *soi*.

247. *Soi* is generally accompanied by a preposition, and is used in phrases, where there is an indeterminate pronoun either expressed, or understood: *on doit rarement parler de soi*; *il est essentiel de prendre garde à soi*. In this case, it is the regimen indirect; but it may be employed without a preposition.

1. With the verb *être*, as: *en cherchant à tromper les autres, c'est souvent soi qu'on trompe* or *on est souvent trompé soi-même*, in attempting to deceive others, we frequently deceive ourselves. In this situation it is the subject

2. After *ne que*, or by apposition, as :

<i>n'aimer que soi, c'est n'être bon à rien</i>	<i>to love only ourselves, is being good for very little.</i>
<i>penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même</i>	<i>to think in this manner, is to blind one's-self</i>

It is, in these examples, the regimen; but when *de soi* and *en soi* are used in a definite sense, in speaking of things, they mean *de sa nature* and *dans sa nature*.

EXERCISE.

1. To excuse in *one's-self* the follies which one cannot excuse in others, is to prefer being a fool *one's-self* to seeing others so.

2. To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a weakness; but to be too much satisfied (*with ourselves*) is (a) folly.

3. We ought to despise no one: how often have we needed the assistance of one more insignificant than *ourselves*?

4. If we did not attend so much to *ourselves*, there would be less selfishness in the world.

5. Vice is odious in *itself*.

6. The loadstone attracts iron (to *itself*.)

(1.) Follies, *sottises*; others, *autrui*; prefer, *aimer mieux*; fool, *sot*; to seeing, *que de voir*; so, *tel*.

(3.) We ought, *falloir*, ind-1; how often, *combien de fois*; we, *on*; needed the assistance, *n'avoir pas besoin*; insignificant, *petit*.

(4.) We, *on*; attend to, *s'occuper de*; selfishness, *égoïsme*.

(6.) Loadstone, *aimant*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

248. Possessive pronouns, conjunctive as : *mon, ma, mes* ; relative, as : *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or are related.

Its, their, (his, her,) which, in English, are used in reference to things, are rendered by *son, sa, ses*, according as the case requires ; thus, in speaking of England, we say :

*son parlement est le sanctuaire
de la plus sage politique
son roi n'a de pouvoir que pour
faire le bien
elle envoie ses flottes dans toutes
les mers*

*her parliament is the seat of the
wisest policy
her king possesses power only to do
good
she sends her fleet in all the seas*

249. But, sometimes by the construction of the phrase, *ITS* may be turned by *of it* ; then, it is not rendered by a possessive pronoun, but by the personal pronoun *en*, which, as it has been explained, is placed before the verb. Thus, speaking again of England, we say :

*tout enfin contribue à m'en faire
aimer le séjour ; j'en admire
surtout l'exacte police, en
même temps que les lois m'en
paraissent extrêmement sages*

*in short every thing conspires to
make me love its sojourn ; I par-
ticularly admire the strictness of
her police, at the same time that
her laws appear to me extremely
wise*

*regardez cet arbre, n'en admi-
rez-vous pas la fraîcheur ?*

*look at that tree, do you not admire
its freshness ?*

EXERCISE.

1. A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt ; for which reason, there never was a people that preserved so long *its* customs, *its* laws, and even *its* ceremonies.

2. Solomon abandons himself to the love of women : *his* understanding fails, *his* heart weakens, and *his* piety degenerates into idolatry.

3. That superb temple was upon the summit of a hill : *its* columns were of Parian marble, and *its* gates of gold.

4. Laocoon is one of the finest statues in France : not only the whole, but all *its* features, even the least, are admirable.

5. The Thames is a magnificent river : *its* channel is so wide and so deep, below London Bridge, that several thousands of vessel lie at their ease in it.

6. This fine country is justly admired by foreigners : *its* climate is delightful, *its* soil fruitful, *its* laws wise, and *its* government just and moderate.

7. The trees of that orchard have sun enough, yet *its* fruits are but indifferent.

8. The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, *its* mouth is at Havre-de-Grace.

9. The pyramids of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk, and the justness of *their* proportions.

10. Egypt alone could erect monuments for posterity : *its* obelisks are to this day, as well for *their* beauty as for *their* height, the principal ornaments of Rome.

11. History and geography throw mutual light on each other : a * perfect knowledge of *them* ought to enter into the plan of good education.

(1.) Phenomenon, *prodige*; for which reason, *aussi*; a *de* preserved; subj-3.

(2.) Understanding, *esprit*; declines, *baisser*; weakens, *s'affaiblir*.

(3.) Sumrait, *haut*; hill, *colline*; Parian, *de Paros*.

(4.) In, *qu'il y ait en*; the whole, *l'ensemble*; even, *jusqu'à*.

(5.) Magnificent, *superbe*; channel, *lit*; below, *au-dessous de*; lie at; être à; their, *art.*; in it, *y*.

(6.) Justly, *avec raison*; soil, *sol*; the verb être must be repeated.

(7.) Have sun enough, *être bien exposé*; but indifferent, *assez mauvais*.

(8.) Mouth, *embouchure*; Havre, *le Havre*.

(9.) Both, *également et*; bulk, *masse*; and *et par*.

(10.) Egypt alone could, *il n'appartenait qu'à l'Égypte de*; erect, *élever*; to this day, *encore aujourd'hui*; as well for, *autant par*; height, *hauteur*.

(11.) Throw mutual light, etc. *s'éclairer l'une par l'autre*; of them (their.)

250. *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, which, in English, are used with *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are expressed, in French, by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*.

EXAMPLES.

ce cheval est-il à vous?

is this horse yours?

on dirait à l'entendre que le monde est à lui.

he talks as if the world were his

251. The forms *my father's, your uncle's*, etc., etc. are also rendered *à mon père, à votre oncle*.

EXAMPLE.

la maison que nous habitons est *the house we inhabit is Mr. B's*.
(ou appartient) à Monsieur B.

EXERCISE.

The carriage is not theirs, it is their uncle's. If this house was mine I would sell it, for I do not like its situation. You have no right to give what is not yours. This pretty dog is my sister's, I have promised to take care of it in her absence.

No right, *le droit de*.

In, *pendant*.

252. *Les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres*, are used to express one's family, relations, clients, etc.

EXAMPLES.

il est allé en Amérique avec tous *he has gone to America with all*
 les siens *his family*
 toi et les tiens vous avez toujours mal parlé de moi *you and your whole race have always spoken ill of me*

253. *A friend of yours, a horse of mine*, and such phrases, are turned in this manner in French, *un de vos amis, un de mes chevaux.*

EXAMPLE.

c'est un de ses tours *this is a trick of his*

254. in speaking to a person of his own relations, politeness requires that we put: *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai rencontré Monsieur votre père *I met your father*
 Messieurs vos frères sont-ils arrivés ? *are your brothers come ?*

255. Custom requires the use of the possessive pronoun before the names of relations. in addressing them.

ma sœur, venez ici quo je parle *come here, I want to speak*
 mon oncle, quand partez-vous ? *when do you go ?*

EXCEP. *Papa, maman*

256. Possessive pronouns are placed before every noun of the same sentence.

EXAMPLE.

mon père et ma mère sont venus *my father and mother have come.*
 donnez-moi mon habit et mon chapeau. *give me my coat and hat.*

257. When two adjectives qualify the same noun, the pronoun possessive is repeated, if they express opposite or

* *This is no business of yours*, must be rendered by *ce n'est pas là votre affaire*, or *cette affaire là ne vous regarde pas*. This is applicable to any sentence which may not be turned, like the above, by *this is one of his tricks*; *that brother of yours* must, therefore, be turned by *your brother*.

† Custom admits *mes père et mère*, My father and mother, instead of *mon père et ma mère*; it admits also. *ses père et mère, vos père et mère.*

incompatible qualities; it is not repeated, in the contrary case.

EXAMPLE.

- je lui ai montré mes beaux et mes vilains habits. *I showed him both my fine and ugly dresses.*
 je lui ai montré mes beaux et magnifiques habits. *I showed him my beautiful and magnificent dresses.*

EXERCISE.

1. I fear neither you nor yours.
2. He left France with all his family at the time of the revolution.
3. A friend of mine told me this morning that Parliament is to be dissolved.
4. That son of yours will give you a great deal of trouble.
5. Is your mother returned from the country?
6. Allow me to congratulate you on your brother's appointment.
7. Cousin, I am glad to see you, when did you return?
8. I believe that his father and mother are dead.

- (1.) *Ne craindre ni.*
- (2.) *To leave, abandonner.*
- (3.) *Dire, ind-4; is to be, etc., que l'on va dissoudre le.*
- (4.) *Trouble, embarras.*
- (5.) *Appointment, nomination.*
- (7.) *When did you, etc., depuis quand êtes vous de retour?*

PARTS OF THE BODY, PHYSICAL AND INTELLECTUAL FACULTIES.

258. There is peculiarity of construction with regard to these, which require particular attention and notice. The French in speaking of them do not, generally, make use of the possessive pronoun, but of the definite article.

EXAMPLES.

- j'ai mal à la tête*, *I have a pain in my head.*
 j'ai reçu un coup de feu au bras *I received a shot in my right arm.*
 droit, *he has lost his senses.*
 il a perdu l'esprit. *better lose one's life than one's*
 mieux vaut perdre la vie que *honour.*
 l'honneur. *my head aches*
 la tête me fait mal,

259. When speaking of any thing done to any part of the body, or of the understanding, such as *to wash one's hands*,

* The reason of this custom is that there cannot be any ambiguity as to whose head is aching, and, consequently, that the definite article is sufficient.

to improve one's mind, a pronoun, in the dative case, is placed in conjunction with the verb, in order to show whose hands, whose understanding are thus affected ; *me laver les mains, lui former l'esprit*, to wash my hands, to form his mind.

If the thing is done to ourselves, and by ourselves, the verb is reflected.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je me lave les mains,</i>	<i>I wash my hands, or I wash the hands to myself.</i>
<i>tu te coupes le doigt,</i>	<i>you cut your finger.</i>
<i>il se rase la barbe,</i>	<i>he shaves his beard.</i>
<i>nous nous rinçons la bouche,</i>	<i>we wash our mouths.</i>
<i>nous nous sommes lavé les mains,</i>	<i>we have washed our hands.</i>
<i>vous vous formez l'esprit,</i>	<i>you improve your mind.</i>
<i>ils s'enrichissent la mémoire,</i>	<i>they enrich their memory.</i>

260. If the thing is done to another, the indirect regimen, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, are used with the verb, according to the rules 224, 225, and 225*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>vous me blessez la main,</i>	<i>you hurt my hand, or you hurt the hand to me.</i>
<i>tenez-moi la tête,</i>	<i>hold my head.</i>
<i>vous lui avez cassé le bras,</i>	<i>you have broken his arm</i>
<i>ils nous ont fendu la tête,</i>	<i>they split our head.</i>
<i>vous ai-je marché sur le pied ?</i>	<i>did I tread on your foot ?</i>
<i>on leur a arraché les yeux,</i>	<i>they tore their eyes out.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Our carriage passed over his body, and broke two ribs.
2. Writing so long makes* my hand ache.
3. She was so shocked by the sudden death of her husband, that she lost her mind.
4. Come give me your hand, let us be friends.
5. Do not cut your nails with my penknife, you will spoil it.
6. Where did he lose his leg ?
7. You have not washed your face.
8. Who has cut your hair ?
9. Have you not cut your finger ?
10. Last year, I sprained my foot, by leaping over a ditch.
11. The wound is so bad that they say they will be obliged to amputate his leg.
12. She took my hand, and put a pretty ring on my little finger.

- (1.) To pass over, *passer*.
- (2.) A force d'écrire ; to ache, *faire mal*.
- (3.) Shocked, *affecté* ; to lose *en perdre*, ind-3.
- (5.) Nails, *ongles*.

- (6.) To lose, *perdre* ind-4.
 (8.) Hair, *les cheveux*.
 (10.) To sprain, *se donner une entorse à*.
 (11.) They will be obliged, *il faudra*.
 (12.) Put, *mettre*, ind-3; on, *à*.

261. If however, the part of the body spoken of is the subject of the verb, it is then necessary to use the possessive pronoun, otherwise there would be imbriguity.

EXAMPLES.

je vois que ma jambe enfle, *I see my leg is swelling.*
 son esprit succomba, *his mind failed.*

In some other cases, it is also necessary to use the possessive pronoun for the sake of clearness.

EXAMPLES.

il lui donna sa main à baiser, *he gave him his hand to kiss.*
 elle a donné hardiment son bras au chirurgien, *she courageously presented her arm to the surgeon.*

EXERCISE.

1. In this interview, they made each other presents; she gave him *her* portrait, and he gave her his finest diamond.

2. A young surgeon preparing to bleed the great Condé, this prince said to him smiling, do not you tremble to bleed me? I, my lord, no, certainly; it is not I, it is you who ought to tremble. The prince, charmed with the reply, immediately gave him *his* arm.

(1.) Interview, *entrevue*; made each other, *se faire mutuellement*.

(2.) Preparing, *se disposer*; bleed, *saigner*; smiling, *d'un air riant*; it is not I, (it is not to me); it is you, (it is to you); who ought to, *de*; reply, *repartie*. £

262. Although verbs which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person generally remove every kind of amphibology, yet custom authorizes some familiar expressions, although the possessive pronoun seems to be redundant, as :

il se tient ferme sur ses pieds, *he stands firm upon his feet.*
 je l'ai vu, de mes propres yeux, *I have seen it with my own eyes.*

When speaking of an habitual complaint, the possessive pronoun is also properly used, as :

Sa migraine l'a repris, *his head-ache is returned.*

EXERCISE.

1. Whatever he may do, he always finds himself safe.

2. Can you still doubt the truth of what I tell you? Would you ask a stronger proof than that I give you, it is that I heard it, yes, heard it with *my* own ears.

3. *My* gout does not allow me a moment's repose.
 4. It is in vain that I exhort you to work and study; *your* idleness, that cruel disease under which you labour, renders useless all the exhortations of friendship.

- (1.) Finds himself, *se retrouver*; safe, *sur ses jambes*.
 (2.) Can, *cond-1*; doubt, *douter de*; ask, *exiger*.
 (3.) Allow, *laisser*.
 (4.) It is in vain that I, *je* avoir beau; you labour, *qui vous travaille*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

For their concord with the noun, see Nos. 70, 71, 72.

263. *ÊTRE*, used in conjunction with *ce*, must be in the singular, although relating to the first and second person plural.

EXAMPLES :

<i>c'est moi qui l'ai dit,</i>	<i>it is I who said so</i>
<i>ce sera vous qui en jouirez,</i>	<i>you will be the person to enjoy it.</i>
<i>est-ce nous qui vous avons trompé ?</i>	<i>is it we who deceived you ?</i>
<i>ce n'est pas lui que j'ai envoyé chercher,</i>	<i>he is not the person I sent for.</i>

264. With regard to the third person plural, the verb *être* is sometimes plural, sometimes singular; this difference does not arise from any rule or principle, but merely from custom, and, as it cannot be explained, an example of each case is given for reference.

C'EST with *eux, elles*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>ce sont eux,</i>	<i>est-ce eux ?</i>
<i>ce sont elles,</i>	<i>est-ce elles ?</i>
<i>ce furent eux,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce furent-eux ?</i>
<i>ce seront eux,</i>	<i>sera-ce eux ou elles ?</i>
<i>que ce soient eux,</i>	<i>seraient-ce eux ou elles ?</i>
<i>que ce fussent eux,</i>	

265. *C'EST* with nouns substantives.

EXAMPLES.

<i>ce sont les français qui,</i>	<i>sont-ce les français qui,</i>
<i>c'étaient les gardes qui,</i>	<i>étaient-ce les gardes ?</i>
<i>ce seront les anglais qui,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce seront les anglais ?</i>
<i>ce furent les allemands qui,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce furent les allemands ?</i>
<i>ce sont ses élèves, qui lui ont fait ce présent,</i>	<i>his pupils have made him this present.</i>
<i>on dit que ce seront les grenadiers, qui feront le service du château,</i>	<i>they say the grenadiers are to be on duty at the castle.</i>
<i>sont-ce les honneurs que vous cherchez ?</i>	<i>is it honours that you seek ?</i>

266. *CE* is used before *être*, instead of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, in reference to a noun, singular or plural, antecedently named, at the beginning of the sentence which declares the nature or the actions of such a noun. Thus, having mentioned the Phenicians, we say :

ce furent eux qui inventèrent l'écriture. *they were the inventors of writing.*

lisez Homère et Virgile : ce sont les plus grands poètes de l'antiquité. *read Homer and Virgil : they are the best poets of antiquity.*

la douceur l'affabilité et une certaine urbanité, distinguent l'homme qui vit dans le grand monde ; ce sont là les marques auxquelles on le reconnaît. *gentleness, affability, and a certain urbanity, distinguish the man that frequents polite company ; these are marks by which he may be known.*

avez-vous lu Platon ? c'est un des plus beaux génies de l'antiquité. *have you read Plato ? he is one of the greatest geniuses of antiquity.*

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or by a substantive taken adjectively, *il* or *elle*, must be used.

lisez Démosthènes et Cicéron ; ils sont très-éloquents, *read Demosthenes and Cicero ; they are very eloquent.*

j'ai vu l'hôpital de Greenwich ; il est magnifique et digne d'une grande nation, *I have seen Greenwich Hospital ; it is superb and worthy of a great nation.*

compteriez-vous sur Valère ? ignorez-vous qu'il est homme à ne jamais revenir de ses premières idées ? *would you rely upon Valère ? do you not know that he is a man who will never abandon his first opinions ?*

267. A distinction is made in English, as to the singular or the plural, in sentences like these, *this is my horse, these are my children* ; *ce* is again used in French before both numbers.

EXAMPLES.

c'est-là mon cheval, *ce sont mes enfans*

or,

voici or voilà mon cheval, *voici mes enfans,*

EXERCISE.

1. It is *we* who have drawn that misfortune upon * us, through our thoughtlessness and imprudence.

2. *It was* the Egyptians that first observed the course of the stars, regulated the year, and invented arithmetic.

3. Peruse attentively Plato and Cicero : *they are* the two philosophers of antiquity who have given us the most sound and luminous ideas upon morality.

pronouns
or plural,
ce which
. Thus,

f writing.

: they are
ity.

d a certain
the man
company;
which he

he is one off
cf anti-

ective, or
be used.

d Cicero;
ul.

Hospital;
orthy of a

Valère? do
e is a man
don his first

e singular
rse, these
fore both

rough our

the stars,

vo philoso-
luminous

4. If you are intended for the pulpit, read over and over again Bourdaloue and Massillon: *they are* both very eloquent; but the aim of the former is to convince, and that of the latter to persuade.

5. Are not these the gloves you bought yesterday? This is not my house. These are not my books; mine are in another room.

(1.) Have drawn, *s'altirer*; thoughtlessness, *légèreté*.

(2.) First, *les premiers*; stars, *astres*,

(3.) Peruse, *lire*; sound, *sain*; morality, *morale*.

(4.) Are intended for, *se destiner à*; pulpit, *chaire*; read over and over again, *lire et relire sans cesse*; aim but.

(5.) To buy, *acheter*, ind-4.

268. CE is much used in conjunction with *qui*, *dont*, *à quoi*, *que*, in the sense of *what*, *that which*, *that thing which*. It is used in speaking of things only, and the adjective which relates to it, is of the masculine gender singular.

EXAMPLE.

ce qui flatte est plus dangereux *what flatters is more dangerous*
que ce qui offense, *than what offends.*

Ce, joined to the relative pronouns, *qui*, *que*, *dont* and *quoi*, has, in some instances, a construction peculiar to itself. Both *ce* and the relative pronoun that follows it, form with the verb which they precede, the subject of another phrase, of which the verb is always *être*. Now, *être* may be followed by another verb, an adjective, or a noun.

When *être* is followed by another verb, the demonstrative *ce* must be repeated, as :

ce que j'aime le plus, c'est d'être *what I like most is to be alone.*
seul

When followed by an adjective, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated, as :

ce dont vous venez de me parler *what you have been mentioning to*
est horrible *me is horrid.*

When *être* is followed by a substantive, the demonstrative may either be repeated, or not, at pleasure, except in the case of a plural, or of a personal pronoun, Thus :

ce que je dis, est la vérité, or c'est *what I say is true*
la vérité

ce qui m'indigne, ce sont les in- *what provokes me, are the injuries*
justices, qu'on ne cesse de *which are continually commit-*
faire *ted*

ce qui m'arrache au sentiment *what alleviates the grief that op-*
qui m'accable, c'est vous *presses me, is you*

EXERCISE.

1. *What is astonishing is not what is pleasing.*
2. *What the miser thinks least of, is to enjoy his riches.*
3. *What pleases us in the writings of the ancients, is to see that they have taken nature as a model, and that they have painted her with noble simplicity.*
4. *What that good king has done for the happiness of his people, deserves to be handed down to the remotest posterity.*
5. *What constitutes poetry is not the exact number and regular cadence of syllables: but it is the sentiment which animates every thing, the lively fictions, bold figures, * beauty and variety of the imagery: it is the enthusiasm, fire, impetuosity, force, a something in the words and thoughts which nature alone can impart.*
6. *What we justly admire in Shakespeare are those characters always natural and always well * sustained.*
7. *What keeps me attached to life, is you, my son, whose tender age has still need of my care and advice.*

- (1.) To be astonishing, *étonner*; to be pleasing, *plaire*.
- (2.) What, (that to which); miser, *avare*.
- (3.) As a, *pour*.
- (4.) Deserves, *être digne*; to be handed down, *être transmis*; remotest, *la plus reculée*.
- (5.) Constitutes, *faire*; exact, *fixe*; lively, *vif*; imagery, *image*, pl.; a something, *un je ne sais quoi*; words, *parole*; impart, *donner*.
- (6.) We, *on*; justly, *avec justice*; natural, *dans la nature*; sustained, *soutenu*.
- (7.) Keeps attached, *attacher*; care advice, pl.

269. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles* are frequently used in conjunction with the relatives *qui, dont, auquel, à laquelle, and que* in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, or whom, whichever, whoever, and that which, etc.*

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>celui qui</i> no pense qu'à lui seul, | <i>he who</i> thinks of nobody but him- |
| dispense les autres d'y penser | self, excuses others from think- |
| | ing of him. |
| <i>votre nouvelle</i> est plus sûre que | <i>your intelligence</i> is more authentic |
| <i>celle</i> qu'on débitait hier, | than that which was circulated |
| | yesterday |
| <i>celui qui</i> arrivera le premier | <i>whichever</i> comes first shall have it. |
| l'aura, | |
| ce n'est pas là <i>celui</i> dont nous | <i>this is not the one</i> we were speak- |
| parlions, | ing of. It was not this we were |
| | speaking of. |

In these two cases it is applied both to persons and things.

270. *Celui, celle, etc.* are also followed by a genitive case.

EXAMPLE.

cette maison ne m'appartient pas, *this house does not belong to me,*
 c'est celle de mon oncle, *it is my uncle's.*

271. WHICH, standing for *that which, a thing which*, and having a sentence for its antecedent, is rendered by *ce qui* in French.

EXAMPLES.

il a plu toute la nuit, *it rained all night, which prevented our going out this morning.*
 ce qui nous a empêchés de sortir ce matin

272. *This day week, this day month, this day twelve months*, are rendered thus : *d'aujourd'hui en huit, dans huit jours, dans un mois, au bout d'un an.*

273. *Celui* is sometimes omitted, and this turn gives strength and elegance to the expression, as :

qui veut trop se faire craindre, *he who wishes to make himself too much feared, seldom makes himself beloved.*
 se fait rarement aimer

274. *Ceci* and *cela* apply only to things, and when they have not been named, and are mentioned in an indeterminate manner.

ne touchez pas à cela

do not touch that

However, in the familiar style, custom authorizes us to say, in speaking of one person individually, or of many collectively ; *cela est heureux ! cela croupit dans la fange ; cela est gueux et fier, etc.*

EXERCISE.

1. *Whichever of you* shall be found to excel the others both in mind and body, shall be acknowledged king of the island.

2. These are admirable pictures ; *these* are after the manner of Rubens, and *those* after the manner of Van-Huisum.

3. Why are the statues of the most celebrated modern sculptors, notwithstanding the perfection to which the arts have been carried, so much inferior to *those* of the ancients ?

4. *He* whose soul, glowing, as it were, with divine fire, shall represent to himself the whole of nature, and shall breathe into objects that spirit of life which animates them, those affecting traits which delight and ravish us, will be a man of real genius.

5. *He that* judges of others by himself, is liable to many mistakes.

6. *He that* is easily offended, discovers his weak side, and affords his enemies an opportunity of taking advantage of it.

7. *He who* loves none but himself, deserves not to be loved by others.

8. I have shown my flowers to you, but you have not seen my sister's yet.

9. I cannot lend you my horse to-day, but you may ride my brother's, he is not going out.

10. Come this day week, and I will pay you.

- (1.) Be found to excel the other, *on juger vainqueur*; both in, *et pour* (repeated.)
 (2.) These are, *voilà de*; picture, *tableau*; are after, *être dans*; manner, *genre*.
 (3.) Are, (to be placed before *so much inferior*); have been carried (active voice), with, *on*; inferior, *au-dessous*.
 (4.) Glowing with, *enflammé de*; as it were, *pour ainsi dire*; the whole of, *tout*; shall breathe into, *répandre sur*; affecting, *touchant*; delight, *séduire*; real, *vrai*.
 (5.) By, *d'après*; liable, *exposé*; mistake, *méprise*.
 (6.) Is offended, *s'offenser*; weak side, *faible*; affords, *fournir à*; of taking advantage, *profiter*.

275. It signifying *that*, *that thing*, is also expressed by *cela*.

vous rentrez tard, et cela lui déplaît,

you keep late hours, and it displeases him.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

276. *Qui*, when it is the subject, relates equally to persons and things, of both numbers and genders.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme qui joue perd son temps, *the man who games loses his time.*
le livre, qui plaît le plus, n'est, *the book which pleases most is not*
pas toujours le plus utile, *always the most useful.*

But when *qui* is the regimen, that is, the object or accusative of a verb, or when it is governed by a preposition, such as *de*, *à*, *sans*, *par*, etc, it can only be used of persons, or of things personified.

EXAMPLES.

quand on est délicat et sage dans *he who is wise and discriminate in*
ses goûts, on ne s'attache pas, *his choice, does not form an attach-*
sans savoir qui l'on aime, *ment, without knowing whom he*
loves.
l'homme à qui appartient ce beau *the man to whom this fine garden*
jardin est très-riche, *belongs, is very rich.*
de qui parlez-vous ? *of whom do you speak ?*
à qui en enverrez-vous ? *to whom will you send some ?*
ne voulez-vous pas me dire *will you not tell me whom you were*
avec qui vous étiez ? *with ?*
qui inviterons-nous ? *whom shall we invite ?*

277. *Qui* for *whom* is particularly used in interrogative sentences. In any other, as in the second of these examples, *auquel* may properly be substituted to it.

278. *What*, as the object or direct regimen of an interrogative verb, is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

que faites-vous ?
que dit-il ?

what are you doing ?
what is he saying ?

279. When the regimen indirect is expressed by the preposition *de*, then *dont* should be preferred to *de qui*. It is better to say : *la femme dont vous parlez*, than *de qui*; however, when the verb expresses transmission from one individual to another, *de qui* must be used, as,

celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle the person from whom I had that intelligence.

280. Relative pronouns must not be separated from their antecedent, when that antecedent is a noun.

EXAMPLE.

un jeune homme qui est docile a young man who is obedient to
aux conseil qu'on lui donne, the advice that is given him
et qui aime à en recevoir, aura and who loves to receive some,
infailliblement du mérite, will infallibly acquire merit.

REMARK. In some phrases, *qui* may be separated from the substantive by several words, when these words serve to qualify the substantive, and are so connected with it, as to give the idea of one thing only, as

Il a fallu, avant toute chose, vous faire lire dans l'écriture sainte, l'histoire du peuple de Dieu, qui fait le fondement de la religion.

This sentence is very correct, because as *du peuple* determines the kind of history, and *de Dieu* the kind of people, the mind necessarily goes back to the substantive *histoire*, to which the incidental phrase, *du peuple de Dieu*, refers.

EXERCISE.

1 I will show you a watch, which did not cost me half so much as yours, and which is a great deal better,

2. If you buy any furniture, buy that which will be durable, in preference to that which is elegant only.

3. Could I ever expect that a man for whom I made such sacrifices, and to whom I devoted so much of my time, would thus abandon me in the moment of need ?

4. I cannot name the man whom I have this report from, but I can tell you he is trustworthy.

5. Whom is this letter for ?

6. Pray, what have you done with the pencil case which was upon the table this morning ? I cannot find it any where.

7. That man is truly happy who can be content with his lot.

[1.] *Cost, coûter*, ind-4 ; half so much as, *la moitié de la*; to be better, *valoir mieux*.

(2.) Any furniture, *des meubles*. m.; in, *de*; only, *ne-que*.

(3.) *Pouvoir*, ind-2; to expect, *s'attendre que*; to make, *faire*, ind-4; such, *tant de*; to devote, *consacrer*, ind-4; so much of, *une si grande partie de*; would abandon, *abandonner*, subj-3; in the, *au*.

(4.) Cannot, *savoir*, cond-1; man, *personne*, f.; trust-worthy, *digne, de confiance*.

(6.) Pray, *dites-donc*; with, *de*; to be, *être*, ind-2; any where, *nulle part*.

[7.] To be content with, *se contenter de*.

280. *Qui*, may likewise be separated from its antecedent, by the verb, when the antecedent is a pronoun used as the regimen direct, or object of the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Il la trouva *qui* pleurait à chaudes larmes, he found her crying bitterly.
je le vois *qui* joue, I see him playing.*

281. A whole sentence may also be the antecedent of the relative pronoun *qui*.

EXAMPLE.

ceux-là ne sont pas les plus mal-heureux, qui se plaignent le plus, those are not the most unhappy, who complain the most.

But it is more according to grammar to say, *ceux qui se plaignent le plus ne sont pas les plus malheureux*. Observe also that the first manner of construing would be incorrect without the addition of the particle *là*.

EXERCISE.

1. A young man *who* loves vanity of dress, like a woman, is unworthy of wisdom and glory; glory is only due to a heart *that* knows how * to * suffer pain and trample upon pleasure.

2. Thyself, O my son, my dear son, thou * thyself *that* now enjoyest a youth so cheerful and so full of pleasure, remember that this delightful age is but a flower *which* will be 1 withered 3 almost as soon 2 as blown.

3. Men pass away like flowers, *which* open in * the morning, and at night are withered and trampled under foot.

4. You must have a man *that* loves nothing but truth and you, *that* will speak the truth in spite of you, *that* will force all your entrenchments; and that indispensable being is the very man whom you have sent into exile.

5. We perceived him waiting for us, quietly sitting under the shade of a tree.

* See manner of rendering the English participle present, No. 398, 399.

(1.) Vanity of dress, à se parer vainement; trample upon, fouler aux pieds.

(2.) Cheerful, vif; full of, féconde en; remember, se souvenir; delightful, bel; withered, sécher; blown, éclose.

(3.) Open, s'épanouir; and (which); at night, le soir; withered, flétrir; under, à; foot, art. pl. pied, m.

(4.) You must have, il vous falloir; nothing but, ne que; will speak, will force, subj-1; entrenchments, retranchement; indispensable being, être si utile; very man, homme même; sent into exile exiler.

(5.) Waiting for, (who waited), attendre, ind-2. under, à.

282. The relative *qui* must always have reference to a noun taken in a determinate sense.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme est un animal raisonnable, qui etc. Il me reçut avec une politesse, qui, etc.

But we cannot say, *l'homme est animal raisonnable, qui, etc. Il me reçut avec politesse, qui, etc.*

283. When the antecedent of *qui* is the subject of a verb in the negative or the interrogative form, the following verb must be in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

il n'a point de livre, qui ne soit de son choix, he has not a book that is not of his own selecting.
y a-t-il ville dans le royaume qui soit plus favorisée? is there a city in the kingdom that is more favoured?

284. *Que* relates both to person and things. It is always the regimen direct, and always follows its antecedent.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme que je vois, the man whom I see.
les pêches que je mange, the peaches which I eat.

The antecedent of *que* may also be a noun, qualified or determined by several words, which separate it from the relative; as

Qu'est-ce qu'une armée?—c'est un corps animé d'une infinité de passions différentes, qu'un homme habile fait mouvoir pour la défense de la patrie.

EXERCISE.

1. He received us with such goodness, civility and grace, as charmed us, and made us forget all we had suffered.

2. There is no city in the world where there are more riches and a greater population.

3. Is there a man can say, I shall live till to-morrow?

4. He has not a friend but would make for him every kind of sacrifice.

5. He is surrounded by *enemies*, who are continually watching him, and would be very glad to detect him in a * fault.

6. In his retreat, he lives like a *philosopher* who knows mankind and mistrusts them.

7. The pine-apple is a sort of fruit which, in Europe, ripens only in hot-houses.

8. That man is a sort of *pedant*, who takes words for ideas, and facts confusedly heaped up for knowledge.

(1.) Civility, *politesse*; such, *une*; as, *qui*.

(2.) There are, *y avoir*, subj-1.

(3.) Man, (who); *can*, subj 1. to live, *vivre*.

(4.) But, *qui ne*; would make, subj-2.

(5.) Like a, *en*; philosopher, *sage*; mistrusts, *se défier de*.

(6.) Pine apple, *ananas*; hot-houses, *serre chaude*.

(8.) Heaped up, *entasser*; knowledge, *savoir*.

285. Observe that the relative *whom*, *which*, *that*, being the object or accusative, are almost ever understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French.

EXAMPLES.

les hommes que nous avons vus, *the men we saw.*
le vin que nous avons bu, *the wine we drank.*

286. There are some cases in which it is customary to use *que* for *à qui*, or *dont*, as: *C'est à vous que je parle; de la façon que j'ai dit la chose.* *That* is used in the same way, in English it is to you *that* I speak; in the way *that* I did the thing. See 295.

287. *Lequel* and *dont* relate both to persons and things. But *lequel*, *duquel*, ought never to be used either as a subject or object, except in cases when a distinction is to be made between objects of the same nature, and to avoid ambiguity; for whenever the sense is clear, *qui* or *que* must be used, thus:

la Tamise *dont* le lit, and not, *de laquelle*.
le prince *dont* la protection, and not, *duquel*.

288. Sometimes, *duquel*, *de laquelle*,* (common to persons and things,) and *de qui*, are separated from their antecedent by an other noun substantive governed by a preposition.

* It is generally allowed, in English, to place the preposition governing *which* last; *The thing you think of*, for *the thing of which you think*; that must not be the case in French, the preposition must be first, *la chose à laquelle vous pensez*.

EXAMPLES.

la Tamise dans le lit de laquelle *the Thames in the bed of which*
 mille poissons se jouent, *myriads of fish are playing.*
 le prince à la protection duquel *the prince to whose protection I*
 je dois ma place, *owe my place.*

EXERCISE.

1. The God whom the Hebrews and Christians have always served, has nothing in common with the deities full of imperfection and even of vice worshipped by the rest of the world.

2. The Epic Poem is not the panegyric of a hero who is proposed as a * pattern, but the recital of great and illustrious actions, which are exhibited for imitation.

3. The good which we hope for * presents itself to us, and disappears like an empty dream, which vanishes when we awake: to teach us, that the very things which we think we hold fast in our hands, may slip away in an instant.

4. Plato says, that, in writing, we ought to hide ourselves, to disappear, to make the world forget us, that we may present nothing but the truths we wish to impress.

She is a woman on whose character nothing can be said.

6. The sheep to the spoils of which men are indebted for their garments.

7. Religion, whose maxims we despise, is, however, our greatest comfort in adversity.

8. The grand principle on which the whole turns is, that all * the world is but one republic, of which God is the common father, and in which every nation forms, as it were, one great family.

9. Homer, whose genius is grand and sublime like nature, is the greatest poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.

10. The celebrated Zenobia, whose noble firmness you have admired 1, preferred dying with the title of queen, rather * than accept the advantageous 2 offers 1 which Aurelian made her.

11. The Alps on the summit of which the astonished eye discovers perpetual snow and ice, present, at sun-set, the most striking and most magnificent spectacle.

12. A king, to whose care we owe a good law, has done more for his own glory, than if he had conquered the universe.

(1.) (That the rest of the world worshipped.)

(2.) Is proposed, *on propose*; as, *pour*; pattern, *modèle*; is exhibited. *on donne*; imitation, *exemple*.

(3.) Good, *bien*; disappears, *s'envoler*; empty, *vain*; vanishes, etc. *le réveil fait évanouir*; we * hold fast, *tenir le mieux*; in our hands *; slip away, *nous échapper*.

(2.) We, *on*; to make the world forget, *se faire oublier*; that we may present but, *pour ne produire que*; wish, *vouloir*; impress, *persuader*.

(5.) She is, *c'est*; character, *compte*; nothing can be said, *on ne saurait rien dire*.

(6.) Spoils, *dépouille*, f.; to be indebted, *devoir*.

(7.) However, *pourtant*.

(8.) Turns, *rouler*; every, *chaque*; as it were, *comme*.

(9.) Preferred, *aimer mieux*; than, *que* *à*.

(10.) Perpetual, *éternel*; snow, ice, pl.; sun-set, *soleil couchant*; striking, *imposant*.

(11.) Care, *solicitude*.

283. *Lequel, laquelle*, are used in conjunction with prepositions, in speaking of things, but *qui* is preferable, in speaking of persons.

EXAMPLE.

la place à laquelle il aspire, the situation he aims at.
les rois à qui on doit obéir, the kings to whom one must obey.

EXERCISE.

1. 'The ambitious man * sees nothing but pleasure in the possession of the places to which he aspires which so much eagerness, instead of seeing the trouble that is inseparable from them.

2. Kings, whom religion makes it our duty to obey, are, upon earth, the true representation of the providence of God.

(1.) (To) whom; makes it our duty to, *faire un devoir de*; representation, image.

290. *Quoi* is said of things, and when speaking in a vague or indefinite manner; that is, when the object is not specifically named. It is generally preceded by a preposition, and rendered by *what* in English.

EXAMPLE.

c'est de quoi je m'occupe sans cesse, this is what I am always thinking about.
à quoi pensez-vous? what are you thinking of?
avec quoi fait-on l'encre? what is ink made of?

Quoi is sometimes used relatively to a thing named and of which the gender is known; but *lequel, laquelle* would be more correct.

EXAMPLE.

la chose à quoi on pense, the thing of which they are thinking.
voilà les conditions sans quoi la chose ne peut se faire. these are the terms without which the thing cannot be done.

WHOSE.

291. *Whose* is, *whose* are, are generally rendered by *à qui* est, *à qui* sont, or *à qui* appartiennent, *à qui* appartiennent, etc. etc.

EXAMPLES.

whose house is this? I cannot tell à qui est cette maison? je ne saurais vous dire à qui elle appartient.
yeu whose it is,

whose gloves are these ?

God, whose we are,

God, whose creatures we are,

that man, on whose account I came, disappointed me,

à qui appartiennent ces gants ?

Dieu à qui nous sommes,

Dieu dont nous sommes les créatures.

cet homme pour le compte duquel, à cause de qui, pour l'affaire duquel je suis venu, m'a trompé.

292. Which is used antecedently, as a sort of demonstrative pronoun, in which case it is rendered as follows :

I had some business, on which account (on account of which) I came to town, j'avais quelques affaires pour lesquelles, à cause desquelles, ou de quoi, je suis venu à Londres.

he might come to-night, in which case we had better not go out, il pourrait se faire qu'il viût ce soir, dans ce cas-là nous serons bien de ne pas sortir.

I had determined to go to Paris, for which purpose I saved all the money I could, j'avais résolu d'aller à Paris; à ce dessein, je faisais toutes les épargnes possibles.

EXERCISE.

1. Do you know whose beautiful carriage this is ?
2. This dog was found this morning in the stable, and no one knows whose it is.
3. That man, whose slave you have been, despises you, and will cast you off when you are no longer useful to him.
4. His poor daughter, on whose account he had undertaken a journey to Italy, died at Genoa, almost immediately on landing.
5. He wished to get up early, in which intention he had desired his servant to call him up at four o'clock.

(1.) Savoir.

(2.) To find, trouver ; pass. voir, ind-2 ; no one, personne.

(3.) To cast off, abandonner ; you are, être, ind-7 ; no longer, ne plus.

(4.) A journey to, le voyage de ; to die, mourir, ind-3 ; on landing, après avoir débarqué

(5.) To wish, avoir le désir de, ind-2 ; to desire, dire à, ind-6 ; to call up, de réveiller.

293. Où, d'où, par où, relate only to things. They are never used, but when the nouns, to which they refer, express some kind of motion, or rest, at least metaphorically they stand for auquel, duquel, thus :

voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend, that is the end he aims at
c'est une chose d'où (de laquelle) it is a thing upon which the public
dépend le bonheur public, happiness depends
les lieux par où (lesquels) il a the places through which he has
passé, passed.
par où commencerons-nous (par quelle chose ?) what shall we begin with ?

- par où a-t-il passé ? (par quel endroit, quel chemin) *which way has he passed ?*
 par où, êtes-vous venu ? *which way have you come ?*
 d'où venez-vous ? (de quel endroit, de quelle place) *whence are you coming ? what place are you coming from ?*

EXERCISE.

1. *What* a young man, who begins the world ought principally to attend to, is not to give it a high opinion of his understanding, but to gain numerous friends by the qualities of his heart.
 2. A youth, passed in idleness, effeminacy, and pleasure, lays up for * us nothing but sorrow and disgust in old age: this, however, is *what* we little think of when we are young.
 3. There is nothing *by which* we are more affected than the loss of fortune, although, being frail and perishable by its nature, it cannot contribute to our happiness.
 4. A grove *in which* I defy the ardours of the dog-days, a retired alley *where* I can meditate in peace, a high hill *whence* my eye extends over immense plains, are the places *where* I spend the happiest moments of my life.
 5. No one could tell which way he had come into the room.
 6. This is what we are to begin with.
- (1.) To what, *ce à quoi* ; begins, *entrer dans* ; to attend, *s'attacher* ; it *y* ; opinion, *idée* ; understanding, *esprit* ; to gain, *se faire* ; numerous *beaucoup de*.
 (2.) Idleness, *inutilité* ; effeminacy, *mollesse* ; pleasure, *volupté* ; lays up, *préparer* ; of, *à* ; we *on*.
 (3.) By, *à* ; we, *on* ; affected, *sensible* ; frail, *frêle* ; by, *de* ; cannot, subj. 1. our, (the).
 (4.) Grove, *bosquet* ; defy, *braver* ; dog-days, *canicule* ; spend, *passer*.
 (5.) Had come, *était entré*.
 (6.) We are, *il faut*.

IV.

ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

294. *Qui* is used in interrogations, with reference to persons, in a vague and indeterminate way.

EXAMPLES.

Qui sera assez hardi pour l'attaquer ? *who will be bold enough to attack him ?*

It is likewise used in the feminine, and in the plural, as,

Qui est cette personne-là ? *who is that person ?*
Qui sont ces femmes-là ? *who are those women ?*

Que and *quoi* relate to things only, as,

Que pouvait la valeur en ce combat funeste ? *what could valour in that fatal combat ?*
A quoi pensez-vous ? *what are you thinking of ?*

295. *Que* is sometimes used for *à quoi, de quoi, as,*

Que sert la science sans la vertu ? what avails learning without virtue?
(*à quoi sert*)

Que sert à l'avare d'avoir des trésors ? (de *quoi sert*) what use is it to the miser to possess treasures?

Quoi, de quoi, à quoi, may be used in reference to a sentence antecedent, as a sort of pronoun *neuter*, the thing to which it refers being neither *masculine* nor *feminine*.

la vie passe comme un songe : c'est cependant *à quoi* on ne pense guères.

296. *Que* and *quoi* require the preposition *de* before the adjective or substantive that follows them, having then the force of an adverb of quantity, as :

Que dit-on de nouveau ? *quoi de plus agréable !*
Que d'inconséquences dans sa conduite !

Quel relates both to persons and things, as :

Quel homme peut se promettre un bonheur constant ?
Quelle grâce ! quelle beauté ! mais quelle modestie !

EXERCISE.

1. *Who* could ever persuade himself, did not daily experience convince us of it, that, out of a hundred persons, there are ninety who sacrifice, to the enjoyment of the present, all the best founded hopes of the future ?

2. *Who* would not love virtue for its own sake, could he see it in all its beauty ?

3. He who does not know how * to apply himself in his youth, does not know *what* to do when arrived at maturity.

4. He was a wise legislator, who, having given to his countrymen laws calculated to make them good and happy, made them swear not to violate any of those laws during his absence : after *which*, he went away, exiled himself from his country, and died poor in a foreign land.

5. *What* people of antiquity ever had better laws than the Egyptians ? *What* other nation ever undertook to erect monuments calculated to triumph over both time and barbarism ?

6. *What more instructing and entertaining* than to read celebrated authors in their own language ? *What beauty, what delicacy and grace* which cannot be thrown into a translation, are discovered in them !

7. When Ménage had published his book on the Origin of the French Language, Christina, queen of Sweden, said : " Ménage is the most troublesome 3 man 1 in the world 2 : he cannot let one word 2 go 1 without its passport : he must know *whence* it comes, *where* it has passed *through*, and *whither* it is going."

(1.) Did, *si* ; out of, *sur* ; future, *avenir*.

(2.) Its own sake, *elle-même* ; could he, *si on pouvoir*, ind-2

(3.) (To) what ; to do, *s'occuper* ; when arrived, etc., *dans l'âge mûre*.

- (4.) He, *ce*; calculated, *propre*; not to, (that they would not); went away, *partir*.
 (5.) Calculated to, *fait pour*; both, *également*; over, *de*.
 (6.) Language, *langue*; delicacy, *finesse*; which cannot, *qu'on ne peut*; be thrown, *faire passer*; translation, *traduction*; are, etc. *n'y découvre-t-on pas*.
 (7.) When, *après que*; Christina, *Christine*; troublesome, *incommodé*; the, *de*, art.; cannot, *ne saurait*; go, *passer*; must, *vouloir*.

V.

PRONOUNS INDIFINITE.

297. These pronouns have been divided into four classes in the grammar, (No. 85). The following remarks are arranged in the same order.

FIRST CLASS.

Of these which are never joined to a noun substantive.

ON

298. Examples have already been given, (No. 86) of the use of *on*, in French, with an explanation of its reasonably supposed etymology. As it is a word which frequently occurs, and in a manner totally different from the English idiom, it has been thought necessary to devote another chapter to it, in which its use will be more fully explained.

The general meaning of *on* is : one, people, men, we.

EXAMPLES.

<i>on</i> secourt plus volontiers les malheureux quand on l'a été soi-même,	<i>we succour the unfortunate more readily when we have been so ourselves.</i>
<i>on</i> ne doit pas attribuer à la religion les défauts de ses ministres,	<i>man ought not to charge religion with the faults of her ministers.</i>
<i>on</i> relit tout Racine, <i>on</i> choisit dans Voltaire,	<i>people read the whole of Racine again, they choose in Voltaire.</i>
<i>on</i> fait du bruit dans la rue,	<i>people are making a noise in the street.</i>
<i>on</i> n'est pas toujours heureux, <i>on</i> dit qu'il va se marier,	<i>people are not always fortunate. people say, they say, he is going to be married.</i>

OBSERVE. That the adjective referring to *on* is in the masculine gender, when that pronoun is taken in a vague and indeterminate sense; but when it applies to any person in particular, as in the case stated No. 298, then the adjective agrees with the person understood. Thus, a

woman would say. *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*, we cannot be young and pretty for ever.

Observe also that we must not say *qu'on*, *et on*, *aussi on*, but *que l'on*, *et l'on*, *aussi l'on*. Ex: *je crois que l'on frappe*. The *l'* thus prefixed is for euphony's sake. But if the word following begins with an *l*, then we say: *je crois qu'on l'appelle*, because *je crois que l'on l'appelle* would equally be disagreeable.

298. *ON*, according to the above examples, has a vague and indefinite meaning; it is indeed the subject of the verb, but not specified, not applied to any one person in particular:

There are, however, two cases in which *on* is very significantly used in French, in a definite sense, and as applicable to one individual alone.

1. A master speaking to his servants, a father to his child, a tutor to his pupil, says *on*, instead of *vous* or *tu*, either to put greater distance between the persons, or to assume a more serious tone, or also a sort of mock gravity.

EXAMPLES.

a-t-on passé chez le Colonel *did you call at the house of Colonel Sainville?*

eh bien, a-t-on été bien sage en *well, have you been good in my mon absence?* *absence?*

finira-t-on ce bruit-là bien-tôt? *will you put an end to that noise?*

2. A person, speaking of himself, says *on*, as the English sometimes say *we*; or applies it to another, also in the same manner as the English use *we* for *you*.

EXAMPLES.

on n'est pas des esclaves pour *we are not slaves (I am not a slave)*
essuyer de si mauvais traite- *to bear such ill usages.*
ments,

on vous l'a dit mille fois, *I have told you so a thousand times.*
depuis quand est-on de retour? *how long have we (you) been back?*

299. *ON* is also much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. (See 95.)

EXAMPLES.

on me trompe, *I am deceived.*
on m'a dit ce matin que le roi *I have been told this morning that*
va en Irlande, *the king is going to Ireland*

This form is adopted in almost every case, except when the verb expresses *love, esteem, hatred, feeling*.

EXAMPLE.

they are much loved,

il sont très-aimés.

EXERCISE.

1. If we knew how to limit our wishes, we would spare ourselves many troubles and we should be happier.
2. At the last judgment we shall not be asked what we have read, but what we have done.
3. I will not have him be teased.
4. The people do not come to the world musicians.
5. When men regulate their wants on nature, they save themselves many cares and difficulties.
6. They praise him, they threaten him, they caress him; but whatever they do, they cannot conquer him.
7. They say the town has been taken.
8. My father has been robbed.

(1.) To limit, *borner*; to spare, *s'épargner*; troubles, *maux*.

(2.) To ask, *demander*.

(3.) To will, *vouloir que*; to tease, *tourmenter*.

(4.) To come to the world, *naître*.

(5.) To save one's self, *s'épargner*; difficulties, *travaux*.

(6.) Whatever they do, *quoique l'on fasse*; cannot, *savoir*, cond-I.

300. *Quelqu'un* is relative, and agrees in gender, with the noun to which it refers.

EXAMPLES.

nous attendons des hommes, il *we expect men, some of them will*
 en viendra quelqu'un, *come.*
 plusieurs femmes m'ont promis *several ladies have promised me to*
 de venir, il en viendra quel- *come, some one of them will come.*
 qu'une.

quelques-uns assurent, *some people affirm.*
 entre les nouvelles qu'il a débi- *among the reports he has circulated,*
 tées, il y en a quelques-unes *there are some which are true.*
 de vraies,

Quelqu'un taken absolutely and substantively, is of the masculine gender..

EXAMPLES.

j'attends ici quelqu'un, *I wait here for somebody.*
 quelqu'un en doute-t-il ? *does any one doubt it ?*

Quiconque, whoever, signifies *quelque personne que ce soit, qui que ce soit*, any person whatever; the verb which it governs is in the singular, and the adjective which refers to it, is masculine.

EXAMPLE.

ce discours s'adresse à quiconque est coupable, *this speech is addressed to whoever is guilty.*

Quiconque is also used for *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *celui de nous*, *de vous*, *celle de nous*, *de vous*.

EXAMPLE.

quiconque (de vous) fera du bruit, *whoever makes a noise, I shall punish him.*

301. *Chacun*, each, every one, is used either distributively, or collectively.

Distributively, it means *chaque personne*, *chaque chose*, each person or thing. It is then of both genders.

EXAMPLES.

chacun de nous vit à sa mode, *each of us lives as he pleases.*
donnez à chacune sa part,* *give to each his share.*

Collectively, it signifies *toute personne*, every person.

EXAMPLE.

chacun a ses défauts, *every body has his faults.*

EXERCISE.

Can any one (be still ignorant) that it is from the
pourrait-il 2 1 ignorer encore ce dès
earliest infancy we ought to form the mind, the heart and
tendre enfance f. que l'on doit * former
the taste? Will not some one of these ladies be of the party?
f. partie f.
Some people like to read (every thing new). (These are) beautiful
aimer à toutes les nouveautés voilà de superbe
pictures; I would wish to buy some. Whoever has studied
tableau m. vouloir en * acheter

* There is apparently some difficulty in determining whether the possessive pronoun after *chacun* is to be plural or singular; some examples will illustrate and explain the case.

il a donné à chacun sa part, *each man can have but one share.*

toute la compagnie se retira chacun
à son logis,
each to his own house.

ils apportaient des offrandes chacun
suivant sa dévotion,
according to the devotion of each.

Ils ont apporté chacun leur offrande. *Chacun*, is here taken collectively, and may be considered as an adverb having the sense of *all*, generally.

the principles of an art, knows that it (is only) (by length of time)
 —pes —m. savoir ce n'est que à la longue
 and by deep reflections, that he can succeed in making it
 de profond réflexion f. réussir à se 1 rendre 3 le 2
 his own. All the ladies of the ball were very finely dressed,
 * propre 4 bal m. ind-2 * superbement paré
 and each differently. Every one should for
 avait une parure différente. devrait, pour
 (the sake of) his own happiness, listen only to the voice of
 * propre m. n'écouter que * voix f. art.
 reason and of truth. What is the price of each of these medals?
 raison f. art. vérité f. prix m. f. médaille

Autrui, others, only applies to persons, is never joined to an adjective, has no plural, and is always preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

la charité se réjouit du bonheur charity rejoices in the happiness of
 d'autrui, others.

302. *Personne* as an indeterminate pronoun, and signifying *no one, nobody*, is always masculine. It requires *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

personne n'est venu ? no one has come ?
 n'est-il venu personne ? has nobody come ?
 nous ne voyons personne, we see nobody ?

When it is used substantively it is feminine.

c'est une personne active, he is an active person.
 ces personnes sont-elles riches ? are those people rich ?

In interrogative phrases not a negative, or in those expressing doubt, *personne* signifies *quelqu'un* any body.

EXAMPLES.

personne oserait-il nier ? would any body dare deny ?
 Je doute que personne soit assez I doubt whether any body be bold
 hardi, enough.

When *personne* is placed in the second member of a comparison, it also means *any body*.

EXAMPLE.

cette place lui convient mieux that place suits him better than any
 qu'à personne, body

303. *Rien*, nothing ; which is masculine and singular, generally requires the negation, before the verb ; in which case it signifies *nulle chose*, nothing.

EXAMPLE.

il ne s'attache à rien de solide, *he applies himself to nothing solid.*

When used without a negation, it means *quelque chose*, something.

EXAMPLE.

je doute que rien soit plus propre à faire impression que, *I doubt whether any thing be more suited to make an impression, than etc.*

Rien is sometimes used absolutely, in answer to a question ; *que vous a coûté cela ? rien*, how much did you pay for it ? nothing.

It always requires the preposition *de* before the adjective, or participle that follows it, and then the verb is understood, as is likewise the negation, as : *rien de beau que le vrai*, nothing is noble but truth ; as if it were, *il n'y a rien de beau que le vrai*.

304. *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE*, require *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir, *they have not either of them done their duty.*
ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'aura, *neither of them shall have it.*
ils ne sont morts ni l'un ni l'autre, *they are not dead either of them.*
ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mort, *neither of them is dead.*

305. *Tout* means every thing, *all*.

EXAMPLES.

il rit de tout *he laughs at every thing.*
il ne lui a pas tout dit, parce que *he did not tell him all, because every*
tout n'est pas bon à dire, *thing is not to be told.*

Tout is adverb and adjective, see No. 44.

EXERCISE.

To most men, the misfortunes of others are but
Pour la plupart de art. mal m. ne que
a dream. Do not to others what you would not wish to be
songe m. ne vouloir pas que cond-1 on
done to you. No one knows whether he deserves love or
faire sub-3 savoir si être digne
hatred. An egotist loves nobody, not even his own children ;
égoïste pas même propre

in the whole universe he sees no one but himself. He is more
*dans * univers ne voit * que lui seul*
 than (any body) worthy of the confidence with which the king
digne confiance f.

honours him. I doubt whether any one ever painted
honorer de que ait jamais peint
 nature, in its amiable simplicity, better than the feeling Gessner.
—f. = f. sensible —

Has any body called on me this morning? Nobody. There
venir ind-1 2 1 chez matin m. y avoir
 was nothing (but what was great) in the designs and
ind-2 que de grand dans dessein, m. pl. art.
 works of the Egyptians. I doubt whether there is
*ouvrage m. pl. —tiens que * subj-1 2*
 any thing better calculated to exalt the soul than the contemplation
plus propre —f.
 of the wonders of nature.
merveille f. art. —f.

SECOND CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE ALWAYS JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE.

306. *Quelque*, some ; signifies, *un, une entre plusieurs*, one out of several ; it is of both genders, and takes the number of the substantive, before which it is placed.

EXAMPLE.

adressez-vous à quelque autre per- *apply to somebody else.*
sonne, A

Quelque, quel que, may be considered as adjectives on account of their being declinable, see, No. 44.

307. *Chaque*, each, every ; which is of both genders, has no plural.

EXAMPLE.

chaque pays a ses coutumes, each country has its customs.

308. *Aucun*, followed of *quelconque* or *que ce soit*, agrees in gender with the noun to which it is joined ; it is always used with a negative phrase.

EXERCISE.

il ne veut se soumettre à aucune *he will submit to no authority what-*
autorité quelconque, ever.

309. *Quelconque*, is sometimes used as synonymous with *que ce soit, quel qu'il soit*, and with an affirmative phrase ; it takes the sign of the plural.

EXAMPLE.

deux points quelconques étant donnés, any two points being given.

310. *Certain*, certain, some; in this sense is used alike of persons and things, with which it agrees in gender; but it is always placed before the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

j'ai ouï dire à certain homme, I have heard some man, or woman
ou, à une certaine femme, say.

311. *Un, une*, a or an; when used indeterminately for *quelque, certain*, some person, or some thing, takes the gender of the substantive with which it is joined.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai vu un homme qui courait, I saw a man who was running.
je me suis promené dans une grande et belle prairie, I walked in a large and beautiful meadow.

EXERCISE.

Some enlightened people among the Egyptians preserved
éclairé 2 esprit m. pl. 1 parmi — tiens conserver
the idea of a first being, whose attributes they
ind-2 idée être art. — but m. pl. 3 1
represented under various symbols; this (is proved)
représenter ind-2 2 différent symbole m. c'est ce que prouve
by the following inscription upon a temple, "I am al' that
* * celle * — f. de — m. ce qui
has been, is and shall be; no mortal ever removed the veil that
3 mortel 2 1 lever ind-4 voile m.
covers me." Every nation has (in its turn) shone on the
f. à son tour 2 brillé 1
stage of the world. There is no reason whatever that can
théâtre raison f.
bring him to it. Some figures appear monstrous and
déterminer le 1 y 2 — f. — trueux
deformed, considered separately, or too near; but, if they are
difforme f. pl. séparément de très on les
put in their proper light and place, the true point of view
met * jour à leur — r. vue f.
restores them to beauty and grace. Yesterday I say
leur rendre * art. = f. art. = f. 2 voir
a lady remarkably beautiful.
ind-4 1 d'une rare 2 beauté 1.

THIRD CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE SOMETIMES JOINED TO A
SUBSTANTIVE, AND SOMETIMES NOT.

312. *Nul* and *pas un*, no, not any; not one; are used either relatively to, or with a substantive, with which they agree in gender, and require *ne* before the verb which they govern.

EXAMPLES.

<i>nul</i> de tous ceux qui y ont été,	<i>not one of those who went there has</i>
<i>n'en est revenu,</i>	<i>returned.</i>
<i>pas un</i> ne croit cette nouvelle,	<i>not one believes that intelligence.</i>
<i>je n'en ai nulle connaissance,</i>	<i>I have no knowledge of it.</i>
<i>il n'y a pas une seule personne</i>	<i>there is not a single person that be-</i>
<i>qui le croie,</i>	<i>lieves it.</i>

313. *Aucun* signifies *nul*, no, not any, when accompanied by a negation, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

vous n'avez aucun moyen de *you have no means of succeeding in*
réussir dans cette affaire, *that affair.*

This pronoun is seldom used in the plural, except before substantives, which, in some particular sense, are better employed in that number.

EXAMPLE.

il n'a fait aucunes dispositions, *he has made no preparations.*

REM. *Aucun* may be used without the negation in interrogative sentences, or in those which express doubt, or exclusion.

EXAMPLES.

<i>aucun homme fut-il jamais plus</i>	<i>was ever any man more successful ?</i>
<i>heureux ?</i>	
<i>on doute qu'aucune de ces af-</i>	<i>they doubt whether any of those</i>
<i>aires réussisse,</i>	<i>affairs will succeed.</i>
<i>le plus beau morceau d'élo-</i>	<i>the finest piece of eloquence that</i>
<i>quence qu'il y ait dans au-</i>	<i>exists in any language, etc.</i>
<i>cune langue, etc.</i>	

EXERCISE.

No one likes (to see himself) as he is. *No expression, no*
se voir *tel que* *f.*
truth of design and colouring, *no* strokes of genius in that great
f. dessin de coloris *trait*

w
ouv
grav
grav
desce
passe
time
temp

ret
voiso
pi
combl
more
plus

31
obje
chos
R
in an
l'app
it of
31
l'aut
one a

il fau
Of
other
prepo
W

les p
unes
se l
attir

Re
thing
last sp

* T
l'un be
l'autre,

work. He is as learned as any one. Not one of these en-
 ouvrage m. savant
 gravings announces any great skill. None of his works will
 gravure f. pl. annoncer un talent m.
 descend to posterity. He is so ignorant, and at the same
 passer art. = f. en * même
 time so obstinate, that he will not (be convinced) by any
 temps obstiné * se rendre ind-1 à
 reasoning. Did any man ever attain to such a
 raisonnement m. jamais 2 parvenir ind-4 1 es *
 piece of glory! I doubt whether there be in any science a
 comble m. = que y avoir subj-1 f.
 more evident principle.
 plus lumineux 2—pe m. 1

314. *Autre*, other, expresses a difference between two objects, or between one and several, as: *quelle autre chose souhaitez-vous de moi?* what else do you wish of me?

REM. *Autre* is sometimes used relatively of persons, but in an indeterminate manner, as: *j'aime mieux que vous l'appreniez de tout autre que de moi*, I had rather you learn it of any other person than me.

315. *L'un l'autre*, is of both genders and numbers, *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, les unes les autres*, each other, one another.

EXAMPLE.

il faut se secourir l'un l'autre, we ought to assist one another.

Of one another, to one another, of each other, to each other, are rendered by, *l'un de l'autre, l'un à l'autre*, the preposition being placed before *l'autre*.*

When used separately, they denote a difference.

EXAMPLE.

les passions s'entendent les our passions correspond with one
 unes avec les autres; si l'on another; if we abandon ourselves
 se laisse aller aux unes, on to the ones, the others will soon
 attirer bientôt les autres, follow.

REM. In the latter case *l'un* is used for the person, or thing first mentioned, and *l'autre*, for the person, or thing last spoken of.

* This is according to common rules of grammatical construction; *l'un* being the subject and *l'autre* the object. *Ils méditent l'un de l'autre*, that is, *l'un médite de l'autre*.

316. *L'un et l'autre*, both; these two words mark union; *L'une et l'autre sont bonnes*, both are good.*

EXERCISE.

Ask another. Would any other have been so
 Demande: à avoir cond-2 assez
 self-conceited as to think that his private opinion could
 d'amour-propre * pour penser que particulier 2—f. 1 pouvoir
 counterbalance the public sentiment? Reason and faith
 sub-3 balancer 2 opinion f. 1 Raison f. foi f.
 equally demonstrate that we were created for another life
 2 démontrer 1 créer ind-4 f.
 They speak ill of one another. The happiness of the people con-
 parler mal de m.
 stitutes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with
 faire. —m. intérêt m. lié à
 each other. Presumption and pride easily insinuate them-
 pl. pl. art. présomption f. art. orgueil 2 se glis-
 selves into the heart; if we allow one admission, it is
 ser 1 m. l'on y donne à 2 f. 3 entrée 1
 much to (be feared) that we shall soon (abandon ourselves) to the
 bien craindre on * bientôt 2 ne se livre 1
 other. Both relate the same story, though neither believes
 rapporter fait m. ne penser
 it to be true.
 que * soit

317. *Le même, la même, les mêmes*, the same, the very same, are used relatively to, or with a noun, and agree in gender and number with it.

ce sont les mêmes raisons, they are the same reasons,
 ce poëme est le même que celui this poem is the same that I was
 dont je vous ai parlé, mentioning to you

318. *Tel, telle*, although properly adjectives, may also be used relatively in speaking of persons.

* *L'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*. In the new edition of the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, the following examples are given.

L'un et l'autre y a manqué, each of them has failed.
L'un et l'autre sont venus, both have come.
ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendront they will not come either of them.
ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra, neither of them will come.

It seems that the verbs in the plural when *l'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*, may be transferred after the verb, as an adverb, *ils sont venus l'un et l'autre*, but when there is no distinction, but union in the action.—See *Peculiarities* No 326.

EXAMPLE.

tel fait des libéralités, qui ne *such is liberal in giving who does*
 paie pas ses dettes, *not pay his debts*

319. *Plusieurs*, which is always, as an adjective, joined to a noun plural, may also be used absolutely in reference to persons. The verb which it governs must be in the third person plural.

EXAMPLE.

plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel, *some or several have thought the world to be eternal*

EXERCISE.

Does he always maintain the same principles? Yes, they are
soutenir —pe *oui se*
 absolutely the same. That general is the same who commanded
 —ment pl. —der ind-2
 last year. *Such a conduct is inexplicable*
 art. dernier 2 année f. 1 2 1 conduite f. —
 There are no such customs in this country. I never
 de coutumes f. pays m. ai
 heard (any thing) like it. *Such a man sows who*
 entendu dire rien de * * semer
 often reaps nothing. I this morning received several
 recueillir 1 3 matin 4 recevoir ind-4 2
 letters Of those manuscripts, there are several much
 lettre f. pl. Parmi —crits y en avoir qu'on beau-
 esteemed. Many by endeavouring to injure others
 coup 2 estime 1 en s'efforcer de nuire à art.
 injure themselves more than they think.
 se nuire à ne penser

FOURTH CLASS.

320. OF THOSE WHICH ARE FOLLOWED BY THE CONJUNCTION *que*, AND WHICH REQUIRE THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

They are *qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit, quoi que, quel-que, quel que*.

Qui que, whoever, is only said of persons, and signifies *quelque personne que*, whatever person; it requires the verb following to be in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela, *whoever has done that, is a man of*
 c'est un habile homme, *talents.*
 qui que je sois, *whoever I may be.*
 qui que j'ai été, *whoever it may have been.*
 qui que c'eût été, *whoever it might have been.*

qui que ce puisse être,
je n'ai vu qui que ce soit,

whoever it may be.
I saw nobody; I did not see any-
body whatever.

quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse, ou
qu'il dise, on se défie de lui,
quoi que vous disiez, je le ferai,
sans application, on ne peut réus-
sir en quoi que ce soit,

whatever he does or says, he is dis-
trusted.
whatever you may say, I will do it.
without application, it is impossible
to succeed in any thing whatever.

EXERCISE.

Whoever *ce soit qui* has told you so, he is mistaken. Pas-
le *se tromper* ind-4 Pas-
senger, whoever thou be, contemplate with religious veneration,
sant *contempler* un = 2 respect m. l
this monument erected by gratitude; it is the tomb
— m. *élévé* art. *reconnaissance* f. *ce tombeau* m.
of a just and benevolent man How can he hope to be
2 *bienfaisant* 3 1 Comment *espérer de*
beloved who has regard for no one? Whatever he
lui ne d'égards
may do or say, he (will find it) very difficult to destroy
qu'il aura bien de la peine détruire
prejudices so deeply rooted. A vain, presumptuous
des préjugé m. si *profondément enraciné* — *présomptueux*
and inconsistent mind will never succeed in any thing whatever.
sans consistance réussir
Whatever a frivolous world may think of you, never swerve
frivole 2 *monde* 1 *puisse* *se détourner*
from the path of virtue.
chemin m. art. f.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

321. CONCORD BETWEEN THE VERB AND THE SUBJECT.

The subject is that of which something is affirmed, and may always be known by the answer to this question, *qui est-ce qui*? who, or what is it? as: *Pierre vit*, Peter lives; *l'oiseau vole*, the bird flies; if it be asked, *qui est-ce qui vit*? who is it that lives? *qui est-ce qui vole*? what is it that flies? The answers *Pierre* and *l'oiseau*, shew that *Pierre* and *l'oiseau* are the subjects of the verb *vit* and *vole*.

There are three subjects or persons, *je, tu, il, elle, I, thou, he, she*, singular; *nous, vous, ils, elles*, plural.

The verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

EXAMPLES.

je ris
tu joues
il aime

I laugh
thou playest
he loves

nous parlons
vous plaisantez
ils sont fous

we speak
you jest
they are mad

la vertu est aimable, *virtue is amiable.*

Ris is in the singular number, and the first person, because *je*, its subject, is in the singular, and the first person. *Joues* is in the singular, and the second person, as *tu*, is in the singular, and the second person, etc.

EXERCISE.

The most free of men is he who can be free even in
libre art. celui même

slavery. Are we not often blind to our defects?
*art. esclavage m. * s'aveugler ind-1 sur défaut*

All men (are inclined) to laziness, but the savages of hot
art. tendre ind-1 art. sauvage chaud 2

countries are the laziest of all men. Do you think of imposing
*art. pays 1 * en imposer*

long on the credulity of the public! Thou canst not deny
long-temps à = f. —m. pouvoir nier

that he is a great man.
ne subj-1

When a verb is governed by two or more nouns, in the singular, it must be in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

mon père et ma mère m'aiment *my father and mother love me*
tendrement, tenderly.

EXERCISE.

His uprightness and honesty, make him courted by
droiture f. pron. honnêteté faire rechercher de

every body. Strength of body and of mind meet
art. f. art. celle art. se rencontrer

not always together. A good heart and a noble soul are
ensemble. m. beau f. de art.

precious gifts of nature.
= 2. don m. pl. 1 art —f.

322. When a verb relates to subjects of different persons, it agrees with the first, rather than with the other two, and with the second rather than the third. The person addressed is named *first*, and the person addressing *last*. On this occasion, the pronoun plural *nous*, is generally placed before

the verb, as its principal subjects, if one of the several subjects, is in the first person, and the pronoun plural *vous*, if there is no first person.

EXAMPLES.

vous, votre frère et moi, nous lisons ensemble la brochure nouvelle, *you, your brother, and I, read together the new pamphlet.*
vous et votre ami, vous viendrez avec moi, *you and your friend will come with me.*

EXERCISE.

You, your friend, and I, have each a different opinion. In our childhood, you and I (were pleased) with playing together.
chacun 2 f. 1. enfance f. se plaire ind-2 à inf-1
Neither I, nor (any one else) have been able to understand (any thing) in that sentence, (Take good care), you and your brother, not to (give way) to the impetuosity of your disposition.
*ni ni d'autres ne pouvoir ind-4 * comprendre 2 rien 1 à phrase f. se garder bien de s'abandonner = caractère m.*

323. When a verb has the relative pronoun *qui* for its subject, it is put in the same number and person as the noun, or pronoun, which is the antecedent of that relative.

EXAMPLES.

est-ce moi qui ai dit cette nouvelle ? is it I who told this news ?
est-ce nous qui l'avons voulu ? is it we who desired it ?
ceux qui aiment sincèrement la vertu sont heureux, those who sincerely love virtue are happy.

EXERCISE.

He that complains most of mankind, is not always he that (has most reason) to complain (of them). You that wish to enrich your mind with thoughts vigorously conceived and nobly expressed, read the works of Homer and Plato.
*celui se plaindre le plus art. homme pl. être le plus fondé en vouloir * enrichir esprit de f. pl. fortement conçu f. pl. noblement exprimé ouvrage*

324. There are some cases in which a verb, although governed by several nouns in the singular, is not put in the third person plural. A few examples of such cases are here given, with remarks on the cause and nature of their deviation from the rule given, No. 322.

le roi
veu
son h
prit
l'envi
pas
la séd
tra

O
tant
verb
sente
nistr
pare
Se
tion
other
actio
32
noun

biens
par
jeux,
rien
perfid
sac
ima
non-s
et t
sa

In
bien
are
being
in th

1.
2.
his b
3.
4.
5.
Athe

EXAMPLES.

le roi aussi bien que son ministre,	<i>the king as well as his minister,</i>
veut le bien public,	<i>wishes for the public good.</i>
son honnêteté, autant que son esprit,	<i>his honesty, as much as his wit,</i>
le fait rechercher,	<i>makes him courted.</i>
l'envie, comme l'ambition, est une	<i>envy, like ambition, is a blind pas-</i>
passion aveugle	<i>sion.</i>
la séduction, ou la terreur l'a entraîné dans le parti des rebelles,	<i>either persuasion, or terror, has drawn him into the party of the rebels.</i>

OBSERVE. First, that : *aussi bien que son ministre, autant que son esprit, comme l'ambition*, are, as it were, adverbial phrases, which might be placed at the end of the sentence *le roi veut le bien public, aussi bien que son ministre*, etc. and consequently that, although there are apparently two subjects, there is really but one.

Secondly, we do not affirm that *la séduction* in conjunction with *la terreur* has acted, but that either the one or the other has done so. There is consequently no unity in the action, no collective effort.

325. A verb may be in the singular, when preceded of nouns substantives in the plural.

biens, dignités, honneurs, tout disparaît, à la mort,	<i>riches, dignities, honours, every thing vanishes at death.</i>
jeux, conversations, spectacles, rien, ne la distrait,	<i>games, conversations, shows, nothing diverts her.</i>
perfidies, noirceurs, incendies, massacres, ce n'est là qu'une faible image, etc.	<i>perfidies, enormities, conflagrations, massacres, all this is but a feeble representation, etc.</i>
non-seulement toutes ses richesses et tous ses honneurs, mais toute sa vertu s'évanouit,	<i>not only all his riches and honours, but all his virtue vanishes.</i>

In the three first examples, all the things enumerated *biens, dignités, honneurs, jeux, conversations, spectacles*, are summed up in the words *tout, rien, ce n'est-là*, which, being singular, must necessarily have the verb they govern in the same number.

EXERCISE.

1. Fear or inability prevented them from moving.
2. The fear of death, or rather, the love of life, began to revive in his bosom.
3. Alcibiades, as well as Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates.
4. Lycurgus, like Solon, was a wise legislator.
5. Euripides, as much as Sophocles, contributed to the glory of the Athenians.

6. Riches, dignities, honours, glory, pleasure, every thing loses its charms from the moment we possess it, because none of those things can fill the heart of man.

(1.) Inability, *impuissance* ; moving, *remuer*.

(2.) Began to revive, *se réveiller* ; in, *au fond de* ; bosom, *cœur*.

(3.) Among *au nombre de*.

(6.) We, *on* ; none, *rien* ; those things, *tout cela*.

326. PECULIARITIES.

La gloire et la prospérité des méchants est courte.

It might have been *sont courtes* ; but as each subject may form a separate proposition, *la gloire des méchants est courte, la prospérité des méchants est courte*, Fénelon has put the verb in the singular as being applicable to each subject.

Racine has said :

Quelle était en secret ma honte et mes chagrins.

Quels étaient would have been more regular, but in point of elegance, and as a latinism, the verb has been made to agree with the first noun.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera l'ambassadeur.

Ni la force ni la douceur n'y peuvent rien.

One alone can be the *ambassadeur*, and consequently the verb can only be applicable to one of them.

Force and *douceur* are both unavailing, consequently the verb is in the plural.

327. NOUNS OF MULTITUDE AND NOUNS COLLECTIVE PARTITIVE.

1. The words *armée*, army ; *peuple*, people ; *nation*, nation ; *parlement*, parliament ; *flotte*, fleet ; *assemblée*, assembly ; or any other nouns of multitude have the verb which they govern in the singular, especially when preceded of the definite article.

EXAMPLES.

l'assemblée a été tumultueuse,	<i>the assembly has been tumultuous.</i>
le peuple veut la paix,	<i>the people wish for peace.</i>
la nation aime son roi elle le	<i>the nation love their king they will</i>
protégera,	<i>protect him.</i>
un peuple de héros va naître,	<i>a nation of heroes will spring.</i>

2. Nouns collective partitive as *la plupart*, most part ; *quantité*, quantity ; *multitude*, multitude ; *nombre*, number ; *beaucoup*, much ; *peu*, few ; etc., etc., have the verb in the

plural, if they are qualified by a noun in the plural, otherwise the verb is in the singular.

EXAMPLES.

la plupart du monde le croit, *most people believe it.*
 la plupart des hommes le pensent, *most men think so.*
 une troupe de jeunes gens couraient après lui, *a crowd of young people ran after him.*

Whatever be the noun which follows *la moitié, le tiers, le quart*, the verb must be in the singular.

328. The words *infinité* and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb to be in the plural, as ; *une infinité pensent, la plupart sont d'avis*, whenever *de personnes, or des hommes*, etc. are understood.

EXERCISE.

1. *Many persons* experience that human life is, every where, a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.
 2. *Many poets* think that poetry is the art of uniting pleasure with truth, by calling imagination to the help of reason.
 3. *Few persons* consider that time, like money, may be lost by unreasonable avarice.
 4. *So many years* of familiarity were as * chains of iron which linked me to those men who beset me every moment.
 5. *How many wise men* * have thought that, to seclude one's self from the world, was to pull out the teeth of devouring animals, to take away from the wicked the use of his poniard, from calumny its poisons, and from envy its serpents !
 6. *A company of young Phœnicians* of uncommon beauty, clad in fine linen, whiter than snow, danced a * long while the dances of their own * country, then those of Egypt, and lastly, those of Greece.
 7. *A troop of nymphs*, crowned with flowers, whose lovely tresses flowed over the shoulders and played in the wind, swam in multitudes behind her car.
 8. At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Moors, an *innumerable multitude of people* retired into the Asturias, and there proclaimed Pelagius king.
 9. *A third part of the enemy* was left dead on the field of battle ; the rest surrendered at discretion.
 10. *The innumerable crowd of carriages* which are to be seen in London during the winter, astonishes foreigners.
- (1.) Much is, etc. (*one has a great deal of pains, and little of real enjoyments.*)
- (3.) To be lost, *se perdre* ; unseasonable, *hors de propos*.
- (4.) Familiarity, *habitude* ; linked, *lier* ; beset, *obséder*.
- (5.) How many, *que de* ; to seclude one's self, *se retirer* ; pull out of, *arracher à* ; to take away from, *ôter à*.
- (6.) Company, *troupe* ; clad in, *et vêtu de* ; linen, *lin*.
- (7.) Lovely, *beau* ; tresses, *cheveu* ; flowed, *pendre* ; to play, *flotter* ; with, *au gré de* ; swam, *nager* ; shoals, *foule* ; car, *char*.

- (8.) Moors, *Maure*; retired, *se retirer*; Asturias, *Asturies*; Pelagius, *Pélage*.
 (9.) A third part, *un tiers*; enemy, pl.; surrendered, *se rendre*.
 (10.) Crowd, *quantité*; which are, (*active voice on*).

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT WITH REGARD TO THE VERB.

329. The subject of the verb when a noun must always precede the verb, and cannot be separated from it, except by a negation, or personal pronoun in the dative or the accusative case.

EXAMPLES.

le roi est revenu,
 le roi ne reviendra pas,
 le roi lui a parlé,
 le roi le lui a donné,
 le roi reviendra t-il ?
 le roi le lui a-t-il donné ?
 le roi ne le lui a-t-il pas donné ?

the king has returned.
 the king will not return.
 the king has spoken to him.
 the king has given it to him.
 will the king return ?
 has the king given it to him ?
 has not the king given it to him ?

330. When the subject is a pronoun, it precedes the verb, in the affirmative form, and follows it in the negative.

EXAMPLES.

je parle,
 parle-t-il ?
 ne lui a-t-il pas parlé ?

I speak.
 does he speak ?
 has he not spoken to him ?

EXERCISE.

1. *Youth* is full of presumption; *it* expects every thing from itself: although frail, *it* thinks itself all-sufficient, and that *it* has nothing to fear.
2. *Commerce* is like certain springs; if *you* attempt to * divert their course, *you* dry them up.
3. *It*, is enough that falsehood is falsehood, to be unworthy of a man who speaks in the * presence of God, and who is to sacrifice every thing to truth.
4. The *ambition* and *avarice* of man are the sources of his unhappiness.
5. *They* punish, in Crete, three vices, which have remained unpunished in all other nations: ingratitude, dissimulation, and avarice.
6. Like the Numidian lion, goaded by cruel hunger, and rushing upon a flock of feeble sheep, *he* tears, *he* slays, *he* wallows in blood.
- (1.) Full of presumption, *présomptueux*; expects, *se promettre*; itself all sufficient, *pouvoir tout*; that it has, *avoir*.
- (2.) Springs, *source*; attempt, *vouloir*; dry up, *faire tarir*.
- (3.) It is enough, *suffire*; falsehood, *mensonge*; is, *subj. in, en*; is to sacrifice, *doit*.

* The use of the hyphen has been explained, No. 4.

(5.) Punished, *ind-2*; have remained, *être*; in, *chez*.

(6.) Liked the, *semblable à un*; Numidian, *de Numidie*; goaded by, etc. (that cruel hunger goads) *dévorer*; rushing, (which rushes upon,) *entrer dans*; tears, *déchurer*; slays, *égorger*; wallows, *nager*.

331. When an interrogation begins with *que*, *où*, *combien*, *à quoi*, the noun subject may be placed after the verb, and *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles* are suppressed.

EXAMPLES.

Que dit votre ami ? à quoi s'occupe votre frère ? où demeure votre cousin ? combien coûte cet habit ?

332. Verbs of the first conjugation require the acute accent before *je*, in interrogations, *parlé-je*, *aimé-je*.

Cours-je, *dors-je*, *sens-je*, would be harsh; such questions are to be turned thus, *est-ce que je cours ? est-ce que je dors ?*

EXERCISE.

1. Have you forgotten all that Providence has done for you? how have you escaped the shafts of your enemies? how have you been preserved from the dangers which surrounded you on all sides? could you be so blind as not to acknowledge and adore the all powerful hand that has miraculously saved you?

2. What will posterity say of you, if instead of devoting to the happiness of mankind the great talents which you have received from nature, you make use of them only to deceive and corrupt them.

3. Do not the misfortunes which we experience often contribute to our * prosperity.

4. Why are the works of nature so perfect? Because each work is a whole, and because she labours upon an eternal plan, from which she never deviates. Why, on the contrary, are the productions of man so imperfect? It is because the human mind being unable to create any thing, and incapable of embracing the universe at a single glance, can * produce only after having been enriched by experience and meditation.

(1.) Escaped, *échapper à*; shafts, *trait*; preserved, *garantir*; on all sides, *de toutes parts*; so as, *assez pour*; saved, *conserver*.

(2.) Devoting, *consacrer*; mankind, *l'homme*, pl.; deceive, *égarer*.

(3.) Experience, *éprouver*; contribute to, *tourner en*.

(4.) Because, *c'est que*; and because, *et que*; being unable, *ne pouvoir*; incapable, (not being able) *at, de*; glance, *vue*; enriched, *féconde*.

Replied I, said I, says he, used in narrations, are literally translated in French.

EXAMPLES.

je meurs innocent, a dit Louis XVI. I die innocent, said Louis XVI.

je le veux bien, dit-il. I am very willing said he.

The subject of impersonal verbs is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

il est arrivé de grands malheurs, *great misfortunes have happened.*
 il vint à ma voix un bon vieillard, *at my call, there came an old man.*

333. When the adverb and adjective *ainsi, tel*, begin the sentence, the subject is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

tel était l'acharnement du soldat, *such was the fury of the soldier*
 que, etc. *that, etc.*
 ainsi finit cette sanglante tragédie, *thus ended that bloody tragedy.*

EXERCISE.

1. True glory, *said he* is founded on humanity; whoever prefers his own glory to the feelings of humanity, is a monster of pride, and not a man.

2. There have happened, for these * ten years, *so many events* exceeding all probability, that posterity will find it very difficult to credit them.

3. *Such was that incorruptible Phocion*, who answered the deputies of Alexander, who were telling him that this powerful monarch loved him as the only honest man; well, then 2, let him allow me 1 to be and to appear so.

4. *Thus ended*, by the humiliation of Athens, *that dreadful war* of twenty-seven years, to * which ambition gave rise, which hatred made atrocious, and which was as fatal to the Greeks, as their ancient confederation had proved advantageous to them.

(1.) Is founded, *ne se trouver pas hors de*; feelings, *sentiment*.

(2.) There have happened for, *il se passer depuis*; exceeding, *hors de*; probability, *vraisemblance*; will find very difficult, *avoir bien de la peine*; to credit, *ajouter foi à*.

(3.) Loved, *chérir*; honest man, *homme de bien*; well ho! to be so, *d'être tel*; appear so, *le paraître*.

(4.) Ended, *se terminer*; gave rise, *faire naître*; made, *rendre*; had proved, *être*.

After *aussi, peut-être, aussi bien*, the verb assumes the interrogative form. *Il est riche, aussi est-il recherché*, he is rich, and therefore sought after.

334. The noun or pronoun subject comes also after the imperative of *pouvoir, devoir, and faire*.

EXAMPLES.

puissent tous les peuples se convaincre de cette vérité, *may all nations be convinced of this truth.*
 dussé-je y périr, j'irai, *though I perish there, I will go.*
 fasse le ciel que.... *heaven grant that....*

There are some other cases in which the subject may be placed after the verb, but only as a matter of taste and elegance. Such transpositions must be left to the experienced writer.

EXERCISE.

1. The gods grant that you may never experience such misfortunes!
2. May, you, oh wise old man, enjoy the happiness you deserve.
3. Though I were to perish in this enterprise, I will not give it up.

- (1.) Grant, *faire*; experience, *éprouver de*.
- (2.) To enjoy, *jouir de*; happiness, *le bonheur que*.
- (3.) To give up, *renoncer à*.

335. The distinction between the active, passive, and neuter verbs has already been explained, No. 94, 95, the regimen direct and indirect have also been explained, No. 170.

The noun, which is the object or accusative case of a verb active, as also the indirect cases, are all placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

une mère chérit ses enfants, *a mother cherishes her children.*
 un père donne tous ses soins à sa famille, *a father gives all his attention to his family.*
 je reçois une lettre de mon frère *I receive a letter from my brother.*

N.B. The place of personal pronouns has also been fully explained, No. 223 and following.

EXERCISE.

He has discovered to all other nations his ambitious
*montrer art. * peuple m. pl. = 2*
 design of enslaving them, and has left
dessein m. 1 mettre dans l'esclavage inf-1 ne laisser
 us no means of defending our liberty, but by endeavouring
aucun moyen inf-1 que en tâcher inf-3
 to overturn his new kingdom. Homer represents Nestor as
de renverser royaume m.
 the man who restrained the ungovernable wrath of Achilles,
celui modérer ind-2 bouillant courroux m.
 the pride of Agememnon, the haughtiness of Ajax, and the
fiercé f.
 impetuous courage of Diomend. He dared not lift up
= —m. 1 Diomède oser ind-2 lever
 his eyes, lest they should meet the of his
** art. de peur de * * rencontrer inf-1*

friend, whose very silence condemned him. He carcases
 art. même 2 m. 1 ind-2
 them, because he loves them.

336. When an interrogative sentence begins with *quel*,
de quel, the object comes before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

quel objet voyez-vous ? what object do you see ?
 à quelle science vous appliquez-vous ? to what science do you apply your-
 self.
 de quelle affaire s'occupe votre frère ? what is brother about ?

337. Though the natural order of the ideas seems to require that the regimen direct be placed before the indirect, the perspicuity of the sentence does not allow it in all cases.

When a verb has two regimens, the shorter is generally placed first; but if they be of equal length, the regimen direct will precede the indirect.

EXAMPLES.

les hypocrites s'étudient—à parer le vice—des dehors de la vertu, hypocrites make it their study to deck vice with the appearance of virtue.
 les hypocrites s'étudient à parer—des dehors de la vertu—les vices les plus honteux et les plus décriés, hypocrites make it their study to deck with the appearance of virtue the most shameful and most odious vices.
 l'ambition sacrifie—le présent—à l'avenir, mais la volupté sacrifie—l'avenir—au présent, ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present.

1. Illustrious examples teach us, that God has hurled from their throne princes who condemned his laws: he reduced to the condition of a beast the haughty Nebuchadnezzar, who wanted to usurp divine honours.

2. Wretched is * the man who feeds his minds with chimeras.

3. Our interest should prompt us to prefer virtue to vice, wisdom to pleasure, and modesty to vanity.

(1.) Illustrious, fameux; teach, apprendre; hurled, renverser; haughtiness, superbe; Nabuchodonosor; wanted, vouloir.

(2.) Feeds, repaître.

(3.) Should, devoir. ind-1; prompt, pointer; pleasure, volupté.

338. A noun may be governed at the same time by two verbs, provided those verbs do not require different regimens.

EXAMPLES.

on doit aimer et respecter les rois, we ought to love and respect kings.

ce général attaqua et prit la ville, *that general attacked and took the city.*

But we must not say :

cet officier attaqua et se rendit maître de la ville, *that officer attacked and made himself master of the city.*

But turn the sentence thus :

cet officier attaqua la ville et s'en rendit maître, *that officer attacked the city and made himself master of it.*

because *attaquer* is active, and *se rendre* requires *de*.

EXERCISE.

1. Luxury is like a torrent, which carries away, and overthrows every thing it meets.

2. Nothing can resist the operation of time ; it, at length, undermines, alters or destroys every thing.

3. Among the Spartans, public education had two objects : the first, to harden their bodies by fatigue ; the second, to excite and nourish, in their minds, the love of their country. and an enthusiasm for what is great.

(1.) Carries away, *entraîner* ; overthrows, *renverser* ; every thing, *tout ce que*.

(2.) Operation, *action* ; at length, *à la longue* ; undermine, *miner*.

(3.) Among the Spartans, *à Sparte* ; to, *de* ; harden, *endurcir* ; by *à* ; their must be rendered by the article ; for what is great, *des grandes choses*.

339. PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs require the prepositions *de* or *par*, generally *de* with those verbs which express a moral action, and *par* with those which express a physical one.

EXAMPLES.

un jeune homme vertueux est estimé de tout le monde, *a virtuous young man is esteemed of all.*
la poudre à canon fut inventée par Berthold Schwartz, *gun powder was invented by B. Schwartz.*

In this sentence *votre ouvrage a été loué d'une manière fort délicate par un grand académicien*, *par* is used to avoid the repetition of *de*.

Puristes pretend we ought not to say *le monde à été créé par Dieu*, but *de Dieu*. This opinion has for its object to avoid an equivocation, with the oath or, rather, interjection, *pardieu* ! this is being over nice, as the words *par Dieu*, in the above sentence, convey no idea of irreverence, but on the contrary of admiration to God.

EXERCISE.

The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and destroyed by the
Troie pris f. saccager détruit
 confederate Greeks, 1184 years before the Christian era: this
confédéré 2 1 ans avant 2 ère f. 1
 event has been celebrated by the two great poets of Greece
 art.
 and Italy. You will only be beloved, esteemed, and
 pr. art. *ne*
 courted by men, (in proportion as) you join the
rechercher de que autant que joindre ind-7
 qualities of the heart to those of the mind. God pu-
 = f. pl. pr. 3 pu-
 nished the Jews every time that,
nir (passive voice ind-3 2) peuple Juif 1 toutes les fois
 deaf to the voice of the prophets, they fell into
sourd prophète sing. tomber ind-3 dans
 idolatry and impiety.
 art. = art. =

340. NEUTER VERBS.

The nature of these verbs has been explained at full length, No. 96, 126. Their chief difficulty consists in the preposition which they require before the noun coming after them; pains must be taken to ascertain it, especially as it almost always differs from that which is used in English.

341. Some neuter verbs are used absolutely, as: *je dors*, I sleep; *je marche*, I walk.

EXAMPLES.

vous plaisez à cette dame, you please that lady.
avez-vous pensé à mon affaire? have you thought of my affair?

342. Some govern the proposition, *à*, such as: *plaire, obéir, résister, applaudir, croire, penser*, etc. etc.*

343. Others govern the proposition, *de*, such as: *jouir, se moquer, se servir, se tromper, se repentir, mourir, dépendre, avoir besoin*, etc., etc.*

* The government of verbs is the greatest difficulty the English learner has to encounter in his study of the French language, as the correct construction of the whole sentence depends upon it. Suppose, for instance, you had to translate, *you have resisted orders on the execution of which our success depended*. If you have previously ascertained that *résister* governs the dative and *dépendre* the genitive, then you will say correctly, *vous avez résisté à des ordres de l'exécution desquels notre succès*

il jouit d'une bonne santé
la fortune dont il jouit.

he enjoys good health.
the fortune which he enjoys.

OBSERVE. That many neuter verbs have the reflected form, thus: *s'arrêter*, to stop; *se plaire à*, to take pleasure in.

EXERCISE:

This sentiment has pleased the king and all the nation.

In his retirement he enjoys the faculties of his
dans retraite f. jour de tout = f. pl.

soul. To slander (any one) is to assassinate him in cold blood.
** médire de quelqu'un c'est * de 2 sang 1*

The honest man seldom (permits himself) to jest
*rarement 2 se permettre 1 de * art. plaisanterie*

because he knows the most innocent jests may
*A. parce que savoir que f. pl. * pouvoir*

sometimes hurt his reputation. It is only in retirement
quelquefois nuire à f. ce ne que art.

that one truly enjoys one's self. His work has
on véritablement 2 jour 1 de soi ouvrage m.

pleased every one, because it unites to real utility
à art. mond joindre un 2 = f. 1

the charms of style, and the beauties of senti-
agrément m. pl. art. m. sing. art. pl.

344. Neuter verbs, do not all take the same auxiliary;
some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

EXAMPLES.

ils sont partis,
les soldats ont couru,

They have gone
the soldiers have ran.

Some in one sense, take the auxiliary, *être*, and in another, *avoir*.

EXAMPLES.

1. ils ont échappé.

2. ils sont échappés.

dépendait. Neglect to ascertain this point, and you will translate literally thus: *vous avez résisté les ordres sur l'exécution desquels dépendait notre succès.*

The Dictionnaire des Verbes or Dictionary of French Verbs, showing their regimen, 1 vol. 12mo. will it is hoped, be found a great assistance to those who wish to write correctly.

The Familiar and Conversational exercises, containing a selection of about 150 pages of English sentences, chosen on account of their peculiarity of construction and frequent recurrence in every day's conversation, will also afford good and useful practice on this subject.

The first implies the *actual fact* of some people having escaped, the second implies the *state or position* of people having escaped.

These are points which require much attention, and we subjoin three lists of examples which the learner will do well to consult.

345. The neuter verbs which take the verb *être* are *aller, arriver, choir, convenir, déborder, (to overflow) déborder, devenir, échoir, éclore, intervenir, mourir, naître, partir, provenir, repartir, (to set off again), resulter, retourner, revenir, survenir, tomber* and *venir*.

EXAMPLES.

les enfants <i>sont</i> allés au jardin,	the children are <i>gone</i> to the garden.
elle <i>était</i> arrivée avant moi,	she had arrived <i>before</i> me.
nous <i>sommes</i> convenus de nos torts,	we have <i>confessed</i> our wrongs.
la rivière <i>est</i> débordée,	the river has <i>overflowed</i> .
ces grands hommes <i>sont</i> tous dé-cédés,	those great men <i>were</i> all dead.
les vrais littérateurs <i>sont</i> devenus rares,	true learned men have <i>become</i> scarce.
votre billet <i>sera</i> échu avant votre retour,	your bill <i>will</i> fall due before you <i>return</i> .
ces œufs <i>sont</i> éclos,	those eggs are <i>hatched</i> .
il <i>est</i> intervenu dans cette affaire,	he <i>has</i> <i>interfered</i> in that affair.
on dit que son père et sa mère <i>sont</i> morts,	they say that his mother and father <i>are</i> dead.
nos malheurs <i>sont</i> nés de nos dissensions,	our misfortunes have <i>sprung</i> from our dissensions.
ma sœur <i>était</i> partie avant lui,	my sister had <i>set off</i> before him.
elle <i>est</i> enfin parvenue à son but,	she <i>has</i> at last obtained her end.
les enfants qui <i>sont</i> provenus de ce mariage,	the children that <i>are</i> issued from that marriage.
ils <i>sont</i> repartis pour la campagne,	they <i>are</i> gone into the country again.
il en <i>est</i> résulté un grand inconvénient.	a great inconvenience <i>has</i> been the result of it.
nous <i>étions</i> retournés au château,	we had all <i>gone</i> back to the castle.
elles <i>seraient</i> revenues avec nous,	they <i>would</i> have come back with us.
cette agréable nouvelle <i>est</i> survenue ce matin,	this agreeable news <i>came</i> this morning.
il a voulu courir et il <i>est</i> tombé,	he <i>would</i> run, and he <i>fell</i> .
pourquoi <i>sont</i> -ils venus ici ?	why <i>did</i> they come hither ?

346. Neuter verbs, which take the verb *avoir*, are *comparaître, contrevenir, convenir, courir, échouer, paraître, subvenir*.

* These lists are taken from Mr. Sievrac's edition.

EXAMPLES.

les témoins ont comparu ce matin *the witnesses have appeared this morning.*
ils ont contrevenu au principaux *they have infringed the chief articles*
articles du traité, *of the treaty.*
cette maison et cet ameublement *that house and furniture would*
m'auraient bien convenu, *have suited me much.*
les soldats ont couru vers leur *the soldiers have run towards their*
général, *general.*
un vaisseau américain a échoué *an American vessel has run aground*
devant le port, *near the port.*
nous avons paru quand on nous *we appeared, when we were called*
a appelés, *for.*
mon bon père a subvenu à tous *my good father has provided for all*
mes besoins, *my exigencies.*

847. Neuter verbs which take either of the auxiliaries according to the idea expressed, *accoucher, accourir, accroître, apparaître, cesser, changer, commencer, croître, déchoir, demeurer, descendre, diminuer, disparaître, échapper, embellir, entrer, expirer, grandir, rajeunir, monter, passer, périr, rester, sonner, and vieillir.*

EXAMPLES.

With AVOIR (fact).

j'ai accouru sur-le-champ à son *secours,*
I immediately ran to his assistance.

il a accru sa fortune en bien peu *de temps,*
he has increased his fortune in a short time.

il dit qu'un spectre lui a apparu *pendant la nuit,*
he says that a ghost has appeared to him during the night,

la fièvre a cessé pendant une *heure,*
the fever has ceased for an hour.

les circonstances ont changé la *face des affaires,*
circumstances have altered the face of affairs.

le bal a commencé vers minuit, *the ball began towards midnight.*

cet enfant a crû pendant sa *maladie,*
that child has grown during his illness.

With ÊTRE (state).

la garde est accourue sur-le-champ, *the guard ran up in all haste.*

son orgueil est accru avec ses *richesses,*
his pride has increased with his riches.

Dieu est apparu à Moïse, *God has appeared to Moses.*

la fièvre est cessé depuis une *heure,*
the fever has ceased an hour ago.

cette femme est changée à faire *peur,*
that woman is so altered as to frighten one.

le bal était commencé lorsque *nous entrâmes,*
the ball had begun when we came in.

cette plante est crûe prodigieusement, *that plant is prodigiously grown.*

depuis ce moment il a déchu de
jour en jour,
he has been on the decay ever since.
j'ai demeuré vingt ans à Paris,
I have lived twenty years in Paris.

ils ont descendu la montagne
beaucoup plus vite qu'ils ne
l'avaient montée,
*they have descended the hill much
quicker than they had ascended
it.*

le prix du blé n'a pas diminué
depuis six mois,
*the price of wheat has not fallen
for these six months.*
elle a disparu subitement,
*she has disappeared all on a sud-
den.*

ils ont échappé au danger,
they have escaped danger.

elle a fort embelli pendant son
voyage,
*she is grown handsome on her
journey.*

j'ai entré en ce lieu,
I have entered that place.
Jésus-Christ a expiré sur la
croix,
Jesus-Christ expired on the cross.

ce jeune homme a grandi depuis
peu de temps,
*that young man has grown very
lately,*

vous avez rajeuni dans votre
voyage,
*you are grown younger in your
journey.*

il a monté quatre fois à sa cham-
bre pendant la journée,
*he went up into his room four
times in the course of the day.*

la procession a passé sous mes
fenêtres,
*the procession has passed under
my window.*

ces malheureux ont tous péri
dans le combat,
*those unfortunate men have all
perished in the battle.*

il est bien déchu de son crédit,
he has lost much of his credit.

il est demeuré à Paris pour a étu-
dier la médecine,
*he has remained in Paris to study
physic.*

ils sont descendus,
they have come down.

il est enfin diminué de moitié,
it has at last fallen by half,

elle est disparue depuis quinze
jours,
*it is now a fortnight since she has
disappeared.*

ils sont échappés depuis hier,
*they have made their escape since
yesterday.*

on croirait qu'elle est embellie,
*one would think that she is grown
handsomer.*

vous êtes entré, restez-y,
you are in, stay.

la trêve est expirée,
the truce has expired.

assurément vous êtes bien grandi,
indeed you are much grown.

vous êtes rajeuni à mes yeux de
dix ans,
*you are grown younger in my eyes
by ten years.*

il est monté dans sa chambre et il
y est resté,
*he is gone up into his room and has
remained there.*

la procession est passée,
the procession has gone by.

que sont devenus ces malheureux
qu'on avait entassés dans vos
prisons ? ils sont périés.

*what has become of those unfortunate
men who had been heaped in your
dungeons ? they are dead.*

combien de temps avez-vous
resté en Angleterre ?

*what stay did you make in Eng-
land ?*

la pendule a sonné cinq heures,
the clock has struck five.

j'ai bien vieilli depuis deux ans,
*I am grown much older within
these two years.*

cent combattants sont restés sur
la place,

*one hundred combatants have re-
mained on the field of battle.*

trois heures étaient sonnées, lors-
qu'on s'est mis à table,
*it had struck three, when we sat
down at meal.*

avouez que nous sommes bien
vieillis,
confess that we are grown very old.

OF THE VERB BEING REGIMEN.

348. When two verbs come together the second may
be, 1st, in the infinitive ; 2dly, in the indicative mood ;
3dly, in the subjunctive.

OF THE VERB IN THE INFINITIVE AFTER ANOTHER.

349. The second verb is in the infinitive, when we
speak of one person only, *i. e.* when the subject of both
verbs is the same.

EXAMPLES.

je veux sortir,
nous espérons voir le roi,

*I wish to go out.
we hope to see the king.*

The subject of *vouloir* and *sortir* is the same ; *I wish I*
may go out ; so of *espérer*, *we hope we shall see the king.*

350. But here again is a difficulty for the learner ; the
infinitive following is sometimes governed by the preposition
à, sometimes by *de*, sometimes by *pour*, and sometimes
there is no preposition at all.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime à lire,
je crains de tomber,
je travaille pour vivre,
je dois partir,

*I like to read.
I fear to fall.
I work to get my living.
I am to go.*

This difference depends on the preceding verb of which
the government must be ascertained.

351. *Aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, espérer, falloir,
devoir, pouvoir, savoir, vouloir*, etc., require no preposition
before the following infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

j'aimerais mieux mourir,
vous devriez sortir,

*I had rather die.
you ought to go out.*

352. *Achever, finir, affecter, se dépêcher, se hâter, craindre, appréhender, désirer, etc.*, require the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

il affecte de l'aimer, *he affects to like it.*
elle craignait de tomber, *she feared to fall.*

353. *Aimer, apprendre, consentir, se plaire, s'apprêter, etc.* require *à*.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime à danser, *I like dancing.*
consentez-vous à l'épouser ? *do you consent to marry her ?*

The preposition *pour* is used when *in order to*, is either expressed or understood in English.

EXAMPLE.

il va à la campagne pour chasser, *he is going in the country to shoot.*

354. Verbs generally require, before the infinitive, the same preposition which they require before the noun.

EXAMPLES.

je vous blâme de votre refus, *I blame you for your refusal.*
je vous blâme de refuser. *I blame you for refusing.*

355. Sometimes a verb governs two different prepositions, because it has two different acceptations.

S'efforcer de, to endeavour, is taken in the moral sense ; *s'efforcer à*, in the physical.

EXAMPLES.

il s'efforce de plaire, *he tries to please.*
il s'efforce à parler, *he exerts himself to speak.*

These peculiarities of the language cannot be taught by rule ; they belong to individual words which must be consulted. See *Dictionnaire des verbes*.

EXERCISE.

1. Do you prefer living* in the country ?
2. Come, when you have done writing.
3. Are you afraid of falling ?
4. He cannot walk.
5. Does he not like travelling ?
6. She takes delight in teasing.
7. Has he not consented to pay you ?
8. They are gone to London to see if they can find a house for the season.
9. My sisters learn drawing.

10. I was getting ready to go out when he came.
 11. They hope to arrive in time.
 12. Make haste to get up and to dress.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1.) Préférer, vivre ; <i>in, à.</i> | (2.) Finir, <i>ind-8.</i> |
| (3.) Craindre. | (4.) Pouvoir. |
| (5.) Aimer voyager. | (6.) Se plaire, tourmenter. |
| (7.) Consentir. | (8.) Aller, voir, pouvoir. |
| (9.) Apprendre, dessiner. | (10.) S'apprêter, sortir, venir, <i>ind-4.</i> |
| (11.) Espérer ; <i>in time, à temps.</i> | (12.) Se dépêcher, se lever, s'habiller. |

OF THE VERB IN THE INDICATIVE AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

356. When the subjects of the two verbs are different, the second verb must be in the indicative mood or in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

je crois que vous avez raison, *I think you are right.*
 je doute que vous ayez raison, *I doubt your being right.*

Here are two persons or subjects ; the one *thinking* and the other *not being right*.

357. The indicative mood is used after all verbs expressing an act of the mind, and when speaking *in an affirmative and positive manner* ; among such may be enumerated *croire, imaginer, concevoir, réfléchir, considérer, observer, remarquer, compter, espérer, démontrer, etc., etc.*

EXAMPLES.

je crois qu'il est venu, *I believe he has arrived.*
 espérons que la chose ira bien, *let us hope the thing will succeed.*

OBSERVE. That the conjunction *que* is never omitted in French.

358. If the same verbs are used interrogatively or negatively, they require the subjunctive mood after them.

EXAMPLES.

je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu *I do not think he is come*
 espérez-vous que la chose aille bien ? *do you expect the thing will go on well ?*

359. There are some verbs expressive of *fear, doubt, apprehension, desire*, which always have the subjunctive mood after them, whether in the affirmative or the negative form.*

* This is more fully explained at the article, subj. mood, No. 384.

EXAMPLES.

je doute qu'il vienne	<i>I doubt his coming</i>
je crains que cela ne soit	<i>I fear its being so</i>

EXERCISE.

1. She thinks you have not sufficiently attended to her interest ?
2. Do you imagine it is an easy thing to convince him ?
3. They say he is going abroad.
4. Do you imagine I have done it on purpose ?
4. I wish you may succeed, but I doubt it.
6. We fear he will come in our absence, and he will be vexed not to find us at home.

- (1.) Croire; *to have attended, s'être occupé de*; *interest, intérêts.*
- (2.) S'imaginer, chose facile, convaincre.
- (3.) Abroad, à l'étranger.
- (4.) *To do on purpose, faire exprès.*
- (5.) Désirer, réussir, douter de.
- (6.) Craindre, venir; *vexed, contrarié de.*

OF THE NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES:

OF THE INDICATIVE:

360. *The indicative* is the mood which declares affirmatively or negatively. It has eight tenses which are :

<i>the present</i>	je parle.
<i>the imperfect</i>	je parlais
<i>the preterit definite</i>	je parlai
<i>the preterit indefinite</i>	j'ai parlé
<i>the preterit anterior</i>	j'eus parlé
<i>the pluperfect</i>	j'avais parlé
<i>the future simple</i>	je parlerai
<i>the future anterior</i>	j'aurai parlé

361. *The present* marks that a thing is *now* passing, that is, either existing or doing.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime,	<i>I love, do love, am loved.</i>
ils jouent,	<i>they play, do play, are playing.</i>

361. *The present* may be used in speaking of a thing that is going to be done, or take place, as being more expressive than the future.

EXAMPLE.

je suis de retour dans un moment, *I shall be back in an instant.*

It is also used, in a narrative, instead of the preterit, in order to give more force and vivacity to the description, and to make the thing, as it were, present.

EXAMPLE.

le cheval blessé se démène et secoue son maître ; Cyrus tombe. *the horse being wounded, struggled, shook off his rider ; Cyrus fell.*

EXERCISE.

1. *Hé* is in his chamber, where he is relaxing his mind from the fatigue of business, by some instructive and agreeable reading.

2. Truth, eternal by its nature, is immutable as God himself.

3. I never let a day pass without devoting an hour or two to reading the ancients.

4. It is this week that the new piece comes out.

5. The armies were in sight : nothing was heard on all sides but dreadful cries : the engagement began. Immediately a cloud of arrows darkens the air and covers the combatants ; nothing is heard but doleful cries of the dying, or the clattering of the arms of those who fall in the conflict ; the earth groans beneath a heap of dead bodies, and rivers of blood stream every where ; there is nothing in this confused mass of men enraged against one another but slaughter, despair, revenge, and brutal fury.

(1.) Is unbending, *délasser* ; reading, *lecture*.

(2.) By, *de* ; immutable, *immuable*.

(3.) Let devoting, *consacrer* ; reading, *la lecture de*.

(4.) Come out, *on donner*.

(5.) Sight, *présence* ; nothing was, etc., *on ne que*, ind-2 ; engagement began, *on en venir aux mains*, ind-3 ; cloud, *nuée* ; arrows, *trait* ; darkens, *obscurcir* ; nothing is etc., *on ne plus que* ; doleful, *plaintif* ; clattering, *bruit* ; conflict, *mêlée* ; groans, *gémir* ; beneath, *sous* ; heap, *monceau* ; rivers, *ruisseau* ; stream, *couler* ; there is nothing in, etc. *ce ne être dans* ; mass, *amas* ; enraged, *acharné* ; but, *que* ; slaughter, *massacre*.

362. The imperfect *je parlais*, I was speaking, I did speak, I used to speak, I spoke ; expresses a thing being done at the moment another takes place.

EXAMPLE.

j'entrais au moment où vous êtes entré, *I came in at the moment you entered.*

The imperfect expresses also repetition, habit, description of things habitual and stationary.

EXAMPLES.

je recevais de ses nouvelles toutes les semaines, *I heard from him every week.*

quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent aux Champs Elysées, *when I was in Paris I often went to the Champs Elysées.*

voilà la place où elle aimait à s'asseoir, *this is the place where she liked to sit down.*
 son père était fier, *his father was very proud.*
 le livre était sur la table ; quel- *the book was laying upon the table,*
 qu'un l'aura pris, *somebody must have taken it.*

EXERCISE.

1. When I *was* at Paris I *went* every morning to take a walk in the *Champs Elysées*, or the *Bois de Boulogne* ; afterwards I *came* home, where I employed myself till dinner, either in reading or writing ; and, in the evening, I generally *went* for amusement to the French Theatre or the Opera.

2. When I *was* in the prime of life, like the light butterfly, I *fluttered* from object to object, without being able to settle to any thing : eager for pleasure, I *seized* every thing that *had* its appearance : alas ! how far *was* I then from foreseeing that I should deplore with so much bitterness the loss of that precious time.

3. For a short time after Abraham, the knowledge of the true God still *appeared* in Palestine and Egypt. Melchisedec, king of Salem, *was* the priest of the Most High God 1. Abimelech, king of Gerar, and his successor of the same name, *feared* God, *swore* by his name, and *reverenced* his power. But in Moses' time, the nations *adored* even beasts and reptiles. Every thing *was* God but God himself.

(1.) Take a walk, *se promener* ; in à ; came home, *rentrer chez soi* ; was busy, *s'occuper* ; reading, *(by the verb)* ; for amusement, *se délasser* ; French Theatre, *Comédie Française*.

(2.) Prime of life, *fleur de l'âge* ; butterfly, *papillon* ; fluttered, *voler* ; being able, *pouvoir* ; settle, *se fixer* ; eager for, *avide de* ; had its appearance, *m'en présentait l'image* ; how, *que* ; with so much bitterness, *(so bitterly)*.

(3.) Swore, *jurer* ; reverenced, *admirer* ; the nations, *on* ; even, *jusqu'à* ; but, *excepté*.

363. The *preterit definite*, *je parlai*, is used in speaking of things done during a period, *a year, a month or a week*, entirely elapsed, and when the precise moment is specified or understood in which the action took place.

EXAMPLES.

je lui écrivis à mon arrivée à Bath, *I wrote to him on my arrival at Bath.*
 nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière aux eaux, *we met last year at a watering place.*

This preterit has been called the *historical tense*, on account of its serving to express things which have happened at a period distant from the present.

EXERCISE.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a conqueror. He *set about* it, after the manner of the Egyptians, that is, with great

ideas. All the children who were born on * the same day as Sesostris, were brought to court by order of the king : he had them educated as his own children, and with the same care as Sesostris. When he was grown up, he made him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the Arabs : this young prince learned there to bear hunger and thirst, and subdued that nation, till then invincible. He afterwards attacked Lybia, and conquered it. After these successes, he formed the project of subduing the whole world. In consequence of this *, he entered Ethyopia, which he made tributary. He continued his victories in Asia. Jerusalem was the first to feel the force of his arms : the rash Rehoboam could not resist him, and Sesostris carried away the riches of Solomon. He penetrated into the Indies, farther than Hercules and Bacchus, and farther than Alexander did afterward. The Scythians obeyed him as far as the Tanais ; Armenia and Cappadocia were subject to him. In a word, he extended his empire from the Ganges to the Danube.

Making, *faire de* ; set about it, *s'y prendre* ; after, *à* ; ideas, *pensée* ; brought, *amener* ; had educated, *faire élever* ; grown up, *grand* ; made serve, *fit faire* ; apprenticeship, *apprentissage* ; in, *par* ; entered, *entrer dans* ; made, *rendre* ; as far as, *jusqu'à* ; Cappadocia, *Cappadoce*.

364. The preterit indefinite, *j'ai parlé*, is the tense which is the most used in French ; it expresses things done, or which have happened in the course of the day, recently, within the week, the month or the year in which we are.

EXAMPLE.

j'ai rencontré votre frère ce matin, I met your brother this morning.

The preterit indefinite is used also to express assertion of a thing having been done, without any reference to time.

EXAMPLES.

<i>j'ai voyagé en Italie,</i>	<i>I travelled in Italy.</i>
<i>j'en ai parlé à votre oncle,</i>	<i>I have mentioned it to your uncle.</i>
<i>n'avez-vous remarqué aucune</i> <i>faute ?</i>	<i>have you noticed no mistakes ?</i>

It is also used figuratively instead of the future.

EXAMPLES.

<i>avez-vous bientôt fini ?</i>	<i>shall you have done soon ?</i>
<i>oui, j'ai fini dans un moment,</i>	<i>yes, I shall have done in a minute.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Enflamed with the desire of knowing mankind, I have travelled, not only among the most polished nations, but even among the most barbarous, I have observed them in the different degrees of civilization, from the state of simple nature to the most perfect state of society, and wherever I went, the result was the same : that is to say, I have every where seen beings occupied in drying up the different sources of happiness that nature had placed within their reach.

2. I have travelled this year in Italy, where I had an* opportunity of seeing several master-pieces of antiquity, and where I made a valuable collection of scarce medals. I there admired the perfection to which they have brought architecture, painting, and music; but what pleased me most there, was the beauty of the climate of Naples.

(1.) With, *de*; mankind, *homme, pl. to chez*; polished nations, *peuple policé*; barbarous, *nation sauvage*; from, *depuis*; simple, *pur*: to, *jusqu'à*; wherever I went, *dans tous les pays*; the result was the same, (*I had the same result*) in drying up à tarir; within their reach, à leur portée.

(2.) Opportunity, *occasion*; master-pieces, *chef-d'œuvres*; scarce, *rare*; pleased me most, *faire le plus de plaisir*; was, *ind-l.*

355. The two preterit anterior, *j'eus parlé, j'ai eu parlé*, are commonly used after an adverb of time, such as *dès que, aussitôt que, quand*.

EXAMPLES.

dès que j'eus diné je sortis, as soon as I had dined I went out.
dès que j'ai eu diné je suis sorti, I did go out as soon as I had done dinner.

There is the same difference between these two tenses as between the preterit definite and the preterit indefinite. The first, *j'eus parlé*, is principally used in reference to time long past; the second, *j'ai eu parlé*, is said of things recently occurred. The latter expresses also assertion of facts, as: *j'ai parlé*.

EXAMPLE.

aujourd'hui j'ai eu déjeuné en dix minutes, I was not more than ten minutes about my breakfast to day

366. The pluperfect, *j'avais parlé*, expresses the completion of an action, at the moment another took place.

EXAMPLE.

j'avais soupé quand il entra, I had done supper when he entered.

It is generally preceded of *dès que, quand, lorsque, aussitôt que*, and, like the imperfect, serves to express habitual thing, repetition, and to describe.

EXAMPLES.

j'allais à la chasse dès que j'avais déjeuné, I went out shooting as soon as I had done breakfast.

EXERCISE.

1. As soon as I had examined this phenomenon, I tried to find out its causes.

2. As soon as we had crossed the river, we found ourselves in a wood where there was not a single foot-path traced.

3. As soon as the great Sesostris *had satisfied* his ambition by the conquest of so many empires, he returned into Egypt, where he devoted the whole of the day to administering strict justice to his people, and, in the evening, he recreated himself by holding conferences with the learned, or by conversing with the most upright people of his kingdom.

4. I *had only received*, like most of the *grande*s, an education in which I *had imbibed* nothing but sentiments of pride and insensibility ; that is, they *had done* every thing in their power, to stifle in me the happy and benevolent dispositions which I *had received* from nature.

(1.) As soon as, *dès que* ; tried to find out, *en rechercher*,

(2.) Crossed, *traverser* ; found ourselves, *se trouver engagé* ; foot-path, *sentier de*.

(3.) The whole of the day, *jour entier* ; administering, *rendre* ; inf-1 ; strict, *exact* ; recreated, *délasser* ; by holding conferences, *à s'entretenir* ; upright, *honnête* ; people, *gens*.

(4.) Grandee, *grand* ; imbibed, *puiser* ; they, *on* ; in their power, *ce qu'on pouvoir*, ind-6 ; stifle, *étouffer* ; benevolent, *bienfaisant*.

367. The *future absolute*, *je parlerai*, is that tense which expresses that an action or event will take place, at a time which does not yet exist.

EXAMPLE.

j'irai demain à la campagne, I shall go to-morrow into the country.

The *future anterior* is the tense which expresses that at a time when a thing will take place, another thing will have already taken place.

EXAMPLE.

quand j'aurai fini je sortirai, when I have done, I shall go out.

368. It is customary in English, to put the *present tense* after *when*, it is not so in French, the *future tense* must always be used, if speaking of things to come.

EXAMPLES.

I will show it to you when I have done, je vous le montrerai, quand je l'aurai fini.
when he comes, do let me know, quand il viendra, faites le moi savoir.

369. The future is also used after *si*, when it means *wether*, that is, when a doubt is expressed.

EXAMPLE.

je ne sais si mon père viendra, I do not know whether my father will come.

When *si* means *if* the future must not be used.

EXAMPLE.

nous irons à la campagne demain we shall go into the country to-morrow
s'il fait beau temps, if it is fine.

The future is used in French in rendering sentences like these, do as you please, *faites comme il vous plaira* or *comme vous voudrez*.

EXERCISE.

1. Remember that youth is but a flower, which will wither almost as soon as it * opens. Thou will see thyself gradually changed. Smiling graces, sweet pleasures, strength, health, and joy, will vanish like a pleasing dream; nothing but the sad remembrance will be left thee.

2. I shall next year take a journey into Greece, and I am preparing myself for it by reading the travels of the young Anacharsis.

3. When you have read the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on Universal History, and studied it in the causes of the rise and fall of states, you will be less astonished at the revolutions, more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced, which appeared to you in the most flourishing state.

(1.) Will wither, (*will be almost as soon withered as*, 47), *sécher*; opens, *éclore*; gradually, *insensiblement*; lively, *riant*; pleasing, *beau*; nothing will be left, *il n'en restera*.

(2.) Take, *faire*; for it, *y*; reading, *lecture de*; (*the travels*, *celui*.)

(3.) Have read, *ind-8*; and, *que vous*, *ind-8*; in it, *y*; rise, *grandeur*, fall, *chute*; sudden, *subite*; (*that have experienced the modern empires, which etc.*) appeared, *ind-2*.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES OF *JE PARLAIS, JE PARLAI, J'AI PARLÉ*

370. The choice of the proper tense, between *je parlais*, *j'ai parlé*, *je parlai* is so difficult for the learner, it requires such perfect understanding of the peculiar acceptation of each of them, that the following passages selected and analysed for their illustration, may prove useful in addition to the foregoing rules.

We read in Marmontel—

Célicour, à l'âge de quinze ans, Célicour at the age of fifteen, had *avait été* dans le monde ce *été* in the world what is called *qu'on appelle* un petit prodige, *un petit prodige*.

The author uses the pluperfect, because he describes what was at a period of time anterior to all those which he is going to mention.

Again,

il faisait des vers les plus galants he composed the most agreeable du monde; *il n'y avait pas* love-sonnets imaginable: there dans le voisinage une jolie was not a pretty woman in the femme qu'il n'eût célébrée: neighbourhood that he had not *c'était dommage de laisser tant* celebrated; it was a pity to let de talents enfouis dans une pé- so many talents be buried in a tite ville; Paris devait en être a little town; Paris was the stage le théâtre, on which they ought to be exhibited.

Here the author makes use of the imperfect, because he speaks of the habitual occupation of Cécicour.

EXAMPLE.

et l'on fit si bien, que son père
se résolut de l'y envoyer; and they contrived matters so, that
his father determined to send him
there.

Now, the author passes to the preterit definite, because he is no longer speaking of what was habitual or repeated, but of an action which once occurred, and long ago.

EXAMPLE.

ce père était un honnête homme, this father was a good sort of man,
qui aimait l'esprit sans en a- who was fond of wit, without
voir, et qui admirait, sans sa- having any, and admired, with-
voir pourquoi, tout ce qui ve- out knowing why, every thing
nait de la capitale. Il avait that came from the metropolis.
même des relations littéraires, Nay, he even had some literary
et du nombre de ses correspon- connexions, and among his corres-
dants était un connaisseur pondents was a connoisseur of the
nommé M. de Fintac, name of Fintac.

Here again, the author resumes the form of the imperfect, as he is now speaking of the habitual state of Cécicour's father, in his little town,

EXAMPLE.

ce fut principalement à lui que it was particularly to him that
Cécicour fut recommandé Cécicour was recommended

The form of the preterit definite is now resumed, because this is said of action passed at a time long elapsed.

And in Molière's *Fourberies de Scapin*, we read

comme nous sommes grands as we are great friends, he imme-
amis, il me fit aussitôt confi- diately imparted the secret of his
dence de son amour, et me love to me, and took me to see
mena voir cette fille que je that girl whom I certainly thought
trouvai belle, à la vérité, mais pretty, but not so much as he wished
non pas tant qu'il voulait que me to do.
je la trouvasse,

Here *fit*, *mena*, *trouvai* are all referring to actions past long ago, and they serve also to state facts but not to describe permanent things. *Voulait*, on the contrary, is in the imperfect, because it expresses the constant and continued desire of Léandre that his mistress should be thought pretty.

Again Scapin says :

c'est ce que je lui ai dit. J'ai *réjeté* bien loin de pareilles propositions, et je lui ai bien fait entendre que vous n'étiez point une dupe, pour vous demander des cinq ou six cents pistoles. Enfin, après plusieurs discours voici où s'est réduit le résultat de notre conférence.

that is what I said to him. I would not hear of such proposals, and I gave him to understand that you were not a dupe to ask you five or six hundred pistols. Finally, after several speeches, this is what has been the result of our interview.

Here the preterit indefinite, *j'ai parlé* is used, because Scapin relates what he has done since he saw Argante, consequently in the course of the day in which he is speaking. There is no description of a continued state of things, except in *étiez*, which refers to the general character of Argante.

OF THE CONDITIONAL.

371. The *conditional* is the mood which affirms a thing would be on some conditions ; it has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

The *present of the conditional* (*je parlerais*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would take place on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

je ferais votre affaire avant peu, *I would settle your business before long, if it only depended upon me.*
si elle dépendait uniquement de moi,

The *past of the conditional* (*j'aurais parlé*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would have taken place at a time which no longer exists, dependant on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

j'aurais, ou j'eusse * fait votre affaire, si vous m'en aviez, ou m'en eussiez parlé, *I would have settled your business if you had mentioned it to me.*

372. The conditional is used to express a wish, as,
que je serais, or, que j'aurais été *how glad I should be, or should have been had I succeeded!*
content si j'avais réussi!

* Some writers, and Voltaire especially, often make use of this form, *j'eusse parlé*, for *j'aurais parlé*. It is here given as an example, but it will be well to follow the first.

AND after *si*, whether, expressing a doubt, as,
 demandez-lui s'il serait venu avec nous, supposé qu'il n'eût pas eu affaire? *ask him whether he would have come with us, had he not been engaged?*

373. It is used also before, or after the imperfect, or pluperfect of the indicative, when they are preceded by *si*, as,

nous nous épargnerions bien des peines, si nous savions modérer nos desirs, *we should spare ourselves much pain did we know how to moderate our desires.*
 vous auriez été plus heureux, si vous aviez suivi mes conseils, *you would have been more happy, if you had followed my advice.*

374. After *quand*, *quand même*; in the sense of *though even, were I to*.

EXAMPLE.

quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content, *were the miser to possess all the gold in the world, he would not be satisfied.*

And in questions like the following, in the sense of *is it possible that, could I? could you? really*.

EXAMPLES.

croiriez-vous votre fils ingrat? *could you think your son ungrateful?*
 l'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un tel vice? *could you have suspected him of such a vice?*

which means, *croyez-vous, pouvez-vous croire, etc. auriez-vous pu, etc.*

EXAMPLE.

serais-tu* vraiment son fils? *can it really be that you should be his son?*
 tu n'aurais* employé qu'une juste défense, *really, you had only recourse to self-defence.*

EXERCISE.

1. If it *were* even possible for men always to act conformably to equity, as it is the multitude that must judge their conduct, the wicked would always blame and contradict them from malignity, and the good sometimes from mistake.

2. What false steps I *should have made* but for you, at my entrance into the world!

3. But for your counsels, I *should have failed* in this undertaking.

* This is again a form much used by Voltaire it is not simply a question, but it expresses a feeling of surprise, of dread or of joy at the thing asserted.

4. How satisfied I *should have been*, if you had sooner informed me of your happiness!

5. If we give to infancy none but just and clear notions, *there would be* a much less considerable number of false wits in the world.

6. *Had Alexander conquered* the whole world, his ambition *would not have been* satisfied: he *would still have found* himself straitened in it.

7. *Could you believe* him vain enough to *aspire to* that high degree of honour?

8. *Could you ever have thought* him capable of deserting the good cause, to go and side with rebels?

9. *Would you renounce* being useful to the present generation because envy fastens on you?

(1.) If even, *quand même*; were, *cond-I*; for men, (that men); to act, *subj-2*; judge, *juger de*; would blame, *ind-7*; contradict, *croiser*, *ind-7*.

(2.) What *que de*; steps, *démarche*; but for, *sans*.

(3.) But for, *sans*; failed, *échouer*.

(4.) How, *que*.

(5.) We, *on*; a much less considerable number, *bien moins*.

(6.) (When Alexander would have conquered); straitened, *trop à l'étroit*.

(8.) Deserting, *abandonner*; to go and side with, *pour se ranger sous les drapeaux de*.

(9.) Renounce, *renoncer à*; fastens, *s'attacher*; on you, *à vos pas*.

375. Foreigners are very apt to use the conditional after *si*, when meaning *supposé que*. They say,

vous auriez vu le roi, si vous seriez venu, *you would have seen the king if you had come.*

This mistake cannot be made if attention is paid to the actual meaning of *si*, which signifies both *if* and *whether*; when it is taken in the acceptance of *whether* the conditional is used, not otherwise.

EXAMPLES.

je ne savais si nous irons ou non, *I did not know whether we should go or no.*
si nous allions à la campagne, je vous en préviendrais, *if we went into the country, I would tell you of it.*

OF THE IMPERATIVE.

376. The *imperative* is that mood which commands, exhorts, entreats, forbids or reproves.

In many verbs a compound of the imperative may be used to express an injunction to have a thing done previously to another, as, *ayez diné avant que je revienne*, have dined before I return.

EXERCISE.

Be not fond of praise; but seek virtue, which
 sing. *passionné pour art. louange f. art.*
 procure it. Let us remember that unless virtue guide
attirer se souvenir à moins que art.
 us, our choice must be wrong. Let us not be deceived by
devoir ind-1 mauvais se laisser prendre à
 the first appearances of things; but let us take time, to
art. se donner art. de
 fix our judgment. Arbiters of the destinies of men, do good
arbitre — née art. art. bien
 if you wish to be happy; do good, if you wish that your memory
*vouloir **
 should be honoured; do good, if you wish that heaven should
 subj-1 *art. sub.*
 open to you its eternal gates.
 1 2 *porte f. 1.*

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

377. Remarks have already been made (No. 113) on the use of the subjunctive mood in French, and some examples have been given, by way of comparison, to show that the two languages by no means agree on this point. Many verbs in English, are put in the *future*, the *conditional* and the *present tense* which, in French, must be in the *subjunctive* mood. Thus,

je ne crois pas qu'il soit si âgé,	<i>I don't think he is so old.</i>
je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I don't think he will come.</i>
je craignais qu'il ne vint,	<i>I feared he would come.</i>
elle est la plus jolie que je connaisse.	<i>she is the prettiest I know.</i>

Observe that the *present* and *future* are the same in the subjunctive mood, the context alone shows of which of the two we speak.

EXAMPLES.

je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I do not think he is coming.</i>
je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I do not think he will come.</i>

The use of the present or of the past tenses of the subjunctive is determined by the preceding verb, as will be seen No. 388.

378. The subjunctive mood is used in French after the following conjunctions.

à moins que*
 afin que
 à Dieu ne plaise que
 au cas que
 avant que
 bien que
 bien loin que
 ce n'est pas que
 de crainte que*
 de manière que
 de peur que*
 Dieu veuille que
 encore que
 excepté que
 jusqu'à ce que
 loin que
 malgré que
 moyennant que
 non pas que
 plutôt à Dieu que
 posé le cas que
 pour que
 pour peu que
 pourvu que
 que
 quelque
 quoique
 sans que
 si ce n'est que
 si non que
 soit que
 supposé que
 tant s'en faut que

unless
in order that
God forbid that
in case
before
although
far from
it is not that
for fear that, lest
so that, in a manner that
for fear that
God grant that
although
except
until
far from
although, spite of
on consideration that
not that
would to God that
suppose
in order that, that
ever so little
provided that
(in the place of another conjunction)
whatever, however
although
without
except that
but that
whether, or
suppose
far from it that

EXAMPLES.

entrez sans qu'il vous voie, *get in without his seeing you.*
 à Dieu ne plaise qu'il en soit ainsi, *God forbid it should be so.*

Those conjunctions which are marked * require *ne* before the verb, though not having a negative sense.

EXAMPLE.

allez doucement de peur qu'il ne vous entende, *go gently lest he should hear you.*

EXERCISE.

Get up early to-morrow morning, that we start in good time. Shall the day pass away without my seeing you? God forbid that I should

* *Ne* is frequently put before the verb which follows *avant que*; yet I believe it ought to be only whenever *avant que* may be rendered by *lest*, and when there is an apprehension that a thing should happen before another.

wrong a man who has ever showed me so much kindness. Make haste, lest he should set off without you. I shall wait until you have done.

379. It has been observed, (No. 357) that the conjunction *que*, used before the indicative mood, coming after a verb, expressing an act of the mind in the affirmative form is never to be omitted in French. This shows that that conjunction does not *in itself* govern the subjunctive mood, as is erroneously thought by most learners; but there are, however, several cases in which *que* requires that mood after it. They are when *que* is used instead, or in the sense, of the following conjunctions: *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *quoique*, *soit que*, which are themselves always followed by the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

- j'attendrai *que* la pluie soit passée I shall wait until the rain be over.
(*jusqu'à ce que*)
je ne sortirai pas *que* vous ne I shall not leave the house before
m'avez payé (*avant que*) you pay me.

EXERCISE.

1. Give me your letter *that* I may send it to the post-office.
2. He says he will not marry *until* he has a profession.
3. He cannot play, but he hurts himself.
4. We shall not go into the country, *unless* he consents to come with us.

- (1.) *Que* for *afin*, *que*; to send, *envoyer*.
- (2.) To marry, *se marier*, *que* for *avant que* *ne*; profession, *état m.*
- (3.) Cannot, *il ne saurait*, *que* for *sans que* *ne*.
- (4.) *Que* for *à moins que* *ne*; to consent, *consentir à*; to come *y aller*.

380. When the conjunction *si* governs two verbs, the second must be in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLE.

- si* votre frère vient demain, et qu'il *il* your brother comes to-morrow,
fasse beau temps, nous le mènerons à la chasse, and the weather is fine, we will
take him hunting.

EXERCISE.

1. If men were wise and followed the lights of reason, they would save themselves many troubles.
2. If you go to Paris, and will take me with you, I shall be most happy.

- (1.) *Être*, ind. 2, *suivre*; to save, *s'épargner*.
- (2.) To take, *mener*; to be happy, *en être enchanté*.

381. An adjective in the superlative degree, requires that the verb following be in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLE.

donnez-moi la meilleure plume que *give me the best pen you have.*
vous ayez,

Obs. Among such adjectives must be included *le premier, le dernier, le seul, l'unique, personne.*

See No. 212.

382. The relative pronouns *que, qui*, following a negative phrase, govern the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

il n'y avait là personne que *je there was there no one that I*
connusse, *knew*
ne pourriez-vous m'indiquer un *could not you recommend some*
homme qui voulut se charger *man to me who would under-*
de cette affaire. *take that business.*

383. *Qui, que*, require also the subjunctive when following a sentence expressing a *wish* or a *doubt* : *où*, for in which, has the same power.

EXAMPLES.

indiquez-moi un endroit où l'on *tell me of a place where that can*
puisse trouver cela, *be found.*
choisissez une femme qui soit *choose a woman who is prudent.*
prudente,

EXERCISE.

1. The largest stage there is for virtue, is conscience.
2. The motions of the planets are the most regular that we know.
3. There is no one who, in such case, would neglect so important a matter.

4. It may be said that the dog is the only animal whose faithfulness be proof.

5. This is the largest elephant that ever was seen.

6. Show me a man who calls himself perfectly happy.

(1.) Stage, théâtre, m. there is, y avoir.

(2.) Motions, mouvement, m.

(3.) To neglect, négliger ; matter, intérêt, m.

(4.) On peut dire, to be proof, soit à l'épreuve.

(5.) Turn, that one has ever seen.

(6.) To call one's self, se dire.

384. There are also a great many verbs which govern the subjunctive mood ; they generally express *wish, determination, permission*, such as *désirer, souhaiter, prier, prétendre, vouloir, entendre, aimer, mieux que, souffrir, s'étonner, ordonner*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

permettez que je vous dise ce qui *allow me to tell you what has*
 est arrivé, *happened.*
 je veux qu'il le fasse à l'instant, *I will have him do it this moment.*

Nier, douter, require the subjunctive, and, when used interrogatively or negatively, *ne* must precede the verb.

EXAMPLES.

je nie que cela soit, *I deny its being so*
 je ne nie pas que cela ne soit, *I do not deny but that it may be so.*
 doutez-vous qu'il ne le fasse ? *do you question his doing it?*

Craindre, appréhender, avoir peur, empêcher, trembler, have also *ne* before the subjunctive except when they are in the negative form.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai peur que cela ne vous fasse *I fear that will give you pain.*
 de la peine,
 je n'ai pas peur que cela vous *I do not fear that it will give you*
 fasse de la peine, *pain.*

EXERCISE.

1. Do you doubt his coming ? No, I do not doubt but he will come after so pressing an invitation.
2. I am afraid he will see me.
3. Do not let that child ride this horse, I am afraid he will throw him down.
4. The rain prevented us from going out.
5. Can you prevent his doing what he pleases.
6. We all pray that he be soon relieved from his sufferings.
7. I do not like people to talk when I am reading.
8. Shall I read the letter aloud.

- (1.) *Douter que* ; to come, *venir*.
- (2.) To be afraid, *craindre*.
- (3.) To let, *permettre que* ; to ride, *monter* ; to throw down, *jeter à bas*.
- (4.) To prevent, *empêcher que* ; to go out, *sortir*.
- (5.) What he pleases, *ce que bon lui semble*.
- (6.) Relieved, *délivré* ; sufferings, *peines*.
- (7.) People, *on*.
- (8.) Shall I, *voulez-vous que*.

385. *Etre ravi, bien aise*, etc. etc. have been noticed, No. 209.

REMARKS ON THE ENGLISH SIGNS OR AUXILIARIES
DO, DID, WILL, WOULD, SHOULD, CAN, COULD,
*MAY, MIGHT.**

386. *Do, did, will, would, should, can, could, may, and might*, are sometimes to be considered as being, simply signs of tenses ; in other cases, they are real verbs.

There can be no difficulty about *do* and *did*; these are mere expletives, denoting interrogation, negation, or merely emphasis, when they are joined to a verb.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime,	<i>I do love.</i>
j'aimais, or j'aimai,	<i>I did lov^r.</i>
aimé-je ?	<i>do I love ?</i>
aimais-je, or aimai-je ?	<i>did I love ?</i>
je n'aime pas,	<i>I do not love.</i>
je n'aimais pas, or, je n'aimai pas,	<i>I did not love.</i>

In all these cases, they are not expressed in French.

But when they are followed by a noun, or a pronoun, in short, by any thing else, except the verb, with which they are connected, then they are real verbs, and mean, *faire*.

EXAMPLES.

faites-moi ce plaisir,	<i>do me that favour.</i>
il le fit,	<i>he did it.</i>
il fit plus qu'en n'eût pu espérer,	<i>he did more than could have been expected.</i>

Should is only a sign of the conditional, when it expresses a thing which may happen upon some condition, and, in fact, it is used for *would*.

EXAMPLE.

j'aimerais la vie champêtre, si mes affaires me permettaient de suivre mon goût,	<i>I should like a country life, if my affairs would permit me to in- dulge my inclinations.</i>
--	--

But when it implies duty or obligation, it is a distinct verb, and must be expressed by *devoir*, as,

nous ne devrions jamais nous écarter du sentier de la vertu,	<i>we should never swerve from the path of virtue.</i>
---	--

Can, could, may and might, are not so difficult as they appear at first sight ; because, in almost every instance, there is no impropriety in rendering them by the verb,

* See the manner of rendering *might, should, ought*, No. 13 of Model Phrases on Difficulties, at the end.

pouvoir. In general, the first two imply a power, a possibility, a capability, etc. and the others a permission, probability, etc.

EXAMPLES.

je puis le faire,	<i>I can do it.</i>
il pourrait le faire,	<i>he could do it.</i>
elle pourrait venir,	<i>she might come.</i>
elle aurait pu venir,	<i>she might have come.</i>
puis-je vous parler ?	<i>may I speak to you ?</i>

Can is rendered by *savoir*, when it is used for to know how.

EXAMPLE.

elle sait chanter,	<i>she can sing.</i>
--------------------	----------------------

Do, did, shall, will, etc. in English, are sometimes used elliptically in answer to an interrogation, or in an affirmation. In such cases the full sense is always given in French, that is, the verb, which is understood in English, is repeated.

See No. 20 of models of phrases, at the end.

EXAMPLE.

ferez-vous votre thème aujourd'hui ?—Oui, je le ferai,	<i>shall you do your exercise to-day ? yes, I shall.</i>
--	--

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

387. When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect, the second verb is put in the imperfect, if we speak of the present time.

EXAMPLE.

je croyais, j'ai cru, j'avais cru que vous étudiez les mathématiques,	<i>I thought, I have thought, I had thought that you were studying the mathematics</i>
--	--

And in the pluperfect, if we speak of past time,

EXAMPLE.

il m'assura qu'il n'avait jamais tant ri,	<i>he assured me that he had never laughed so much.</i>
--	---

And in the present of the conditional, if we speak of a future time.

EXAMPLE.

on m'a dit que votre frère vien- drait à Londres l'hiver pro- chain,	<i>I was told your brother would come to London next winter.</i>
--	--

But, although the first verb may be in some of these tenses, the second must be put in the present, when it relates to things of common occurrence, or states a fact of general application.

EXAMPLE.

je vous disais, je vous ai dit, je vous avais dit, que la santé fait la félicité du corps, et le savoir celle de l'ame,	<i>I told you, I have told you, I had told you, that health constitutes the happiness of the body, and knowledge that of the soul.</i>
---	--

In phrases where the imperfect is preceded by *que*, it denotes, sometimes a thing past, sometimes a thing present. It denotes a thing past, when the verb which is joined to it by the conjunctive *que*, is in the present of the future.

EXAMPLE.

vous savez, ou vous saurez que le peuple Romain était aussi avide qu'ambitieux	<i>you know or you must know that the Romans were a people as covetous as they were ambitious.</i>
--	--

But it denotes a thing present, when the verb, which precedes it, is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect.

EXAMPLES.

on disait, on a dit, on avait dit que Phocion était le plus grand et le plus honnête homme de son temps,	<i>it was said, it has been said, it had been said, that Phocion was the greatest and most upright man of his age.</i>
dès qu'on eut appris à Athènes qu'Alcibiade était à Lacédémone, on se repentit de la précipitation avec laquelle on l'avait condamné,	<i>as soon as it was known at Athens that Alcibiades was at Lacedemon, the Athenians repented the precipitation with which they had condemned him.</i>

Nevertheless, the imperfect denotes the past, in this last instance, when it signifies an action which was past before that, which is expressed by the first verb.

EXAMPLE.

en lisant l'histoire des temps héroïques, vous devez avoir remarqué que ces hommes, dont on a fait des demi-dieux, étaient des chefs féroces et barbares, dignes à peine du nom d'homme,	<i>in reading the history of heroic times, you must have remarked that those men who have been made demi-gods, were ferocious and barbarous chiefs, scarcely deserving the name of men.</i>
--	---

EXERCISE.

1. *I thought you were not ignorant that, to teach others the principles of an art or science, one needs to have experience and skill.*

2. I have been told that your dearest occupation was to form your taste, your heart and your understanding.

3. Darius, in his flight, being * reduced to the necessity of drinking water muddy and infected by dead bodies, affirmed that he never had drunk with so much pleasure.

4. Care has been taken to inculcate in me, from infancy, that I should succeed in the world, only in proportion as I should unite with the desire of pleasing, a great deal of gentleness and civility.

5. Ovid has said, that study softens the manners, and corrects every thing that is found in us rude and barbarous.

6. You know that those pretended heroes, of whom Pagan antiquity has made gods, were only barbarous and ferocious kings, who overran the earth, not so much to conquer as to ravage it, and who left every where traces of their fury and of their vices.

7. It has been said of Pericles, that his eloquence was like a thunderbolt, which nothing could resist.

8. As soon as Aristides had said, that the proposal of Themistocles was unjust, the whole people exclaimed, that they must not think of it any longer.

2. Had you read the history of the early ages, you would know that Egypt was the most enlightened country in the universe, and that whence knowledge spread into Greece and the neighbouring countries.

(1.) Were ignorant, *ignorer*; teach, *instruire dans*; needs, *avoir besoin*; skill, *habileté*.

(2.) I have, etc. (by the active voice) on.

(3.) Flight, *déroute*; muddy, *bourbeux*; affirmed, *assurer*.

(4.) Care has, etc. (active voice) on avoir; in me, *me*; in proportion, *autant*; civility, *honnêteté*.

(5.) Corrects, *effacer*; is found, *se trouver de*.

(6.) Overran, *parcourir*; not so much, *moins*.

(7.) It, on; thunderbolt, *foudre*, m.; (to) which.

(8.) Exclaimed, *s'écrier*; they must, *falloir*, ind-2; of it, *y*; any longer, *plus*.

(9.) Ages, *temps*; whence, *celui d'où*; neighbouring, *circonvoisin*; countries, *lieu*.

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE.

388. When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present, or future, that of the subordinate proposition is put in the present of the subjunctive, to express a thing present, or future; but in the preterit, to express a thing past, we say,

il faut que celui qui parle se mette à la portée de celui qui l'écoute, he that speaks should accommodate himself to the understanding of him that listens.

il voudra que votre frère soit de la partie, he will wish your brother to be one of the party.

But we must say,

pour s'être élevé à ce point de grandeur, il faut que Rome ait eu une suite non interrompue de grands hommes, *to have risen to that pitch of grandeur, Rome must have had an uninterrupted succession of great men.*

EXCEPTION. Though the first verb be in the present, or future, yet the second may be put in the imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive, when some conditional expression is introduced into the sentence.

EXAMPLES.

il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui, *there is no man, whatever merit he may have, that would not feel very much mortified, were he to know all that is thought of him.*

où trouvera-t-on un homme qui ne fût la même faute, s'il était exposé aux mêmes tentations ? *where will you find the man who would not have committed the same error, had he been exposed to the same temptations?*

je doute que votre frère eût réussi sans votre assistance. *I doubt whether your brother would have succeeded, had it not been for your assistance.*

EXERCISE.

1. He who wishes to teach an art, must *know it thoroughly*, he must *give none but clear, precise, and well-digested notions of it*; he must *instil them, one by one, into the minds of his pupils, and, above all, he must not overburthen their memory with useless, or unimportant rules.*

2. He must *yield to the force of truth, when they shall have suffered it to appear in its real light.*

3. There is no work, however perfect people may suppose it, that would not be liable to criticism, if it were examined with severity and in every point of view.

4. I doubt whether his piece would have had the approbation of *connaisseurs*, if he had not determined to make in it the changes you judged necessary.

(1.) It must (that he who; etc. know it); he must (not repeated), *qui*, *instil*, *faire entrer*; by *à*; overburthen, *surcharger*; unimportant, *insignifiant*.

(2.) (It must, ind-7, that he); yield, *se rendre*; suffered, *permettre*; it to appear. (that it appear); real light, *vrai jour*.

(3.) Would be liable, *prêter*, subj-2; with severity, *à la rigueur*; in sous; point of view, *face*.

(4.) Approbation, *suffrage*; had determined, *se décider*; in it, *y*; judged, ind-4.

When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, the pluperfect or the conditional, the second is put in the imperfect of the subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing present.

or future ; but it is put in the pluperfect, if we wish to express a thing that is past.

Je voulais, j'ai voulu, j'eusse voulu, je voudrais, or j'eusse voulu qu'il finisse cette affaire.

Je ne savais pas, je n'ai pas su, etc. que vous eussiez étudié les mathématiques.

REMARK. With the preterit indefinite, the second verb is put in the present, if it expresses a thing of common occurrence.

EXAMPLES.

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au dehors, afin qu'on puisse voir à travers, *God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.*

And in the preterit, if we mean to express a thing past, as,

il a fallu qu'il ait sollicité ses juges *he must have been obliged to solicit his judges*

EXERCISE.

1. Mr. de Turenne never would buy any thing on credit, of tradesmen, for fear, said he, they should lose a great part of their demand, if he happened to be killed. All the workmen who were employed about his house, had orders to bring in their bills, before he set out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid.

2. *It would be better*, for a man who truly loves himself, to lose his life, then to forfeit his honour by some base and shameful action.

3. Lysurgus, in one of his laws, had forbidden the lighting of those who came from a feast in the evening, that the fear of not being able to reach their houses might prevent them from getting intoxicated.

4. People used the bark of trees, or skins, to write upon,* before paper was known.

5. Go and * ask that old man : for whom are you planting ? he will answer you : for the immortal gods, who have ordered both that I should profit by the labour of those that have preceded me, and that those who should come after me, should profit by mine.

(1.) Would, *vouloir*, ind-2 ; buy on credit, *prendre à crédit* ; of, *chez* ; happened, *venir* ; were employed, *travailler* ; about, *pour* ; bills, *mémoire* ; he, *on* ; set out for, *se mettre en*.

(2.) To lose, (that he would lose) ; forfeit, *ternir*.

(3.) In, *par* ; the lighting of, *que on éclairer*, subj-2 ; that, *afin que* ; reach their houses, *se rendre chez eux* ; getting intoxicated, *s'enivrer*.

(4.) People, *on* ; bark, *écorce* ; skins, *peau* ; known, *en usage*.

(5.) Have, ordered, *vouloir* ; both, *et* ; by, *de*.

The subjunctive is elegantly used in elliptical phrases, where the principal proposition is omitted, as,

qu'il vive (<i>je souhaite qu'il,</i>)	<i>may he live!</i>
qu'il ne soit oublié jusqu'à ce point! (<i>je suis surpris qu'il</i>)	<i>that he should so forget himself.</i>
qui m'aime, me suive! (<i>je veux que celui qui</i>)	<i>whoever loves me, let him follow me.</i>
heureux l'homme qui peut, ne fût-ce que dans sa vieillesse, jouir de toute la force de sa raison! (<i>quand ce ne serait que,</i>)	<i>happy the man that can, were it only in his old age, enjoy the whole strength of his reason.</i>

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE DIFFERENT MOODS.

389. REMARK. Our intention is not to give the concord of all the tenses, but simply to mention some of the principal.

THE INDICATIVE

After the imperfect may come three tenses.

EXAMPLES.

Je lisais { *quand vous écriviez.*
quand vous avez écrit.
quand vous écrivâtes.

The preterit anterior requires the preterit definite, as, *quand j'eus fini, vous entrâtes.*

After the pluperfect may come, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the preterit anterior, and the imperfect.

EXAMPLES.

J'avais lu { *quand vous entrâtes*
quand vous êtes entré
quand vous fûtes entré
quand vous entriez

After the preterit anterior indefinite, comes the preterit indefinite, as, *quand j'ai eu diné, vous êtes entré.*

In conjunction with *si* for *supposé que*, the future absolute requires the present, and the future anterior, the preterit indefinite.

EXAMPLE.

Vous partirez, si je veux.
Il sera parti, si vous l'avez voulu.

CONCORD BETWEEN THE CONDITIONAL AND THE IMPERFECT AND THE CONDITIONAL.

The conditional, first and second, are used in conjunction with the imperfect, and the pluperfect governed by *si*.

EXAMPLE.

Vous partiriez, si je le voulais.
Vous seriez parti { *si je l'avais voulu*
 si je l'eusse voulu

The present of the conditional and the two past tenses of the conditional may be used in conjunction with each other.

EXAMPLES.

Quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content.
Quand Alexandre aurait conquis tout l'univers, il n'aurait pas été content.
Vous fussiez parti, si je l'eusse voulu.

CONCORD BETWEEN THE PRESENT AND THE FUTURE AND THE OTHER TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

391. These two tenses may be joined to all the tenses of the indicative and conditional.

EXAMPLES.

		{	<i>vous partez aujourd'hui.</i>
			<i>vous partirez demain.</i>
			<i>vous serez parti, quand, etc.</i>
			<i>vous partiez hier.</i>
			<i>vous partîtes hier.</i>
<i>On dit</i>	} que	{	<i>vous êtes parti ce matin.</i>
<i>On dira</i>			<i>vous fûtes parti hier, quand, etc.</i>
			<i>vous étiez parti hier, quand, etc.</i>
			<i>vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si, etc.</i>
			<i>vous seriez parti hier, si, etc.</i>
			<i>vous fussiez parti plutôt, si, etc.</i>

REMARK. The same concord exists when the sentence is negative; except that for the present absolute of the indicative, the present of the subjunctive is substituted. Instead of, *on ne dit pas que vous partez aujourd'hui*, the genius of the French language requires that we should say, *on ne dit pas que vous partiez aujourd'hui*.

The imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, and the pluperfect, are followed either by the imperfect, or the pluperfect.

EXAMPLES.

<i>On disait</i>	} que	{	<i>vous partiez aujourd'hui.</i>
<i>On dit hier</i>			<i>vous étiez parti.</i>
<i>On a dit</i>			
<i>On avait dit</i>			

The future anterior requires the preterit indefinite, as, *on aura dit que vous avez menti.*

The conditional present may be followed by the present, the imperfect, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, the future of the indicative, as well as by the three conditionals.

EXAMPLES.

On croirait { *qu'il se trompe*
qu'il se trompait
qu'il s'est trompé
qu'il s'était trompé
qu'il se trompera
qu'il se tromperait, si, etc.
qu'il se serait trompé, si, etc.
qu'il se fût trompé, etc.

The first conditional past may be followed by the imperfect, the pluperfect, as well as by the two other conditionals.

EXAMPLES.

On aurait cru { *qu'il tombait*
qu'il était tombé
qu'il serait tombé
qu'il fût tombé.

The second conditional past may be joined to the same tenses.

PRINCIPAL CONCORD WITH THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

392. To the present, the future absolute, and the future anterior of the indicative is generally joined the present of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

il veut
il voudra
il aura voulu } *que vous partiez.*

To the imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, and the preterit anterior may be joined the imperfect of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

je voulais
je voulais
j'ai voulu
j'avais voulu
j'eus voulu } *que vous partissiez.*

To the future anterior the preterit of the subjunctive, as, *il aura voulu qu'il soit parti.*

The conditional present is accompanied either by the imperfect, or by the pluperfect of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je voudrais que</i>	<i>{ vous partissiez</i>
<i>j'aurais voulu</i>	<i>{ vous fussiez parti</i>
<i>j'eusse voulu</i>	<i>{ que vous fussiez parti.</i>

OF THE INFINITIVE.

393. The *infinitive* is that mood which conveys the abstract idea of an action unconnected with time or persons; thus, *aimer, parler*. The use of the infinitive after another verb, the prepositions *de, a, pour*, placed before it according as the case requires, etc. have been noticed No. 350, which see.

394. The participle present is used in English in many cases which require the infinitive in French. The principal and most common, are when the English participle is governed by a preposition. See Exception, 400.

EXAMPLES.

<i>I blame you for having refused,</i>	<i>je vous blame d'avoir refusé.</i>
<i>he has gone without speaking to me,</i>	<i>il est parti sans me parler.</i>
<i>she takes delight in teasing,</i>	<i>elle se plaît à tourmenter.</i>
<i>I like dancing,</i>	<i>j'aime à danser.</i>

Observe that the same, or the corresponding, prepositions are not always used, because, as it cannot too often be repeated, the two languages differ essentially in this point.

EXERCISE.

We only shut our eyes to	truth	because	we	fear	to
ne	* art.	art.	que	parce que	de
see ourselves as we are.		We were yet far from the castle,			
2 nous 1 tel que		ind-2 encore			
when one of our friends came to join us.		I did not think I was			
	ind-3 *	ind-2 * devoir			
to set out so soon. He promises every day that he will					
	art. pl.	de	*	*	*
amend, but I do not rely upon his promises.		They talk			
se corriger	compter	promesse f. pl.	on		
of a secret expedition; he hopes to be (in it). He relies upon					
2	-f. 1	*	en		

seeing you very soon to terminate amicably his affair
 inf. 1 *au premier jour pour à l'amiable*
 with you. You expected to take a journey this year; but
s'attendre ind-2 faire voyage m.
 your father has changed his mind. He threatens to punish us se-
*de * avis de sé-*
 verely, if we (fall again) into the same error.
vèrement retomber faute

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

395. The *participle* is a part of the verb which partakes of the properties both of a verb and adjective; of a verb, as it signifies action and state, of an adjective, as it expresses the quality of a person, or thing.

There are two participles, the *participle present*, and the *participle past*.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

The *participle present* always terminates in *ant*: as *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant*.

396. The *participle present* is undeclined, that is takes neither gender nor number, when it expresses an action, and may be turned by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, *une montagne*, or *des montagnes dominant* (i.e.) *qui dominant ou dominaient* sur des plaines immenses, a mountain or mountains commanding immense plains; *un homme, des hommes, une femme, des femmes lisant, parlant, marchant*, (*qui lisent, qui parlaient, qui marchent*) a man, men, a woman, women reading, speaking, walking. But when, like an adjective, it expresses simply a quality, it takes both the gender and number of its substantive; as *un homme obligeant*, an obliging man; *une femme obligeante*, and obliging woman; *des tableaux parlants*, speaking portraits; *la religion dominante*, the established religion; *à la nuit tombante*, at night falling. It is known to partake of the nature of the adjective when it is put before the noun in English.

What grammarians call *gerund*, is nothing but the *participle present*, to which the word *en* is prefixed; *on se forme l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, we form our minds by reading good books.

EXERCISE.

That mountain being very high, and thus commanding a vast
élevé ainsi dominer sur grand

extent of country, was very well calculated for our observations.
*étendue pays ind-2 * propre à*

This woman is of a good disposition, obliging every one, when
caractère m. tout le monde quand

ever she (has it in her power). They go cringing before the great,
le pouvoir ramper devant pl.

that they may be insolent to their equals. The state of pure
*afin de * * inf-1 pl. avec égal*

nature is the savage living in the desert, but living in his family,
famille f.

knowing his children, loving them, (making use) of speech, and
connaître user art. parole

(making himself understood.) An agreeable languor impercep-
se faire entendre 2 langueur f. l. insensi-

tibly (laying hold) of my senses, suspended the activity of my
blement s'emparer sens suspendre ind-3

soul, and I fell (asleep). Time is a real blunderer, placing,
s'endormir ind-3 art. vrai brouillon mettre,

replacing, ordering, disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching,
remettre, ranger déranger imprimer effacer approcher

removing, add making all things good and bad; and almost always
éloigner rendre f. pl. quasi

(impossible to be known again).
méconnaissable

397. The participle present is frequently used in English as a substantive, which is not the case in French.

EXAMPLE.

his ruling passion is hunting, *sa passion dominante est la chasse.*

When governed by a preposition, it is rendered in French by the infinitive. (No. 394.)

EXAMPLES.

prevent him from doing mischief, *empêchez-le de faire le mal.*
 there is a pleasure in silencing *il y a plaisir à fermer la bouche*
 great talkers. *aux grands parleurs.*

398. The participle present frequently takes the place of the *indicative* in English; it must not then be rendered literally, but in the following manner.

EXAMPLE.

I met them riding post, *je les ai rencontrés qui couraient la poste.*

399. Sometimes also it is used substantively with a possessive pronoun; then, it must be rendered in French by

the indicative or the subjunctive, according as the case requires.

EXAMPLES.

the fear of his coming (lest he should come) harrassed us,
I doubt his being faithful.
what do you think of his writing to me?

la crainte qu'il ne vint nous tourmentait.
je doute qu'il soit fidèle, etc.
que pensez-vous de cela? il m'a écrit. Savez-vous qu'il m'a écrit? qu'en pensez-vous?

400. In No. 394, it has been said that the infinitive is used after prepositions in French, and not the participle present. The only exception to this rule is *en*.

EXAMPLES.

nous en parlerons en marchant,
on apprend en enseignant,

we will talk about it as we walk.
we learn by teaching others.

401. The participle present always forming a phrase incidental and subordinate to another, must necessarily relate to the subject of the principal phrase, when it is not preceded by another noun, as in this sentence:—

je ne puis vous accompagner à la campagne, ayant des affaires qui exigent ici ma présence,

I cannot accompany you into the country, having some business that requires my presence here.

The participle present *ayant* relates to the subject *je*, since the subordinate proposition, formed by *ayant*, could have no kind of relation to the principal proposition, if it could not be resolved into this *parce que j'ai des affaires qui, etc.* But, in this sentence:

combien voyons-nous de gens, qui, connaissant le prix du temps, le perdent mal-à-propos!

how many people do we see, who, knowing the value of time, waste it improperly!

Connaissant relates to the substantive *gens*, because this is the word which it modifies, and because the relative *qui*, placed between that substantive, as the regimen, and the participle present, obviates every kind of ambiguity.

REMARKS. Two participles ought never to be used together without being united by a conjunction, as, etc.,

EXAMPLE.

c'est un homme aimant et craignant Dieu,

he is a man loving and fearing God.

2. The relative *en* ought never to be put either before a participle present, or before a gerund. We cannot say,

Je vous ai remis mon fils entre les mains, en voulant faire quelque chose de bon,

because the sense would be ambiguous : for, the meaning is not :

As I wish to do something good, or, as I wish to do well, I have put my son into your hands.

But,

I have put my son into your hands, as I wish to make something of him.

We should say : *Voulant en faire*, etc.

Likewise this sentence would be improper :

Le prince tempère la rigueur du pouvoir, en en partageant les fonctions.

On account of the repetition of the word *en*, used in two different senses, viz., as a preposition and a relative. Another turn must be then adopted, as,

C'est en partageant les fonctions du pouvoir, qu'un prince en tempère la rigueur.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The participle past has various terminations ; as, *aimé fini, ouvert, dissous*, etc.

402. The participle past is sometimes declined, sometimes not, thus,

Avez-vous mangé toutes les fraises que vous avez cueillies ce matin.

Avez-vous mangé, vous avez cueillies are two verbs in the same tense, and person, yet one participle *mangé*, is undeclined, the other, *cueillies*, is feminine plural. This difference, apparently contradictory, is grounded upon a principle which must be explained.

OF THE PARTICIPLE WITH ETRE.

403. The participle past, when accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject in gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

mon frère est tombé,
mes frères sont tombés,
ma sœur est tombée,
mes sœurs sont tombées,
la nuit sera bientôt passée,

*my brother is fallen.
my brothers are fallen.
my sister is fallen.
my sisters are fallen.
the night will soon be over.*

les spectacles sont fréquentés,
cette fleur est fort recherchée,
ils sont fort estimés,

the theatres are frequented.
this flower is much sought after.
they are very much esteemed.

There is an exception which is explained at No. 410;
participle past of Reflective Verbs.

EXERCISE.

Fire-arms were not known to the ancients. Ishmael, the
art. *arme à feu* f. pl. ind-4 *connu de* *Ismâel*
son of Abraham, is known among the Arabs, as (the man) from
-- *parmi* *Arabe* *celui*
whom they sprung, and circumcision has remained (among
être sorti art. f. *être demeuré* *leur*
them) as the mark of their origin. Heaven is that permanent
f. art. — 2
city, (into which) the just are to be received after this life.
cité f. 1 *où* pl. *devoir* * *après*
In Abraham's time, the threatenings of the true God were
du 2 art. 1 *menace* f. pl. ind-2
dreaded by Pharaoh, king of Egypt; but, in the time of Moses, all
redouté de Pharaon *Moïse* art.
nations were corrupted, and the world, which God has made to
f. *perversi* *pour*
manifest his power, was become a temple of idols. That dread-
pouvoir in. *devenu* *ter-*
ful crisis which threatened the state with instant destruc-
tion 2 *crise* f. 1 ind. *de prochain* 2 f. 1
tion, was happily soon over. She is come to bring us all
ind-3 *heureusement* *passé* *
kinds of refreshments. The sciences have always been pro-
sorte f. sing. *rafraîchissement* f. *pro-*
tected by enlightened governments.
tégé art. *éclairé* 2 1

PARTICIPLE PAST WITH AVOIR.

404. A participle past with *avoir*, may be the compound
tense of a *neuter verb*, or of an *active verb*.

405. The participle past of a *neuter verb* is invariable.

EXAMPLE.

elle a dormi, she has slept.
nous avons ri, we have laughed.
ils ont pensé, they have thought

406. The participle past of an *active verb* is declined in
one case, and not in the other.

avez-vous mangé les fraises que vous avez cueillies.

1. The participles never agree with the subject or nomi-
nativo of the verb.

EXAMPLES.

mon frère a écrit,	my brother has written.
mes frères ont écrit,	my brother have written.
ma sœur a écrit,	my sister has written.
les Amazones ont acquis de la célébrité,	the Amazons have acquired celebrity.
j'ai contraint les soldats à marcher,	I have forced the soldiers to march.

2. When it agrees it is with the accusative case or object. If it precedes, it is not declined.

EXAMPLES.

les soldats ont attaqué la ville,	the soldiers have attacked the town.
mes filles ont dessiné ces fleurs,	my daughters have painted these flowers.

EXERCISE.

The Romans successively triumphed over the most warlike
Romain successivement 2 ind-4 1 de belliqueux 2
 nations. Lampridius relates that Adrian erected to Jesus
1 raconter Adrien élever ind-6
 Christ some temples, which (were still to be seen) in his
de art. on encore 2 voir ind-1 1 de
 time. Happy those princes who have never (made use) of their
** art. user*
 power but to do good! We have spent the whole day
pouvoir que pour art. bien journée f.
 in tormenting ourselves. One has seldom seen a great stock of
à inf-1 à nous 1 rarement fonds m.
 good sense in a man of imagination. The errors of Descartes proved
*sens — — **
 very useful to Newton.
beaucoup servir ind-4 —

407. The participle past of an active verb agrees with the object or accusative when it follows it; that is, it agrees with the noun substantive, which is the antecedent of *que*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, *nous*, *vous*, *les*.

EXAMPLES.

les livres que j'ai lus	the books which I have read.
la lettre que j'ai écrite,	the letter which I have written.

lus agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *livres*, m. pl.
Ecrire agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *lettre* f. s.

Nous avons cueilli des fraises et nous les avons mangées.

Cueilli is undeclined, because it precedes the object

it is joined are used impersonally, or when that participle is followed by the verb, which governs the noun, or pronoun preceding it.

EXAMPLES.

les chaleurs excessives qu'il a fait cette été, ont beaucoup nui à la récolte,	the excessive heats, which we have had this summer, have done great injury to the corn.
quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé ?	what unpleasant adventure have you met with ?
la maison que j'ai fait bâtir,	the house which I have ordered to be built.
imitiez les vertus que vous avez entendu louer,	imitate the virtues which you have heard praised.
les mathématiques que vous n'avez pas voulu que j'étudiasse,	the mathematics which you would not permit me to study.

To make a right application of the second part of this rule, we ought to examine whether we can put the regimen immediately after the participle. As we cannot say ; *J'ai fait la maison, vous avez entendu les vertus, vous n'avez pas voulu les mathématiques*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the second verb. Sometimes, however, the regimen may relate either to the participle, or to the following verb, according to the meaning of the speaker.

Thus, *je l'ai vu peindre*, means, I saw her picture drawn ; but *je l'ai vue peindre*, signifies, I saw her painting.

Sometimes it happens likewise, that, in sentences which seem to resemble each other, the regimen in one belongs to the participle, and in the other to the verb which follows it. For instance, this question, *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle actrice ?* Have you heard the new actress sing ? Should be thus answered, *oui, je l'ai entendu chanter*, yes, I have : (I have heard her when she sang) but this question *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle ariette ?* have you heard the new air sung ? must be answered, *oui je l'ai entendue chanter*, yes, I have. (I have heard it to be sung).

409. The participle past does not agree with the antecedent of *en*.

EXAMPLE.

sachant que nous aimions le gibier, il nous en a envoyé un panier,	knowing that we were fond of game, he sent us a basket full.
--	--



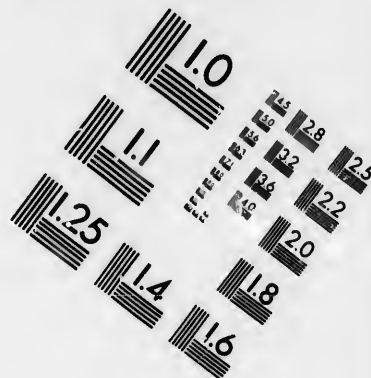
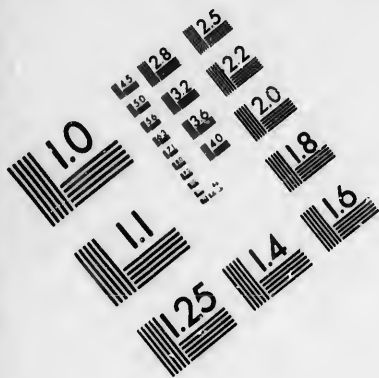
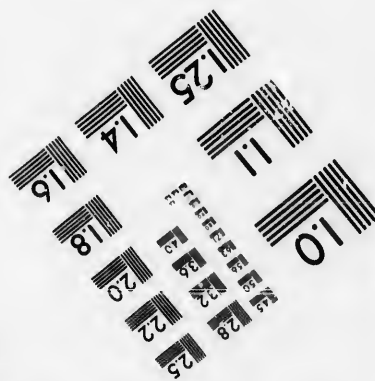
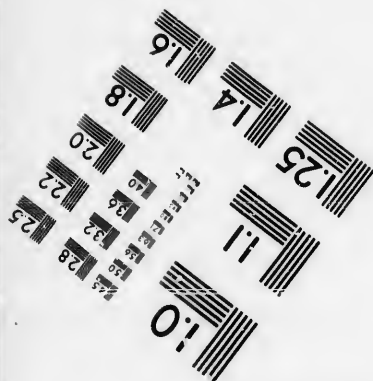
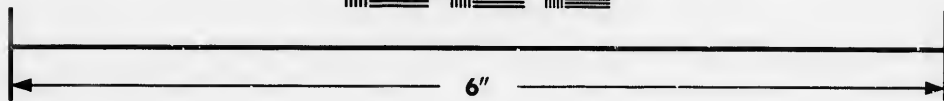
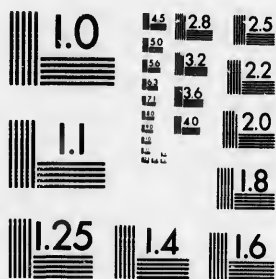


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

15 28 25
18 22 20
18

10

EXERCISE.

The great changes which (have taken place) in administration, have astonished many people. The heavy rains which we have had in the spring, have been the cause of many diseases. The scarcity which there was last winter, has afforded the opportunity of doing much good; What news has reached you? How many imprudent steps were taken on that occasion! How many large ships have been built in England within these fifty years! The figures which you have learned to draw are of great beauty. We ought never to swerve from the good path which we have begun to follow. The measures which you advised me to adopt, have not succeeded. The rule, which I have begun to explain, seems to me very easy to (be understood). You see that I have not (been mistaken) respecting the affairs which I had foreseen you would have in hand. I asked for some pencils, and he has sent me some very good ones.

PARTICIPLE PAST WITH REFLECTED VERBS.

410. It has been said, No. 121, that all active verbs may be used reflectedly.

The participle past of such verbs agrees with the subject or nominative.

EXAMPLES.

elle s'est blessée, she has hurt herself.
nous nous sommes ennuyés, we have got tired.

Here *blessée, ennuyés*, agree with *se, nous*, of which *elle*,

nous, are the antecedents; *se, nous* being also besides the accusative of *blessed, ennuyer*.

But here,

il s'est cassé la jambe,
Lucrecia s'est donné la mort,

he has broken his leg.
Lucrecia destroyed herself.

Cassé, donné are undeclined, because they precede *jambe, mort*, which are the objects or accusatives of the verbs *casser, donner*. *Se*, is also in both examples an indirect case or dative. But, speaking of the *broken leg* we say,
je ne sais comment il se l'est cassée, I don't know how he broke it.

Because *cassée* follows *la*, of which *jambe* is the antecedent.

EXERCISE.

Our troops have fought with great courage. They have not sufficiently made haste. Did not our sisters stop (on the) road. I have put my shoulder out of joint. Show me the hand which you have cut. The Amazons have made themselves famous by their courage. What strange fancies she has got into her head! I don't think you have cleaned your teeth this morning? Indeed I have cleaned them before I went out.

CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE AND MEANING OF SOME OF THE FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

411. The office of prepositions is to connect two nouns substantives, and show the relation which they bear to one another.

412. Those who know Latin are apt to mistake the meaning of *à* and *de*; the former never means *from*, but *to*; it is the sign of the dative case; *de* means *of, from, with*, and is the sign of what is called the genitive and ablative cases; that is, it expresses, *possession, source, accompaniment, instrumentality*.

EXAMPLES.

approchez-vous du feu,
éloignez-vous du feu,
il le fait de bon cœur,
écrivez à Jean,

come near the fire.
go from the fire.
he does it with readiness.
write to John.

En and *dans* have nearly the same meaning; but they differ in this, that *former* is used in a more vague, the latter in a more determinate sense.

EXAMPLE.

J'étais en Angleterre, dans la province de Middlesex.

A, *en*, are rendered by *to* or *in* before names of countries and places, but they must not be used indifferently. *A* is used before proper names of places, *en* before names of countries, provinces.

EXAMPLES.

il est allé en France,
elle est allée à Rome,
ils demeurent en Normandie,
elles résident à Rouen.

he is gone to France.
she is gone to Rome.
they live in Normandy.
they live in or at Rouen.

From what has just been said, it follows then that *en*, on account of its indeterminate nature ought not to be followed by the article, except in a small number of phrases sanctioned by usage.

EXAMPLES.

En la présence de Dieu; en la grand' chambre du parlement, en l'absence d'un tel; en l'année mil huit cent dix-sept, etc.

with respect to the expressions.

En l'honneur, en l'âge, it is better to say, *à l'honneur, à l'âge*.

413. *Avant* is a preposition in this phrase.:

avant le jour,

before day-light.

But it is an adverb in this:

n'allez pas si avant,

do not go so forward.

Autour and *alentour*, must not be confounded; *autour* is a preposition, and *alentour* an adverb.

EXAMPLES.

tous les grands étaient autour
du trône,
le roi était sur son trône, et les
grands étaient alentour,

all the grandees stood round the
throne.
the king was upon the throne, and
the grandees stood round.

Avant and *auparavant* are not used indifferently.
Avant is followed by a regimen.

EXAMPLES.

avant Pâques,
 avant ce temps,

before Easter,
 before that time.

Auparavant is followed by no regimen.

EXAMPLE.

si vous partez, venez me voir *if you set off, come and see me*
 auparavant, *first.*

Prêt à and *près de*, are not the same expressions. *Prêt* is an adjective.

je suis prêt à faire ce que vous voudrez, *I am ready to do what you please.*

But *près* is a proposition :

mon ouvrage est près d'être fini, *my work is nearly finished.*

Au travers and *à travers* differ in this: the first is followed by the preposition *de*, the second is not.

EXAMPLE.

il se fit jour au travers des ennemis,
 il se fit jour à travers les ennemis, } *he fought his way through the enemy.*

Avant denotes priority of time and order.

EXAMPLE.

Il est arrivé avant moi, l'article se met avant le nom.

Devant is used for *en présence*, *vis-à-vis*.

EXAMPLE.

Il a paru devant le juge; il loge devant l'église.

Devant is likewise a preposition marking order, and is the opposite of *après*.

EXAMPLES.

il a le pas devant moi,

he has precedence of me.

si vous êtes pressé, courez devan-

If you are in a hurry, run before.

Envers and *vers*, towards, are also different as to their meaning, the former is put before names of persons, with a moral sense, the other expresses motion, and is put before names of places and persons.

EXAMPLES.

comportez-vous bien envers lui, *behave well towards him, with regard to him.*
 ils marchaient vers la ville, *they were marching towards the city.*
 elle s'avança vers moi, *she advanced towards me.*

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

414. Some prepositions require the article before their regimen; others do not; and others again, sometimes admit, sometimes reject it.

The following prepositions generally require the article before the noun, which they govern.

ayant,	depuis,	envers,	nonobstant,	selon,
après,	devant,	excepté,	parmi,	suivant,
chez,	derrière	hors,	pendant,	touchant,
dans,	durant	hormis,	pour,	vers,
avant l'aurore,	chez le prince,		envers les pauvres,	
après la promenade,	dans la maison,		devant l'église, etc,	

There are, however, exceptions.

EXAMPLES.

avant terme,	avant diner,	pour lit une pailleasse,
avant midi,	après midi,	depuis minuit, etc.

A noun governed by the preposition *en*, is not, in general, preceded by the article.

EXAMPLE.

En ville, en campagne, en extase, en songe, en pièces, etc.

L'armée est entrée en campagne, means the army has taken the field; but *M. N. est allé à la campagne*, means, Mr. N. is gone into the country.

These eleven prepositions *à, de, avec, contre, entre, malgré, outre, par, pour, sur, sans*, sometimes admit, sometimes reject the article before their regimen.

If the article is used in these phrases:

Jouer *sur le* velours.

St. Paul veut de la subordination *entre la* femme et *le* mari.

Sans les passions, où serait le mérite?

It is suppressed in,

Etre *sur pied*; un peu de façons ne gêne rien *entre mari et* femme.

Vivre *sans passions*, c'est vivre *sans plaisirs*, et *sans peines*.

This difference arises of course from the noun being taken in a general and definite sense, or in a partial and restricted signification.

REPETITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

415. The prepositions *de*, *à* and *en*, must be repeated before all nouns which they govern.

EXAMPLES.

voyons qui l'emportera <i>de</i> vous,	<i>let us see which of us will excel,</i>
<i>de</i> lui, ou <i>de</i> moi,	<i>you, he, or I.</i>
elle a <i>de</i> l'honnêteté, <i>de</i> la douceur, <i>des</i> grâces, et <i>de</i> l'esprit.	<i>she has politeness, sweetness, grace, and abilities.</i>
la loi, que Dieu a gravée au fond de mon cœur, m'instruit de tout ce que je dois à l'auteur de mon être, <i>au</i> prochain, à moi-même,	<i>the law which God has deeply engraved on my heart instructs me in every thing I owe to the author of my being, to my neighbour, and to myself.</i>
<i>en</i> Asie, <i>en</i> Europe, <i>en</i> Afrique, et jusqu' <i>en</i> Amérique, on trouve le même préjugé	<i>in Asia, in Europe, in Africa, and even in America, we find the same prejudices.</i>

The other prepositions, especially those consisting of two syllables, are generally repeated—before nouns, which have meanings totally different; but seldom before nouns, that are nearly synonymous.

EXAMPLES.

rien n'est moins <i>selon</i> Dieu et <i>selon</i> le monde,	<i>nothing is less according to God and according to the world.</i>
cette action est contre l'honneur et contre toute espèce de principes,	<i>that action is contrary to honor and every kind of principle.</i>

But we ought to say,

il perd sa jeunesse <i>dans</i> la mollesse et la volupté,	<i>he wastes his youth in effeminacy and pleasure.</i>
notre loi ne condamne personne <i>sans</i> l'avoir entendu et examiné,	<i>our laws condemned nobody without having heard and examined him.</i>

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

417. Some prepositions govern nouns without the help of another preposition.

EXAMPLES.

devant la maison,	<i>before the house.</i>
hormis son frère,	<i>except his brother.</i>
sans son épée,	<i>without his sword, etc.</i>

Others require the help of the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

près de la maison,
à l'insu de son frère,
au-dessus du pont,

near the house.
unknown to his brother.
above the bridge, &c.

These four, *jusque*, *par rapport*, *quant* and *sauf* are followed by the preposition *à*.

EXAMPLES.

jusqu'au mois prochain,
quant à moi,

till the next month.
as for me, etc.

Practice alone can teach these different regimens.

A noun may be governed by two prepositions, provided they do not require different regimens; thus we may say with propriety,

celui qui écrit selon les circonstances, pour et contre un parti, est un homme bien méprisable,

he who writes according to circumstances, both for and against a party, is a very contemptible man.

But it would be wrong to say,

Celui qui écrit *en faveur* et *contre* un parti, etc.

because *en faveur* requires the preposition *de*.

Prepositions which, with their regimen, express a circumstance, are generally placed as nearly as possible to the word to which that circumstance relates.

EXAMPLES.

on voit des personnes qui, avec beaucoup d'esprit, commettent de très-grandes fautes,
j'ai envoyé à la poste les lettres que vous avez écrites,
croyez-vous pouvoir ramener par la douceur ces esprits égarés?

we see persons who, with a great deal of wit, commit very great faults.
I have sent to the post-office the letters which you have written.
do you think you can reclaim by gentleness, those mistaken people?

If we attempt to alter the place of these prepositions, we shall find that the sentences will become ambiguous.

CHAPTER VII. OF THE ADVERBS.

PLACE OF ADVERBS.

418. In simple tenses, the adverb is generally placed after the verb; and, the compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme le plus éclairé est ordinairement celui qui pense le plus modestement de lui-même, *the man who is most learned is generally he who thinks most modestly of himself.*
 avez-vous jamais vu un pédant plus absurde et plus vain ? *have you ever seen a pédant more absurd and more vain ?*

Compound adverbs, or adverbial phrases are placed after the verb, and even after the participle past in a compound tense.

EXAMPLE:

c'est à la mode, *that is fashionable.*
 il eût fallu se lever plus matin, *it would have been necessary to rise earlier.*
 nous nous sommes levés à la hâte, *we got up hastily.*

EXCEPTIONS. 1.—Adverbs of order, rank, and those which express a determinate time, are placed either before, or after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

nous devons premièrement faire notre devoir ; secondement chercher les plaisirs permis, *we ought, first, to do our duty ; secondly, enjoy lawful pleasures.*
 aujourd'hui il fait beau ; il pleuvra peut-être demain. *to day, it is fine ; it will rain perhaps to-morrow.*

2. These adverbs, *comment, où, d'où, par où, combien, pourquoi, quand*, used with, or without interrogation, are always placed before the verb which they modify.

EXAMPLES.

comment vous portez-vous ? *how do you do ?*
 où allez-vous ? *whither are you going ?*
 il ne sait comment s'y prendre, *he does not know how to set about it.*

The adverbs *très, fort, infiniment*, etc. are always placed before the adjective which they modify.

EXAMPLE.

c'est une femme fort belle, très-sensible, et infiniment sage, *she is a woman very beautiful, of great sensibility, and infinitely prudent.*

Adverbs of quantity and comparison and the adverbs of time *souvent, toujours, jamais*, are placed before the other adverbs.

EXAMPLES.

si poliment, fort poliment, *so politely, very politely.*
 très-heureusement, *very happily.*

le plus adroitement,	the most skilfully.
ils ne seront jamais étroitement unis,	they never will be intimately united.
ils sont toujours ensemble,	they are always together.
c'est souvent à l'improviste qu'il arrive,	he often comes unexpectedly.

Souvent may, however, be preceded by an adverb of quantity, or comparison, as *si souvent, assez souvent, fort souvent, plus souvent, moins souvent, trop souvent*.

When adverbs of quantity and comparison meet together in a sentence, the following is the order, which custom has established.

si peu,	bien peu	beaucoup* trop,	tant mieux,
trop peu,	bien plus,	beaucoup plus,	tant pis, etc.
très-peu,	bien davantage,	beaucoup moins,	

Bien before another adverb means *very much, quite*.

EXAMPLES.

bien assez,	quite enough.
bien tard,	very late.
bien moins,	much less.

When after the verb it signifies *well*.

EXAMPLES.

assez bien,	pretty well.
fort bien,	very well.

OF THE NEGATIVE *ne*.

419. It is customary to use two negatives in French, *ne* comes before the verb ; *pas* or *point* comes after it. The French Academy have discussed the four following questions.

1. Which is the place of the negatives ?
2. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point* and *vice versa* ?
3. When may both be omitted ?
4. When *ought* both to be omitted ?

As this subject is of very material importance, we shall treat it upon the plan of the Academy, and agreeably to their views.

* *Beaucoup* is not, as the English *much* susceptible of being modified by any adverb preceding, thus *très-beaucoup, trop heureux*, etc., would be barbarisms.

FIRST QUESTION. Where is the place of the negatives ?
Ne is always prefixed to the verb ; but the place of *pas* and *point* is variable.

When the verb is in the infinitive, these are placed indifferently before, or after it ; for we say,

Pour ne point voir, or, pour ne voir pas.

In the other moods, except the imperative, the tenses are either simple, or compound. In the simple tenses, *pas* or *point* is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne parle pas ; ne parle-t-il pas ?

In the compound tenses, it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

Il n'a pas parlé ; n'a-t-il pas parlé ?

In the imperative, it is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Ne badinez pas. Ne vous en allez pas.

SECOND QUESTION. When is *pas*, to be used in preference to *point*, and *vice versa* !

Point is a stronger negative than *pas* : besides, it denotes something permanent : *il ne lit point*, means he never reads.

Pas denotes something accidental ; *il ne lit pas*, means, he does not read now, or he is not reading.

Point de denotes an absolute negation. To say :

Il n'a point d'esprit, is to say, he has no wit at all.

Pas de, allows some sort of restriction. To say :

Il n'a pas d'esprit, is to say, he has nothing of what can be called wit.

Hence the Academy concludes, that *pas* is more proper.

1. Before *plus*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other words denoting comparison.

EXAMPLE.

Milton n'est pas moins sublime qu'Homère, Milton is not less sublime than Homer.

2. Before nouns of number.

EXAMPLE.

il n'y a pas dix ans, *It is not ten years, ago.*

Point is elegantly used,

1. At the end of a sentence.

EXAMPLE.

on s'amusait à ses dépens, et il ne s'en apercevait point, *they were amusing themselves at his expense, and he did not perceive it.*

2. In elliptical sentences.

EXAMPLE.

je croyais avoir à faire à un honnête homme; mais point, *I thought I had to deal with an honest man; but no.*

3. In answer to interrogative sentences.

EXAMPLE.

irez-vous ce soir au parc?— point, *shall you go this evening to the park?—no.*

The Academy also observes, that when *pas* or *point* is introduced into interrogative sentences, it is with meanings somewhat different. We make use of *point*, when we have any doubt on our minds.

EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous point été là? *have you not been there?*

But we use *pas*, when we are persuaded.

EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous pas été là? *but you have been there; have not you?*

THIRD QUESTION: When may both *pas* and *point* be omitted?

They may be suppressed,

1. After the words *cesser*, *oser*, and *pouvoir*; but this omission is only for the sake of elegance.

EXAMPLES.

je ne cesse de m'en occuper, *I incessantly think about it.*
 je n'ose vous en parler, *I dare not speak to you about it.*
 je ne puis y penser sans frémir, *I cannot think of it without shuddering.*

We likewise say, but only in familiar conversation,
ne bougez, *do not stir.*

2. In expressions of this kind,

y a-t-il un homme dont elle ne *is there a man that she does not*
médise ? *stander ?*
avez-vous un ami qui ne soit *have you a friend but is not like-*
des miens ? *wise mine ?*

FOURTH QUESTION. When ought both *pas* and *point* to be omitted ?

They are omitted,

420. When the extent which we mean to give to the negative is sufficiently expressed either by the words which restrict it, by words which exclude all restriction, or when the verb is joined to an adverb, or pronoun having a negative sense, as, *jamais, plus, aucun, personne, rien, nul, nullement*; and also to the words *bien, goutte, mot*, which in some cases, have been through custom considered as negatives.

To exemplify the first part of this remark, we say,

EXAMPLES.

je ne sors guère, *I go out but seldom.*
je ne sortirai de trois jours, *I shall not go out for three days.*

To exemplify the second, we say,

EXAMPLES.

je n'y vais jamais, *I never go there.*
je n'y pense plus, *I think no more of it.*
nul ne sait s'il est digne d'a- *nobody knows whether he be de-*
mour, ou de haine, *serving of love, or hatred.*
n'employez aucun de ces strata- *use none of these stratagems.*
gèmes,
il ne plaît à personne, *he pleases nobody.*
rien n'est plus charmant, *nothing is more charming.*
je n'y pense nullement, *I do not think of it at all.*

To exemplify the third, we say,

EXAMPLES.

il n'y voit goutte, *he cannot see at all.*
je n'en ai cueilli brin, *I did not gather a sprig.*
il ne dit mot, *he speaks not a word.*

But if to *mot* we join an adjective of number, *pas* must be added, as

EXAMPLES.

il ne dit pas un mot qui n'inté- *he speaks not a word but what is*
resse, *interesting.*
dans ce discours, il n'y a pas *in that speech, there are not three*
trois mots à reprendre, *words that are exceptionable.*

421. The substantive which follows a negative phrase is governed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

il n'a jamais d'argent, *he never has any money.*
n'avez-vous pas de cheval ? *have you got no horse ?*
il ne fait pas de démarche inu- *he does not take any useless step.*
tile,

If, after such sentences as we have just mentioned, either the conjunction *que*, or the relative pronouns *qui* or *dont*, should introduce a negative sentence, then in this last, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

EXAMPLES.

je ne fais jamais d'excès que je *I never committed any excess, without*
n'en sois incommodé, *being ill after it.*
je ne vois personne qui ne vous *I see nobody but what commends*
loue, *you.*

422. When two negatives are joined by *ni*, *pas* is omitted.

EXAMPLE.

je ne l'aime ni ne l'estime, *I neither love nor esteem him.*

When the conjunction *ni* is repeated, *pas* is also left out.

EXAMPLES.

ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous ren- *neither gold nor greatness can*
dent heureux, *make us happy.*
il n'est ni prudent ni sage, *he is neither prudent nor wise.*
il n'a ni dettes ni procès, *he has neither debts nor lawsuits.*

Pas is used, when *ni* is not repeated, and when it serves only to unite two members of a negative sentence.

EXAMPLE.

je n'aime pas ce vain étalage *I do not like that vain display of*
d'érudition prodiguée sans choix *erudition lavished without choice*
et sans goût, ni ce luxe de *and without taste, nor that pomp*
mots qui ne disent rien, *of words which have no meaning.*

Pas is omitted when the question used for *pourquoi* begins with *que*, and after *à moins que*, *si*, instead of *pourquoi*, and with *à moins que*, or *si* used instead of it.

EXAMPLES.

que n'êtes-vous aussi posé que *why are you not as sedate as your*
 votre frère ? *brother?*
 je ne sortirai pas à moins que *I shall not go out, unless you come*
 vous ne veniez me prendre, *to fetch me.*
 je n'irai pas chez lui, s'il ne m'y *I shall not go to his house, if he*
 engage, *do not invite me.*

With *ne*—*que* used instead of *seulement*, and in the sense of *only*, *but*, *pas* is not used.

EXAMPLE.

une jeunesse qui se livre à ses *youth, which abandons itself to its*
 passions, ne transmet à la vieillesse qu'un corps usé, *passions, transmits to old age*
nothing but a worn-out body.

Ne, before; and *que*, after the verb in the sense of *nothing but* does not require *pas*.

EXAMPLE.

il ne fait que rire, *he does nothing but laugh.*

Pas is again omitted when that conjunction may be changed into *si* or *si ce n'est*.

EXAMPLES.

il ne tient qu'à vous de réussir, *the success wholly depends upon*
you.
 trop de maîtres à la fois ne servent qu'à embrouiller l'esprit, *too many masters at once only serve*
to perplex the mind.

With a verb in the preterit, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

EXAMPLES.

comment vous êtes-vous porté *how have you been since I saw*
 depuis que je ne vous ai vu ? *you?*
 il y a trois mois que je ne vous ai vu, *I have not seen you for these three*
months.

But they are not omitted, when the verb is in the present.

EXAMPLES.

comment vit-il depuis que nous *how does he live now we do not see*
 ne le voyons point ? *him?*
 il y a six mois que nous ne le voyons point, *we have not seen him these six*
months.

It has been seen, No. 211, that *ne* is used in comparative sentences, but as it has not then a negative sense, *pas*, *point* are of course omitted.

EXAMPLES.

on méprise ceux qui parlent au- *we despise those who speak diffe-*
 trement qu'ils ne pensent, *rently from what they think.*
 il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle, *he writes better than he speaks.*
 c'est pire qu'on ne le disait, *it is worse than was said.*
 c'est autre chose que je ne *it is different from what I thought.*
 croyais,
 peu s'en faut qu'on ne m'ait *I have been very near being de-*
 trompé, *ceived.*

Ne is also used before the subjunctive mood after certain verbs noticed No. 384, in which case *pas*, *point*, are also omitted.

EXAMPLES.

je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, *I doubt not that he will come.*
 ne désespérez pas que ce moyen, *do not despair of the success of*
 ne vous réussisse, *these means.*
 je ne nie pas, *ou*, je ne discon- *I do not deny but that it may be so.*
 viens pas que cela ne soit,
 j'empêcherai bien que vous ne *I shall prevent your being of the*
 soyez du nombre, *number.*
 prenez garde qu'on ne vous sé- *take care that they do not corrupt*
 duise, *you.*
 prenez garde que vous ne m'en- *mind you do not understand what*
 tendiez pas, *I mean.*
 il craint que son frère ne l'aban- *he is afraid his brother should for-*
 donne, *sake him.*
 je crains que mon ami ne meure, *I fear my friend will die.*

The Academy says, that after *nier*, *douter*, *disconvenir*, *ne* may be omitted.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne nie pas, *ou*, je ne disconviens pas que cela soit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne perde son procès*, we express a fear lest he should lose his law-suit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne soit pas puni*, we express an apprehension, lest he should escape punishment.

REMARK. In these phrases,

je crains que mon ami ne meure, *I am afraid my friend will die.*
 vous empêchez qu'on ne chante, *you prevent them from singing.*

Ne has the meaning of the *ne* of the Latin language, which equally governs the subjunctive mood.

423. The conditional of *savoir* is frequently used negatively, instead of *pouvoir* in which case *pas*, *point* are omitted.

EXAMPLE.

je ne saurais en venir à bout *I cannot accomplish it.*

When *ne savoir* means *être incertain*, it is best to omit *pas* and *point*.

EXAMPLES.

je ne sais où le prendre,
il ne sait ce qu'il dit,

*I do not know where to find him.
he does not know what he says.*

But *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is taken in its true meaning, to know.

EXAMPLE.

je ne sais pas le Français,

I do not know French.

We also say, without *pas* or *point*,

ne vous déplaît, ne vous en dé-
plaît,

*by your leave, under favour, or
let it not displease you.*

Plus and *davantage* must not be used indifferently. *Plus* is followed by the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*.

EXAMPLES.

il a plus de brillant que de solide,
il se fie plus à ses lumières qu'à
celles des autres,

*he has more brilliancy than solidity.
he relies more upon his own know-
ledge than upon that of others.*

Davantage is used alone and at the end of sentences.

EXAMPLE.

la science est estimable, mais la
vertu l'est davantage,

*learning is estimable, but virtue is
still more so.*

Although *davantage* cannot be followed by the preposition *de*, it may be preceded by the pronoun *en*.

EXAMPLE.

je n'en dirai pas davantage,

I shall not say any more about it,

It is incorrect to use *davantage* for *le plus*. We must say,

de toutes les fleurs d'un parterre,
l'anémone est celle qui me plaît le
plus.

*of all the flowers of a parterre, the
anemone is that which pleases me
most.*

424. *Si, aussi, tant, and autant*, are always followed by the conjunction *que*, expressed or understood.

Si, and *aussi* are joined to adjectives, adverbs, and participles ; *tant* and *autant*, to substantives and verbs.

EXAMPLES.

L'Angleterre n'est pas si grande que la France, *England is not so large as France.*
il est aussi estimé qu'aimé, *he is as much esteemed as he is beloved.*
elle a autant de beauté que de vertu, *she has as much beauty as virtue.*

REMARK. *Autant* may, however, be substituted for *aussi*, in comparisons of equality.

EXAMPLE.

il est modeste autant que sage, *he is as modest as wise.*

It has been said, No. 47. that, in comparisons, *aussi* is used with the affirmative, and *si*, with the negative ; *si*, may, however, be used in an affirmative sentence, in the sense of *tellement*.

EXAMPLE.

il est devenu si gros, qu'il a de la peine à marcher, *he is become so bulky that he can hardly walk.*

Jamais takes sometimes the preposition, *à*, and *toujours* the preposition *pour*.

EXAMPLES.

soyez à jamais heureux, *be for ever happy.*
c'est pour toujours, *it is for ever.*

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

425. *QUE* is a conjunction so much used in French that, although it has been already noticed in every part of this grammar with which it might have reference, it may not be unnecessary to present here a series of examples of the various ways in which it is used.

EXAMPLES.

QUE	expressing com- parison	{ l'Asie est plus grande que l'Eu- rope. }	Asia is larger than Europe.
	for rien que	{ on ne parle que de la nouvelle victoire. }	they talk of no- thing but the new victory.
	je souhaite que	{ qu'il vive pour, je souhaite qu'il vive. }	may he live, for, I wish that he may live.
	à moins que	{ cela ne finira pas qu'il ne vienne. }	there will be no end to it, unless he come.
	avant que	{ qu'il fasse le moin- dre excès, il est malade. }	if he commits the least excess, he is ill.
	sans que	{ qu'il perde, ou qu'il gagne son procès, c'est un homme rui- né. }	whether he gains, or loses his law- suit, he is a ruin- ed man.
	dès que	{ attendez qu'il vien- ne. }	wait till he comes.
	— aussitôt que	{ que ne se corrige- t-il pas méchant qu'il est. }	why does he not reform? wicked as he is.
	— si, or quand	{ que Dieu est grand ! que je hais les mé- chants ! }	how great is the Almighty ! how much I hate the wicked !
	— soit que		

Another very frequent use of this conjunction is to save the repetition of *comme*, *parce que*, *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, etc. when, to phrases beginning with these words, others are added under the same regimen, by means of the conjunction *et*.

EXAMPLE.

si l'on aimait son pays et qu'on en désirât sincèrement la gloire, if we loved our country, and sincerely wished its glory, we should act so as, etc.
on se conduirait de manière,
etc.

426. Particular construction with *que* before a noun or an infinitive.

EXAMPLE.

c'est un homme singulier que your brother is a strange man.
votre frère,

For *votre frère est un homme singulier.*

EXAMPLE:

c'était quelque chose que d'avoir *having begun was already some-*
commencé, *thing.*

For avoir commencé était déjà quelque chose.

EXERCISE.

We have every thing to fear from his wisdom, even more
than from his power. What men term greatness, glory, *encore*

power, profound policy, *ce que art. appeler* is in the eyes of God *only*
profond politique, f. à

misery, weakness, and vanity. May they understand, at last, *comprendre*

that without internal peace there is no *point*
avec soi-même 2 art. 1

happiness. May she be as happy as she deserves to be. *de de le*

Never write before you have thoroughly examined *1*
sous toutes ses faces 2

the subject which you propose to treat. Let him but hear *1*
*se proposer de traiter **

the least noise, his terrified imagination presents to him nothing ** **
bruit effrayé 2 f. 1

but monsters. Do not sift this question, till *till*
ne que de art. approfondir

I can (be your guide). Do not go out till your brother *1*
ne subj-1 vous mettre sur la voie

comes in. Why does he not (take advantage) of his youth, *profiter*
*ne rentrer, **

(in order to) acquire the knowledge he wants? This *avoir besoin?*
pour connaissance pl. dont

town is a very pretty place. My uncle was a terrible man when
he was in a passion.

Full as he was of his prejudices, he would not own *convenir de*
Rempli ind-2 préjugé ind 3

(any thing). Full of self-love (as he is), expect nothing *de*
rien pétri 1 3 2

good (from him). How beautiful is that cultivated nature *3*
en 1 6 5 2 4

How, by the care of man, is it brilliantly and richly adorned! *pompeusement orné*
par f.

Had profound philosophy presided at the formation of *ind-6 à*
*si * de*

languages, and had they carefully examined the elements of *—m.*
art. langue avec soin subj-4

speech, not only in their relations (to one another), but also
 art. *discours non* *entr'eux* *encore*
 in themselves, it is not (to be doubted) that languages
en *m.* *douteux* *art.*
 would present principles more simple, and at the
offrir subj-2 de art.
 same time, more luminous.

GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

427. The conjunctions which unite sentences to one another, are followed either by the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, or the *subjunctive*.

Those that are followed by an infinitive, are,

1. Such as are distinguished from prepositions, only by being followed by a verb.

EXAMPLE.

il faut se reposer après avoir *one ought to rest after having laboured.*
travaillé,

2. Those which have the preposition *de* after them.

EXAMPLE.

il travaille afin de vous surpasser, *he works that he may surpass you.*

EXERCISE.

They were going to spend a few days in town,
*ne * ind-2 * passer * quelques à art.*
 only that they might return with more pleasure to
*que pour * * se retrouver inf-1 dans*
 their charming solitude. Many persons work only (in order to)
ne que afin de
 acquire consideration and riches, but the honest and
de art. pr. art. 2 et
 human man spends (so much) time in study, only
sensible 3 1 ne employer tant de à art. que
 to be useful to his fellow-creatures. I reveal to you the
pour semblables dévoiler
 plot which your enemies have concerted in secret
trame f. ourdis art. ténébreux f. pl. in
 order to warn you against their artifices.
prémunir

428. Conjunctions that govern the indicative,

bien attendu que,	autant que,	puisque,	| peut-être que, comme, comme si
à condition que,	non plus que,	lorsque,	
à la charge que,	outré que,	pendant que,	

de même que,	parce que	tandis que,	quand,
ainsi que,	attendu qu'il	durant que,	pourquoi
aussi bien que,	vu que,	tant que,	comment, etc.

They are followed by the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses the affirmation in a direct, positive and independent manner.

The use of the six following conjunctions,

si non que	de sorte que,	tellement que,
si ce n'est que,	en sorte que,	de manière que,

varies according to the meaning expressed by the principal sentence.

EXAMPLE OF THE INDICATIVE.

je ne lui ai répondu autre chose,
si non que j'avais exécuté ses
ordres,

*I made him no other answer, but
that I had executed his orders.*

EXAMPLE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

je ne veux autre chose, *si non que*
vous travailliez avec plus d'ar-
deur.

*I desire nothing else but that you
would study with greater ardour.*

The indicative is required, in the first sentence, by the verb *j'ai répondu* expressing a positive affirmation, and the subjunctive in the second, because *je veux* expresses a command, or desire.

EXERCISE.

When you have a more extensive knowledge of geometry,
ind-7 2 1 art, f.
and algebra, I shall give you a few lessons in astro-
pr. art. algèbre f. * quelque de
nomy, and optics. From your mind, heart, and taste
pr. optique pron. pron.
while you are still young. Do not keep truth a prisoner,
encore retenir art. * captive
though you should (draw upon you) a cloud of enemies.
quand devoir cond-1 s'attirer nuée f.
I will give you this fine picture upon condition that you
tableau m. à
keep it as a testimony of my friendship.
conserver ind-7 témoignage m.

429. The conjunctions which govern the subjunctive are,

soit que,	jusqu'à ce que,	supposé que,	afin que,
sans que,	encore que,	au cas que,	de peur que
pour que,	à moins que,	avant que,	dé crainte que,
quoique,	pourvu que	non pas que	etc.

They require the conjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, ignorance. See No. 378.

EXERCISE.

You know too well the value of time, to make
connaître *priz m. art.* *pour que être 2*
 it necessary to tell you to (make a good use of) it. Study only
il 1 *de* *de* *bien employer*
 great models, lest the which are but middling
art. *de peur que* ** médiocre ne*
 should spoil your taste, before it be entirely formed. I
gâter subj-1
 (make not the least doubt) that your method will succeed,
ne douter nullement *f. ne subj-1*
 provided it be well known. Several phenomena of nature are
f. *art.*
 easy (to be explained), supposing the principle of universal
 (by the active) *art. 2*
 gravitation to be true.
*f. 1 **

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Good Mother.

What a fine morning! said the amiable Charlotte to her
matinée f. ind-3
 brother George. Come let us go into the garden and enjoy
sing. ** inf-1*
 the magnificent sight of rich and abundant nature.
de 2 *spectacle m. 1* *une 2* *fertile 3* *1*
 We will gather the freshest and sweetest flowers. We
y cueillir *frais 2* *art. adv. odorant 3. f. pl. 1.*
 will make a nosegay, which we will offer to mamma. You
bouquet m. *maman sing.*
 know she is fond of flowers. This attention will give her
savoir que *aimer* *faire lui*
 pleasure. Ah! brother, it will obtain us a smile, a caress,
mon *f. valoir* *sourire m. f.*
 perhaps even a kiss. Ah! sister, replied George, your
baiser m. *ma* *répondre ind-3* *sing.*
 proposal delights me; let us run, let us hasten, that we may
projet enchanter *courir* *voler* *afin de * **
 offer her, (when she gets up), this tribute of our gratitude and our
lui *à son lever* *hommage*
 love. Full of this idea, Charlotte and George hastened
plein *s. hâter ind-3* *de se ren-*
 into the garden. Charlotte gathered violets jessamine
dre *ind-3 de art.* *pr. art.*

and young rose-buds which (had but just begun) to
 pr. de 2 bouton m. 1 ne commencer que ind-2
 open their purple cups, while George prepared
 entr'ouvrir de pourpre 2 calice 1 ind-2 de art.
 green sprigs of myrtle and thyme, intended to hold up the
 verdoyant 2 jei m. 1 myrte pr. thym destiné soutenir
 flowers. Never had these amiable children exerted themselves
 1 ind-2 3 2 travailler
 with (so much) zeal and ardour. Satisfaction and pleasure were
 tant de zèle pr. art. f. art. m. ind-2
 painted in all their features, sparkled in their eyes, and added still to
 peint trait m. pétiller
 their beauty.

While they (were engaged) (in this manner), their mother, who
 s'occuper ind-2
 had seen them in the garden, came to join them. (As soon as)
 ind-3 * joindre dès que
 they perceived her, they flew to her, and said: (Ah! mamma, how
 ind-3 ind-3 elle lui que
 glad we are to see you! how (impatient we were) for this
 aise 3 1 2 de il tardait à notre impatience d'avoir
 pleasure. In the pleasing expectation (of it) we (were preparing) this
 ce doux attente f. * ind-2
 nosegay for you. What satisfaction should we have had in
 f. ne pas à
 presenting it to you! Look at these rose-buds, these violets, this jes-
 offrir voir *
 samine, this myrtle, and this thyme. Well, we intended them
 Eh! bien, destiner ind-2
 for you. These flowers, coming from us, would have been dear to you.
 * cher
 In wearing them, you would have said: My children (were think-
 En porter inf. 2 s'occuper
 ing) of me while I slept. I am always as present to their
 ind-2 dormir ind-2
 minds as to their hearts. They love me, and it is by giving me every
 s.
 day new proofs of their affection, that they acknowledge the
 art. pl. de preuve f. reconnaître
 care I have taken of them in their childhood, and all the
 soin m. pl. que
 marks of tenderness I am unceasingly giving them.
 que ne cesser de inf-1 leur.

My dear children, replied the mother, embracing them,
 répondre ind-3 en embrasser
 how happy you make all my day! your gratitude, your tender-
 quel charme répandre sur *

ness, your attention to me, make me forget my former misfortunes,
 pl. pour oublier ancien malheur m.
 and open my heart again to the sweet impressions of pleasure.
 rouvrir * f. art.
 May Heaven continue to bless my labour! May it be
 Pouvoir subj-1 art. continuer de soin Pouvoir
 your guide and your support in the career which (will soon be opened)
 = soutien carrière f. aller ind-1 s'ouvrir
 to you! may it complete its kindness by preserving you
 devant me. ve le comble à bienfait pl. en garantir inf-2
 from the dangers to which you cannot fail to be soon
 de * ne pas tarder ind-7
 exposed! Alas! I shudder (at them) beforehand, my dear children;
 frémir en d'avance
 the moment is come when you must enter the world. Your
 où devoir dans
 persons, your birth, and your fortune call you there, and insure
 figure sing. naissance appeler y assurer
 you a distinguished rank (in it), I cannot always be your guide.
 2 m. l y ind-7
 Young and inexperienced, you will find yourself surrounded
 sans expérience aller ind-1 inf-1 entouré
 by every kind of temptation. (Every thing), even
 sorte f. séduction tout jusque à art. m.
 vice, presents itself there under an agreeable form, and
 offrir y sous * de art. * pl. l
 almost always in the shape of pleasure, which has (so many)
 sous image art. tant de
 attractions for youth. They will try to mislead you, to
 attrait f. art. jeunesse f. On chercher égarer
 corrupt you; they (will make use of) artifice, raillery, and
 employer art. art. =
 even the mask of virtue. If you abandon yourselves
 jusque à masque m. art. se laisser aller
 to first impressions, you are lost. The poison of example will
 se glisser art. alléer.
 insinuate itself into your hearts, will corrupt the innocence and
 en purify (of them) and will substitute violent passions for
 de art. déchirant 2 f. pl. l à
 the sweet affections which have hitherto made your happiness.
 doux faire
 Do not imagine, my dear children, that, in placing before your
 croire en mettre sous
 eyes a picture of the dangers of the world, my intention
 le tableau m.
 is to prohibit you every kind of pleasure. God for-
 subj-1 de interdire espèce f. à ne plaire
 I I

bid sub-j. 1 Pleasure is necessary to man; without it, our
 art. art. *lui*
 existence would be dreadful; (and therefore) Providence, al-
 affreux aussi art. f.
 ways attentive to our wants, has multiplied the sources of
 besoin a-t-elle
 it, both in and out of ourselves. But, in tasting the pleasures
 * en nous en goûter
 of the world, never (abandon yourselves) (to them). Take care
 se livrer y Avoir
 they do not govern you; know how to quit them the mo-
 dominer subj. 1 savoir * * de
 ment they have acquired (too much) empire over you. It is
 que prendre ind-7 trop de Ce
 the only way to enjoy with delight that exquisite plea-
 moyen de volupté de délicieux 2
 sure which we can only find in ourselves, and which has its
 1 en
 source in an upright and pure conscience. Ah! why cannot I
 dans droit 2 3 f. 1 que
 give all my experience? why cannot you like me read the
 dans
 depths of the heart? With what astonishment would you often
 abîme sing. pl.
 see vexation, agitation, and trouble, disguised under the
 art. -m. art. art. -m. déguisé sous
 appearance of joy and tranquillity; hatred and envy
 apparence pl. art. pr. art. calme art. f. art. f.
 concealed under the air of confidence and friendship;
 caché art. confiance f. pr. art.
 indifference and selfishness, affecting the most lively interest;
 art. égoïsme *vif*
 the most dreadful and perfidious plots contrived
 2 art. adv. 3 trame f. pl. 1 ourdi
 deliberately in the dark; in a word, the most odious
 de sang froid et ténèbres f. pl. en 2
 vices endeavouring to show themselves under the features
 art. 1 s'efforcer de traits
 of (their opposite) virtues! In the world there is but
 qui leur être opposé 2 art. 1 ne que
 one (moving principle); that is self-interest. To that
 seul mobile m. ce art. personnel 2 1 C'est à lui que
 every action refers, every thing tends to that as to its
 art. pl. se rapporter lui
 end. I know very well, my dear children, that your hearts
 fin f. savoir
 will not be infected by this vice. The sentiments of universal
 de 2

benevolence with which I (have always) inspired you and
bienveillance 1 * *ne print cesser* ind-4 *de* inf-1
 of which I have seen you give (so many) proofs, (remove
tant de *preuve rassurer* 1
 already every fear) (I might have) upon that subject: but will
d'avance 3 *me* 2 *sur* *point m.*

you not yield to other vices not less dangerous? Cruel idea,
de *non* *f.*

terrible uncertainty? If this misfortune were to happen,
affreux f. * *arriver* ind-2

ah! my dear children, instead of being the joy and conso-
art. f.

lation of my life, you would be the torment, the shame and the
honte f.

disgrace (of it). You would poison my days, and you
opprobre. en *empoisonner*

would plunge a dagger into the very bosom which gave
porter art. mort f. *même* 2 *sein m. 1* ind-3

you life. But whither is my tenderness for you carrying me?
art. *où* * *emporter* *art. f.*

No, my children, no, I have nothing to fear; you love me (too
Non

much) to wish to grieve me so cruelly; and I shall have
trop pour vouloir *

this pleasure, (as long as) I live, of seeing you walk in the ways
tant que ind-7 *sentier*

of honour and virtue.
art. *pr. art.*

CHAPTER IX.

OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION.

430. Grammatical construction is the order which the genius of a language has assigned, in speech, to the different sorts of words into which it is distinguished. Construction is sometimes mistaken for syntax; but there is this difference: the latter consists in the rules which we are to observe, in order to express the relations of words one to another, whereas grammatical construction consists in the various arrangements which are allowed while we observe the rules of syntax. Now this arrangement is irrevocably fixed, not only as phrases may be interrogative, imperative, or expositive, but also as each of these kinds may be affirmative, or negative.

In sentences simply interrogative, the subject is either a noun, or pronoun.

If the subject, be a noun, the following is the order to be observed : first, the noun, then the verb, then the corresponding personal pronoun, the adverb, if any, and the regimen in the simple tenses : in the compound tenses, the pronoun and the adverb are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

les lumières sont-elles un bien pour	<i>are sciences an advantage to na-</i>
les peuples ? ont-elles jamais	<i>tions ? Have they ever contri-</i>
contribué à leur bonheur ?	<i>buted to their happiness ?</i>

If the subject be a pronoun, the verb begins the series, and the other words follow in the order already pointed out.

EXAMPLES.

vous plâchez-vous toujours à mé-	<i>will you always take pleasure in</i>
dire ?	<i>slandering ?</i>
aurez-vous bientôt fini ?	<i>shall you have soon done ?</i>

N. B.—[When the verb is reflected, the pronoun forming the regimen begins the series, this pronoun always preserves its place before the verb, except in sentences simply imperative.]

In interrogative sentences, with a negation, the same order is observed ; but *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compound tenses.

EXAMPLES.

votre frère ne viendra-t-il pas de-	<i>will not your brother come to-mor-</i>
main ?	<i>row ?</i>
n'aurez-vous pas bientôt fini ?	<i>shall not you have soon done ?</i>

REMARK.—There are in French several other ways of interrogating.

1. With an absolute pronoun.

EXAMPLE.

qui vous a dit cela ? or qui est-ce *who told you that ?*
qui vous a dit cela ?

2. With the demonstrative pronoun *ce*.

EXAMPLES.

est-ce vous ?	<i>is it you ?</i>	|	est-ce qu'il pleut ?	<i>does it rain ?</i>
---------------	--------------------	--	----------------------	-----------------------

3. With an interrogative verb.

EXAMPLES.

pourquoi ne vient-il pas ? *why does he not come?*
comment vous trouvez-vous ? *how do you find yourself?*

Hence we see that the absolute pronouns and the interrogative adverbs always begin the sentence: but the demonstrative pronoun *ce* always follows the verb.

In sentences, simply imperative, the verb is always placed first, in the first and second persons; but in the third, it comes after the conjunction *que* and the noun or pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

allons là, *let us go there.*
venez ici, *come here.*
qu'ils y aillent, *let them go there.*
que Pierre aille à Londres, *let Peter go to London.*

With negation, *ne* and *pas* are placed as in interrogative sentences.

For the place of the pronouns, No. 218.

Sentences are expositive, when we speak without either interrogating, or commanding. The following is the order of the words in those which are affirmative: the subject, the verb, the adverb, the participle, and the regimen.

EXAMPLES.

un bon prince mérite l'amour de *a good prince deserves the love of*
ses sujets et l'estime de tous les *his subjects, and the esteem of all*
peuples, *nations.*
César eût inutilement passé le *Cæsar would have crossed the Rubi-*
Rubicon, s'il y eût eu de son *con to no purpose, had there been*
temps des Fabius, *Fabii in his time.*

The negative sentences differ from this construction, only as *ne* is always before the verb, and *pas*, or *point*, either after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

un homme riche ne fait pas tou- *a rich man does not always do all*
jours le bien qu'il pourrait, *the good he might.*
Cicéron n'eût pas peut-être été *Cicero would not perhaps have been*
un si grand orateur, si le désir *so great an orator, had not he*
de s'élever aux premières dig- *desire of rising to the first digni-*
nités n'eût enflammé son âme, *ties inflamed his soul.*

Sentences are either simple, or compound. They are simple when they contain only one subject and one attribute.

EXAMPLES.

vous lisez,
vous êtes jeune,

you read.
you are young.

They are compound, when they reunite several subjects with one attribute, or several attributes with one subject, or several attributes with several subjects, or several subjects with several attributes.

This sentence, *Pierre et Paul sont heureux*, is compound by having two subjects; this, *cette femme est jolie, spirituelle et sensible*, is compound by having more than one attribute; and this, *Pierre et Paul sont spirituels et savants*, is composed at once of several subjects and several attributes.

A sentence may be compound in various other ways; by the subject, by the verb, or by the attribute.

By the subject, when this is restricted by an incidental proposition.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon.

By the verb, when it is modified by some circumstance of time, order, etc.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais.

By the attribute, when this attribute is modified by a regimen which is itself restricted.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais les hommes, qui mettent sincèrement leur confiance en lui.

These simple, or compound sentences may be joined to others by a conjunction.

EXAMPLES.

quand on aime l'étude, le temps passe sans qu'on s'en aperçoive, when we love study, time flies without our perceiving it.

The two partial phrases here form but one.

When a sentence is composed of two partial phrases, joined by a conjunction, harmony and perspicuity generally require the shortest to go first.

EXAMPLES.

quand les passions nous quit- *when our passions leave us, we in-*
tent, nous nous flattons en *vain flatter ourselves that it is*
vain, que c'est nous qui les *we that leave them.*
quittons,
on n'est point à plaindre, quand, *he is not to be pitied, who for*
au défaut de plaisirs réels, on *want of real pleasure, finds*
trouve le moyen de s'occuper *means to amuse himself with*
de chimères, *chimeras.*

Periods result from the union of several partial phrases, the whole of which make a complete sense. Periods, to be clear, require the shortest phrases to be placed first. The following example of this is taken from Fléchier.

N'attendez pas, Messieurs,

1. Que j'ouvre une scène tragique ;
2. Que je représente ce grand homme étendu sur ses propres trophées ;
3. Que je découvre ce corps pâle et sanglant, auprès duquel fume encore la foudre qui l'a frappé ;
4. Que je fasse crier son sang comme celui d'Abel, et que j'expose à vos yeux les images de la religion et de la patrie explorée.

This admirable period is composed of four members, which go on gradually increasing. It is a rule not to give more than four members to a period, and to avoid multiplying incidental sentences.

Obscurity in style is generally owing to those small phrases which divert the attention from the principal sentences, and make us lose sight of them.

The construction which we have mentioned is called direct, or regular, because the words are placed in those sentences according to the order which has been pointed out. But this order may be altered in certain cases, and then the construction is called indirect, or irregular. Now, it may be irregular, by *inversion*, by *ellipsis*, by *pleonasm*, or by *syllipsis*; these are what are called the four figures of words.

INVERSION.

431. *Inversion* is the transposition of a word into a place, different from that which, by usage, is properly assigned to it. This ought never to be done except when it introduces more perspicuity, energy, or harmony into the language ; for it is a defect in construction, whenever the connexion subsisting between words is not easily perceived.

There are two kinds of inversion: the one, by its boldness seems to be confined to poetry: the other is frequently employed even in prose.

We shall speak here of the latter kind only.

The following inversions are authorized by custom.

The subject by which a verb is governed may with propriety be placed after it.

EXAMPLE.

tout ce que lui promet l'amitié *all that the friendship of the Ro-*
des Romains, *mans promises him.*

REMARK. This inversion is a rule of the art of speaking and writing, whenever the subject is modified by an incidental sentence, long enough to make us lose sight of the connexion between the verb governed and the subject governing.

The noun governed by the prepositions *de* and *à* may likewise be very properly placed before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

d'une voix entrecoupée de sang *in a voice interrupted by sobs, they*
glots, ils s'écrièrent, *exclaimed,*
tant d'injures, qu'a-t-elle ré- *to so much abuse, what answer did*
pondu ? *she give.*

The verb is likewise elegantly preceded by the prepositions *après, dans, par, sous, contre*, etc. and the nouns which they govern, as well as by the conjunctions *si, quand, parce que, puisque, quoique, lorsque*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

par la loi du corps, je tiens à ce *by the law of the body, I am con-*
monde qui passe, *nected with this passing world.*
puisqu'il le veut, qu'il le fasse, *since he wishes it, let him do it.*

OF THE ELLIPSIS.

432. *Ellipsis* is the omission of a word, or even several words, which are necessary to make the construction full and complete. An ellipsis is bad, if the mind does not easily and rapidly supply the words omitted.

EXAMPLE.

j'accepterais les offres de Da- *I would accept the offers of Da-*
rius, si j'étais Alexandre:— *rius, if I were Alexander:—*
et moi aussi, si j'étais Par- *and so would I, if I were Par-*
ménion, *menio.*

Here the mind easily supplies the words, *je les accepte-rais* in the second member.

The ellipsis is very common in answers to interrogative sentences.

EXAMPLE.

quand viendrez-vous ?—demain, *when will you come ?—to-morrow.*
that is, *je viendrai demain.*

In order to know whether an ellipsis be good, the words that are understood must be supplied. It is correct, whenever the construction completely expresses the sense denoted by the words which are supplied ; otherwise it is not exact.

OF THE PLEONASM.

433. *Pleonasm*, in general, is a superfluity of words : in order to constitute this figure good, it must be sanctioned by custom, which never permits its use, except it give greater energy to language, or express, in a clearer manner, the internal feeling with which we are affected.

EXAMPLES.

Et que m'a fait à moi cette Troie où je cours !
Je me meurs. S'il ne veut pas vous le dire, je vous le dirai, moi.
Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.
Je l'ai entendu de mes propres oreilles.

—*A moi*, in the first sentence ;—*me*, in the second ;—*moi*, in the third ;—*de mes propres yeux*, in the fourth ; and—*de mes propres oreilles*, in the fifth, are employed merely for the sake of energy, or to manifest an internal feeling ; but this manner of speaking is sanctioned by custom.

REMARK. Expletives must not be mistaken for pleonasms.

EXAMPLE.

c'est une affaire, où il y va du salut *it is an affair in which the safety of the state is concerned.*
de l'état,

Which is better than *c'est une affaire, où il va*, etc. that is, than omitting *y*, which is in reality useless on account of *où* : this is a mode of expression from which it is not allowed to deviate.

OF THE SYLLEPSIS.

434. The syllepsis is a figure by which a word relates more to our meaning, than to the literal expressions, as in these phrases :

Il est onze heures ; l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.

When using them, the mind, merely intent upon precise meaning, pays no attention to either the number, or the gender of *heure* and *an*.

There is likewise a syllepsis in these sentences :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise.

J'ai peur qu'il ne m'oublie, etc.

Full of a wish that the event may not take place, we are willing to do all we can, that nothing should present an obstacle to that wish. This is the cause of the introduction of the negative, which, although unnecessary to complete the sense, yet must be preserved for the sake of the idiom.

There is again a very elegant syllepsis in sentences like the following from Racine :

Entre le *peuple* et vous, vous prendrez Dieu pour juge ;

Vous souvenant, mon fils, que caché sous ce lin,

Comme *eux* vous fûtes pauvre, et, comme *eux*, orphelin.

The poet forgets that he has been using the word *peuple* : nothing remains in his mind but *des pauvres* and *des orphelins*, and it is with that idea of which he is full that he makes the pronoun *eux* agree. For the same reason, Bossuet and Mézengui have said,

Quand le *peuple Hébreu* entra dans la terre promise, tout y célébrait *leurs* ancêtres.—BOSSUET.

Moïse eut recours au Seigneur, et lui dit : que ferai-je à *ce peuple* ? bientôt *ils* me lapideront.—MÉZENGUI.

Leurs and *ils* stand for *les Hébreux*.

CHAPTER X.

OF GRAMMATICAL DISCORDANCES, AMPHIBOLOGIES, AND GALLICISMS.

435 We have chiefly to take notice of two incorrect modes of construction, which are contrary to the principles laid down in the preceding chapters—grammatical discordances, and—amphibologies.

OF DISCORDANCES.

In general, there is a discordance in language, when the words, which compose the various members of a sentence, or period, do not agree with each other, either because their construction is contrary to analogy, or because they bring together dissimilar ideas, between which the mind perceives an opposition, or can see no manner of affinity.

The following examples will serve to illustrate this :

Notre réputation ne dépend pas des louanges qu'on nous donne, mais des actions louables que nous faisons.

This sentence is not correct, because the first member being negative, and the second affirmative, cannot come under the government of the same verb. It ought to be :

notre réputation dépend, non *our reputation depends, not upon*
des louanges qu'on nous *the praises which are bestowed*
donne, mais des actions, etc. *on us, but upon the praiseworthy*
actions which we perform.

But the most common discordances are those which arise from the wrong use of tenses, as in this sentence :

Il regarde votre malheur comme une punition du peu de complaisance que vous avez eu pour lui, dans le temps qu'il vous pria etc.

Because the two preterits, definite and indefinite, cannot well agree together ; it should be :

Que vous eûtes pour lui dans le temps qu'il vous pria.

There is discordance in this sentence :

On en ressentit autant de joie que d'une victoire complète dans un autre temps.

Because the verb cannot be understood after the *que* which introduces the second member of the comparison, when that verb is to be a different tense ; it should be :

On en ressentit autant de joie qu'on en aurait senti, etc.

This line of Racine,

Le flot, qui l'apporta, recule épouvanté.

is also incorrect, because the form of the present cannot associate with that of the preterit definite ; it should have been : *qui l'a apporté.*

OF AMPHIBOLOGIES.

436. Amphibology, in language, is when a sentence is so constructed as to be susceptible of two different interpre-

tations: this must be carefully avoided. As we speak only to be understood, perspicuity is the first and most essential quality of language; we should always recollect that *what is not clearly expressed in any language, is no language at all.*

Amphibology are occasioned,—1. By the misuse of—moods, and—tenses. 2. Of—personal pronouns, *il, le, la*, etc. 3. Of—possessive pronouns, *son, sa, ses*, etc. 4. By giving a wrong place to nouns.

EXAMPLES.

Of an Amphibology of the first Kind.

Qu'ai-je fait, *pour venir* accabler en ces lieux

Un héros, sur qui seul j'ai pu tourner les yeux ?—RACINE.

Pour venir forms an amphibology, because we do not know whether it relates to the person who speaks, or to the person spoken to: it should have been: *pour que vous veniez.*

EXAMPLES.

Of an Amphibology of the second Kind.

César voulut premièrement surpasser Pompée; les grandes richesses de Crassus *lui* firent croire, qu'il pourrait partager la gloire de ces deux grands hommes.

This sentence is faulty in its construction, because the pronouns *il* and *lui* seem to relate to *César*, although the sense obliges us to refer them to *Crassus*.

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the third Kind.

Valère alla chez Léandre; il y trouva *son* fils.

The pronoun *son* is ambiguous, because we do not know which it relates, to *Valère*, or to *Léandre*.

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the fourth Kind.

J'ai envoyé les lettres, que j'ai écrites, à la poste.

A la poste, thus placed, is equivocal, because we do not know whether it is meant that the letters have been *written at the post-office*, or *sent to the post-office*.

OF GALLICISMS.

In the "Grammaire Philosophique et Littéraire," four sorts of Gallicisms have been pointed out. Notice will be taken here of those only which have reference to construction.

The gallicisms of construction are, in general, irregularities and deviations from the customary rules of syntax: there are some, however, which are mere ellipses, and those which can only be attributed to the caprice of custom.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE. Every gallicism of construction, which renders the meaning of the sentence obscure, ought to be condemned. Those only ought to be allowed which do not impair perspicuity, by introducing irregularity of construction, and which are, at the same time, sanctioned by long practice.

According to this principle, this elliptic gallicism is now rejected:

Et qu'ainsi ne soit, meaning *ce que je vous dis est si vrai que*, because it renders the sentence obscure. For instance:

J'étais dans ce jardin, *et qu'ainsi ne soit*, voilà une fleur que j'y ai cueillie, *that is*, et pour preuve de cela, voilà une fleur, etc.

Molière and La Fontaine seem to have been the last great writers that have used this expression.

One of the most common gallicisms is that in which the impersonal verb *il y a*, is used for *il est*, *il existe*. These expressions:

Il y avait une fois un roi;—il y a cent à parier contre un, are gallicisms. There are two in the following sentence:

il n'y a pas jusqu'aux enfants, *even children will meddle with it*, qui ne s'en mêlent,

The verb *falloir* forms a sort of gallicism with the pronoun *en*, when it is conjugated like pronominal verbs with the double pronouns *il se*.

EXAMPLE.

Il s'en faut, il s'en fallait, etc.

It then means *to be wanting*, and when preceded by an adverb of quantity, the first pronoun is omitted.

EXAMPLE.

Peu s'en faut, tant s'en faut.

These several manners of using the verb *falloir* will be found in the following sentences :

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| il s'en faut bien qu'il soit aussi habile qu'il croit l'être, | <i>he is far from being so clever as he thinks.</i> |
| peu s'en est fallu qu'il n'ait succombé dans cette entreprise, | <i>he was very near falling in that undertaking.</i> |
| il ne s'en est presque rien fallu qu'il n'ait été tué, | <i>he was as near as possible being killed.</i> |
| vous dites qu'il s'en faut vingt livres que la somme entière n'y soit, mais vous vous trompez, il ne peut pas s'en falloir tant, | <i>you say it wants twenty pounds to complete the sum, but you are mistaken, it cannot want so much.</i> |
| son rhume est entièrement guéri, ou peu s'en faut, | <i>his cold is entirely cured, or very near.</i> |
| que s'en est-il fallu que ces deux amis ne se soient brouillés ? | <i>how near were these two friends quarrelling ?</i> |
| je ne suis pas content de votre application à l'étude, tant s'en faut, | <i>I am not satisfied with your application to study, far from it.</i> |
| tant s'en faut que cette comédie me plaise, elle me semble au contraire détestable, | <i>so far from this play pleasing me, I think it insufferable.</i> |
| il s'en fallait beaucoup que je vous approuvasse dans cette circonstance, | <i>I was far from approving your conduct on that occasion.</i> |

The sentences :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| il n'est rien moins que généreux, | <i>he is far from being generous.</i> |
| vous avez beau dire, | <i>you may say what you please, but, etc.</i> |
| à ce qu'il me semble, | <i>by what I can see, as the matter appears to me, etc.</i> |
| nous voilà à nous lamenter, | <i>we began to lament, here we are lamenting, crying, etc.</i> |
| qu'est-ce que de nous ! | <i>what wretched beings we are, etc. etc.</i> |

are also gallicisms.

The use which is made of the preposition *en*, in many sentences, is likewise another source of gallicisms ; some of this kind will be found in the following expressions :

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| à qui en avez-vous ? | <i>whom are you angry with ?</i> |
| où en veut-il venir ? | <i>what does he aim at ? what would he be at ?</i> |
| il lui en veut, | <i>he owes him a grudge.</i> |

The preposition *en* changes, also, sometimes, the signification of verbs, and then gives rise to gallicisms.

The conjunction *que* produces as great a number of gallicisms.

EXAMPLES.

c'est une terrible passion que le jeu, *gaming is a terrible passion.*
 c'est donc en vain que je travaille, *it is in vain then that I work.*
 ce n'est pas trop que cela, *that 's not too much.*
 il n'est que d'avoir du courage, *there is nothing like having courage.*

See No. 426.

Many others will be found in the use which is made of the prepositions *à, de, dans, après*, etc. but enough has been said on this subject.

Gallicisms are of very great use in the simple style: therefore La Fontaine and Mme. de Sévigné abound in them. The common style has not so many, and the solemn oratorical but few, and these even of a peculiar nature. Only two examples of this kind, both taken from the tragedy of Iphigenia, by Racine, will be here inserted.

Avez-vous pu penser qu'au sang d'Agamemnon
 Achille préférât une fille sans non,
 Qui, de tout son destin, ce qu'elle a pu comprendre,
 C'est qu'elle sort d'un sang, etc.

And,

*Je ne sais qui m'arrête et retient mon courroux,
 Que par un prompt avis de tout ce qui se passe,
 Je ne cours des dieux divulguer la menace.*

In the first sentence, *qui* is the subject though without relating to any verb; and in the second, *je ne sais qui m'arrête que je ne cours*, is contrary to the rules of common construction. "But," says Vaugelas, "the extraordinary phrases, far from being faulty, possess the more beauty, as they belong to a particular kind of language."

FREE EXERCISES.

I.

MADAME DE MAINTENON TO HER BROTHER.

We can only be 1 unhappy by our own fault; this shall always be my text, and my reply to your lamentations. Recollect 2, my dear brother, the voyage to America, the misfortunes of our father, of our infancy and our youth 3; and you will bless Providence instead of murmuring against fortune. Ten years ago, we were both very far (below our present situation 4;) and our hopes were so feeble 5, that we limited our wishes to an (income of three thousand livres 6.) At present we have four times that sum 7, and our desires are not yet satisfied! we enjoy the happy mediocrity which you have so often extolled 8; let us be content. If possessions 9 come to us, let us receive them from the hand of God, but let not our views be 10 too extravagant 11. We have (every thing necessary 12) and comfortable 13; all the rest is covetousness 14; all these desires of greatness spring from 15 a restless heart. Your debts are all paid; and you may live elegantly 16, without contracting more 17. What have you to desire? must 18 schemes 19 of wealth and ambition occasion 20 the loss of your repose and your health? read the life of St. Louis; you will see how unequal 21 the greatness of this world is to the desires of the human heart; God only can satisfy them 22. I repeat it, you are only unhappy by your own fault. Your uneasiness 23 destroys your health, which you ought to preserve, if it were 24 only because I love you. Watch 25 your temper 26; if you can render it less splenetic 27 and less gloomy, (you will have gained a great advantage 28). This is not the work of reflection only;

-
1. On ne être—que. 2. Songer à. 3. The misfortunes of our infancy and those of our, etc. 4. Du point où nous sommes aujourd'hui. 5. Si peu de chose. 6. Trois mille livres de rente. 7. That sum, en... plus. 8. Have so often extolled, vanter si fort, ind-2. 9. Possessions, biens. 10. Let us not have views. 11. Trop vaste. 12. Le nécessaire. 13. De commode. 14. Covetousness, cupidité. 15. Spring from, partir du vide de. 16. Délicieusement. 17. Constructing more, en faire de nouvelles. 18. Must, faut-il que. 19. Projet. 20. Occasion, coûter, subj-1. 21. Unequal, au-dessous de. 22. Satisfy them, le rassasier. 23. Uneasiness, inquiétude pl. 24. If it were, quand ce être, cond-1. 25. Travailler sur. 26. Humeur. 27. Bilieux. 28. Ce être

exercise, amusement, and a regular life, (are necessary for the purpose 29.) You cannot think well (whilst your health is affected 30; when the body is debilitated 31, the mind is without vigour. Adieu! write to me more frequently, and in a style less gloomy.

THEIR.

; this shall
ations. Re-
a, the mis-
uth 3; and
against for-
below our
5, that we
d livres 6.)
our desires
erity, which

If posses-
nd of God,
We have
all the rest
spring from
nd you may
What have
nd ambition
alth? read
t the great-
heart; God
ly unhappy
our health,
because I
n render it
e gained a
ction only;

ortunes or our
mes aujourd-
rente. 7.
si fort, ind-2.

11. Trop
14. Covetous-
16. Déli-
velles. 18.
ûter, subj-1.
asier. 23.
être, cond-1.
28. Ce être

II.

THE CONVERT.

AN EASTERN TALE:

Divine mercy 1 had brought a vicious man into a society of sages, whose morals were holy and pure. He was affected by their virtues; it was not long 2 before 3 he imitated them and lost his old habits: he became just, sober, patient, laborious and benevolent. His deeds nobody could deny, but they were attributed 4 to odious motives. They praised his good actions, without loving his person: they would always judge him by what he had been, not by what he had become. This injustice filled him with grief; he shed tears in the bosom of an ancient sage, more just and more humane than the others. "O my son," said the old man to him, "thou art better than thy reputation; be thankful to God for it. Happy the man who can say: my enemies and my rivals censured in me vices of which I am not guilty. What matters 5 it, if thou art good, that men persecute thee as wicked?—Hast thou not, to comfort thee, the two best witnesses of thy actions, God and thy conscience?"

SAINT-LAMBERT.

Mr. de Montausier has written a letter to Monseigneur upon the taking of Philipsbourg, which very much pleases me. "Monseigneur, I do not compliment you on the capture of Philipsbourg; you had a good army, bombs, canon, and Vauban; neither shall I compliment you upon your valour; for that is an hereditary virtue in your family, But I rejoice that you are liberal, generous, humane, and that you know how to recompense the services of those who behave well: it is for this that I congratulate you."

SÉVIGNÉ.

un grand point de gagné. 29. Il y faut de. 30. Tant que vous se porter mal. 31. *Debilitated*, dans l'abattement.

1. Miséricorde. 2. Ne pas tarder. 3. A inf. 4. On donner des motifs. 5. Importer.

III.

THE GOOD MINISTER.

AN EASTERN TALE.

The great Aaron Raschild began to suspect that his vizier Giafar was not deserving of the confidence which he had reposed in him. The women of Aaron, the inhabitants of Bagdad, the courtiers, the dervises, censured the vizier with bitterness. The calif loved Giafar; he would not condemn him upon the clamours of the city and the court; he visited his empire; every where he saw the land well cultivated, the country smiling, the cottages opulent, the useful arts honoured, and youth full of gaiety. He visited his fortified cities and sea-ports; he saw numerous ships, which threatened the coasts of Africa and of Asia; he saw warriors disciplined and content; these warriors, the seamen and the peasantry, exclaimed: "O God, pour thy blessings upon the faithful, by giving them a calif like Aaron, and a vizier like Giafar." The calif, affected by these exclamations, enters a mosque, falls upon his knees, and cries out: "Great God, I return thee thanks: thou hast given me a vizier of whom my courtiers speak ill, and my people speak well."

SAINT-LAMBERT.

Providence leads us with so much goodness through the different periods of our life, that we (are not sensible of our progress 1.) This loss takes place gently 2, it is imperceptible, it is the shadow of the sun-dial whose motion we do not see. If, at twenty years of age, we could see 3 in a mirror the face we shall have at three-score, we (should be shocked at the contrast 4) and terrified at our own figure; but it is day by day that we advance: we are to-day as we were yesterday and shall be to-morrow as we are to-day; so we go forward without perceiving it, and this is a miracle of that Providence which I adore.

SÉVIGNÉ.

IV.

THE MAGNIFICENT PROSPECT.

This beautiful house was on the declivity of a hill, from whence you beheld the sea, sometimes clear and smooth as

-
- | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| 1. Ne le sentir quasi pas. | 2. Va doucement. | 3. On nous |
| faire voir. | 4. Tomber à la renverse. | |

glass, sometimes idly 1 irritated against the rocks on which it broke, bellowing 2 and swelling its waves like mountains. On another side was seen a river, in which were islands bordered with blooming limes, and lofty poplars, which raised their proud heads to the very clouds. The several channels, which formed those islands, seemed sporting 3 in the plain. Some rolled their limpid waters with rapidity; some had a peaceful and still course; others, by long windings, ran back again, to reascend as it were, to their source, and seemed not to have power to leave these enchanting borders. At a distance were seen hills and mountains, which were lost in the clouds, and formed, by their fantastic figure, as delightful a horizon (as the eye could wish to behold. 4) The neighbouring mountains were covered with verdant (vine branches, 5) hanging in festoons; the grapes brighter than purple, could not conceal themselves under the leaves, and the vine was overloaded with its fruit. The fig, the olive, the pomegranate, and all other trees, overspread the plain, and made it one large garden. FENELON.

Long hopes wear out 7 joy, as long maladies wear out pain.

All philosophic systems are only good when one (has no use for them 8.)

A GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

With what magnificence does nature shine 1 upon earth! A pure light, extending from east to west, gilds successively the two hemispheres of this globe; an element, transparent and light, surrounds it; a gentle fecundating heat animates, gives being 2 to the seeds of life: salubrious running streams contribute to their preservation and growth; eminences diversified over the level land, arrest the vapours of the air, make these springs inexhaustible and always new; immense cavities made to receive them divide the continents. The extent of the sea is as great as that of the earth: it is not a cold, barren element; it is a new empire, as rich, as populous as the first. The finger of God has marked their boundaries.

The earth, rising above the level of the sea, is secure 3

1. Follement. 2. En gémir. 3. Se jouer. 4. A souhait pour le plaisir de. 5. Fampre, m. 6. Vigne. f. 7. User. 8. N'en avoir que faire.

1. Ne briller pas. 2. Faire éclore. 3. A l'abri de.

from its eruptions: its surface, enamelled with flowers, adorned with ever-springing verdure, peopled with thousands and thousands of species of different animals, is a place of rest, a delightful abode, where man, placed in order to second nature, presides over all beings. The only one among them all, capable of knowing and worthy of admiring. God has made him spectator of the universe, and a witness of his wonders. The divine spark with which he is animated enables him to participate in the divine mysteries: it is by this light that he thinks and reflects; by it he sees and reads in the book of the universe, as in a copy of the Deity.

Nature is the exterior throne of the divine Majesty: the man who contemplates, who studies it, rises by degrees to the interior throne of Omnipotence. Made to adore the Creator, the vassal of heaven, sovereign of the earth, he ennobles, peoples, enriches it; he establishes among living beings order, subordination, harmony; he embellishes nature herself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it; lops off the thistle and the briar, and multiplies the grape and the rose.

BUFFON.

IV.

ANOTHER GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

Trees, shrubs, and plants are the ornaments and clothing 1 of the earth. Nothing is so melancholy 2 as the prospect of a country naked and bare 3, exhibiting to the eye nothing but stones, mud, and sand. But, vivified by nature, and clad 4 in its nuptial robe, amidst the course of streams and the singing of birds, the earth presents to man, in the harmony of the three kingdoms, a spectacle full of life, of interest and charms, the only spectacle in the world of which his eyes and heart are never weary 5.

The more a (contemplative man's soul is fraught with sensibility 6), the more he yields to the extacies which this harmony produces in him. A soft and deep melancholy then takes possession of his senses, and, in an intoxication of delight, he loses himself in the immensity of that beautiful system, with which he feels himself identified. Then, every particular object escapes him, he sees and feels nothing but in the whole. Some circumstance must contract his ideas and circumscribe his imagination, before 7 he can observe by parcels that universe which he was endeavouring to embrace.

J. J. ROUSSEAU.

1. Vêtement 2. Triste. 3. Pelé. 4. Revêtu. 5. Se
lasser. 6. Contemplateur avoir l'âme sensible. 7. Pour qu'il.

VII.

CULTIVATED NATURE.

How beautiful is cultivated nature ! And, by the labours of man, how brilliant it is, and how pompously adored ! He himself is its chief ornament, its noblest part ; by multiplying himself, he multiplies the most precious germ ; she also seems to multiply with him ; by his art, he (brings forth to view 1) all that she concealed 2 in her bosom. How many unknown treasures ! What new riches ! Flowers, fruits, seeds brought to perfection, multiplied to infinity ; the useful species of animals transported, propagated, increased without number ; the noxious species reduced, confined, banished : gold, and iron more necessary than gold, extracted from the bowels of the earth ; torrents confined 3, rivers directed, contracted 4 ; the sea itself subjected, explored 5, crossed, from one hemisphere to the other ; the earth accessible in every part, and every where rendered equally cheerful and fruitful : in the vallies, delightful meadows ; in the plains, rich pastures and still richer harvests ; hills covered with vines and fruits ; their summits crowned with useful trees and young forests ; deserts changed into cities inhabited by an immense population, which, continually circulating, spreads itself from these centres to their extremities ; roads opened and frequented, communications established every where, as so many witnesses of the strength and union of society : a thousand other monuments of power and glory sufficiently demonstrate that man, possessing dominion over the earth, has changed, renewed the whole of its surface, and that, at all times, he shares the empire of it with nature.

VIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

However, man only reigns by right of conquest : he rather enjoys than possesses, and he can preserve only by means of continued labour. It this ceases every thing droops, every thing declines, every thing changes and again returns 1 under the hand of nature ; she reassumes her rights, erases the work of man, covers with dust and moss his most pompous monuments, destroys them in time, and leaves him nothing but the regret of having lost, through his fault what his ancestors had

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Mettre au jour. | 2. Recéler. | 3. Contenu. | 4. Resserré. |
| 5. B ^e connu. | | | |
| 1. Rentrer. | | | |

conquered by their labours. Those times, in which man loses his dominion, those barbarous 2 ages, during which every thing is seen to perish, are always preceded by war, and accompanied by scarcity and depopulation. Man, who can do nothing but by number, who is strong only by union, who can be happy only by peace, is mad enough to arm himself for his misery, and to fight for his ruin. Impelled by an insatiable thirst of having, blinded by ambition still more insatiable, he renounces all the feelings of humanity, turns all his strength against himself, seeks mutual destruction, actually 3 destroys himself; and, after these periods of blood and carnage, when the smoke of glory has vanished, he contemplates with a sad eye, the earth wasted, the arts buried, nations scattered, the people weakened, his own happiness ruined, and his real power annihilated.

BUFFON.

IX.

INVOCATION TO THE GOD OF NATURE.

Almighty God whose presence alone supports nature, and maintains the harmony of the laws of the universe: Thou, who from the immoveable throne of the empyrean, seest the celestial spheres roll under thy feet, without shock or confusion: who, from the bosom of repose, reproducest every moment their immense movements, and alone governest, in profound peace, that infinite number of heavens and worlds; restore at length tranquillity to the agitated earth! let it be silent at thy voice; let discord and war cease their proud clamours! God of goodness, author of all beings, thy paternal eye takes in 1 all the objects of the creation; but man is thy chosen being; thou hast illumined 2 his soul with a ray of thy immortal light: complete the measure of thy kindness by penetrating his heart with a ray of thy love: this divine sentiment, diffusing itself every where, will reconcile opposite natures; man will no longer dread the sight of man; his hand will no longer wield the murderous steel 3; the devouring flames of war will no longer dry up 4 the sources of population: the human species, now weakened, mutilated, mowed down in the blossom, will spring a new and 5 multiply without number; nature, overwhelmed under the weight of scourges 6, will soon re-assume, with a new life, its former

2. De barbarie.

3. En effet.

1. Embrasser.

2. Eclairer.

3. Le fer.... armer sa main

4. Tarir.

5. Germer de nouveau.

6. Fléau.

fruitfulness; and we, beneficent God, will second it, we will cultivate it, we will contemplate it incessantly, that we may every moment offer thee a new tribute of gratitude and admiration.

BUFFON.

X.

Happy they who are disgusted with 1 turbulent pleasures, and know how to be contented 2 with the sweets of an innocent life! Happy they who delight in being instructed 3, and who take a pleasure 4 in storing their minds with knowledge! Wherever adverse fortune may throw them, they always carry entertainment with them; and the disquiet which preys upon others, even in the midst of pleasures, is unknown to those who employ themselves in reading. Happy they who love to read, and are not like me deprived of the ability. As these thoughts were passing in my mind, I went into a gloomy forest, where I immediately perceived an old man holding a book in his hand. The forehead of this sage was broad, bald, and a little wrinkled: a white beard hung down to his girdle; his stature was tall and majestic; his complexion still fresh and ruddy, his eyes lively and piercing, his voice sweet, his words plain and charming. I never saw so venerable an old man. He was a priest of Apollo, and officiated 5 in a marble temple, which the kings of Egypt had dedicated to that God in this forest. The book which he held in his hand was a collection of hymns in honour of the Gods.

He accosted me in a friendly manner; and we discoursed together. He related things past so well, that they seemed present, and yet with such brevity that his account never tired me. He foresaw the future by his profound knowledge, which made him know men, and the designs of which they are capable. With all this wisdom he was cheerful and complaisant, and the sprightliest youth has not so many graces as this man had at so advanced an age. He accordingly loved young men when they were teachable 6, and had a taste for study and virtue.

FENELON.

XI.

THOUGHTS ON POETRY.

Wherever I went, I found that poetry was considered as

1. Se dégoûter de. 2. Se contenter de. 3. S'instruire.
4. Se plaire. 5. Servir. 6. Dccile.

the highest learning 1, and regarded with a veneration (somewhat approaching to 2) that which men would pay to angelic nature.

It yet fills me with wonder, that, in almost all countries, the most ancient poets are considered as the best; whether (it be that 3) every kind of knowledge is an acquisition gradually attained, any poetry is a gift conferred at once, or that the first poetry of every nation surprised them as a novelty, and retained the credit by consent, which it received by assent at first, or whether, as the province 4 of poetry is to depict nature and passion, which are always the same, the first writers (took possession 5) of (the most striking objects for description 6) and (the most probable occurrences for fiction 7,) and left nothing to those that followed them, but transcription 8 of the same events, and new combinations 9 of the same images. Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed, that the early writers are in possession of nature, and their followers 10 of art: that the first excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement.

I was desirous to add my name to this illustrious fraternity 11. I read all the poets of Persia and Arabia, and was able to repeat by memory the volumes that are suspended in the mosque of Mecca. But I soon found that no man was ever great by imitation. My desire of excellence 12 impelled 13 me to transfer 14 my attention to nature and to life 15. Nature was to be my subject, and men to be my auditors: I could never describe what I had not seen: I could not hope (to move those with delight or terror 16) whose interests and opinions I did not understand 17.

XII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

Being now resolved to be a poet, I saw every thing (with a new purpose 18:) my sphere of attention was suddenly magnified: no kind of knowledge (was to be overlooked 19.) I ranged mountains and deserts for 20 images and resemblances and (picture upon my mind 21) every tree of the forest

1. Partie la plus sublime de la littérature. 2. Qui tenait de. 3. Ce vienne de ce que. 4. But. 5. S'emparer. 6. Objets qui fournissaient les plus riches descriptions. 7. Evénements qui prêtaient le plus à la fiction. 8. De copier. 9. Faire de nouvelles combinaisons. 10. Successeurs. 11. Famille. 12. Exceller. 13. Engager. 14. Reporter sur. 15. Tableau de la vie. 16. Réveiller le plaisir ou la terreur dans ceux. 17. Ne connaître ni. 18. Sous un nouveau jour. 19. Je ne devais négliger. 20. Pour recueillir. 21. Pénétrer mon

and flower of the valley. I observed with equal care the crags of the rock and the pinnacles of the palace. Sometimes I wandered along the mazes of the rivulet and sometimes watched the changes of the summer-clouds. To a poet nothing can be useless. Whatever is beautiful, and whatever is dreadful, must be familiar to his imagination; he must (be conversant 22) with all that (is awfully vast or elegantly little 23). The plants of the garden, the animals of the wood, the minerals of the earth, and the meteors of the sky, must all concur to store his mind with inexhaustible variety; for every idea is useful for the (enforcement or decoration 24) of moral or religious truth; and he who knows most, will have most power 25 of diversifying his scenes. 26, and gratifying his reader with remote allusions and unexpected instructions.

All the appearances of nature (I was, therefore, careful to study,) 27, and every country which I have surveyed has contributed something to my poetical powers.

In so wide a survey, interrupted the prince, you must surely have left much unobserved. I have lived, till now, within the circuit of these mountains, and yet cannot walk abroad without the sight of something which I had never beheld before, or never heeded 28.

XIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

The business of a poet, said Imlac, is to examine, not the individual, but the species; to remark general properties and (large appearances 29:) he does not number the streaks of the tulip, or describe the different shades in the verdure of the forest. He is to exhibit, in his portrait nature, such prominent and striking features, as 30 recal the original to every mind; and must neglect the minuter discrimination 31, which one may have remarked, and another neglected, for those characters 32 which are alike obvious 33 to vigilance 34 and carelessness 35.

But the knowledge of nature is only half 36 the task of a

esprit du tableau de. 22. Bien connaître. 23. Etonner par sa grandeur, ou charmer par son élégante petitesse. 24. Fortifier, ou embellir. 25. Ressources pour. 26. Tableau. 27. Etudier avec soin toutes les etc. 28. Remarquer. 29. Considérer les objets en grand. 30. De ces traits saillants et frappants qui, etc. etc. 31. Ces petits détails. 32. Pour s'appliquer à caractériser, etc. etc. 33. Frapper également. 34. Œil observateur. 35. Esprit insouciant. 36. The half of.

poet: he must be acquainted likewise with all the modes 37 of life. His character requires that he estimate 38 the happiness and misery of every condition: observe the power of all the passions, in all their combinations, and trace the changes 39 of the human mind, as they are modified by various institutions, and accidental influences of climate or custom; from the sprightliness of infancy to the despondence of decrepitude. He must divest himself 40 of the prejudices of his age or country; he must consider right and wrong 41 in their abstracted and invariable state 42; he must disregard present laws and opinions, and rise to general and transcendent truths, which will always be the same; he must, therefore, (content himself with the slow progress of his name 43,) to condemn the applause of his own time, and commit his claims to the justice of posterity. He must write as the interpreter of nature, and the legislator of mankind, and consider himself as presiding 44 over the thoughts and manners of future generations, as a being superior to time and place.

His labour is not yet at an end; he must know many languages and many sciences; and, that his style may be worthy of his thoughts, he must, by incessant practice, familiarize himself to every delicacy of speech and grace of harmony.

S. JOHNSON.

XIV.

First follow nature and your judgment frame
 By her just standard, which is still the same;
 Unerring nature, still divinely bright,
 One clear, unchanged, and universal light,
 Life, force, and beauty, must to all impart; 1
 At once the source, and end, and test of art. 2
 Art, from that fund, each just supply provides:
 Works without show, and without pomp presides:
 In some fair body thus th' informing soul
 With spirits feeds, with vigour fills the whole,
 Each motion guides, and every nerve sustains

37. Tous les différents aspects. 38. Apprécier. 39. Suivre les vicissitudes. 40. Se dépouiller. 41. Ce qui est juste ou injuste. 42. Abstraction faite de ces divers préjugés.. 43. Se résigner à voir son nom percer difficilement. 44. Influencer.

1. Light, clear, immutable, and universal nature, which never errs, and shines always with a divine splendour, must impart to all she does life, force and beauty.

2. She is at once the source, etc. etc.

Itself unseen, but in th' effect remains. 3
 Some, to whom heav'n in wit has been profuse,
 Want as much more to turn it to its use :
 For wit and judgment often are at strife,
 Tho' meant each other's aid, like man and wife. 4
 'Tis more to guide, than spur the muse's steed ;
 Restrain his fury, than provoke his speed : 5
 The winged courser, like a gen'rous horse,
 Shows most true mettle, when you check its course. 6

3. So in a fair body, unseen itself, but always sensible by its effects, the soul continually acting, feeds the whole with spirits, fills it with vigour, guides every motion of it, and sustains every nerve.

4. Some to whom heaven has given wit with profusion, want as much yet to know the use they ought to make of it ; for wit and judgment, though made, like man and wife, to aid each other, are often in opposition.

5. It is more difficult to guide than spur the courser of the muses, and to restrain its ardour than provoke its impetuosity.

6. The winged courser is like a generous horse : the more we strive to stop it in its rapid course, the more it shows unconquerable vigour.

e modes 37
 38 the hap-
 he power of
 d trace the
 modified by
 climate or
 espondence
 e prejudices
 d wrong 41
 must disre-
 general and
 e same ; he
 progress of
 wn time, and
 e must write
 of mankind,
 oughts and
 erior to time
 w many lan-
 yle may be
 actice, fami-
 grace of har-
 JOHNSON.

e ;

les :
esides :

le,
ins

suivre les vicissi-
 tude. 42. Ab-
 nner à voir son

which never errs,
 t to all she does

437. EXAMPLES OF PHRASES ON THE PRINCIPAL DIFFICULTIES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

N.B.—It is strongly recommended that these examples be learnt by heart. They will also be found very useful, in point of reference, whenever the learner is at a loss on some point of grammar or construction. The better to enable him to find what he wants, the different chapters have been numbered, and will be found minutely described in the Table of Contents.

1. *Sur les Collectifs Partitifs.*

La plupart des fruits verts sont d'un goût austère.

La plupart des gens ne se conduisent que par intérêt.

La plupart du monde se trompe.

Il méprise par philosophie les honneurs, que la plupart du monde recherche.

Il devait me fournir tant d'arbres ; mais j'en ai rejeté la moitié qui ne valait rien.

Un grand nombre de spectateurs ajoutait à la beauté du spectacle.

Toute sorte de livres ne sont pas également bons.

Beaucoup de personnes se sont présentées.

Bien des personnes se font des principes à leur fantaisie.

2. *Sur quelques Verbes qu'on ne peut conjuguer avec Avoir sans faire des barbarismes.*

Il lui est échu une succession du chef de sa femme.

Il est bien déchu de son crédit.

Ne nous sommes-nous pas convenus du prix ?

N'est-il pas intervenu dans cette affaire, comme il l'avait promis ?

Il est survenu à l'improviste.

On the Collective Partitives.

The greater part of green fruit is of a harsh taste.

Most people are guided only by interest.

The greater part of mankind are in error.

As a true philosopher he despises those honours which mankind in general court.

He was to furnish me so many trees, but I refused half of them which were good for nothing.

A considerable number of spectators added to the splendour of the scene.

Every kind of books are not equally good.

Many people presented themselves.

Many persons form principles to themselves, according to their fancy.

2. On some verbs which cannot be conjugated with the verb Avoir, without making barbarous phrases.

An estate fell to him in right of his wife.

He has lost much of his credit.

Have we not agreed about the price ?

Did he not interfere in that affair as he had promised ?

He came up unawares.

PRINCIPAL
USAGE.

amples be
useful, in
s on some
enable him
been num-
e Table of

artitives.

green fruit

ided only by

of mankind

her he des-
which man-

me so many

half of them

othing.

ber of spec-

splendour of

oks are not

ented them-

m principles

ing to their

hich cannot

h the verb

aking barba-

im in right

his or dit.

ed about the

e in that af-

et ?

es.

La neige, qui est tombée ce
matin, a adouci le temps.

Que de neige il est tombé ce
matin !

Toutes les dents lui sont tom-
bées.

Ce propos n'est pas tombé à
terre.

Etes-vous allé voir votre ami ?

Ils sont arrivés à midi et sont
repartis de suite.

Ces fleurs sont à peine écloses.

Il est né de parents vertueux,
qui n'ont rien négligé pour son
éducation.

Mademoiselle votre sœur est-
elle rentrée ?

Madame votre mère n'est-elle
pas encore venue ?

3. Sur les Mots de Quantité.

Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais
encore plus d'amour-propre.

Il a assez d'argent pour ses
menus plaisirs.

Il y avait bien du monde à
l'Opéra.

Il y avait hier au Parc je ne
sais combien de gens.

Il boit autant d'eau que de
vin.

Il a tant d'amis qu'il ne man-
quera de rien.

Personne n'y a plus d'intérêt
que lui.

Il n'a pas plus d'esprit qu'il
n'en faut.

Trop de loisir perd souvent la
jeunesse.

J'y ai bien moins d'intérêt que
vous.

4. Sur les Pronoms Personnels.

Sors et te retire.

Cours vite et ne t'amuse point

Il dit aujourd'hui une chose et
demain il se démentira.

Il s'est démenti lui-même.

The snow which fell this morn-
ing has softened the weather.

How much snow has fallen this
morning !

All his teeth have fallen out.

That remark was not allowed
to escape.

Have you been to see your
friend ?

They arrived at noon and set
out again immediately.

These flowers are scarcely
blown.

He was born of virtuous pa-
rents, who bestowed on him the
best education.

Is your sister returned ?

Is not your mother come yet ?

On Words of Quantity.

He has a great deal of sense
but still more vanity.

He has pocket-money enough
for his pleasures.

There were a great many people
at the Opera.

There were I do not know how
many people in the park yester-
day.

He drinks as much water as
wine.

He has so many friends that he
will want for nothing.

Nobody has more interest there
than he.

He is not overburthened with
sense.

Too much leisure time is fre-
quently the ruin of youth.

I am much less concerned in it
than you.

On the Personal Pronouns.

Go out and retire.

Go quick and do not loiter.

He advances a thing to-day,
and will contradict himself to-
morrow.

He has contradicted himself.

La jeunesse est naturellement emportée ; elle a besoin de quelque entrave qui la retienne,

Il ne peut voir personne dans la prospérité sans lui porter envie.

Ce que vous me dites est une énigme pour moi,

C'est un homme extrême en tout ; il aime et il hait avec fureur.

Si vous n'y avez jamais été, je vous y mènerai.

Je l'ai connu doux et modeste ; il s'est bien gâté dans le commerce de ses nouveaux amis.

Elle n'est pas encore revenue du saisissement, que lui a causé cette nouvelle.

Il menace de l'exterminer, lui et toute sa race.

Si vous n'avez que faire de ce livre-là, prêtez-le-moi.

Je lui avais envoyé un diamant, il l'a refusé, je le lui ai renvoyé.

Il apprend facilement et oublie de même.

Je lui pardonne facilement d'avoir voulu se faire auteur ; mais je ne saurais lui pardonner toutes les puérilités dont il a farci son livre.

Je me plains à vous de vous-même.

Si vous ne voulez pas être pour lui, au moins ne soyez pas contre.

Quand sera-ce que vous viendrez nous voir ?

5. Sur soi, lui, soi-même, et lui-même.

Quand on a pour soi le témoignage de sa conscience, on est bien fort.

L'estime de toute la terre ne sert de rien à un homme qui n'a pas le témoignage de sa conscience pour lui.

Un homme fait mille fautes, parce qu'il ne fait point de réflexions sur lui.

Youth is naturally hasty, it needs some curb to restrain it.

He can see the prosperity of nobody, without envying them.

What you tell me is a perfect riddle to me.

He is a man that carries every thing to excess ; he is alike violent in his love and in his hatred.

If you have never been there, I will take you.

I knew him when he was gentle and modest ; he has been much corrupted by associating with his new acquaintances.

She is not yet recovered from the consternation into which that news threw her.

He threatens to exterminate him and all his family.

If you have done with this book, lend it me.

I had sent him a diamond, and he refused it, but I sent him it back again.

He learns easily and forgets the same.

I can easily pardon him for having attempted to turn author ; but I cannot pardon him all the absurdities with which he has struffed his book.

I complain to you of yourself.

If you will not be for him, at least do not be against him.

When will you come to see us ?

On soi, lui, soi-même, and lui-même.

The approbation of our conscience imparts great courage.

The good opinion of the whole world is of no use to a man who has not the approbation of his own conscience.

A man commits a thousand faults, because he does not reflect on future consequences.

On fait mille fautes, quand on ne fait aucune réflexion sur soi.

Il aime mieux dire du mal de lui-même, que de n'en point parler.

L'égoïste aimera mieux dire du mal de soi-même, que de n'en point parler.

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.

Un prince a souvent besoin de beaucoup de gens plus petits que lui.

C'est un bon moyen de s'élever soi-même, que d'exalter ses pareils; et un homme adroit s'élève ainsi lui-même.

6. Sur les Pronoms Relatifs.

Il n'y a rien de si capable d'affaiblir le courage, que l'oisiveté et les délices.

Il faut empêcher que la division, qui est dans cette famille, n'éclate.

Il y a bien des événements que l'on suppose se passer pendant les entr'actes.

Je le trouvais qui s'habillait.

Qui le tirera de cet embarras, le tirera d'une grande misère.

Ceux-là sont véritablement heureux, qui croient l'être.

Il n'y a que la vertu, qui puisse rendre un homme heureux en cette vie.

Il n'y a règle si générale, qui n'ait son exception.

C'est un orateur qui se possède et qui ne se trouble jamais.

Il n'y a pas dans le cœur humain de repli, que Dieu ne connaisse.

On n'a trouvé que quelques fragments du grand ouvrage qu'il avait promis.

La faute, que vous avez faite, est plus importante que vous ne pensez.

Les premières démarches qu'on fait dans le monde, ont beaucoup

We commit a thousand faults, when we neglect to reflect on ourselves.

He had rather speak ill of himself than not talk of himself at all.

The selfish man prefers speaking ill of himself rather than not be the subject of his own conversation.

We frequently want the assistance of one who is below ourselves.

A prince frequently needs the assistance of many persons inferior to himself.

It is an excellent method of exalting ourselves to exalt our equals, and a man of address by this means exalts himself.

On the Relative Pronouns.

Nothing is so calculated to enervate the mind as idleness and pleasure.

The dissension in that family must be prevented from becoming public.

There are many events in a piece which are supposed to happen between the acts.

I found him dressing.

Whoever extricates him from this difficulty, will relieve him from much distress.

Those are really happy, who think themselves so.

Virtue alone can render a man happy in this life.

There is no rule so general but it admits of exceptions.

He is an orator who is master of himself, and who is never embarrassed.

There is no recess of the human heart but God perceives it.

Only some fragments of the great work he had promised have been found.

The error you have committed is of more consequence than you imagine.

The first steps we take on entering the world have consider-

d'influence sur le reste de la vie.

Cette farce est une des plus risibles qu'on ait encore vues.

Amassez-vous des trésors que les vers et la rouille ne puissent point gâter, et que les voleurs ne puissent point dérober.

L'incertitude, où nous sommes de ce qui doit arriver, fait que nous ne saurions prendre des mesures justes.

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est.

L'homme dont vous parlez n'est plus ici.

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle ne vous est pas connu,

Celui à qui ce beau château appartient ne l'habite presque jamais.

Ce sont des événements auxquelles il faut bien se soumettre. C'est ce à quoi vous ne pensez guère.

7. Sur le pronom Démonstratifs.

Ne point reconnaître la divinité, c'est renoncer à toutes les lumières de la raison.

Mentir, c'est mépriser Dieu et craindre les hommes.

Il y a des épidémies morales, et ce sont les plus dangereuses.

Je crois que ce que vous dites, est bien éloigné de ce que vous pensez.

Les hommes n'aiment ordinairement que ceux qui les flattent.

Celui qui persuade à un autre de faire un crime n'est guère moins coupable que celui qui le commet.

Penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même.

Ce qu'on rapporte de lui est inconcevable.

Ce qui m'afflige, c'est de voir le triomphe du crime.

able influence on the rest of our lives.

That farce is one of the most truly comic that ever was seen.

Lay up for yourselves treasures which neither moth nor rust can corrupt, and which thieves cannot steal.

Our uncertainty as to what shall happen makes us incapable of properly providing against it.

I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in.

The man whom you are speaking of, is not here now.

The person from whom I received the intelligence is not known to you.

The proprietor of that beautiful seat seldom resides there.

These are events to which we must submit.

It is what you seldom think of.

On the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Not to acknowledge the divinity, is totally to renounce the light of reason.

To lie is to despise God and to fear man.

There are moral contagious diseases, and they are the most dangerous.

What you advance is, I think, widely different from your sentiments.

Men in general love only those who flatter them.

He who persuades another to the commission of a crime, is hardly less guilty than he who commits it.

To think in this manner is to be wilfully blind.

The reports concerning him are hardly conceivable.

What distresses me is to see guilt triumphant.

C
mili
le m
In
est
com
8. S
R
avoi
c'est
il se
Il
vu.
Y
N
que
N
mille
Il
mond
Il
sonn
Y
N
rienx
Je
vingt
Il
qu'il
Y
vous
Il y
un tel
Il r
Y
sion e
N'y
d'artif
Il y
immer
Il n
on l'av
Est
duel ?
N'y
duite
ment ?
Qua
tion, l
N'y
grand

Connaissez-vous la jeune Emilie; c'est une enfant dont tout le monde dit du bien.

Imitez en tout votre amie; elle est douce, appliquée, honnête et compatissante.

8. Sur le Verbe avoir employé à l'Impersonnel.

Remarque.—Quand le verbe avoir s'emploie à l'impersonnel, c'est dans le sens d'être, et alors il se joint toujours avec y.

Il y a un an que je ne vous ai vu.

Y a-t-il des nouvelles?

Non, il n'y en a pas, du moins que je sache.

N'y a-t-il pas cinquante-quatre milles de Londres à Brighton?

Il y avait déjà beaucoup de monde lorsque j'arrivai.

Il n'y avait hier presque personne au Parc.

Y avait-il de grands débats?

N'y avait-il pas beaucoup de curieux.

Je l'avais vu il y avait à peine vingt-quatre heures.

Il n'y avait pas deux jours qu'il avait dîné chez moi.

Y avait-il si long-temps que vous ne l'aviez vu?

Il y eut hier un bal chez Mr. un tel.

Il n'y eut pas hier de spectacle.

Y eut-il beaucoup de confusion et de désordre?

N'y eut-il pas un beau feu d'artifice?

Il y a eu aujourd'hui une foule immense à la promenade.

Il n'y a pas eu de bal, comme on l'avait annoncé.

Est-il vrai qu'il y a eu un duel?

N'y a-t-il pas eu dans sa conduite un peu trop d'emportement?

Quand il y eut eu une explication, les esprits se calmèrent.

N'y avait-il pas eu un plus grand nombre de spectateurs?

Do you know little Emily? she is a child of whom every body speaks well.

Imitate your friend in every thing; she is gentle, assiduous, polite and compassionate.

On the Verb Avoir, to have, employed impersonally.

When the verb avoir is used impersonally it signifies être, to be, and in this sense it is always accompanied by the adverb y.

It is a twelvemonth since I saw you.

Is there any news?

No, there is none at least that I know.

Is not it fifty-four miles from London to Brighton?

There were already a great many people when I arrived.

There was hardly any body in the Park yesterday.

Were there violent debates?

Were there not many spectators?

I had seen him scarcely four-and-twenty hours before.

He had dined with me not two days before.

Was it so long since you had seen him?

There was yesterday a ball at Mr. A's.

There was no play yesterday.

Was there a great deal of confusion and disorder.

Were there not beautiful fireworks?

There was an immense crowd to-day in the public walks.

There has not been any ball as had been mentioned.

Is it true that there has been a duel?

Was there not rather too much hastiness in his behaviour?

After there had been an explanation, tranquillity was restored.

Was not there a greater number of spectators?

Il y aura demain un simulacre de combat naval.

Il n'y aura aucun de vous.

Y aura-t-il une bonne récolte cette année ?

N'y aura-t-il pas quelqu'un de votre famille ?

A coup sûr il y aura eu bien du désordre ?

Sur cent personnes, il n'y en aura pas eu dix de satisfaites.

Y aura-t-il eu un bon souper ?

N'y aura-t-il eu pas de mécontents ?

Il y avait de la malhonnêteté dans ce procédé.

Il n'y aurait pas grand mal à cela.

Y aurait-il quelqu'un assez hardi pour l'attaquer ?

N'y aurait-il pas quelqu'un assez charitable pour l'avertir de ce qu'on dit de lui ?

Il y aurait eu de l'imprudence à cela.

Il n'y aurait pas eu tant de mésintelligence, si l'on m'en avait cru.

Il n'y aurait pas eu dix personnes.

Y aurait-il eu de l'inconvénient.

N'y aurait-il pas eu de jaloux pour le traverser dans ses projets ?

Je ne crois pas qu'il y ait un spectacle plus magnifique.

Je désirerais qu'il y eût moins de fausseté dans le commerce de la vie.

Je n'ai pas oui-dire qu'il y ait eu hier des nouvelles du continent.

Auriez-vous cru qu'il y eût eu tant de personnes compromises dans cette affaire ?

To-morrow there will be a mock sea-fight.

There will be none of you.

Will not there be a good harvest this year ?

Will not there be some of your family ?

There must certainly have been much disorder.

Out of a hundred persons there will not have been ten satisfied.

Will there have been a good supper ?

Will there not have been some dissatisfied people ?

Such a step would have been uncivil.

There would be no great harm in that.

Would there be any one bold enough to attack him ?

Would there be nobody kind enough to acquaint him with what is said of him ?

There would have been some imprudence in that.

There would not have been so great a misunderstanding had I been believed.

There would not have been ten persons.

Would there have been any inconvenience ?

Would there not have been some envious persons to thwart him in his designs ?

I do not think there can be a more superb spectacle.

I wish there was less duplicity in the concerns of life.

I have not heard that there was any news from the continent yesterday.

Could you have thought so many persons would have been exposed in that affair ?

9 Phrases Diverses.

Sa vie, ses actions, ses paroles, son air même et sa démarche, tout prêche, tout édifie en lui.

Promiscuous Phrases.

His life, his actions, his very look and deportment, every thing in him instructs and edifies.

On craignait qu'il n'arrivât quelque désordre dans l'assemblée, mais toutes choses s'y passèrent fort doucement.

La vigne et le lierre s'entortillent autour des ormes.

On ne disconvient point qu'il ne soit brave, mais il est un peu trop fanfaron.

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est encore davantage.

Le ciel est couvert de nuages, et l'orage est prêt à fondre.

Après qu'il eut franchi les Alpes avec ses troupes, il entra en Italie.

La frugalité rend les corps plus sains et plus robustes.

Ce discours est peut-être un des plus beaux morceaux d'éloquence, qu'il y ait jamais eus.

C'est un homme qui aime la liberté; il ne se gêne pour qui que ce soit.

Il est plus haut que moi de deux doigts.

Irez-vous vous exposer à la barbarie et à l'inhospitalité de ces peuples?

A la longue, les erreurs disparaissent, et la vérité surnage.

Si vous le prenez avec moi sur ce ton de fierté, je serai aussi fier que vous.

C'est un homme rigide, qui ne pardonne rien, ni aux autres ni à lui-même.

Les uns montent, les autres descendent, ainsi va la roue de la fortune.

Je ne vois rien de solide dans tout ce que vous me proposez.

L'art n'a jamais rien produit de plus beau.

Lequel est-ce des deux qui a tort?

On aime quelquefois la trahison, mais on hait toujours les traîtres.

It was apprehended some disorder would take place in the assembly, but every thing went off very quietly.

The vine and the ivy twist round the elms.

They do not deny that he is brave, but he boasts rather too much.

The youngest is rich, but the eldest is still more so.

The sky is covered with clouds, and the storm is preparing to burst.

After having crossed the Alps with his troops, he entered Italy.

Temperance imparts an increase of health and strength to the body.

This speech is perhaps one of the finest pieces of eloquence that were ever delivered.

He is a man fond of liberty, he will be constrained by nobody.

He is taller than I by two inches.

Will you go and expose yourself to the barbarity and inhospitality of those nations?

In time, errors vanish and truth survives.

If you treat me with that haughtiness, I can be as haughty as you.

He is a stern man, who pardons nothing either in himself or others.

Some rise, others descend; thus goes the wheel of fortune.

I see nothing certain in all you propose to me.

It is one of the finest productions of art.

Which of the two is in the wrong?

We sometimes like treason, but we always hate the traitor.

10 Continuation.

L'éléphant se sert de sa trompe pour prendre et pour enlever tout ce qu'il veut.

Plus j'examine cette personne, plus je crois l'avoir vue quelque part.

La nuit vint, de façon que je fus contraint de me retirer.

Il faut vivre de façon qu'on ne fasse tort à personne.

Elle sut qu'on attaquait son mari; elle courut aussitôt tout éperdue pour le secourir.

Je trouvai ses parents tout éplorés.

Cet arbre pousse ses branches toutes droites.

J'en ai encore la mémoire tout fraîche.

Il a voulu faire voir par cet essai qu'il pouvait réussir en quelque chose de plus grand.

Il fut blessé au front et mourut de cette blessure.

Ces chevaux prirent le mors aux dents et entraînaient le carrosse.

C'est un homme qui compose sans chaleur, ni imagination : tout ce qu'il écrit est froid et plat.

Ce bâtiment a plus de profondeur que de largeur.

Cet homme est un prodige de savoir, de science, de valeur, d'esprit et de mémoire.

Il est attaché à l'un et à l'autre, mais plus à l'un qu'à l'autre.

Ils ont bien l'air l'un de l'autre.

Si l'on ruine cet homme-là, le contre-coup retombera sur vous.

Il serait mort, si on ne l'eût assisté avec soin.

Ce poème serait parfait, si les incidents, qui le font languir, n'interrompaient la continuité de l'action.

11. Continuation.

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrais pas.

Continuation.

The elephant makes use of his trunk to take and lift anything he pleases.

The more I look at that person, the more I think I have seen him somewhere.

Night came on, so that I was obliged to retire.

We must live in such a manner as to injure nobody.

She knew her husband was attacked, and in a state of distraction, ran to his assistance.

I found her relations all in tears.

The branches of that tree grow quite straight.

It is still quite fresh on my memory.

He wished to show by that attempt that he could succeed in an enterprise of more consequence.

He was wounded in the forehead, and died of his wound.

Those horses ran away with the carriage.

He is a man that writes without the least warmth or animation; all his productions are cold and insipid.

That building has more depth than it has breadth.

That man is a prodigy of knowledge, judgment, courage, sense, and memory.

He is attached to both, but to one more than the other.

They very much look like one another.

If that man is ruined, his misfortune will recoil upon you.

He would have died if he had not been kindly assisted.

That would be a perfect poem, if the incidents which give a heaviness to it, did not break the connexion of the subject.

Continuation.

If I were disposed, I could not do it.

Je serai toujours votre ami, quand même vous ne le voudriez pas.

Quand vous auriez réussi, que vous en serait-il revenu ?

Quand on découvrirait votre démarche, on ne pourrait la blâmer.

Quand vous auriez consulté quelqu'un sur votre mariage, vous n'auriez pas mieux réussi.

Le tonnerre et l'éclair ne sont sensibles que par la propagation du bruit et de la lumière jusqu'à l'œil et à l'oreille.

Le langage de la prose est plus simple et moins figuré que celui des vers.

Le commencement de son discours est toujours assez sage ; mais, dans la suite, à force de vouloir s'élever, il se perd dans les nues : on ne sait plus ni ce qu'on voit, ni ce qu'on entend.

C'est une faute excusable dans un autre homme, mais à un homme aussi sage que lui, elle ne se peut pardonner.

Il ne suffit pas de paraître honnête homme, il faut l'être.

Il nous a reçus avec bonté, et nous a écoutés avec patience.

Tout y est si bien peint qu'on croit voir ce qu'il décrit.

On ne pense rien de vous, qui ne vous soit glorieux.

Les eaux de citernes ne sont que des eaux de pluie ramassées.

S'il n'est pas fort riche, du moins a-t-il de quoi vivre honnêtement.

Quel quantième du mois avons-nous ?

Il lui tarde qu'il ne soit majeur, il compte les jours et les mois.

Des qualités excellentes, jointes à de rares talents, font le parfait mérite.

Il a une mauvaise qualité, s'est qu'il ne saurait garder un secret.

I shall ever be your friend, even though you should not wish it.

Though you had succeeded, what were you to have derived from it ?

Should the steps you have taken be discovered they could not be blamed.

Had you consulted somebody about your marriage, you could not have succeeded better.

Thunder and lightning are only perceptible by the transmission of sound and light to the ear and eye.

Prose language is much more simple and less figurative than poetry.

The beginning of his speech is always tolerably sensible: but afterwards, by affecting the sublime, he loses himself, and we no longer understand either what we see or hear.

This fault would be excusable in another man, but in a man of his sense it is unpardonable.

It is not enough to appear to be an honest man, we must be so.

He received us with kindness and heard us patiently.

Every thing in it is so well delineated you think you see what he describes.

They think nothing of you but what is to your honour.

Cistern water is generally only rain water collected.

If he is not rich at least he has enough to live upon respectably.

What day of the month is it ?

He longs to be of age and counts the days and months.

Excellent qualities joined to distinguished talents constitute perfect merit.

He has one bad quality, he cannot keep a secret.

12. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles, on doit faire usage de l'Article.*

L'Homme est sujet à bien des vicissitudes,

Les hommes d'un vrai génie sont rares.

Les hommes à imagination sont rarement heureux.

L'homme dont vous parlez, est un de mes amis.

La vie est un mélange de biens et de maux.

La perfection en tout genre est le but auquel on doit tendre.

La beauté, les grâces et l'esprit sont des avantages bien précieux quand ils sont relevés par la modestie.

Voilà des tableaux d'une grande beauté.

Faites-vous des principes, dont vous ne vous écartiez jamais.

Cet arbre porte des fruits excellents.

Ces raisons sont des conjectures bien faibles.

Servez-vous des termes établis par l'usage.

On doit éviter l'air de l'affectation.

Le Jupiter de Phidias était d'une grande beauté.

Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

La mémoire est le trésor de l'esprit, le fruit de l'attention et de la réflexion.

J'achetai hier des gravures précieuses et rares.

La France est le plus beau pays de l'Europe.

L'intérêt de l'Allemagne était opposé à celui de la Russie.

La longueur de l'Angleterre du nord au sud est de 360 milles et sa largeur de l'est à l'ouest est de 300.

Il arrive de la Chine, du Japon, et des Indes Orientales, etc.

Il arrive de l'Amérique, de la Barbade, de la Jamaïque, etc.

Examples of Phrases in which the Article is used.

Man is liable to a variety of changes.

Men of real genius are scarce.

Men of visionary character are seldom happy.

The man you speak of is a friend of mine.

Life is a compound of good and evil.

Perfection in every thing ought to be our object.

Beauty, gracefulness, and wit, are valuable endowments when heightened by modesty.

These are very beautiful pictures.

Establish rules for yourself, and never deviate from them.

This tree bears very excellent fruit.

These reasons are very idle conjectures.

Use the expressions established by custom.

We ought to avoid the appearance of affectation.

The Jupiter of Phidias was extremely beautiful.

The same Phrases continued.

Memory is the treasure of the mind, the result of attention and reflection.

I yesterday bought some valuable and scarce engravings.

France is the finest country in Europe.

The German interest was contrary to the Russian.

The length of England from north to south is 360 miles, and its breadth from east to west is 300.

He comes from China, Japan, and the East Indies.

He comes from America, Barbadoes, Jamaica, etc.

Il vient de la Flandre Française.

Il s'est établi dans la province de Middlesex.

Des petits-maîtres sont des êtres insupportables dans la société.

C'est l'opinion des nouveaux philosophes.

Elle a bien de la grâce dans tout ce qu'elle fait.

Cette étoffe se vend une guinée l'aune.

Ce vin coûte 70 livres sterlings la pièce.

13. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles on ne doit pas faire usage de l'Article.*

Nos connaissances doivent être tirées de principes évidents.

Cet arbre porte d'excellents fruits.

Ces raisons sont de faibles conjectures.

Évitez tout ce qui a un air d'affectation.

Ces exemples peuvent servir de modèles.

Il a une grande présence d'esprit.

La mémoire de raison et d'esprit est plus utile que les autres sortes de mémoire.

Peu de personnes réfléchissent sur la rapidité de la vie.

Que d'événements inconcevables se sont succédés les uns aux autres !

Il y a plus d'esprit, mais moins de connaissance, dans ce siècle que dans le siècle dernier.

On ne vit jamais autant d'effronterie.

Je pris hier beaucoup de peine pour rien.

Candie est une des îles les plus agréables de la Méditerranée.

Il arrive de Perse, d'Italie, d'Espagne, etc.

Il est revenu de Suisse, d'Allemagne, etc.

He comes from French Flanders.

He has settled in the county of Middlesex.

Coxcombs are insufferable beings in society.

It is the opinion of the new philosophers.

She does every thing most gracefully.

This stuff sells at a guinea the ell.

This wine costs seventy pounds the hoghead.

Examples of phrases in which the Article is omitted.

Our knowledge ought to be derived from evident principles.

This tree produces excellent fruit.

These reasons are idle conjectures.

Avoid whatever bears the appearance of affectation.

These examples may serve as models.

He has great presence of mind.

The memory of reason and sense is more useful than any other kind of memory.

Few people reflect on the rapidity of life.

How many inconceivable events have followed in succession !

There's more wit but less knowledge in this age than in the last.

So much assurance never was met with.

I took a great deal of trouble yesterday about nothing.

Candia is one of the most agreeable islands in the Mediterranean.

He comes from Persia, Italy, and Spain, etc.

He is returned from Switzerland, Germany, etc.

Les vins de France seront chers cette année; les vignes ont coulé.
L'empire d'Allemagne est composé de grands et de petits états.
Les chevaux d'Angleterre sont excellents.

Après mon départ de Suisse je me retirai à Rome.

14. *Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

Vous trouverez ce passage page 120, livre premier, chapitre dix.

Il s'est retiré en Angleterre.

Il vit dans sa retraite en vrai philosophe.

Quand il réfléchit sur sa conduite, il en eut honte.

C'est un homme qui cherche fortune.

Il entend malice à tout.

Ne portez envie à personne.

Si vous promettez, tenez parole.

Dans les affaires importantes ne vous décidez jamais sans prendre conseil.

Courage, soldats, tenons fermes; la victoire est à nous.

Cette femme n'a ni grâce ni beauté.

Monseigneur le duc, etc. prince du sang, alla hier à la campagne.

Montrer tant de faiblesse, c'est n'être pas homme.

Cet homme est une espèce de misanthrope, dont les brusqueries sont quelque fois très-plaisantes.

L'ananas est une sorte de fruit très-commun aux Antilles.

C'est un genre de vie qui ne me plaît point.

15. *Continuation des mêmes phrases.*

Cette dame plaît à tout le monde par son honnêteté et sa douceur.

Tout homme a des défauts plus ou moins sensibles.

French wines will be dear this year; the vines have ran.

The German empire is composed of great and small states.

The English horses are excellent.

On my leaving Switzerland, I retired to Rome.

Continuation of the same Phrases.

You will find this passage in page 120, book the first, chapter the tenth.

He has retired to England.

He lives in his retreat, like a real philosopher.

When he reflected on his conduct, he was ashamed of it.

He is a man that seeks fortune, he is a fortune hunter.

He puts a malicious construction on every thing.

Envy nobody.

If you promise, keep your word.

In matters of consequence never decide without advice.

Cheer up, soldiers, let us continue firm, the day is our own.

This woman is destitute both of grace and beauty.

The duke of, etc. a prince of the blood, went yesterday into the country.

To shew so much weakness is not a thing like a man.

This man is a kind of misanthropist, whose oddities are sometimes comical.

The pine-apple is a kind of fruit very common in the Antilles.

It is a kind of life that is not agreeable to me.

The same sentences continued.

This lady pleases every one for her good breeding and mildness.

Every man has defects more or less obvious.

Cette conduite augmentait chaque jour le nombre de ses amis.

Tout les biens nous viennent de Dieu.

Vénus était la déesse de la beauté, et la mère de l'amour et des grâces.

Selon les païens Jupiter était le premier des dieux.

Apollon était frère jumeau de Diane.

Rubens a été un grand peintre.

Homère et Virgile sont les deux plus grands poètes épiques.

London est la plus belle ville que je connaisse.

L'eau de rivière est douce, et l'eau de mer est salée.

C'est un excellent poisson de mer.

Voilà une superbe table de marbre.

L'eau de Seine est celle qu'on préfère à Paris.

Pauvreté n'est pas vice.

Citoyens, étrangers, grands, peuples, se sont montrés sensibles à cette perte.

This behaviour daily increased the number of his friends.

Every blessing comes from God.

Venus was the goddess of beauty and the mother of love and the graces.

According to the Heathens, Jupiter was the first of the gods.

Appollo was twin brother to Diana.

Rubens was a great painter.

Homer and Virgil are the two greatest epic poets.

London is the finest city that I know.

River water is sweet, and sea water is salt.

It is an excellent sea fish.

There is a suberb marble table.

The water of the Seine is preferred at Paris.

Poverty is not a vice.

Citizens, strangers, grandees, people, have shown themselves sensible of this loss.

16. Modèles de Phrases sur le pronom Le.

Est-ce là votre opinion?—ne doutez point que ce ne la soit.

Sont-ce là vos domestiques?—oui, ce les sont.

Mesdames, êtes-vous les étrangères qu'on m'a annoncées?—oui, nous les sommes.

Madame, êtes-vous la malade pour laquelle on m'a appelé?—oui, je la suis.

Madames, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant?—oui, je la suis.

Mesdame, êtes-vous contentes de cette musique?—oui, nous le sommes.

Elle est malheureuse, et je crains bien qu'elle ne le soit toute sa vie.

Madam, êtes-vous mère?—oui, je la suis.

Forms of Phrases upon the pronoun Le.

Is that your opinion?—do not question it.

Are those your servants?—yes, they are.

Ladies, are you the strangers that have been announced to me? yes, we are.

Madam, are you the sick person for whom I have been called? yes, I am.

Madame, are you the mother of this child?—yes, I am.

Ladies, are you pleased with this music?—yes, we are.

She is unhappy, and I much fear she will continue so for life.

Madam, are you a mother?—yes, I am.

Madame, depuis quel temps êtes-vous mariée ?—je le suis depuis un an.

Y a-t-il long-temps que vous êtes arrivée ?—je le suis depuis quinze jours.

Aristote croyait que le monde était de tout éternité ; mais Platon ne le croyait pas.

Quoique cette femme montre plus de fermeté que les autres, elle n'est pas pour cela la moins affligée.

Cette femme a l'art de répandre des larmes dans le temps même qu'elle est le moins affligée.

17. *Modèles de Phrases sur les différentes règles du participe passé.*

La nouvelle pièce a-t-elle été applaudie ?

Vos y parents seront-ils arrivés à temps ?

Elle s'est donné de belles robes.

Elles nous ont apporté de superbes œillets.

Cette ruse ne lui a pas réussi.

La vie tranquille que j'ai menée depuis dix ans, a beaucoup contribué à me faire oublier mes malheurs.

Les lettres que j'ai reçues, m'ont beaucoup affligée.

Que de peines vous vous êtes données !

Quelle tâche vous vous êtes imposée !

C'est une satire que j'ai retrouvée dans mes papiers.

Les lettres qu'a écrites Pliny le jeune, quelque agréables qu'elles soient, se ressentent néanmoins un peu de la décadence du goût parmi les Romains.

Je ne serais pas entré avec vous dans tous ces détails de grammaire, si je ne les avais crus nécessaires.

L'Égypte s'était rendue célèbre par la sagesse de ses lois, long-

Madam, how long have you been married ? I have been married a year.

Have you long been arrived ?—a fortnight.

Aristotle believed the world to have been from all eternity, but Plato did not.

Although this woman shows more resolution than the others, she is nevertheless not the least distressed.

This woman had the art of shedding tears, even when she is least distressed.

Forms of Phrases upon the different rules of the participle past.

Did the new piece meet with applause ?

Will your relations arrive there in time ?

She has given herself fine gowns.

They have brought us beautiful pinks.

He has not succeeded in this stratagem.

The quiet life I have led these ten years has greatly contributed to make me forget my misfortunes.

The letters I have received have greatly distressed me.

What a deal of trouble you have given yourself !

What a task you have imposed on yourself !

It is a satire that I have again found within my papers.

The letters which the younger Pliny has written, however agreeable they may be, savour nevertheless a little of the decline of taste among the Romans.

I would not have entered into these grammatical details with you, had I not thought them necessary.

Egypt had become celebrated for the wisdom of its laws, long-

temps avant que la Grèce sortit de la barbarie.

C'est une des plus grandes merveilles qu'on ait vues.

L'homme de lettres, dont vous m'avez parlé, a un goût exquis.

Vous avez très-bien instruit vos élèves.

Lucrèce s'est donné la mort.

La sécheresse qu'il y a eu au printemps a fait pûrir tous les fruits.

Je n'ai point réussi, malgré les mesures que vous m'avez conseillé de prendre.

Quelle aventure vous est-il arrivé ?

Cette femme s'est proposée pour modèle à ses enfants.

Cette femme s'est proposé d'enseigner la géographie et l'histoire à ses enfants.

18. *Modèles de Phrases sur les principaux rapports des modes et des temps.*

Je l'attendais depuis long-temps quand il vint me joindre.

Il sortit au moment même que j'entraie.

Je commençais à avoir des craintes sur la réussite de votre affaire, lorsque j'ai reçu votre lettre.

Dès que j'eus fait quelques visites indispensables, je rentrai chez moi, et je ne sortis plus.

J'avais déjà tout préparé pour mon départ, lorsque des affaires imprévues m'ont forcé à le différer de quelques jours.

Vous étiez déjà sorti, quand je me présentai chez vous.

J'avais déjà livré à l'impression mon ouvrage, lorsque vous me demandiez si je le donnerais bientôt au public.

Lorsque j'ai eu terminé mon affaire, vous avez commencé la vôtre.

Lorsque j'eus déjeuné, je montai à cheval, et je fus à Londres.

before Greece had emerged from barbarism.

It is one of the greatest wonders that has ever been seen.

The man of letters you spoke to me of has an excellent taste.

You have taught your pupils extremely well.

Lucretia killed herself.

The dry weather we had in the spring has destroyed all the fruit.

I have not succeeded notwithstanding the steps you advised me to take.

What adventures have you met with ?

This woman proposed herself as a model for her children.

This woman proposed to teach geography and history to her children.

Forms of Phrases upon the principal relations of moods and tenses.

I had waited a long time for him, when he came to me.

He was going out at the time I was entering.

I was beginning to be apprehensive of the success of your business when I received your letter.

As soon as I had paid some indispensable visits, I went home and did not go out afterwards.

I had already made every preparation for my departure, when some unexpected business occurred that obliged me to defer it for some days.

You were already gone out when I called upon you.

My work had been sent to be printed, when you asked me if I should soon bring it out.

When I had terminated my business, you began yours.

When I had done breakfast, I got on horseback, and went to London.

Lorsque j'aurai lu la nouvelle pièce, je vous dirai avec franchise ce que j'en pense.

19. *Modèles de Phrases sur l'emploi des Auxiliaires* aller, venir, de, à, voir, pouvoir.

Je vais partir à l'instant même.

Nous allons vous expliquer cela en deux mots.

Nous allons nous mettre à table lorsqu'il est entré.

J'allais lui offrir mon bras, lorsque je m'aperçus de ma méprise.

On allait en venir aux mains, mais la nuit venant à tomber, on remit l'attaque au lendemain.

Je viens de les voir ensemble.

Elle vient de se marier avec un homme fort riche.

Leur père vient de mourir, ainsi il n'est pas probable qu'elles aillent en société.

Mon frère venait de sortir.

Nous venions de dîner.

Si vous avez quelque chose à leur dire, je m'en chargerai, je dois les voir aujourd'hui.

Vous ne devez pas lui répondre ainsi.

Dois-je attendre ?

Elle doit avoir quinze ans au moins.

Il doit être à la maison car je ne l'ai pas vu sortir.

Je devais sortir, mais le mauvais temps m'en a empêché.

Ne deviez-vous pas vous mettre en route lundi dernier.

Ils devaient m'en prévenir.

Cela devait être le meilleur parti.

Vous devriez lui dire la vérité.

Devrais-je obéir à des ordres si injustes.

Il aurait dû revenir de suite.

When I have read the new play, I will candidly give you my opinion of it.

Examples on the use of the Auxiliaries *aller, venir, de, devoir, pouvoir,*

I am off this very instant.

We will explain it to you in two words.

We were going to sit down at table when he entered.

I was on the point of offering my arm to her, when saw my mistake.

They were on the moment of engaging, but right falling, they put off the attack until the next day.

I have this moment seen them together.

She has just married a very rich man.

Their father has recently died, it is not likely therefore they should go into company.

My brother had just gone out.

We had not long dined.

If you have any message to send to them, I will take it, for I am to see them to-day.

You are not to answer him in this manner.

Am I to wait, or must I wait ?

She must be fifteen at least.

He must be at home, for I do not see him go out.

I intended to go out, I was to have gone out, but the bad weather prevented me.

Where were you not to have set off on Monday last.

They ought to have told me of it.

That must have been the best determination.

You should speak the truth to him.

Ought I to obey such unjust orders ?

He ought to have returned directly.

Nous n'aurions pas dû dépenser follement.

Mon frère pourrait vous reconduire.

Nous pourrions lui en parler, lorsqu'il sera moins occupé.

Ne pourrions-nous pas passer par Bath ?

Il me semble qu'elle aurait pu mieux faire.

Les troupes auraient pu débarquer sur nos côtes.

We ought not to have spent extravagantly.

My brother must see you home.

We might mention it to him when he is less engaged.

Might we not return through Bath ?

It appears to me that she might have done better.

The troops might have landed on our coasts.

20. Models to show how to render will, shall, would, should, elliptically used.

Iriez-vous à Rome, si vous le pouviez ? — oui, j'irais.

Auriez-vous consenti à ces conditions, si on vous les avait proposées ? oui, sans doute.

Irez-vous demain à Londres, si vous le pouvez ? — oui, j'irai.

Il sera sûrement parti, si vous l'avez voulu.

J'ai bien dormi, mais non pas lui.

N'a-t-il pas une jolie terre en Normandie ? oui, Monsieur.

Nous avons été au spectacle hier au soir. Vraiment ! or ah !

Elle n'a pas de fortune. Vraiment !

Mes compliments chez vous. Je n'y manquerai pas.

Je dis qu'il y était ; mais ma sœur dit que non.

Je vous dis que oui, et moi, je vous dis que non.

Vous eussiez laissé échapper une occasion si favorable, si l'on ne vous eût averti à temps.

Will, shall, would, should, elliptically used.

Would you go to Rome if it were in your power ? yes, I would.

Would you have agreed to these terms, had they been proposed to you ? Yes I would.

Shall you go to London to-morrow, if you can ? yes, I shall.

He will certainly have set out, if you have wished it.

I have slept well, but he has not.

Has he not a pretty estate in Normandy ? yes, he has.

We went to the play last night. Did you ?

She has no fortune of her own. Has she not ?

My compliments at home. I will.

I say he was there, but my sister says he was not.

I tell you it is, and I tell you it is not.

You would have let so favourable an opportunity slip, had you not been warned in time.

21. Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

On dit que vous partez aujourd'hui pour Paris.

Tout le monde soutient que vous accepterez la place qu'on vous offre.

On soupçonne que vous aviez hier reçu cette agréable nouvelle quand on vous rencontra.

The same Phrases continued.

It is said that you set off to-day for Paris.

Every one maintains that you will accept the place that is offered to you.

It is suspected that you had received this agreeable intelligence when you were met yesterday.

Beaucoup de vos amis croient que vous partîtes hier pour la campagne.

Le bruit se répand que vous avez fait une grosse perte.

J'apprends dans l'instant que vous fussiez parti il y a trois jours, si des engagements, que vous aviez contractés depuis long-temps, ne vous avaient retenu.

N'est-il pas vrai que vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si vous le pouviez ?

Est-il vrai que vous seriez parti depuis long-temps pour la campagne, si votre amour pour les arts ne vous avait retenu à la ville ?

Je ne crois pas que vous partiez, quoique tout le monde l'assure.

Je ne croyais pas qu'il fût si tôt de retour.

Il a fallu qu'il ait eu affaire à bien des personnes.

Je doute que votre ami fût venu à bout de ses projets, s'il n'avait pas été fortement protégé.

Il n'est point d'homme, quel que mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui.

Vous ne vous persuadiez pas que les affaires pussent si mal tourner.

Many of your friends believe that you set out yesterday for the country.

There is a report that you have met with a considerable loss.

I have this moment learnt that you would have set out three days since, had not engagements which you had formed long ago, detained you.

It is not true that you would set out to-day, if you could ?

Is it true that you would have set out for the country long since, had not your love for the arts detained you in town ?

I do not imagine that you will set out, although every body asserts it.

I did not believe he had gone back so soon.

He must have had business with a great many people.

I doubt that your friend would have succeeded in his plans, had he not been strongly patronised.

There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, that would not be very much mortified, were he to know every thing that is thought of him.

You never persuaded yourself that matters could have taken so unfortunate a turn.

22. Modèles de Phrases sur la Négative Ne.

Il n'y a pas beaucoup d'argent chez les gens de lettres.

Il n'y a point de ressource dans une personne qui n'a point d'esprit.

C'est à tort que vous l'accusez de jouer ; je vous assure qu'il ne joue point.

Entrez dans le salon ; vous pourrez lui parler ; il ne joue pas.

Forms of Phrases upon the negative Ne.

There is not much money to be found among men of letters.

There are no resources in a person deprived of sense.

You accuse him wrongfully of gaming ; I assure you he never does.

Go into my room, you may speak to him ; he is not playing.

Si pour avoir du bien, il en coûte à la probité, je n'en veux point.

Rien n'est sûr avec les capricieux: vous croyez être bien en faveur; point du tout: l'instant de la plus belle humeur est suivi de la plus fâcheuse.

Vous ne cessez de nous répéter les mêmes choses.

Je n'aurais osé vous en parler le premier.

Malgré ses protections il n'a pu réussir dans ses projets.

Cet ouvrage serait fort bon, n'était la négligence du style.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un dont elle ne médise?

J'ai pris tant de goût pour une vie retirée, que je ne sors presque jamais.

Voilà ce qui s'est passé; n'en parlez à personne.

Mon parti est pris; ne n'en parlez plus.

N'employez aucun de ces moyens; ils sont indignes de vous.

Rien n'est plus joli.

Je ne dis rien que je ne pense.

Je ne fais jamais d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé.

23 Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

C'est un homme pour qui je n'ai ni amour, ni estime.

Il n'est ni assez prudent ni assez éclairé.

Je vous assure que je ne le fréquente ni ne le vois.

Ne faire que parcourir les différentes branches des connaissances humaines sans

I do not wish to make a fortune, if it can only be done at the expense of honesty.

Nothing is certain with capricious people: you think yourself in favour, by no means: the moment of the best humour is followed by that of the worst.

You are constantly repeating the same thing to us.

I should not have dared to be the first to speak to you of it.

With all his interest he has not been able to succeed in his plans.

This work would be very good, were it not for the negligence of the style.

Is there any one she does not slander?

I have acquired so great a taste for retirement, that I seldom go out.

This is what has passed; do not mention it to any one.

My resolution is fixed; talk to me no more of it.

Do not employ any one of these measures, they are unworthy of you.

Nothing is more beautiful.

I never speak but what I think.

I never commit any excess without suffering by it.

Continuation of the same Phrases.

He is a man for whom I have neither love nor esteem.

He is neither sufficiently prudent nor enlightened.

I assure you I neither associate with him nor see him.

To go through the different branches of human knowledge only, without fixing upon any,

s'arrêter à aucune, c'est moins chercher à s'instruire, qu'à tuer le temps.

Que n'êtes-vous toujours aussi complaisant ?

Il ne le fera pas à moins que vous ne l'y engagiez.

Il n'ira pas, si vous ne l'en priez.

Il nous a menacés de se venger ; nous n'avons fait qu'en rire.

Trop d'insouciance ne peut que nuire.

Que devenez-vous ? il y a trois mois que nous ne vous avons vu ?

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que nous ne vous avons vu ?

C'est bien pire qu'on ne le disait.

Peu s'en faut que je n'aie donné tête baissée dans le piège.

Dites la vérité en toute occasion ; on méprise toujours ceux qui parlent autrement qu'il ne pensent.

Ne désespérez pas que la vérité ne se fasse jour à la longue.

Je ne disconviens pas que la chose ne soit ainsi.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous entraîne dans quelque fausse démarche.

J'empêcherai bien qu'on ne vous nuise dans cette affaire.

Il craint qu'on ne le soupçonne d'avoir trempé dans ce complot.

On lui a donné d'excellents conseils, de crainte qu'il ne manquât l'occasion de faire connaître ce qu'il est en état de faire.

one of them, is not to seek for instruction, but to kill time.

Why are you not at all times equally obliging ?

He will not do it, unless you persuade him to it.

He will not go, if you do not request it of him.

He has threatened us with vengeance ; we only laughed at him.

Too great supineness cannot but be hurtful.

What has become of you ? we have not seen you these three months.

How have you been since we saw you ?

It is much worse than was said.

I was near running headlong into the snare.

Tell the truth on all occasions : those who speak what they do not think are always despised.

Do not despair that truth will appear in time.

I do not deny but the thing may have been so.

Take care that you are not led into some false step.

I shall prevent them from doing you any harm in this business.

He is apprehensive that he is suspected of being concerned in this plot.

They have given him excellent advice, lest he should lose the opportunity of showing what he was capable of doing.

J'y
je ne

Vou
taire ;
vous
Vou
un plu

24. P
lic

Ire
ra ?—
Iri
Rom
La
quel
cont
sait
C
éton
tre r
Il
son
Je
hau
la c
C
mis
le p
L
se r
F
sag
i
hor
rite
P
ma
I
bar
I
par
ma
low

J'y ai long-temps travaillé ;
je ne saurais en venir à bout.

*I have been long employed
about it ; I cannot accom-
plish it.*

Vous seriez mieux de vous
taire ; vous ne savez ce que
vous dites.

*You had better be silent,
you do not know what you are
saying.*

Vous ne sauriez me faire
un plus grand plaisir.

*You cannot do me a great-
er favour.*

24. *Phrases sur quelques Dé-
licatesses de la Langue
Française.*

*Phrases on some Niceties of
the French Language.*

Irez-vous ce soir à l'opé-
ra ?—oui, j'irai.

*Shall you go to the opera
this evening ?—yes, I shall.*

Iriez-vous avec plaisir à
Rome ?—oui, j'irais.

*Would you cheerfully go to
Rome ?—yes, I would.*

La justice qui nous est
quelquefois refusée par nos
contemporains, la postérité
sait nous la rendre.

*Posterity knows how to do
us that justice which is some-
times refused us by our con-
temporaries.*

Cette grandeur qui vous
étonne si fort, il la doit à vo-
tre nonchalance.

*That greatness which so
much astonishes you he owes
to your indifference.*

Il périt, ce héros, si cher à
son pays.

*That hero, so dear to his
country perished.*

Je l'avais bien prévu que ce
haut degré de grandeur serait
la cause de sa ruine.

*I foresaw that the greatness
of his elevation would be his
ruin.*

Citoyens, étrangers, enne-
mis, peuples, rois, empereurs,
le plaignent et le révèrent.

*Citizens, strangers, enne-
mies, nations, kings, empe-
rors, pity and respect him.*

L'assemblée finie, chacun
se retira chez soi.

*The assembly being over,
each returned home.*

Heureux le peuple qu'un
sage roi gouverne.

*Happy are the people who
are governed by a wise king.*

Il refusa les plus grands
honneurs, content de les mé-
riter.

*He refused the greatest ho-
nors, satisfied with having
deserved them.*

Prières, remontrances, com-
mandements, tout est inutile.

*Entreaties, remonstrances,
injunctions, all are useless.*

Le vent renverse tours, ca-
banes, palais, églises.

*The wind overturns towers,
cottages, palaces, churches.*

Notre réputation ne dépend
pas du caprice des hommes ;
mais elle dépend des actions
louables que nous faisons.

*Our reputation does not de-
pend on the caprice of men,
but on the commendable ac-
tions we perform.*

Il y a beaucoup de choses
qu'il n'importe point du tout
de savoir.

La vue de l'esprit a plus
d'étendue que la vue du
corps.

Ce qui sert à la vanité,
n'est que vanité.

Tout ce qui n'a que le
monde pour fondement, se
dissipe et s'évanouit avec le
monde.

C'est le privilège des grands
hommes de vaincre l'envie ;
le mérite la fait naître, le mé-
rite la fait mourir.

L'amour-propre est plus
habile que le plus habile
homme du monde.

En quittant le monde, on
ne quitte le plus souvent ni
les erreurs, ni les folles pas-
sions du monde.

*They are many things
which it is of no consequence
at all to know.*

*The eye of the mind reaches
much farther than the bodily
eye.*

*What promotes vanity is
only vanity.*

*All that is confined to this
lower world disperses and
vanishes with the world.*

*It is the prerogative of great
men to conquer envy : merit
gives it birth, and merit des-
troys it.*

*Self-love is more ingenious
than the most ingenious man
in the world.*

*In renouncing the world we
generally renounce neither the
errors nor foolish passions of
the world.*

END.

my things
consequence

and reaches
the bodily

vanity is

ed to this
urses and
orld.

of great
y: merit
erit des-

ingenious
ious man

world we
either the
ssions of

